Foreword

Congratulations on choosing a SUBARU vehicle. This Owner's Manual has all the information necessary to keep your SUBARU in excellent condition and to properly maintain the emission control system for minimizing emission pollutants. We urge you to read this manual carefully so that you may understand your vehicle and its operation. For information not found in this Owner's Manual, such as details concerning repairs or adjustments, we recommend that you contact the SUBARU dealer from whom you purchased your SUBARU or the nearest SUBARU dealer.

The information, specifications and illustrations found in this manual are those in effect at the time of printing. SUBARU CORPORATION reserves the right to change specifications and designs at any time without prior notice and without incurring any obligation to make the same or similar changes on vehicles previously sold. This Owner's Manual applies to all models and covers all equipment, including factory installed options. Some explanations, therefore may be for equipment not installed in your vehicle.

Please leave this manual in the vehicle at the time of resale. The next owner will need the information found herein.

NOTE: "SUBARU dealer" means an authorized SUBARU dealer and/or repairer.

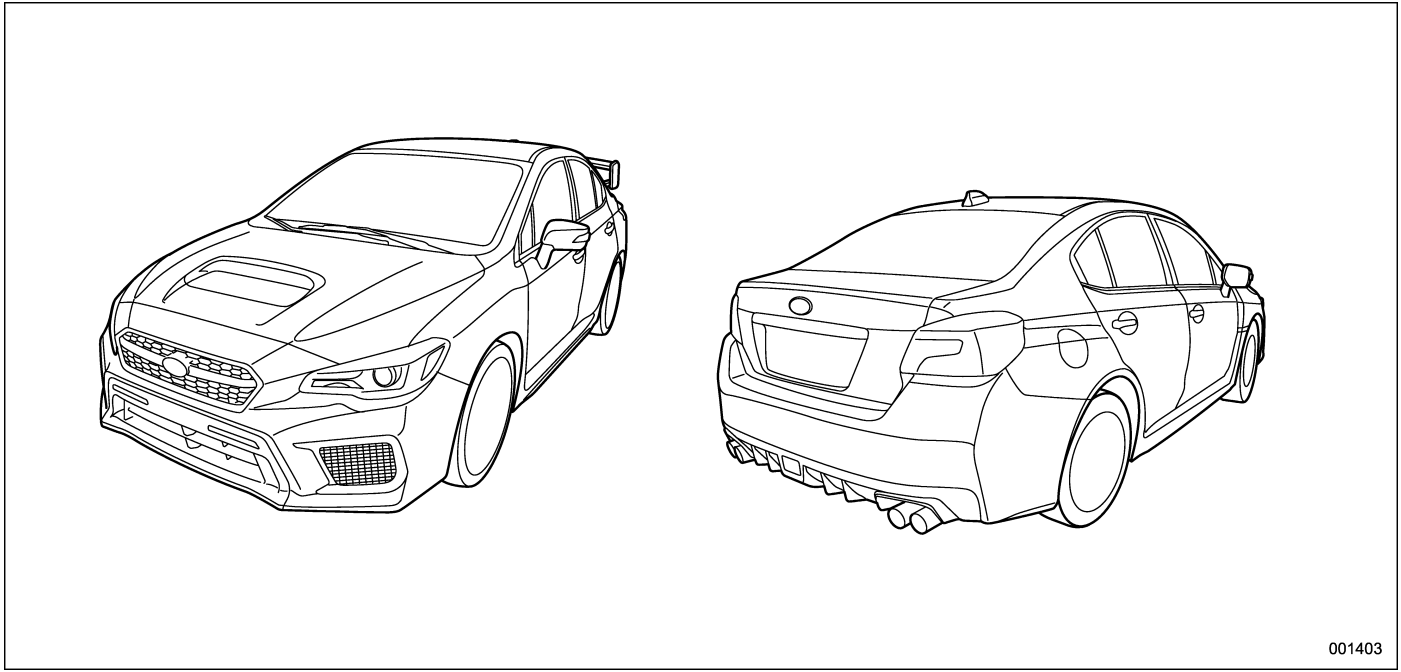
SUBARU CORPORATION, TOKYO, JAPAN

SUBARU is a registered trademark of SUBARU CORPORATION.

Ⓒ Copyright 2017 SUBARU CORPORATION

*On the 1st of April 2017, the corporate name was changed from Fuji Heavy Industries LTD. to SUBARU CORPORATION.

This manual describes the following vehicle types.



Warranties

All warranty information, including details of coverage and exclusions, is in the “Warranty and Service Booklet”. Please read these warranties carefully.

How to use this Owner’s Manual

■ Using your Owner’s Manual

Before you operate your vehicle, carefully read this manual. To protect yourself and extend the service life of your vehicle, follow the instructions in this manual. Failure to observe these instructions may result in serious injury and damage to your vehicle.

This manual is composed of fourteen chapters. Each chapter begins with a brief table of contents, so you can usually tell at a glance if that chapter contains the information you want.

Chapter 1: Seat, seatbelt and SRS airbags

This chapter informs you how to use the seat and seatbelt and contains precautions for the SRS airbags.

Chapter 2: Keys and doors

This chapter informs you how to operate the keys, locks and windows.

Chapter 3: Instruments and controls

This chapter informs you about the operation of instrument panel indicators and how to use the instruments and other switches.

Chapter 4: Climate control

This chapter informs you how to operate the climate control.

Chapter 5: Audio

This chapter informs you how to operate your audio system.

Chapter 6: Interior equipment

This chapter informs you how to operate interior equipment.

Chapter 7: Starting and operating

This chapter informs you how to start and operate your SUBARU.

Chapter 8: Driving tips

This chapter informs you how to drive your SUBARU in various conditions and explains some safety tips on driving.

Chapter 9: In case of emergency

This chapter informs you what to do if you have a problem, such as a flat tire or engine overheating.

Chapter 10: Appearance care

This chapter informs you how to keep your SUBARU looking good.

Chapter 11: Maintenance and service

This chapter informs you when you need to take your SUBARU to the dealer for scheduled maintenance and informs you how to keep your SUBARU running properly.

– CONTINUED –

Chapter 12: Specifications

This chapter informs you about dimension and capacities of your SUBARU.

Chapter 13: Supplement

This chapter informs you of supplementary information complied with some countries' requirements.

Chapter 14: Index

This is an alphabetical listing of all that's in this manual. You can use it to quickly find something you want to read.

For models with the EyeSight system:

For details about the EyeSight system, refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the EyeSight system.

■ Safety warnings

You will find a number of WARNINGs, CAUTIONs and NOTEs in this manual.

These safety warnings alert you to potential hazards that could result in injury to you or others.

Please read these safety warnings as well as all other portions of this manual carefully in order to gain a better understanding of how to use your SUBARU vehicle safely.

⚠ WARNING

A WARNING indicates a situation in which serious injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.

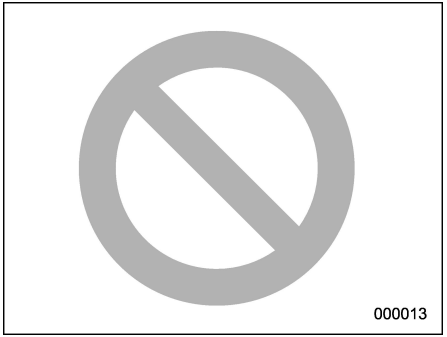
⚠ CAUTION

A CAUTION indicates a situation in which injury or damage to your vehicle, or both, could result if the caution is ignored.

NOTE

A NOTE gives information or suggestions how to make better use of your vehicle.

■ Safety symbol



You will find a circle with a slash through it in this manual. This symbol means "Do not", "Do not do this", or "Do not let this happen", depending upon the context.

■ Abbreviation list

You may find several abbreviations in this manual. The meanings of the abbreviations are shown in the following list.

Abbreviation	Meaning
A/C	Air conditioner
ALR/ELR	Automatic locking retractor/ Emergency locking retractor
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
ALR	Automatic locking retractor
AVH	Auto Vehicle Hold
AWD	All-wheel drive
BSD	Blind Spot Detection
C.DIFF/ DCCD	Driver's control center differential
CVT	Continuously variable transmission
CVTF	Continuously variable transmission fluid
EBD	Electronic brake force distribution
ELR	Emergency locking retractor
GPS	Global positioning system
INT	Intermittent
LED	Light emitting diode
LHD	Left-hand drive
LSD	Limited slip differential
MPW	Maximum permissible weight
MT	Manual transmission
OBD	On-board diagnostics
RCTA	Rear Cross Traffic Alert
Rear MPAW	Maximum permissible rear axle weight
RHD	Right-hand drive
RON	Research octane number
SI-DRIVE	SUBARU Intelligent Drive
SRH	Steering Responsive Headlight
SRS	Supplemental restraint system
SRVD	SUBARU Rear Vehicle Detection

Vehicle symbols

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

For warning and indicator lights, refer to "Warning and indicator lights" ☞25.

Mark	Name
	WARNING
	CAUTION
	Read these instructions carefully
	Wear eye protection
	Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid
	Keep children away
	Keep flames away
	Prevent explosions

Safety precautions when driving

■ Seatbelt and SRS airbag

⚠ WARNING

- **All persons in the vehicle should fasten their seatbelts BEFORE the vehicle starts to move. Otherwise, the possibility of serious injury becomes greater in the event of a sudden stop or accident.**
- **To obtain maximum protection in the event of an accident, the driver and all passengers must always wear seatbelts when in the vehicle. The SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) airbag does not do away with the need to fasten seatbelts. In combination with the seatbelts, it offers the best combined protection in case of a serious accident.**

  Not wearing a seatbelt increases the chance of severe injury or death in a crash even when the vehicle has the SRS airbag.
- **The SRS airbags deploy with considerable speed and force. Occupants who are out of proper position when the SRS airbag deploys could suffer very serious injuries. Because the SRS airbag needs enough space for deployment, the driver should always sit upright and well back in the seat as far from the steering wheel as practical while still maintaining full vehicle control and the front passenger should move the seat as far back as possible and sit upright and well back in the seat.**

For instructions and precautions, carefully read the following sections.

- For the seatbelt system, refer to “Seatbelts” ☞1-15.
- For the SRS airbag system, refer to “*SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)” ☞1-41.

■ Child safety

⚠ WARNING

- **Never hold a child on your lap or in your arms while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, because the child will be caught between the passenger and objects inside the vehicle.**
- **While riding in the vehicle, infants and small children should always be placed in the REAR seat in an infant or a child restraint system which is appropriate for the child’s age, height and weight. If a child is too big for a child restraint system, the child should sit in the REAR seat and be restrained using the seatbelts. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions. Never allow a child to stand up or kneel on the seat.**
- **Put children aged 12 and under or 1.5 m (4 feet 11 inches) tall or less in the REAR seat properly restrained at all times in a child**

restraint device or in a seatbelt. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are 12 years of age and under or 1.5 m (4 feet 11 inches) tall or less and are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.



Warning label
A) AIRBAG

⚠ WARNING

- **NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**
- **Always turn the child safety locks to the "LOCK" position when children sit on the rear seat. Serious injury could result if a child accidentally opens the door and falls out. Refer to "Child safety locks" ☞2-24.**
- **Always lock the passengers' windows using the lock switch when children are riding in the vehicle. Failure to follow this procedure could result in injury to a child operating the power window. Refer to "Windows" ☞2-24.**
- **Never leave unattended children, adults or animals in the vehicle. They could accidentally injure themselves or others through inadvertent operation of the vehicle. Also, on hot or sunny days, the temperature in a closed vehicle could quickly become high enough to cause severe or possibly fatal injuries to them.**

– CONTINUED –

- **When leaving the vehicle, close all windows and lock all doors.**

For instructions and precautions, carefully read the following sections.

- For the seatbelt system, refer to "Seatbelts" ☞1-15.
- For the child restraint system, refer to "Child restraint systems" ☞1-23.
- For the SRS airbag system, refer to "*SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)" ☞1-41.

■ Engine exhaust gas (carbon monoxide)

⚠ WARNING

- **Never inhale engine exhaust gas. Engine exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas which is dangerous, or even lethal, if inhaled.**
- **Always properly maintain the engine exhaust system to prevent engine exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.**
- **Never run the engine in a closed space, such as a garage, except for the brief time needed to drive the vehicle in or out of it.**
- **Avoid remaining in a parked vehicle for a lengthy time while the engine is running. If that is unavoidable, then use the ventilation fan to force outside air into the vehicle.**
- **Always keep the front ventilator inlet grille free from snow, leaves or other obstructions to ensure that the ventilation system always works properly.**
- **If at any time you suspect that exhaust fumes are entering the vehicle, have the problem checked and corrected as soon as possible. If you must drive under these conditions, drive only with all windows fully open.**
- **Keep the trunk lid closed while driving to prevent exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.**

■ Drinking and driving

⚠ WARNING

Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Alcohol in the bloodstream delays your reaction and impairs your perception, judgment and attentiveness. If you drive after drinking – even if you drink just a little – it will increase the risk of being involved in a serious or fatal accident, injuring or killing yourself, your passengers and others. In addition, if you are injured in the accident, alcohol may increase the severity of that injury.

Please don't drink and drive.

Drunken driving is one of the most frequent causes of accidents. Since alcohol affects all people differently, you may have consumed too much alcohol to drive safely even if the level of alcohol in your blood is below the legal limit. The safest thing you can do is never drink and drive.

■ Drugs and driving

⚠ WARNING

There are some drugs (over the counter and prescription) that can delay your reaction time and impair your perception, judgment and attentiveness. If you drive after taking them, it may increase your, your passengers' and other persons' risk of being involved in a serious or fatal accident.

If you are taking any drugs, check with your doctor or pharmacist or read the literature that accompanies the medication to determine if the drug you are taking can impair your driving ability. Do not drive after taking any medications that can make you drowsy or otherwise affect your ability to safely operate a motor vehicle. If you have a medical condition that requires you to take drugs, please consult with your doctor.

Never drive if you are under the influence of any illicit mind-altering drugs. For your own health and well-being, we urge you not to take illegal drugs in the first place and to seek treatment if you are addicted to those drugs.

■ Driving when tired or sleepy

⚠ WARNING

When you are tired or sleepy, your reaction will be delayed and your perception, judgment and attentiveness will be impaired. If you drive when tired or sleepy, your, your passengers' and other persons' chances of being involved in a serious accident may increase.

Please do not continue to drive but instead find a safe place to rest if you are tired or sleepy. On long trips, you should make periodic rest stops to refresh yourself before continuing on your journey. When possible, you should share the driving with others.

■ Modification of your vehicle

⚠ CAUTION

Your vehicle should not be modified. Modification could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from modification may not be covered under warranties.

NOTE

This vehicle is equipped with a function that will record certain vehicle data in the event the vehicle is operated or maintained in a manner that exceeds or varies from routine normal use.

That data may be used as a means of determining whether or not a vehicle condition is eligible for repair under warranty.

– CONTINUED –

■ Car phone/cell phone and driving

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use a car phone/cell phone while driving; it may distract your attention from driving and can lead to an accident. If you use a car phone/cell phone, pull off the road and park in a safe place before using your phone. In some countries, only hands-free phones may legally be used while driving.

■ Driving vehicles equipped with navigation system

⚠ WARNING

Do not allow the monitor to distract your attention from driving. Also, do not operate the controls of the navigation system while driving. The loss of attention to driving could lead to an accident. If you wish to operate the controls of the navigation system, first take the vehicle off the road and stop it in a safe place.

■ Driving with pets

Unrestrained pets can interfere with your driving and distract your attention from driving. In a collision or sudden stop, unrestrained pets or cages can be thrown around inside the vehicle and hurt you or your passengers. Besides, the pets can be hurt under these situations. It is also for their own safety that pets should be properly restrained in your vehicle. Restrain a pet with a special traveling harness which can be secured to the rear seat with a seatbelt or use a pet carrier which can be secured to the rear seat by routing a seatbelt through the carrier's handle. Never restrain pets or pet carriers in the front passenger's seat. For further information, consult your veterinarian, local animal protection society or pet shop.

■ Tire pressure

Check and, if necessary, adjust the pressure of each tire (including the spare) at least once a month and before any long journey.

Check the tire pressure when the tires are cold. Use a pressure gauge to adjust the tire pressures to the values shown on the tire placard.

For detailed information, refer to "Tires and wheels" ☞11-34.

⚠ WARNING

Driving at high speeds with excessively low tire pressures can cause the tires to deform severely and to rapidly become hot. A sharp increase in temperature could cause tread separation, and destruction of the tires. The resulting loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.

■ Attaching accessories

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not attach any accessories, labels or stickers (other than properly placed inspection stickers) to the windshield. Such items may obstruct your view.**
- **If it is necessary to attach an accessory (such as an electronic toll collection (ETC) device or security pass) to the windshield, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for details on the proper location.**

General information

■ Gear shift indicator (if equipped)

⚠ CAUTION

The indication of the gear shift indicator is only a guideline for driving more fuel-efficiently. The indicator does not inform the driver about safe shift operation timing. The driver has the responsibility for suitable shift operation depending on the traffic conditions or driving conditions (e.g., overtaking or driving on an uphill slope).

This indicator supports the driver to drive more fuel-efficiently. The vehicle system determines the shift operation timing depending on the driving conditions, and informs the driver by the indicator on the combination meter. For details, refer to “Gear shift indicator” ☞3-35.

NOTE

Usually, the gear shift indicator is a guideline for driving more fuel-efficiently, and it also operates to prevent a possible engine stall at a low engine speed.

EU Battery directive 2006/66/EC

Followings are the symbol of EU Battery Directive 2006/66/EC.

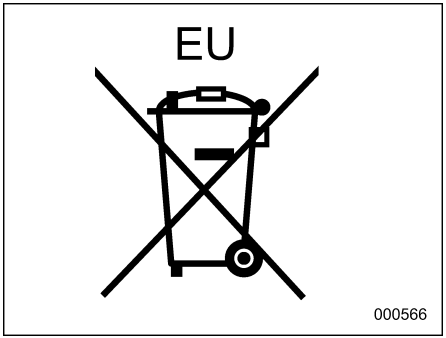
This directive applies to the collection of batteries, recycling of disposed batteries and accumulators, and batteries not disposed of in landfills because they could be hazardous to the environment.

In your vehicle, there are some batteries that do not have the 2006/66/EC EU Battery directive symbol.

Please check and obey all local laws and regulations for the disposal of batteries or accumulations.

– CONTINUED –

The following devices utilize batteries that do not have the symbol:



- Remote transmitter (if equipped): CR1620
- Access key fobs (if equipped): CR2032

Noise levels inside the vehicle (Customs Union Regulation)

TR CU 018/2011

(TECHNICAL REGULATION OF THE CUSTOMS UNION, On Safety of Wheeled Vehicles),

Attachment No. 3: Section 2

(Requirements for vehicles concerning their interior noise):

Table 2.1: Remarks: No. 3,

The noise level measured during acceleration may reach up to 81 dBA as maximum.

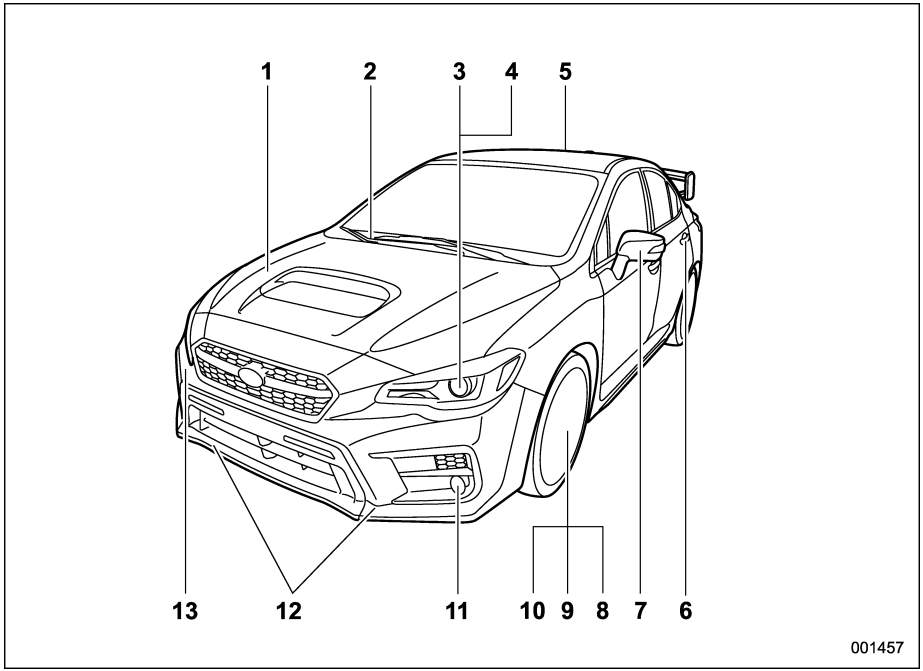
This vehicle may not be used for public purposes (as taxis, for example).

Table of contents

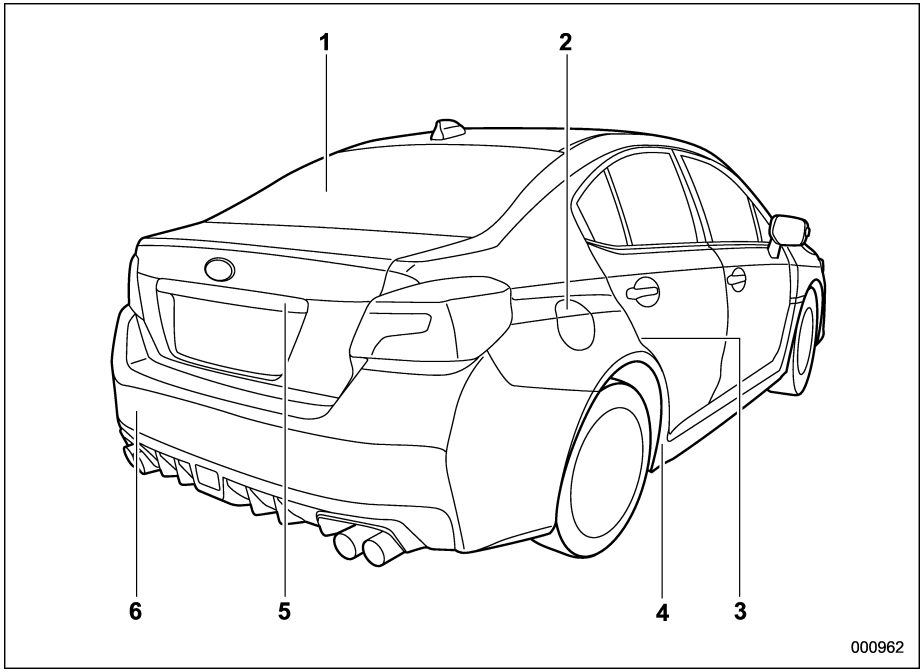
Seat, seatbelt and SRS airbags	*1*
Keys and doors	*2*
Instruments and controls	*3*
Climate control	*4*
Audio	*5*
Interior equipment	*6*
Starting and operating	*7*
Driving tips	*8*
In case of emergency	*9*
Appearance care	*10*
Maintenance and service	*11*
Specifications	*12*
Supplement	*13*
Index	*14*

Illustrated index

■ Exterior



1) Engine hood (page 11-12)
2) Front wiper (page 3-78)
3) Headlight (page 3-63)
4) Replacing bulbs (page 11-48)
5) Sunroof (page 2-30)
6) Door locks (page 2-5)
7) Outside mirror (page 3-82)
8) Tire pressure (page 11-37)
9) Flat tires (page 9-5)
10) Tire chains (page 8-10)
11) Fog light (page 3-74)
12) Tie-down hooks (page 9-13)
13) Towing hook (page 9-13)

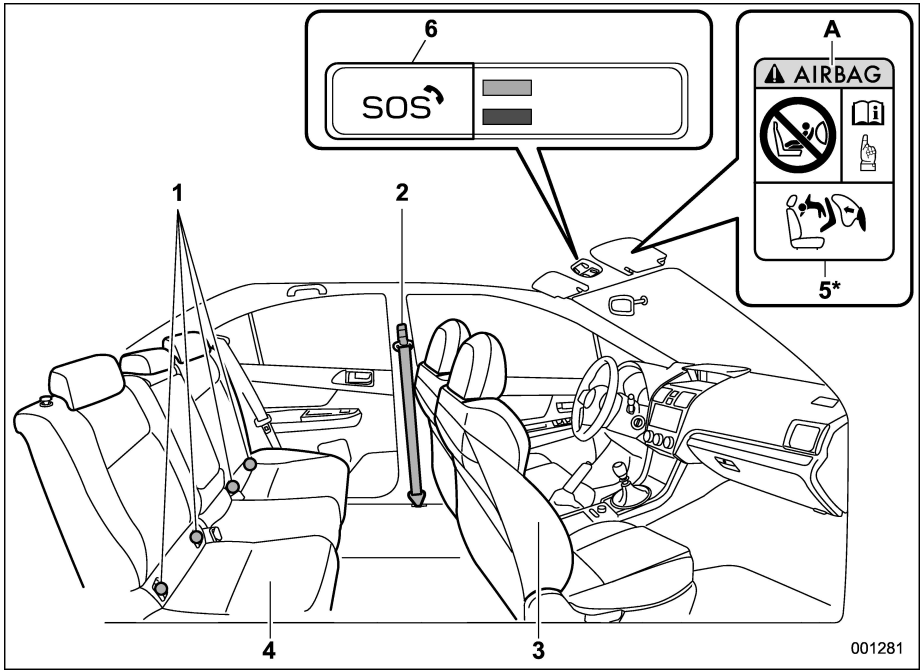


1) Rear window defogger (page 3-83)
2) Fuel filler lid and cap (page 7-3)
3) Child safety locks (page 2-24)
4) Tie-down hole (page 9-13)
5) Trunk lid (page 2-27)
6) Towing hook (page 9-13)

– CONTINUED –

■ Interior

▼ Passenger compartment area



1) Anchor bars for ISOFIX child restraint system (page 1-38)
2) Seatbelt (page 1-15)
3) Front seat (page 1-2)
4) Rear seat (page 1-10)
5) Warning labels for child restraint system (page 1-26)
6) SOS button for ERA-GLONASS system

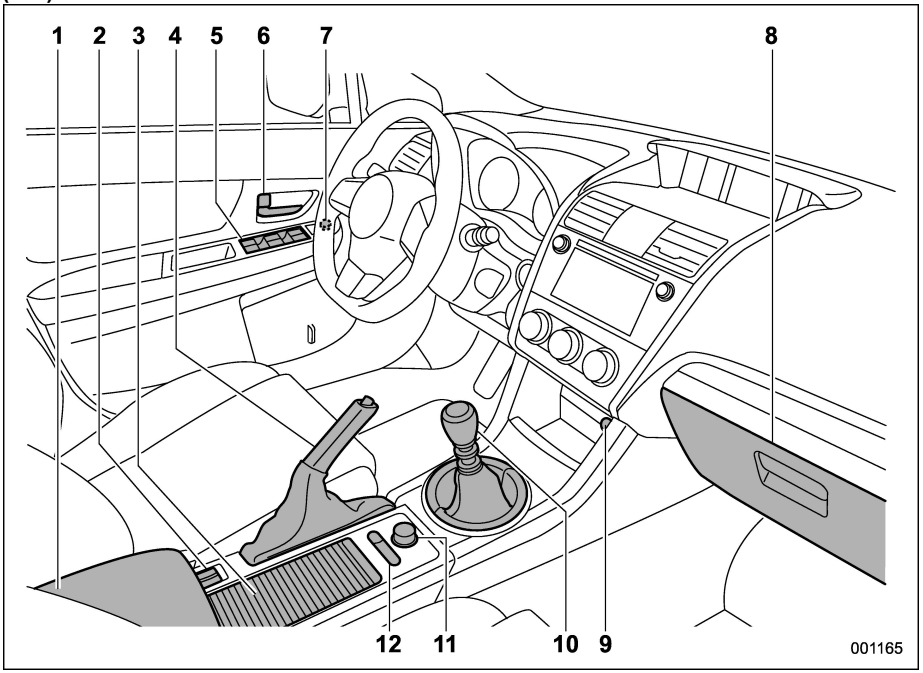
A) AIRBAG

*: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

NOTE

ERA-GLONASS will be available in Russia, Kazakhstan and Belarus. As of February 2016, the service is only available in Russia. Refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the ERA-GLONASS system.

(STI)

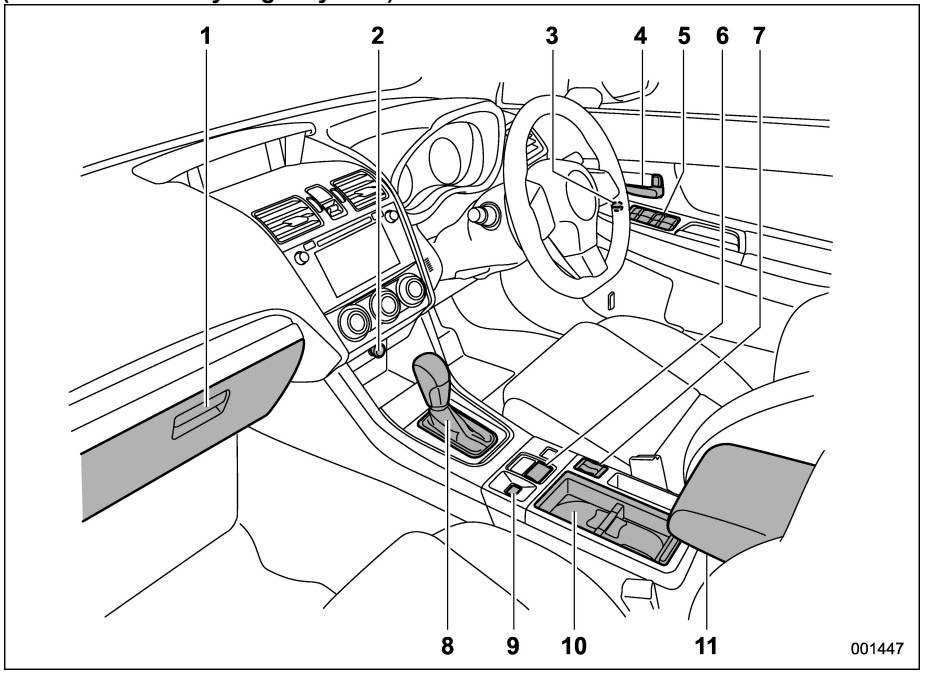


The illustration above is a typical example for left-hand drive models. For right-hand drive models, the locations of some switches/levers are different from those shown in the illustration.

1) Center console (page 6-4)
2) Seat heater switches (page 1-9)
3) Cup holder (page 6-5)
4) Parking brake lever (page 7-42)
5) Power window switches (page 2-24)
6) Door locks (page 2-5)
7) Outside mirror switch (page 3-82)
8) Glove box (page 6-4)
9) Front power supply socket (page 6-7)
10) Shift lever (page 7-12)
11) SI-DRIVE switch (page 7-26)
12) Driver's Control Center Differential (C. DIFF/DCCD) switches (page 7-15)

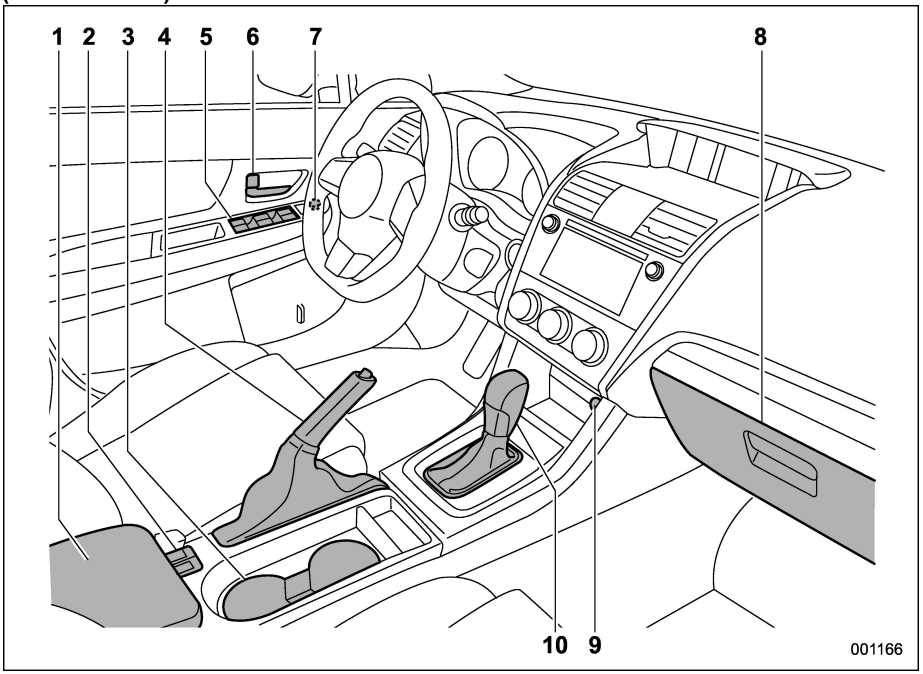
– CONTINUED –

(Models with the EyeSight system)



1) Glove box (page 6-4)
2) Front power supply socket (page 6-7)
3) Outside mirror switch (page 3-82)
4) Door locks (page 2-5)
5) Power window switches (page 2-24)
6) Electronic parking brake switch (page 7-42)
7) Seat heater switches (page 1-9)
8) Select lever (page 7-20)
9) Auto Vehicle Hold switch (page 7-45)
10) Cup holder (page 6-5)
11) Center console (page 6-4)

(Other models)



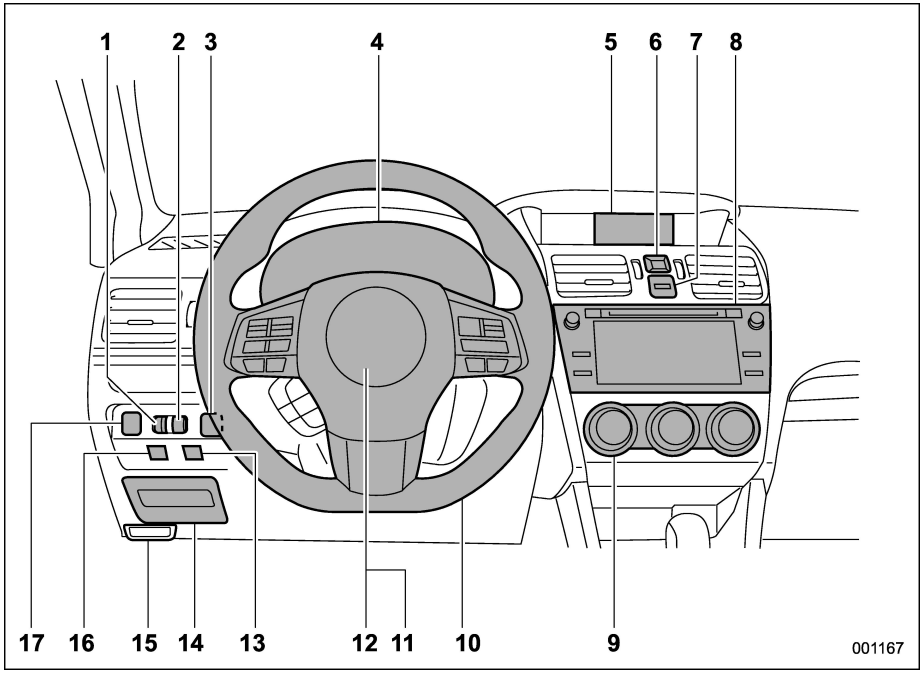
The illustration above is a typical example for left-hand drive models. For right-hand drive models, the locations of some switches/levers are different from those shown in the illustration.

1) Center console (page 6-4)
2) Seat heater switches (page 1-9)
3) Cup holder (page 6-5)
4) Parking brake lever (page 7-42)
5) Power window switches (page 2-24)
6) Door locks (page 2-5)
7) Outside mirror switch (page 3-82)
8) Glove box (page 6-4)
9) Front power supply socket (page 6-7)
10) Shift lever (MT) (page 7-12)/Select lever (CVT) (page 7-20)

– CONTINUED –

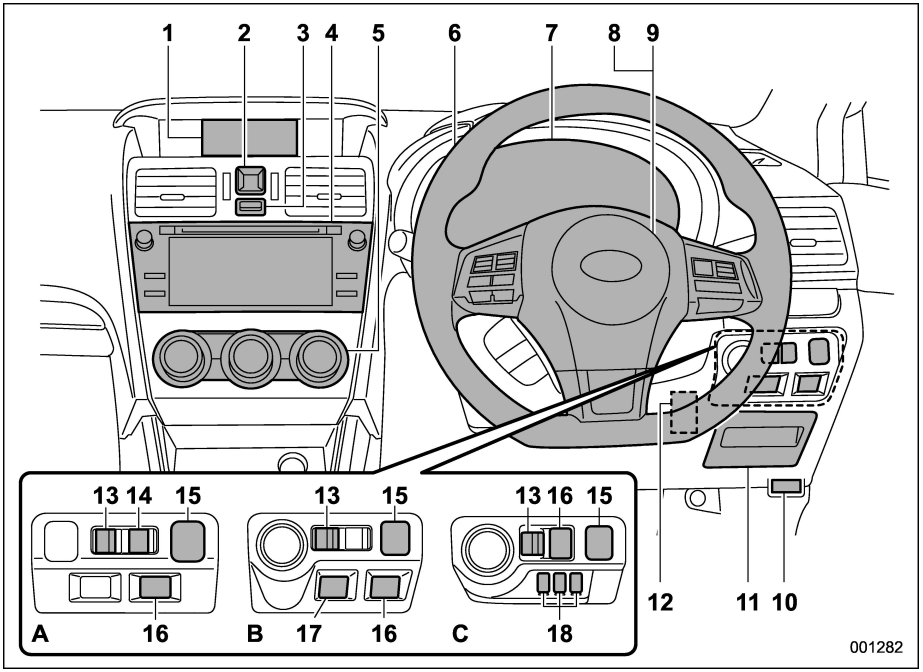
■ Instrument panel

▼ Left-hand drive models



1) Illumination brightness control dial (page 3-71)
2) Headlight beam leveler (page 3-72)
3) Trunk lid opener switch (page 2-27)
4) Combination meter (page 3-9)
5) Multi-function display (page 3-45)
6) Hazard warning flasher switch (page 3-8)
7) Multi-function display control switch (page 3-45)
8) Audio (page 5-1)
9) Climate control (page 4-1)
10) Tilt/telescopic steering (page 3-85)
11) Horn (page 3-85)
12) SRS airbag (page 1-41)
13) Vehicle Dynamics Control mode switch (page 7-37)
14) Fuse box (page 11-47)
15) Hood lock release knob (page 11-12)
16) TPMS set switch (page 7-39)
17) SRVD OFF switch (page 7-55)

▼ **Right-hand drive models**

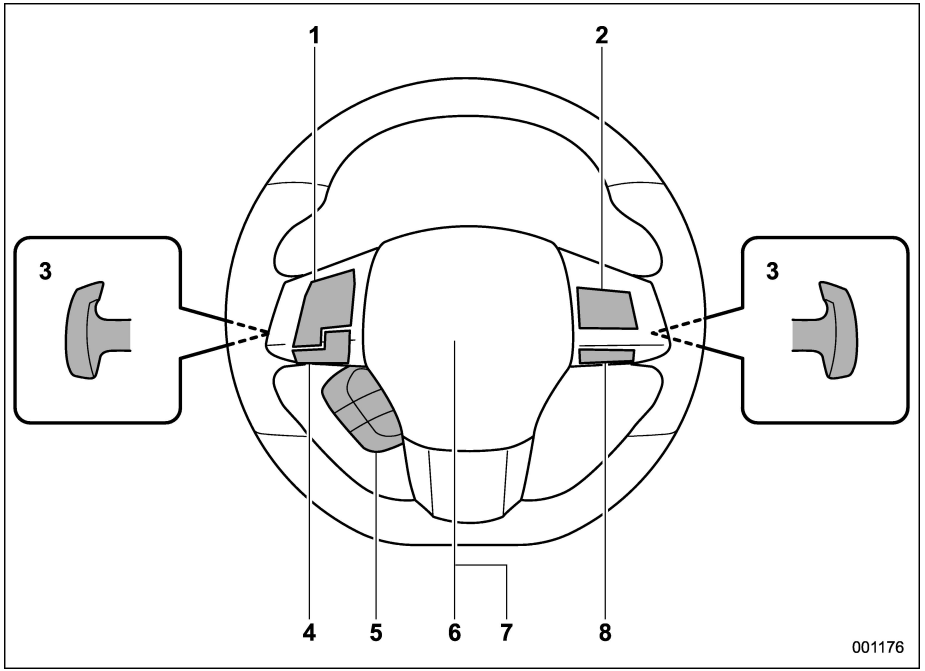


1) Multi-function display (page 3-45)
2) Hazard warning flasher switch (page 3-8)
3) Multi-function display control switch (page 3-45)
4) Audio (page 5-1)
5) Climate control (page 4-1)
6) Tilt/telescopic steering (page 3-85)
7) Combination meter (page 3-9)
8) Horn (page 3-85)
9) SRS airbag (page 1-41)
10) Hood lock release knob (page 11-12)
11) Fuse box (page 11-47)
12) SRVD OFF switch (page 3-38)
13) Illumination brightness control dial (page 3-71)
14) Headlight beam leveler (page 3-72)
15) Trunk lid opener switch (page 2-27)
16) Vehicle Dynamics Control mode switch (page 7-37)
17) TPMS set switch (page 7-39)
18) Seat position memory switch (page 1-5)

A: Models without access key fob
B: Models without memory function
C: Models with memory function

– CONTINUED –

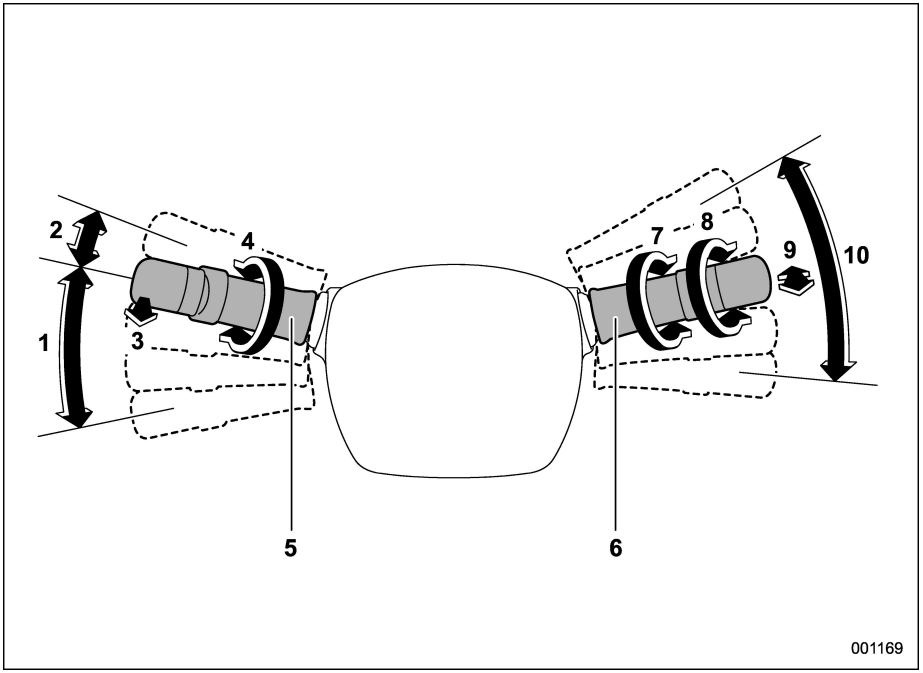
■ Steering wheel



1) Audio control buttons (page 5-41)
2) Cruise control (page 7-52)
3) Shift paddle (page 7-22)
4) Hands-free switches (page 5-49)/Voice command system (page 5-64)
5) Combination meter display (color LCD) control switches (page 3-38)
6) SRS airbag (page 1-41)
7) Horn (page 3-85)
8) SI-DRIVE switches (if equipped) (page 7-26)

■ Light control and wiper control levers/switches

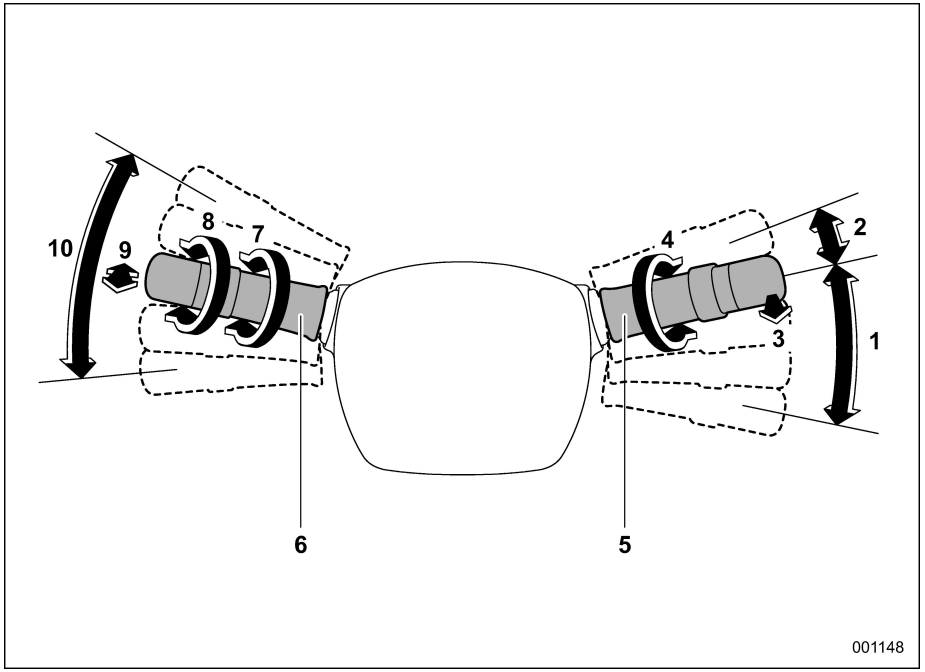
▼ Type A



1) Windshield wiper (page 3-78)
2) Mist (page 3-78)
3) Windshield washer (page 3-79)
4) Sensor sensitivity control (page 3-79)
5) Wiper control lever (page 3-76)
6) Light control switch (page 3-63)
7) Fog light switch (page 3-74)
8) Headlight ON/OFF/AUTO (page 3-63)
9) Headlight flasher High/Low beam change (page 3-65)
10) Turn signal (page 3-71)

– CONTINUED –

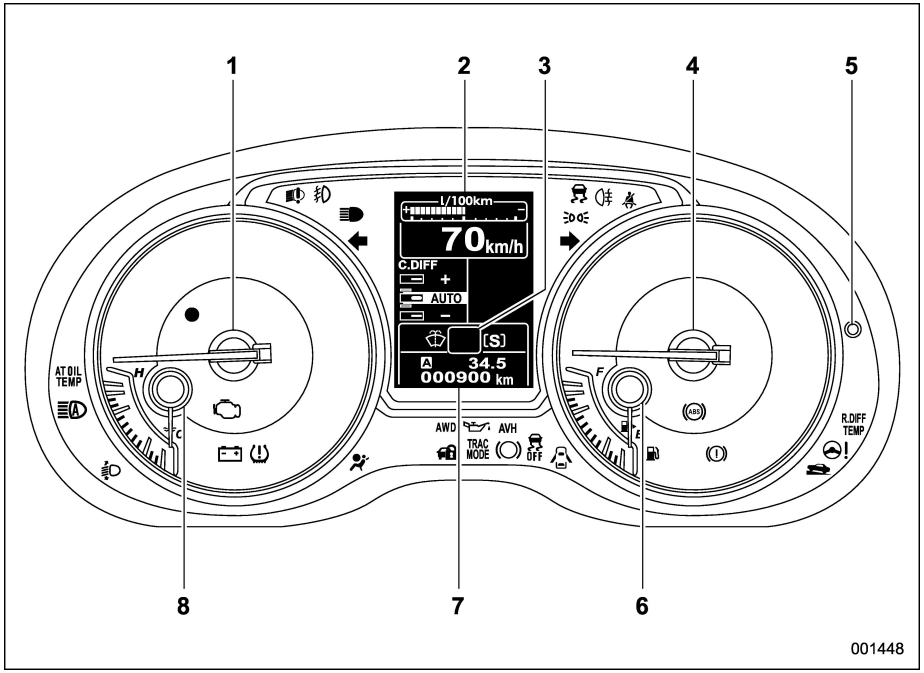
▼ **Type B**



1) Windshield wiper (page 3-78)
2) Mist (page 3-78)
3) Windshield washer (page 3-79)
4) Sensor sensitivity control (page 3-79)
5) Wiper control lever (page 3-76)
6) Light control switch (page 3-63)
7) Fog light switch (page 3-74)
8) Headlight ON/OFF/AUTO (page 3-63)
9) Headlight flasher High/Low beam change (page 3-65)
10) Turn signal (page 3-71)

■ Combination meter

▼ Except U.K. models

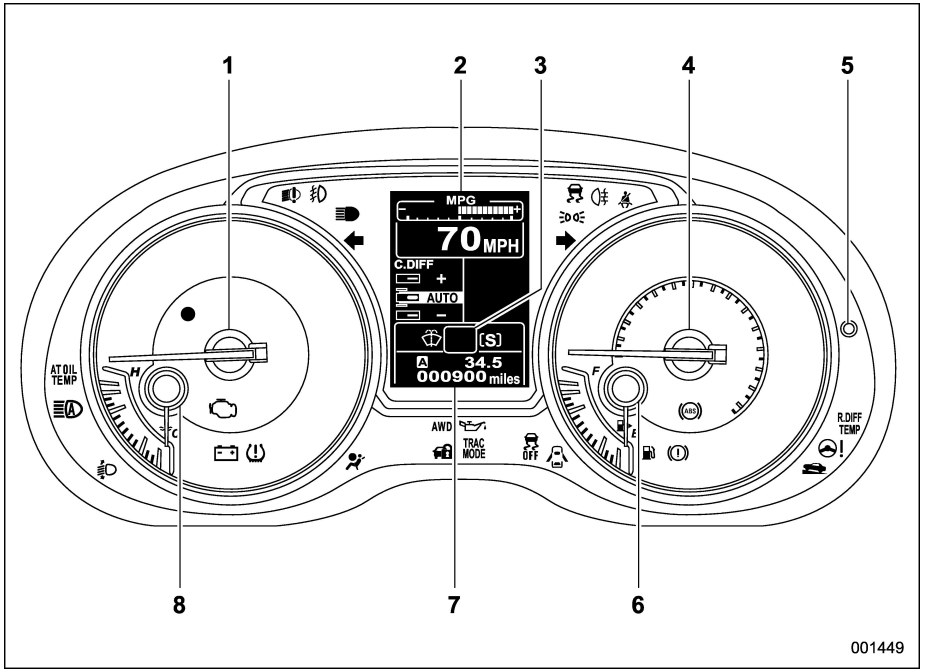


The illustration above is a typical example. For some models, the combination meter may be slightly different than that shown in the illustration.

1) Tachometer (page 3-10)
2) Combination meter display (color LCD) (page 3-38)
3) Select lever/gear position indicator (page 3-35)
4) Speedometer (page 3-9)
5) Trip meter A/B selection and trip meter reset knob (page 3-10)
6) Fuel gauge (page 3-11)
7) Trip meter and odometer (page 3-9)
8) Temperature gauge (page 3-12)

– CONTINUED –

▼ **U.K. models**



The illustration above is a typical example. For some models, the combination meter may be slightly different than that shown in the illustration.

1) Tachometer (page 3-10)
2) Combination meter display (color LCD) (page 3-38)
3) Select lever/gear position indicator (page 3-35)
4) Speedometer (page 3-9)
5) Trip meter A/B selection and trip meter reset knob (page 3-10)
6) Fuel gauge (page 3-11)
7) Trip meter and odometer (page 3-9)
8) Temperature gauge (page 3-12)

■ Warning and indicator lights

Mark	Name	Page
	Seatbelt warning light	3-14
	SRS airbag system warning light	3-16
	Front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator (if equipped)	3-17
	Front passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator (if equipped)	3-17
	Malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light)	3-17
	Charge warning light	3-18
	Oil pressure warning light	3-18
	Engine low oil level warning indicator (except STI)	3-18
AT OIL TEMP	AT OIL TEMP warning light (CVT models)	3-19
R.DIFF TEMP	Rear differential oil temperature warning light (STI)	3-19
	ABS warning light	3-22

Mark	Name	Page
	Brake system warning light	3-25
	Electronic parking brake warning light (yellow) (models with electronic parking brake system)	3-26
	Electronic parking brake indicator light (models with electronic parking brake system)	3-26
AVH	Auto Vehicle Hold ON indicator light (models with electronic parking brake system)	3-27
	Auto Vehicle Hold operation indicator light (models with electronic parking brake system)	3-27
	Vacuum pump system warning light (except STI)	3-27
	Door open warning light	3-28
AWD	AWD warning light (if equipped)	3-28
	Power steering warning light (except STI)	3-28

Mark	Name	Page
	Hill start assist warning light/Hill start assist OFF indicator light (if equipped)	3-27
	Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/ Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light	3-22
	Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light	3-24
	Turn signal indicator lights	3-35
	LED headlight warning light (if equipped)	3-29
	High beam indicator light	3-35
	High Beam Assist indicator light (green) (if equipped)	3-36
	High Beam Assist warning indicator (yellow) (if equipped)	3-36
	Automatic headlight beam leveler warning light (models with LED headlights)	3-29

– CONTINUED –

Mark	Name	Page
SRH OFF	Steering Responsive Headlight warning light/Steering Responsive Headlight OFF indicator light (if equipped)	3-36
	Front fog light indicator light (if equipped)	3-36
	Rear fog light indicator light	3-36
	Access key warning indicator (if equipped)	3-29
	Immobilizer indicator light	3-34
	Headlight indicator light	3-36
	Cruise control indicator	3-36
SET	Cruise control set indicator	3-36
TRAC. MODE	Traction mode indicator light	3-24
	Low fuel warning light	3-27

Mark	Name	Page
	Low tire pressure warning light (if equipped)	3-20
	Windshield washer fluid warning indicator	3-27
[S]	Sport (S) mode indicator (if equipped)	3-34
[I]	Intelligent (I) mode indicator (if equipped)	3-34
S#	Sport Sharp (S#) mode indicator (if equipped)	3-34
	Shift-up indicator light (STI without gear shift indicator models)	3-35
	Driver's control center differential auto indicator (STI)	3-37
	Auto [+] mode indicator (STI)	3-37
	Auto [−] mode indicator (STI)	3-37
	Driver's control center differential indicator (STI)	3-37
	REV indicator light (STI)	3-38

Mark	Name	Page
	SUBARU Rear Vehicle Detection warning indicator (if equipped)	3-38
	SUBARU Rear Vehicle Detection OFF indicator (if equipped)	3-38

Function settings

A SUBARU dealer can change the settings of the functions shown in the following table to meet your personal requirements. We recommend that you contact the nearest SUBARU dealer for details. In addition, the settings for some of these functions can be changed using the display. For details, refer to “Multi-function display (color LCD)” ☞3-45.

Item	Function	Possible settings	Default setting
Keyless access[*1]	Automatic locking[*2]	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
	Automatic locking operation period[*2]	Can be set in range from 20s to 60s	30 seconds
	Door unlock selection function (driver’s door unlock)	Driver’s door only/All doors	All doors[*2]/Driver’s door only[*3]
	Hazard warning flashers[*4]	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
	Volume level of the audible signal	Can be set in volume level from 5 to 7	Volume level 5
Remote keyless entry system	Automatic locking[*2]	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
	Automatic locking operation period[*2]	Can be set in range from 20s to 60s	30 seconds
	Door unlock selection function (including models with keyless access function)[*2]	Operation/Non-operation	Non-operation
	Hazard warning flashers[*4]	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
Key lock-in prevention[*2]	Key lock-in prevention	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
Defogger and deicer system[*4]	Rear window defogger, outside mirror defogger and windshield wiper deicer	Operation for 15 minutes/ Continuous operation	Operation for 15 minutes
Dome light	Operation of dome light/map lights OFF delay timer	OFF/10s/20s/30s	30 seconds
Map lights for models with a sunroof			
Battery drainage prevention function	Battery drainage prevention function	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
Auto on/off headlights	Sensitivity of the operation of the auto on/ off headlights	Low/Normal/High/Very high	Normal
Automatic rain sensing windshield wiper	Automatic adjusting mode of wiper timing	Rain-sensing mode/ vehicle speed interlocking mode	Rain-sensing mode

– CONTINUED –

Item	Function	Possible settings	Default setting
One-touch lane changer	Operation of the one-touch lane changer	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
Headlight off delay setting	Operation of timer	OFF/30s/60s/90s	30 seconds
High Beam Assist[*1]	High Beam Assist function	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
Emergency Stop Signal	Emergency stop signal function	Operation/Non-operation	Operation

[*1]: If equipped
[*2]: Applicable to models without double locking system
[*3]: Applicable to models with double locking system
[*4]: The settings can be changed by the customer using the multi-function display.

Front seats 1-2
- Manual seat (if equipped) 1-4
- Power seat (if equipped) 1-5
- Head restraint adjustment 1-8

Seat heater (if equipped) 1-9

Rear seats 1-10
- Head restraint adjustment 1-11
- Folding down the rear seatback 1-13
- Armrest (if equipped) 1-15

Seatbelts 1-15
- Seatbelt safety tips 1-15
- Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) 1-17
- Automatic Locking Retractor/Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR) (if equipped) 1-17
- Seatbelt warning light and chime 1-17
- Fastening the seatbelt 1-17
- Seatbelt maintenance 1-20

Front seatbelt pretensioners 1-20
- System monitors 1-22
- System servicing 1-22
- Precautions against vehicle modification 1-23

Child restraint systems 1-23
- Applications for Australia models 1-23
- Safety precautions 1-23
- Where to place a child restraint system 1-25
- Choosing a child restraint system 1-27
- Installing child restraint systems with seatbelt 1-30
- Installing a booster seat 1-37
- Installation of child restraint systems using ISOFIX anchor bars 1-38
- Top tether anchorages 1-40

***SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)** 1-41
- General precautions regarding SRS airbag system 1-42
- General precautions regarding SRS airbag system for accessories and any objects 1-44
- General precautions regarding SRS airbag system for children 1-46
- Components 1-49
- SRS airbags 1-52
- System operation 1-57
- SRS airbag system monitor 1-68
- SRS airbag system servicing 1-69
- Precautions against vehicle modification 1-70

Front seats

⚠ WARNING

- **Never adjust the seat while driving to avoid loss of vehicle control and personal injury.**
- **Before adjusting the seat, make sure that cargo, the hands and feet of rear seat passengers are clear of the adjusting mechanism.**
- **After adjusting the seat, push it slightly to make sure it is securely locked. If the seat is not securely locked, it may move or the seatbelt may not operate properly.**
- **Do not put objects under the front seats. They may interfere with front seat locking and cause an accident.**
- **Seatbelts provide maximum restraint when the occupant sits well back and upright in the seat. To reduce the risk of sliding under the seatbelt in a collision, the front seatbacks should be always used in the upright position while the vehicle is running. If the front seatbacks are not used in the upright position in a collision, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.**
- **The SRS airbags deploy with considerable speed and force. Occupants who are not in the proper position when the SRS airbag deploys could suffer very serious injuries. Because the SRS airbag needs enough space for deployment, the driver should always sit upright and well back in the seat as far from the steering wheel as practical while still maintaining full vehicle control and the front passenger should move the seat as far back as possible and sit upright and well back in the seat.**



100082

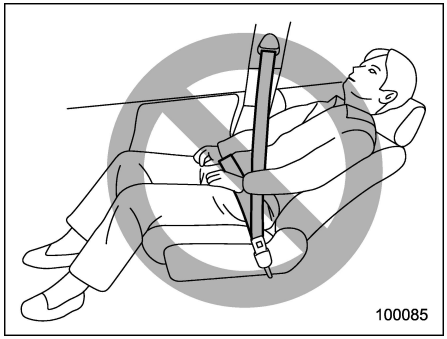
⚠ WARNING

Put children aged 12 and under or 1.5 m (4 feet 11 inches) tall or less in the REAR seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seatbelt, whichever is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are 12 years of age and under or 1.5 m (4 feet 11 inches) tall or less and are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.

Secure ALL types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the REAR seats at all times.

NEVER INSTALL A FORWARD OR REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions. For instructions and precautions concerning child restraint systems, refer to "Child restraint systems" ☞1-23.

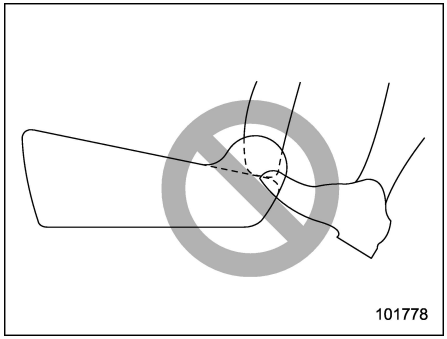

100085

⚠ WARNING

To prevent the passenger from sliding under the seatbelt in the event of a collision, observe the following precautions:

- **Keep the seatback in the upright position while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Do not place objects such as cushions between the passenger and the seatback.**

Otherwise, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.


101778

⚠ WARNING

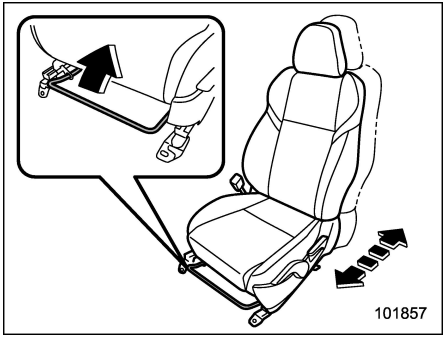
Do not let rear passengers rest their feet between the front seatback and seat cushion. Doing so may lead to improper operation of the following systems and could result in serious injury.

- **Occupant detection system (if equipped)**
- **SRS side airbag**
- **Seat heater (if equipped)**
- **Power seat (if equipped)**

– CONTINUED –

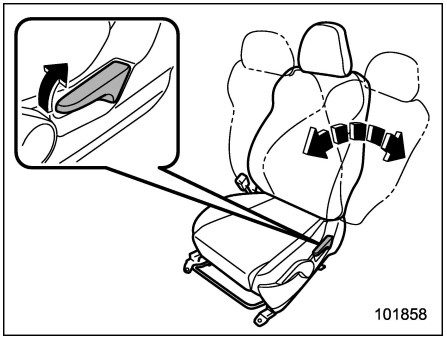
■ Manual seat (if equipped)

▼ Forward and backward adjustment



1. Sit in the seat to adjust.
2. Pull the lever upward, slide the seat to the desired position, and then release the lever.
3. Try to move the seat back and forth to make sure that it is securely locked into place.

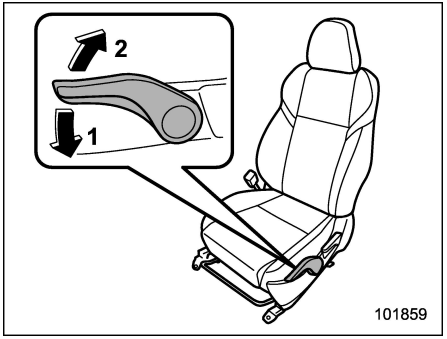
▼ Reclining the seatback



1. Pull up the reclining lever, adjust the seatback to the desired position, and then release the lever.
2. Make sure the seatback is securely locked into place.

The seatback placed in a reclined position can spring back upward with force when pulling the lever. While operating the lever to return the seatback, hold the seatback lightly so that it may be raised back gradually.

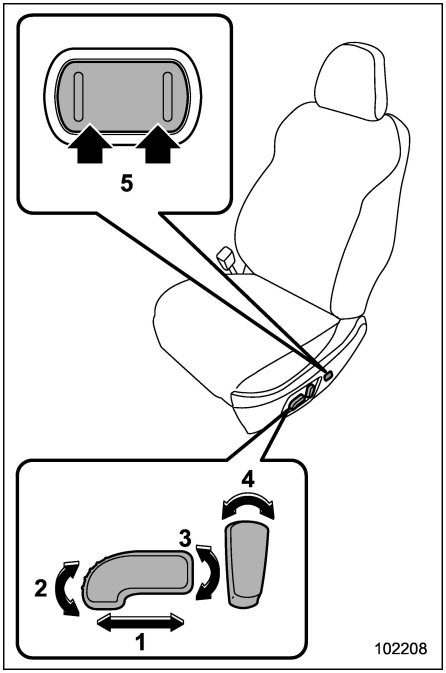
▼ Seat cushion height adjustment (driver's seat)



1) When the lever is pushed down, the seat is lowered.
2) When the lever is pulled up, the seat rises.

You can adjust the height of the seat by moving the seat cushion adjustment lever up or down.

■ Power seat (if equipped)



1) **Seat position forward/backward control switch**
To adjust the seat forward or backward, move the control switch forward or backward. During forward/backward adjustment of the seat, you cannot adjust the seat cushion angle or seat cushion height.
2) **Seat cushion angle control switch**
To adjust the seat cushion angle, pull up or push down the front end of the control switch.
3) **Seat height control switch**
To adjust the seat height, pull up or push down the rear end of the control switch.
4) **Seatback angle (reclining) control switch**
To adjust the angle of the seatback, move the control switch.
5) **Lumbar support control switch (driver's seat only — if equipped)**
To increase lower back support, push the front side of the switch.
To decrease lower back support, push the rear side of the switch.

▼ Memory function (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

- **To avoid loss of vehicle control or personal injury, never perform the following operations while driving.**
  - **Adjusting the seat**
  - **Retrieving the seat position**

  Perform these operations before driving. Also, do not drive until the seat position is completely retrieved.
- **Be sure to confirm the following before adjusting the seat position.**
  - **All cargo or the hands and feet of the rear seat passengers are clear of the seat adjusting mechanism.**
  - **The select lever is in the "P" position (CVT models).**
  - **The shift lever is in the neutral position (MT models).**
  - **The parking brake is applied.**
- **When any unusual conditions or malfunctions occur during the retrieval of the seat position, stop the retrieval of the seat position by performing any of the following procedures.**
  - **Operate any of the power seat switches**
  - **Press the "SET" button**
  - **Press button "1" or "2"**

Some of your desired seat positions can be registered. Register the seat position with button "1" or "2" or each of the access key fobs (if equipped) and retrieve the seat position.

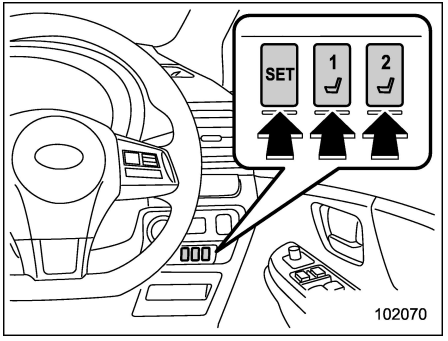
The following seat positions can be registered.

– CONTINUED –

- Forward/backward position of the seat
- Angle of seatback
- Angle of seat cushion
- Height of seat

▽ **Registration of seat position with button “1” or “2”**

1. Adjust the seat position under the following conditions.
   - The parking brake is applied.
   - The ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” position.
   - The select lever is in the “P” position (CVT models) or the shift lever is in the neutral position (MT models).

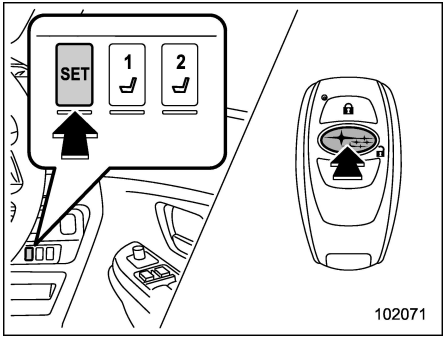


2. While pressing the “SET” button, press and hold the desired button “1” or “2”.

A chirp sounds once, and the seat position is registered.

▽ **Registration of seat position with each access key fob (if equipped)**

1. Adjust the seat position under the following conditions.
   - The parking brake is applied.
   - The ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” position.
   - The select lever is in the “P” position (CVT models) or the shift lever is in the neutral position (MT models).



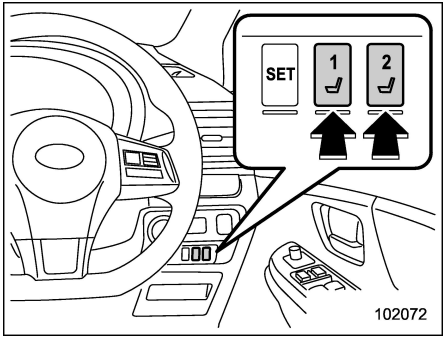
2. While holding the access key fob and pressing the “SET” button, press the “🔒” button of the access key fob.

A chirp sounds once, and the seat position is registered.

▽ **Retrieval of seat position registered with button “1” or “2”**

⚠ WARNING

Be sure to press the correct button to retrieve your registered seat position. If the seat position is not optimum for you, it may adversely affect your driving and may reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt. That could result in an accident involving serious injury or death.



1. Turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position.
2. While the select lever is in the “P” position (CVT models) or the shift lever is in the neutral position (MT models) and

then the parking brake is applied, press button “1” or “2”.

A chirp sounds and the seat moves to the registered position.

When the seat moves to the registered position, a chirp will sound.

NOTE

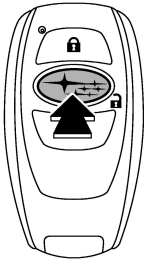
● If a new position is registered for the same button, the previously registered seat position is deleted.

● If the vehicle battery is removed, the registered seat position is not deleted.

● When the button “1” or “2” is pressed within 45 seconds after the driver’s door is opened, the registered seat position can be retrieved even if the ignition switch is in the “LOCK” or “OFF” position.

▽ Retrieval of the seat position registered with access key fob (if equipped)

1. Hold the registered access key fob.



101978

2. Unlock the driver’s door by pressing the “🔓” button or gripping the door handle.
3. Open the driver’s door.

A chirp sounds and the seat moves to the registered position.

When the seat moves to the registered position, a chirp will sound.

NOTE

● If the registered seat position cannot be retrieved after performing the previous procedures, try the following procedures.

(1) Press the “SET” button on the driver’s door.

(2) Press the “🔒” button on the access key fob or the door lock button to lock the doors.

(3) Perform the prior procedures again.

● If the keyless access function is disabled, the seat position cannot be retrieved by gripping the driver’s door handle. However, the seat position can still be retrieved by pressing the “🔓” button on the access key fob. For information about how to enable/disable the keyless access function, refer to “Disabling keyless access function” ☞2-16.

● If a new position is registered for the same access key fob, the previously registered seat position is deleted.

▽ Clearing the registered seat position with access key fob (if equipped)

1. Close the driver’s door.
2. While holding the access key fob and pressing the “SET” button, press the “🔒” button on the access key fob.

A chirp will sound, and the registered seat position will be cleared.

– CONTINUED –

■ Head restraint adjustment

⚠ WARNING

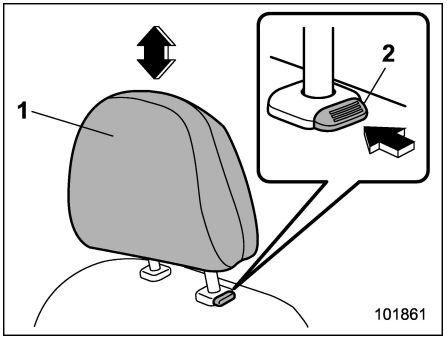
- **Never drive the vehicle with the head restraints removed because they are designed to reduce the risk of serious neck injury in the event that the vehicle is struck from the rear. Also, never install the head restraints the opposite way round. Doing so will prevent the head restraints from functioning as intended. Therefore, when you remove the head restraints, you must reinstall all head restraints correctly to protect vehicle occupants.**
- **All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle's seat until the head restraints are placed in their proper positions in order to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.**
- **The front seat head restraints are designed to be installed into the front seats only. The rear seat head restraints are designed to be installed into the rear seats only. Do not attempt to install the front seat head restraints into the rear seats, or the rear seat head restraints into the front seats.**

NOTE

It is possible to adjust the angle of the front seat head restraints only. When installing the front seat head restraints, make sure that the angle of the head restraints can be adjusted.

The head restraints for the driver's seat and front passenger's seat are adjustable in the following ways.

▼ Head restraint height adjustment



1) Head restraint
2) Release button

To raise:

Pull the head restraint up.

To lower:

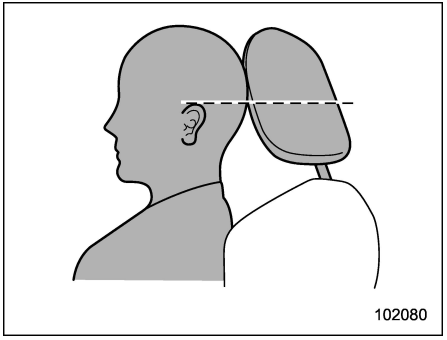
Push the head restraint down while pressing the release button on the top of the seatback.

To remove:

While pressing the release button, pull out the head restraint.

To install:

Install the head restraint into the holes that are located on the top of the seatback until the head restraint locks. Press and hold the release button to lower the head restraint.

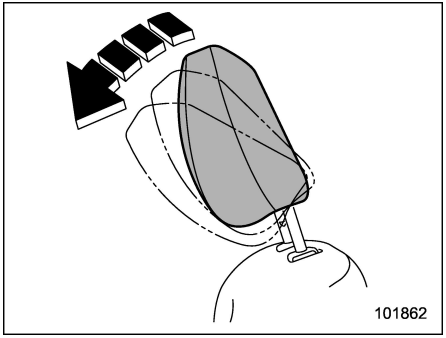


Adjust each head restraint so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of the occupant's ears.

NOTE

When you cannot pull out or install the head restraint due to insufficient clearance between the head restraint and the roof, tilt the seat and then perform the installation and removal tasks.

▼ Head restraint angle adjustment



You can adjust the angle of the head restraint in several steps. While maintaining a suitable driving posture, adjust the head restraint to a position where the back of your head is as close to the head restraint as possible.

To tilt:

Tilt the head restraint by hand to the preferred position. A click will be audible when the head restraint is locked.

To return:

Tilt the head restraint once as far forward as it can go. The head restraint will automatically return to the fully upright position. Then, adjust the head restraint again to the preferred angle.

Seat heater (if equipped)

The seat heater is equipped in the front seats.

The seat heater operates when the ignition switch is either in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

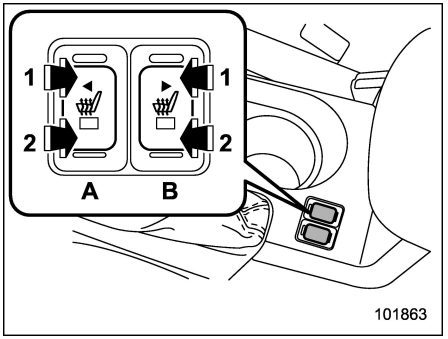
⚠ CAUTION

- **People with delicate skin may suffer slight burns even at low temperatures if they use the seat heater for a long period of time. When using the heater, always be sure to warn the persons concerned.**
- **Do not put anything on the seat which insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, or similar items. This may cause the seat heater to overheat.**
- **When the seat is warmed enough or before you leave the vehicle, be sure to turn off the seat heater.**

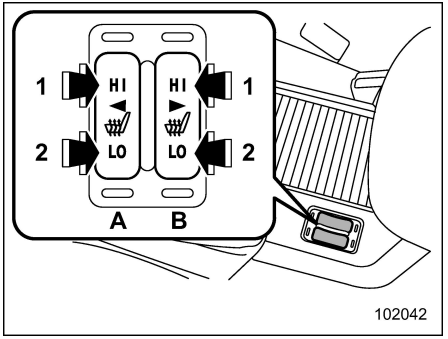
NOTE

Use of the seat heater for a long period of time while the engine is not running can cause battery discharge.

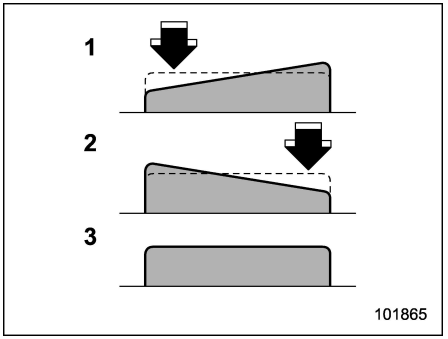
– CONTINUED –



Type A



Type B



1) **HIGH/(HI)** – Rapid heating
2) **LOW/(LO)** – Normal heating
3) Off

A) Left-hand side
B) Right-hand side

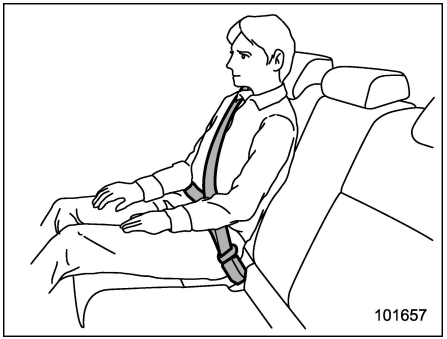
To turn on the seat heater, push the “LOW” (“LO”) or “HIGH” (“HI”) position on the switch, as desired, depending on the temperature.

Selecting the “HIGH” (“HI”) position will cause the seat to heat up quicker.

To turn off the seat heater, lightly press the opposite side of the current position.

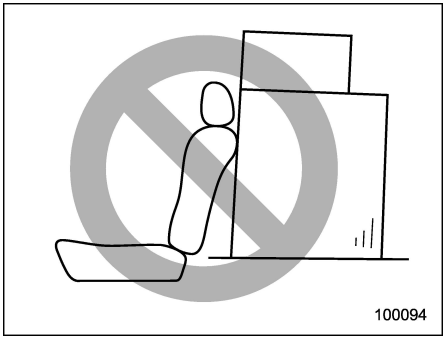
The indicator located on the switch illuminates when the seat heater is in operation. When the seat is warmed enough or before you leave the vehicle, be sure to turn the switch off.

Rear seats



⚠ WARNING

Seatbelts provide maximum restraint when the occupant sits well back and upright in the seat. Do not put cushions or any other materials between occupants and seatbacks or seat cushions. If you do so, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.



⚠ WARNING

Never stack luggage or other cargo higher than the top of the seatback because it could tumble forward and injure passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

■ Head restraint adjustment

Both the rear window side seats and the rear center seat are equipped with head restraints.

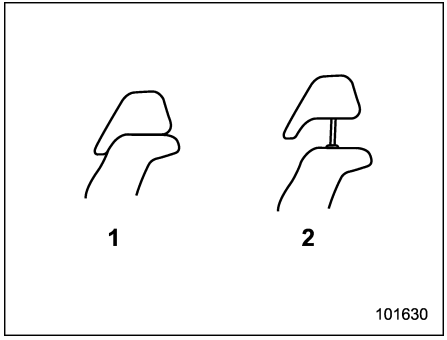
⚠ WARNING

- **Never drive the vehicle with the head restraints removed because they are designed to reduce the risk of serious neck injury in the event that the vehicle is struck from the rear. Therefore, when you have removed the head restraints, you must reinstall all head restraints to protect vehicle occupants.**
- **All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle's seat until the head restraints are placed in their proper positions in order to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.**

⚠ CAUTION

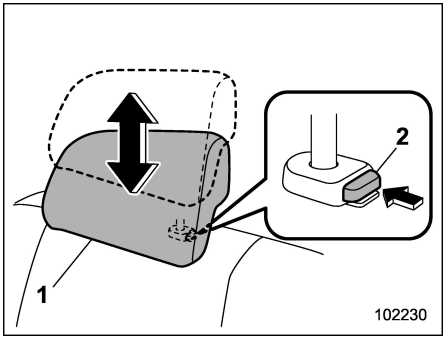
The head restraint is not intended to be used in the retracted position. Before sitting on the seat, raise the head restraint to the extended position.

▼ Rear windows side seating position



1) When not used (retracted position)
2) When used (extended position)

– CONTINUED –



1) Head restraint
2) Release button

To raise:

Pull the head restraint up.

To lower:

Push the head restraint down while pressing the release button on the top of the seatback.

To remove:

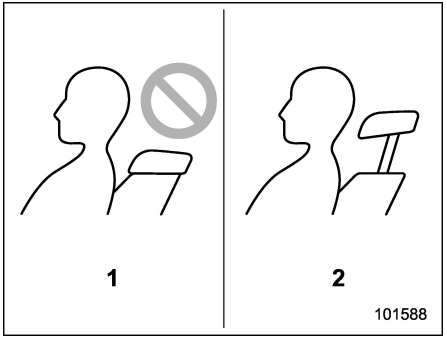
While pressing the release button, pull out the head restraint.

To install:

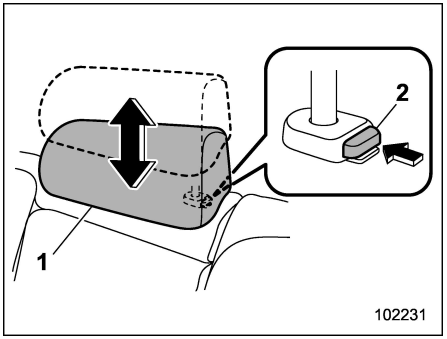
Install the head restraint into the holes that are located on the top of the seatback until the head restraint locks. Press and hold the release button to lower the head restraint.

When the seats are not occupied, lower the head restraints to improve rearward visibility.

▼ **Rear center seating position**



1) Incorrect (retracted position)
2) Correct (extended position)



1) Head restraint
2) Release button

To raise:

Pull the head restraint up.

To lower:

Push the head restraint down while pressing the release button on the top of the seatback.

To remove:

While pressing the release button, pull out the head restraint.

To install:

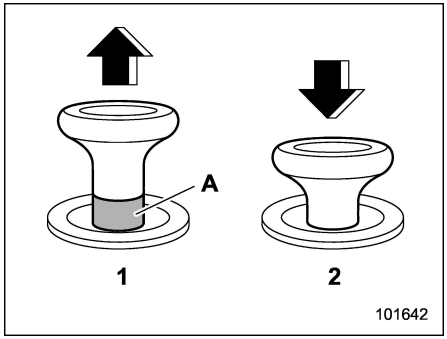
Install the head restraint into the holes that are located on the top of the seatback until the head restraint locks. Press and hold the release button to lower the head restraint.

When the rear center seating position is not occupied, lower the head restraint to improve rearward visibility.

■ Folding down the rear seatback

⚠ WARNING

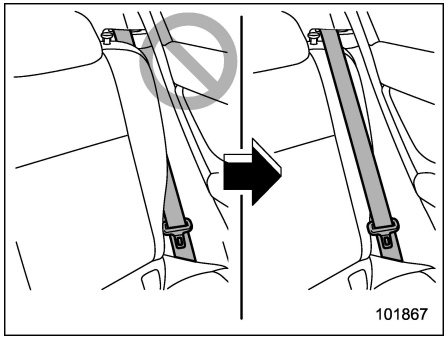
- **When you fold down the seatback, check that there are no passengers or objects on the rear seat. Not doing so creates a risk of injury or property damage if the seatback suddenly folds down.**
- **Never allow passengers to ride on the folded rear seatback or in the trunk. Doing so may result in serious injury or death.**
- **Secure all objects and especially long items properly to prevent them from being thrown around inside the vehicle and causing serious injury during a sudden stop, a sudden steering maneuver or a rapid acceleration.**

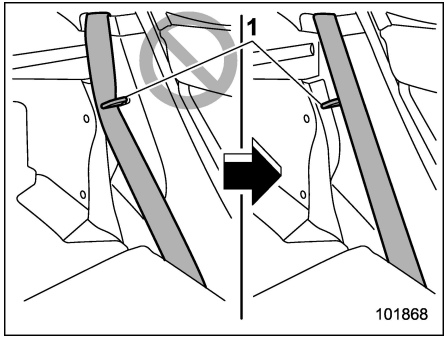


Lock release knob
1) Unlocked
2) Locked
A) Unlocking marker in red

⚠ WARNING

When you return the seatback to its original position, check that the unlocking marker on the lock release knob is not visible. Also, shake the seatback to confirm that it is securely fixed in place. If the seatback is not securely fixed in place, the seatback may suddenly fold down in the event of sudden braking, or objects may move out from the trunk, which could cause serious injury or death.





1) Securing hook

– CONTINUED –

⚠ WARNING

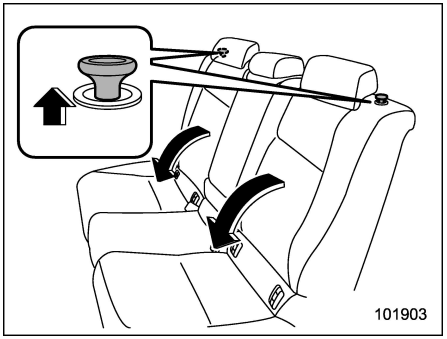
When the seatback is returned to its original position, observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may lead to serious injury or an accident because the operation efficiency of the seatbelt is inhibited.

- **The seatbelt should not be caught in the seatback and it should be fully visible.**
- **The seatbelt should not pass behind the securing hook for the seatback.**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not hang luggage etc. on the securing hook. The possibility exists that the seatback may not be able to be fixed firmly in place. This could lead to unexpected accidents.

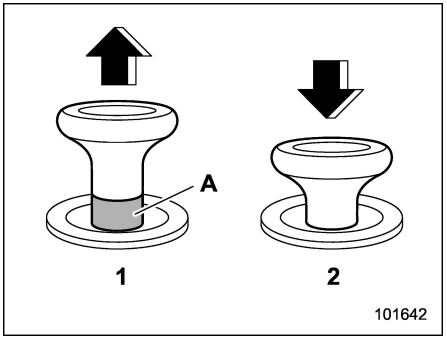
1. Lower the head restraints.



Release knob

2. Unlock the seatback by pulling the lock release knob then fold the seatback down.

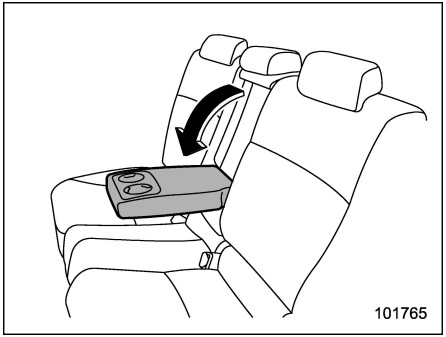
To return the seatback to its original position, raise the seatback until it locks into place and make sure that the unlocking marker on the lock release knob is no longer visible.



Lock release knob

1) Unlocked
2) Locked
A) Unlocking marker in red

■ Armrest (if equipped)



To use the armrest, pull on the top edge of the armrest.

⚠ WARNING

- **Make sure the rear passengers wear their seatbelts before lowering the armrest. If the rear passengers wear the seatbelts after lowering the armrest, the seatbelts cannot provide maximum restraint, which may result in serious injuries.**
- **To avoid serious injury, passengers must never be allowed to sit on the center armrest.**

Seatbelts

■ Seatbelt safety tips

⚠ WARNING

- **All persons in the vehicle should fasten their seatbelts BEFORE the vehicle starts to move. Otherwise, the possibility of serious injury becomes greater in the event of a sudden stop or accident.**
- **All belts should fit snugly in order to provide full restraint. Loose fitting belts are not as effective in preventing or reducing injury.**
- **Each seatbelt is designed to support only one person. Never use a single belt for two or more persons – even children. Otherwise, in an accident, serious injury or death could result.**
- **Replace all seatbelt assemblies including retractors and attaching hardware worn by occupants of a vehicle that has been in a serious accident. Also, be sure to replace seatbelt assemblies that show signs of severe fraying or having been cut. The entire assembly should be replaced even if damage is not obvious.**
- **When replacing a seatbelt, the new seatbelt must be type-approved and intended for installation in the same position as the replaced seatbelt.**
- **When wearing the seatbelt, insert the tongue plate into the correct buckle. Otherwise, in an accident, serious injury or death could result.**
- **Do not fasten your seatbelt with a child on your knees. Otherwise, in an accident, serious injury or death could result.**
- **Put children aged 12 and under or 1.5 m (4 feet 11 inches) tall or less in the REAR seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seatbelt, whichever is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are 12 years of age and under or 1.5 m (4 feet 11 inches) tall or less and are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults,**

– CONTINUED –

their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.

Secure ALL types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the REAR seats at all times.

NEVER INSTALL A FORWARD OR REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions. For instructions and precautions concerning the child restraint system, refer to "Child restraint systems" ☞1-23.

▼ Infants or small children

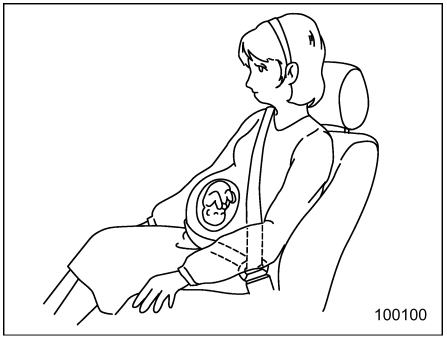
Use a child restraint system that is suitable for your vehicle. Refer to "Child restraint systems" ☞1-23.

▼ Children

If a child is too big for a child restraint system, the child should sit in the rear seat and be restrained using the seatbelts. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions. Never allow a child to stand up or kneel on the seat.

Seatbelts are designed under the assumption that adult-sized occupants will use them. If the shoulder portion of the belt crosses the face or neck, move the child closer to the belt buckle to help provide a good shoulder belt fit. Take care to securely place the lap belt as low as possible on the hips and not on the child's waist. If the shoulder portion of the belt cannot be properly positioned, a child restraint system should be used. Never place the shoulder belt under the child's arm or behind the child's back.

▼ Expectant mothers



Expectant mothers also need to use the seatbelts. They should consult their doctor for specific recommendations. The lap belt should be worn securely and as low as possible over the hips, not over the waist.

■ Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)

All seatbelts in the vehicle have an Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR).

The emergency locking retractor allows normal body movement but the retractor locks automatically during a sudden stop, impact or if you pull the belt very quickly out of the retractor.

■ Automatic Locking Retractor/ Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR) (if equipped)

For some models, each rear passenger's seatbelt has an Automatic Locking Retractor/Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR). The Automatic Locking Retractor/Emergency Locking Retractor normally functions as an Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR). The ALR/ELR has an additional locking mode, "Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) mode", intended to secure a child restraint system.

First check if the ALR mode is equipped for the seatbelts of the vehicle. If the ALR mode is equipped, the seatbelts function as follows.

When a seatbelt is once drawn out completely and is then retracted even slightly, the retractor locks the seatbelt in that position and the seatbelt cannot be extended. As the belt is rewinding, clicks will be heard which indicate the retractor functions as an ALR. When the seatbelt is retracted fully, the ALR mode is canceled and the ELR mode is restored.

For models with ALR/ELR seatbelts, when securing a child restraint system on the rear seats by using a seatbelt in the forward-facing direction, the seatbelt must be changed over to the Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) mode. For instructions on how to install the child restraint system using a seatbelt, refer to "Installing child restraint systems with seatbelt" ☞1-30.

When the child restraint system is removed, make sure that the retractor is restored to the Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) mode by allowing the seatbelt to retract fully.

■ Seatbelt warning light and chime



Refer to "Seatbelt warning light and chime" ☞3-14.

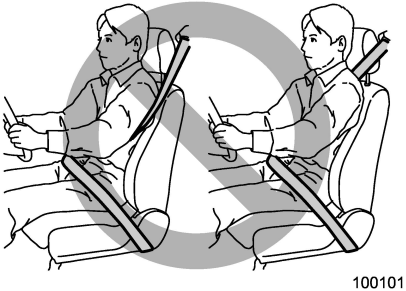
■ Fastening the seatbelt

⚠ WARNING

- **Never use a belt that is twisted or reversed. In an accident, this can increase the risk or severity of injury.**
- **Keep the lap belt as low as possible on your hips. In a collision, this spreads the force of the lap belt over stronger hip bones instead of across the weaker abdomen.**
- **Seatbelts provide maximum restraint when the occupant sits well back and upright in the seat. To reduce the risk of sliding under the seatbelt in a collision, the front seatbacks should be always used in the upright position while the vehicle is running. If the front seatbacks are not used in the upright position in a collision, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.**
- **Do not put cushions or any other materials between occupants and seatbacks or seat cushions.**

– CONTINUED –

If you do so, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.


100101

⚠ WARNING

Never place the shoulder belt under the arm or behind the back. If an accident occurs, this can increase the risk or severity of injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Metallic parts of the seatbelt can become very hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn an occupant. Do not touch such hot parts until they cool.

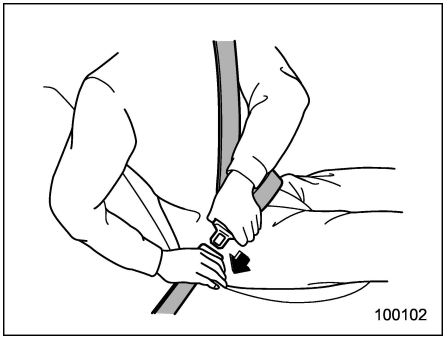
▼ Front seatbelts

1. Adjust the seat position according to the following procedure.

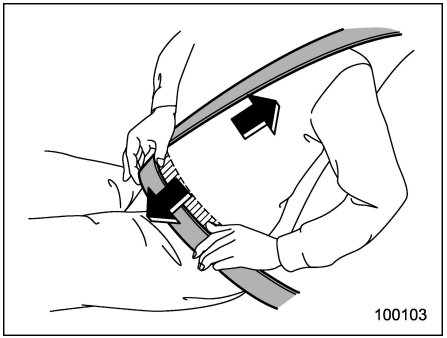
Driver's seat: Adjust the seatback to the upright position. Move the seatback as far from the steering wheel as practical while still maintaining full vehicle control.

Front passenger's seat: Adjust the seatback to the upright position. Move the seat as far back as possible.

2. Sit well back in the seat.
3. Pick up the tongue plate and pull the belt out slowly. Do not let it get twisted.
   - If the belt stops before reaching the buckle, return the belt slightly and pull it out more slowly.
   - If the belt still cannot be unlocked, let the belt retract slightly after giving it a strong pull, then pull it out slowly again.

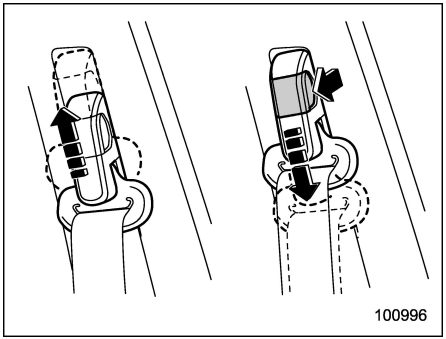

100102

4. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.


100103

5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.
6. Place the lap belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist.

▽ **Adjusting the front seat shoulder belt anchor height**



Adjust the shoulder belt anchor height to the position best suited for the driver/front passenger. Always adjust the anchor height so that the shoulder belt passes over the middle of the shoulder without touching the neck.

To raise:

Slide the anchor up.

To lower:

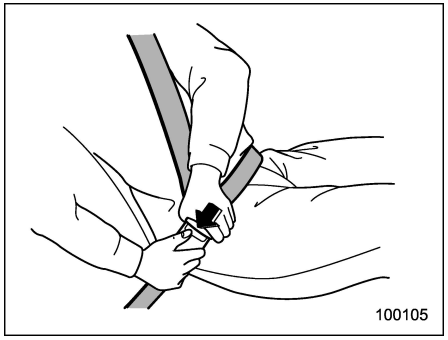
Pull the release knob and slide the anchor down.

Pull down on the anchor to make sure that it is locked in place.

⚠ WARNING

When wearing the seatbelts, make sure the shoulder portion of the webbing does not pass over your neck. If it does, adjust the seatbelt anchor to a lower position. Placing the shoulder belt over the neck may result in neck injury during sudden braking or in a collision.

▽ **Unfastening the seatbelt**

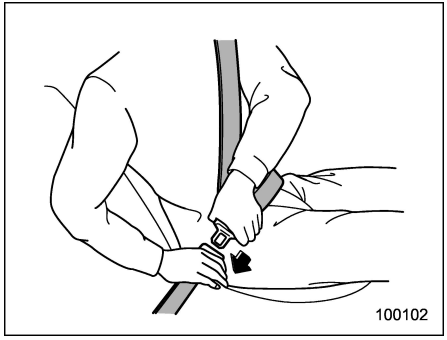


1. Push the button on the buckle.
2. Retract the seatbelt slowly to avoid the seatbelt being tangled or twisted.

Before closing the door, make sure that the belts are retracted properly to avoid catching the belt webbing in the door.

▼ **Rear seatbelts**

1. Sit well back in the seat.
2. Pick up the tongue plate and pull the belt out slowly. Do not let it get twisted.
   - If the belt stops before reaching the buckle, return the belt slightly and pull it out more slowly.
   - If the belt still cannot be unlocked, let the belt retract slightly after giving a strong pull on it, then pull it out slowly again.

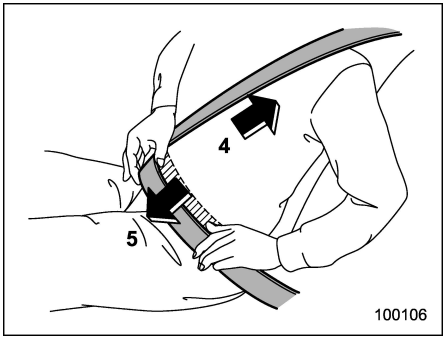


3. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.

NOTE

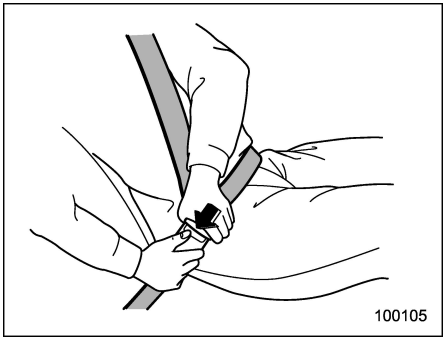
The center seatbelt buckle is marked as "CENTER".

– CONTINUED –



4. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.
5. Place the lap belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist.

▽ **Unfastening the seatbelt**



1. Push the button on the buckle.
2. Retract the seatbelt slowly to avoid the seatbelt being tangled or twisted.

Before closing the door, make sure that the belts are retracted properly to avoid catching the belt webbing in the door.

■ Seatbelt maintenance

To clean the seatbelts, use lukewarm water with mild soap. Do not use the seatbelts until they are dry. Never bleach or dye the belts because this could seriously affect their strength.

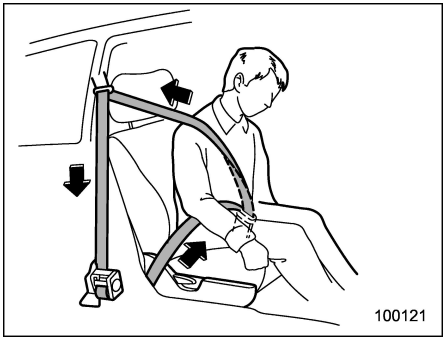
Inspect the seatbelts and attachments including the webbing and all hardware periodically for cracks, cuts, gashes, tears, damage, loose bolts or worn areas. Replace the seatbelts even if only minor damage is found.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Keep the belts free of polishes, oils, chemicals and particularly battery acid.**
- **Never attempt to make modifications or changes that will prevent the seatbelt from operating properly.**

Front seatbelt pretensioners

The driver's and front passenger's seatbelts have a seatbelt pretensioner. The seatbelt pretensioners are designed to be activated in the event of an accident involving moderate to severe frontal collisions.



Front seatbelt pretentioner

The pretensioner sensor also serves as the SRS frontal airbag sensor.

If the SRS frontal airbag sensors detect a certain predetermined amount of force during a frontal collision, any seatbelt which has a seatbelt pretensioner is quickly drawn in by the pretensioner to take up the slack so that the belt more effectively restrains the seat occupant.

When a seatbelt pretensioner is activated, an operating noise will be heard and a small amount of smoke will be released. These occurrences are normal and not harmful. This smoke does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.

Once the seatbelt pretensioner has been activated, the seatbelt retractor remains locked. Consequently, the seatbelt cannot be pulled out and retracted and therefore must be replaced.

NOTE

- **Seatbelt pretensioners are not designed to be activated under the following conditions.**
  - **– in minor frontal impacts**
  - **– in side or rear impacts**
  - **– in roll-over accidents (except Russia models)**
- **In cases of frontal collisions, the following components will operate simultaneously.**
  - **– Seatbelt pretensioner for driver**
  - **– Seatbelt pretensioner for front passenger**
  - **– SRS frontal airbag for driver**
  - **– SRS frontal airbag for front passenger***

  ***: This does not operate if the occupant detection system (if equipped) deactivates airbag operation. For details, refer to "Front passenger's SRS frontal airbag for models with occupant detection system" ☞1-54.**
- **In cases of side collisions, the following components will operate simultaneously.**
  - **– SRS curtain airbag (impacted side)**
  - **– SRS side airbag (impacted side) (when both the satellite safing sensor and any of the center pillar impact sensors sense an impact force)**
- **Pretensioners are designed to function on a one-time-only basis. In the event that a pretensioner is activated, we recommend that you have the seatbelt retractor assemblies, which are equipped with seatbelt pretensioners, replaced with genuine SUBARU parts by your authorized SUBARU dealer. When using a seatbelt equipped with a load limiter, it is installed in the front seating position.**
- **We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible when either of the following situations occurs.**
  - **– Either front seatbelt does not retract or cannot be pulled out due to a malfunction or activation of the pretensioner.**
  - **– The front seatbelt retractor assembly or surrounding area has been damaged.**
- **When you sell your vehicle, we urge you to inform the buyer that the vehicle is equipped with seatbelt pretensioners. Also, notify the buyer of the contents of this section.**

⚠ WARNING

- **To obtain maximum protection, the occupants should sit in an upright position with their seatbelts properly fastened. Refer to "Seatbelts" ☞1-15.**
- **Do not modify, remove or strike the seatbelt retractor assemblies equipped with seatbelt pretensioners or the surrounding area. This could result in accidental activation of the seatbelt pretensioners or could make the system inoperative, possibly resulting in serious injury. Seatbelt pretensioners have no user-serviceable parts. For required servicing of seatbelt retractors equipped with seatbelt pretensioners, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer.**

– CONTINUED –

- **When discarding seatbelt retractor assemblies equipped with seatbelt pretensioners or scrapping the entire vehicle due to collision damage or for other reasons, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.**

■ System monitors

A diagnostic system continually monitors the readiness of the seatbelt pretensioner with the ignition switch in the "ON" position. The seatbelt pretensioners share the control module with the SRS airbag system. Therefore, if any malfunction occurs in a seatbelt pretensioner, the SRS airbag system warning light will illuminate. For details, refer to "SRS airbag system monitor" ☞1-68.

■ System servicing

⚠ WARNING

- **When discarding a seatbelt retractor assembly or scrapping the entire vehicle damaged by a collision, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.**
- **Tampering with or disconnecting the system's wiring could result in accidental activation of the seatbelt pretensioner and/or SRS airbag or could make the system inoperative, which may result in serious injury. Do not use electrical test equipment on any circuit related to the seatbelt pretensioner and SRS airbag systems. For required servicing of the seatbelt pretensioner, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer.**

⚠ CAUTION

The sensors and SRS airbag control modules are located in the following locations.

- **Front sub sensors: on both the right and left side at the front of the vehicle**
- **Side airbag sensors: on both center pillars**
- **Curtain airbag sensors: on both rear wheel houses**
- **Satellite safing sensor: under the rear center seat**
- **SRS airbag control module (including the impact sensors): under the center of the instrument panel**

If you need service or repair in those areas or near the front seatbelt retractors, we recommend that you have the work performed by your authorized SUBARU dealer.

NOTE

If the front part of the vehicle is damaged in an accident to the extent that the seatbelt pretensioner does not operate, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

■ Precautions against vehicle modification

We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer if you want to install any accessory parts to your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not perform any of the following modifications. Such modifications can interfere with proper operation of the seatbelt pretensioners.

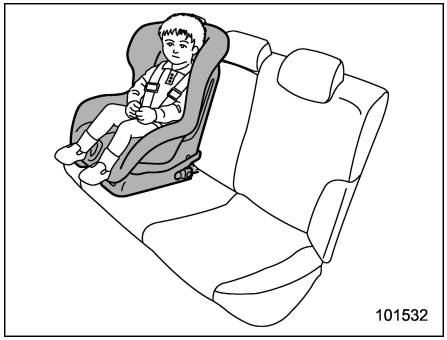
- **Attachment of any equipment (bush bar, bullbar, winches, snow plow, skid/sump plate, etc.) to the front end other than genuine SUBARU accessory parts or parts that match the quality of genuine SUBARU accessory parts.**
- **Modification of the suspension system or front end structure.**
- **Installation of a tire of different size and construction from the tires specified on the vehicle placard attached to the driver's door pillar or specified for individual vehicle models in this Owner's Manual.**

Child restraint systems

■ Applications for Australia models

Refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the instructions of the child restraint system.

■ Safety precautions

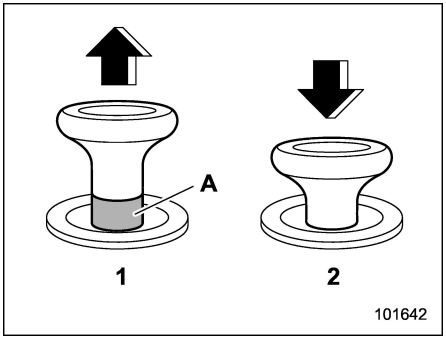


Infants and small children aged 12 and under or 1.5 m (4 feet 11 inches) tall or less should always be placed in an infant or child restraint system in the rear seat while riding in the vehicle. You should use an infant or child restraint system that is appropriate for the child's age and size. All child restraint systems are designed to be secured in the vehicle seats.

Children could be endangered in an accident if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle. When installing the child restraint system, carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.

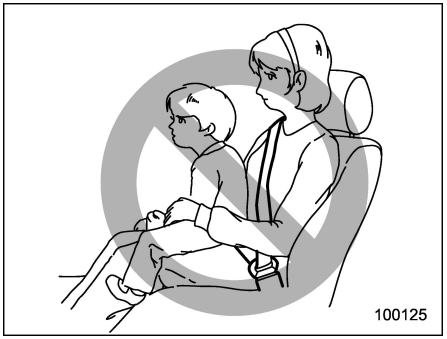
– CONTINUED –



Lock release knob
1) Unlocked
2) Locked
A) Unlocking marker in red

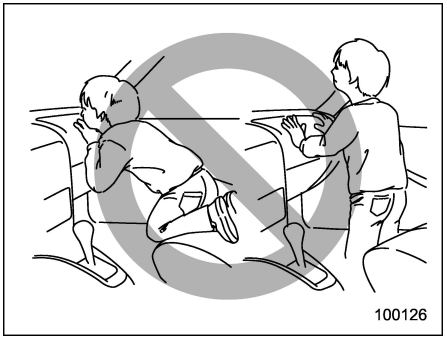
⚠ WARNING

Before installing a child restraint system, check that the unlocking marker on the seatback lock release knob cannot be seen to confirm that the rear seatback is securely locked in position. If the rear seatback is not locked securely, serious injury may result.



⚠ WARNING

Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap or in his or her arms while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child (or infant) from injury in a collision, because the child will be caught between the passenger and objects inside the vehicle.

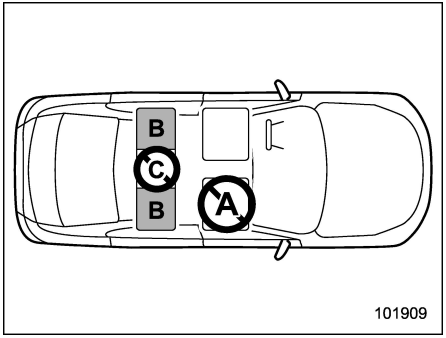


⚠ WARNING

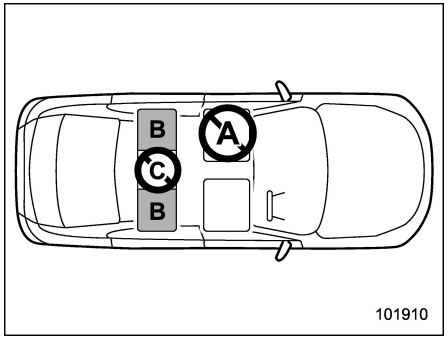
- **Children should be properly restrained at all times. Never allow a child to stand up, or to kneel on any seat. Unrestrained children will be thrown forward during sudden stop or in an accident and can be injured seriously.**
- **Never allow a child to stand up, or to kneel on the front passenger's seat, or never hold a child on your lap or in your arms. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable force and can injure or even kill the child.**

■ Where to place a child restraint system

The following are SUBARU's recommendations on where to place a child restraint system in your vehicle.



Left-hand drive models



Right-hand drive models

A: Front passenger's seat

Do not install a child restraint system (including a booster cushion) due to the hazard to children posed by the passenger's airbag.

B: Rear seat, window-side seating positions

Recommended positions for all types of child restraint systems.

In these positions, the following equipment is provided for installing a child restraint system.

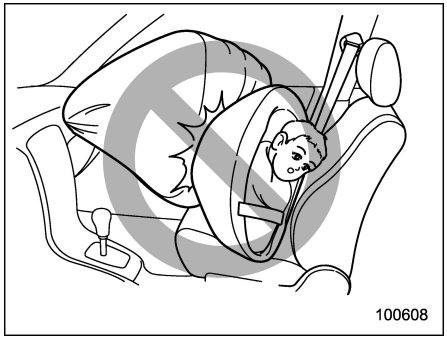
- Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) seatbelts
- Automatic Locking Retractor/Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR) seatbelts (if equipped)
- ISOFIX anchor bars
- Top tether anchorages

Some types of child restraints might not be able to be secured firmly due to projection of the seat cushion.

In this seating position, you should use only a child restraint system that has a bottom base that fits snugly against the contours of the seat cushion and can be securely retained using the seatbelt.

C: Rear seat, center seating position

Do not install a child restraint system (including a booster seat).



– CONTINUED –

⚠ WARNING

- **Secure ALL types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the REAR seats at all times. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are 12 years of age and under or 1.5 m (4 feet 11 inches) tall or less and are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.**
- **NEVER INSTALL A FORWARD OR REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.**
- **Never install a child restraint system in the front passenger's seat. The force of the rapid deployment of the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of an accident.**

▼ **Warning label**

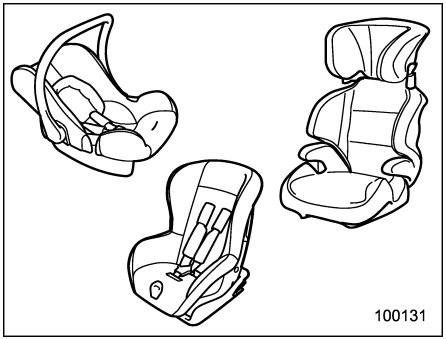
⚠ WARNING

- **Warning labels are located on both sides of the front passenger's sun visor. The warning label indicates that it is forbidden to install a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger's seat.**
- **NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**



Warning label
A) AIRBAG

■ Choosing a child restraint system



Choose a child restraint system that is appropriate for the child's size and age to provide the child with proper protection.

Also it is important that the child restraint system meets safety standards applicable to your country.

In most European countries, child restraint systems must meet the requirement of ECE regulation No. 44. It can be identified by looking for the approval label on the child restraint system or the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box and the system.

According to the ECE regulation No. 44, child restraint systems are classified into the following five "mass groups".

Group 0: for children of a mass less than 10 kg

Group 0+: for children of a mass less than 13 kg

Group I: for children of mass from 9 to 18 kg

Group II: for children of mass from 15 to 25 kg

Group III: for children of mass from 22 to 36 kg

For European countries, refer to the following table for the recommended child restraint system.

"i-Size" child restraint systems do not apply to this vehicle.

– CONTINUED –

Child restraint suitability for each seating position (Europe)
Front seating position:

Mass group	Suitability
0 – up to 10 kg	×
0^+ – up to 13 kg	×
I – 9 to 18 kg	×
II – 15 to 25 kg	×
III – 22 to 36 kg	×

× : Not suitable for child restraint system.

Child restraint suitability for each seating position (Europe)
Rear seating position:

Mass group	Suitability	
	Outboard	Center
0 – up to 10 kg	L_1 or U	×
0^+ – up to 13 kg	L_1 or U	×
I – 9 to 18 kg	L_2 or UF	×
II – 15 to 25 kg	L_3, L_4 or UF	×
III – 22 to 36 kg	L_3, L_4 or UF	×

U: Suitable for universal category child restraint system.
UF: Suitable for forward-facing “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.
×: Not suitable for child restraint system.
L_1: Childseat SUBARU Baby Safe Plus
L_2: Childseat SUBARU Duo plus
L_3: Childseat SUBARU Kid Plus
L_4: Childseat SUBARU Kidfix XP

– CONTINUED –

Child restraint suitability for each seating position (Europe)

Mass group	Size class	Fixture	Vehicle ISOFIX positions		
			Front Passenger	Rear Outboard	Rear Center
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	NA	×	NA
	G	ISO/L2	NA	×	NA
0 – up to 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	NA	IL1	NA
0^+ – up to 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	NA	IL1	NA
	D	ISO/R2	NA	IL1	NA
	C	ISO/R3	NA	IL1	NA
I – 9 to 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	NA	IL1	NA
	C	ISO/R3	NA	IL1	NA
	B	ISO/F2	NA	IUF	NA
	B1	ISO/F2X	NA	IL2 or IUF	NA
	A	ISO/F3	NA	IUF	NA
II – 15 to 25 kg			NA	IL3	NA
III – 22 to 36 kg			NA	IL3	NA

IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraints systems of universal category that are approved for use in the mass group.
×: ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in the mass group and/or this size class.
NA: There is no ISOFIX system.
IL1: Childseat G 0/1S ISOFIX and Childseat G 0/1S ISOFIX base
IL2: Childseat SUBARU Duo plus
IL3: Childseat SUBARU Kidfix XP

■ Installing child restraint systems with seatbelt

⚠ WARNING

- **Child restraint systems and seatbelts can become hot if the doors have been closed in hot weather; they could burn a child. Check the child restraint system before you place a child in it.**
- **Do not leave an unsecured child restraint system in your vehicle. Unsecured child restraint systems can be thrown around inside of the vehicle in a sudden stop, turn or accident; they can strike and injure vehicle occupants as well as result in serious injuries or death to the child.**
- **When you install a child restraint system, follow the manufacturer's instructions supplied with it. After installing the child restraint system, check to ensure that it is held securely in position. If it is not held tight and secure, the danger of your child or other passengers suffering personal injury in the event of an accident may be increased.**

▼ Preparation for installing child restraint system

First check if the Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) is equipped for the seatbelts of the vehicle according to the following procedure.

1. Draw out the seatbelt completely.
2. Retract the seatbelt even slightly and try to draw out the seatbelt again.
3. If the seatbelt is locked in that position and cannot be extended, it indicates that an ALR is equipped for the seatbelt.

When the seatbelt is retracted fully, the ALR mode is canceled and the Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) mode is restored.

If the ALR is not equipped for the seatbelt, refer to “Models without ALR” ☞1-32.

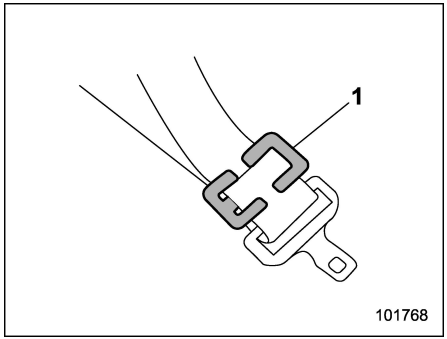
If the ALR is equipped for the seatbelt, refer to “Models with ALR” ☞1-34.

NOTE

● For details about the ELR, refer to “Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)” ☞1-17.

● For details about the ALR, refer to “Automatic Locking Retractor/Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR)” ☞1-17.

▼ Installing a rearward facing child restraint

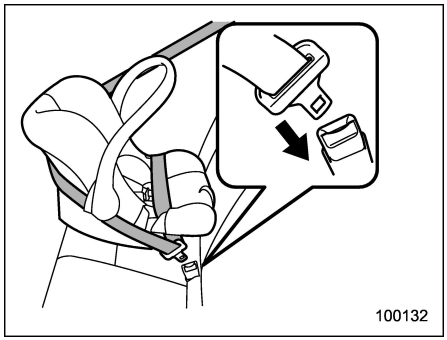


1) Locking clip

NOTE

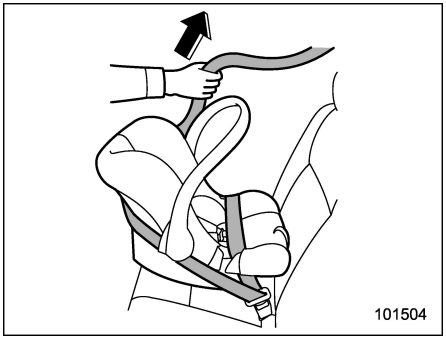
● If using the lock-off lever or the locking clip is recommended by the manufacturer’s instructions supplied with the child restraint system, use the lever or clip to secure the child restraint system.

● For models with ALR: If using ALR mode is not recommended by the manufacturer’s instructions supplied with the child restraint system, do not use ALR mode.

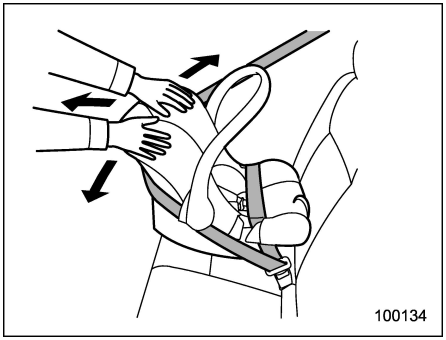


1. Place the child restraint system in the rear seating position.
2. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the child restraint system following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.
3. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.

– CONTINUED –



4. Take up the slack in the lap belt.



5. Push and pull the child restraint system forward and from side to side to check if it is firmly secured.

6. To remove the child restraint system, press the release button on the seatbelt buckle.

⚠ WARNING

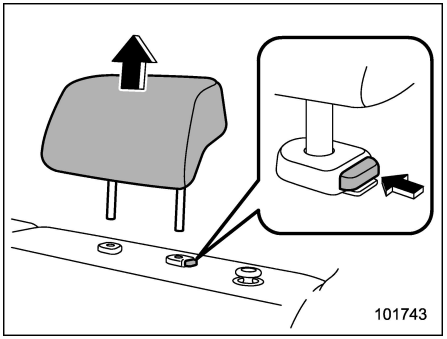
NEVER INSTALL A FORWARD OR REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.

▼ Installing forward facing child restraint

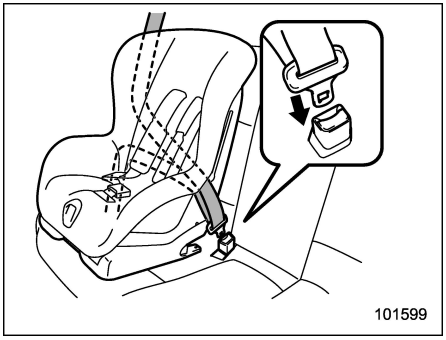
⚠ CAUTION

After removing the head restraint, store it in the trunk. Do not place the head restraint that has been removed in the passenger compartment to prevent it from being thrown around in the passenger compartment in a sudden stop or a sharp turn.

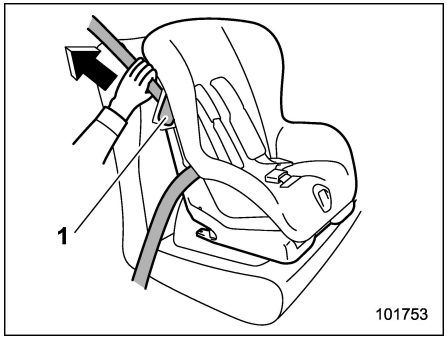
▽ Models without ALR



1. Remove the head restraint of the rear seating position where the child restraint system is to be installed.
2. Place the child restraint system on the seat.

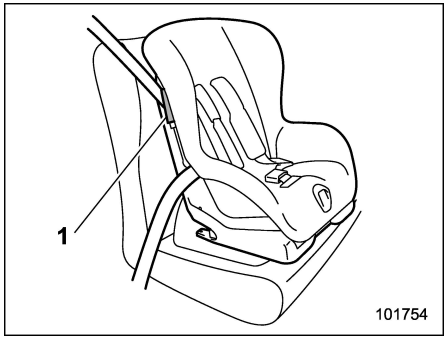


3. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the child restraint system following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.
4. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.



1) Lock-off lever

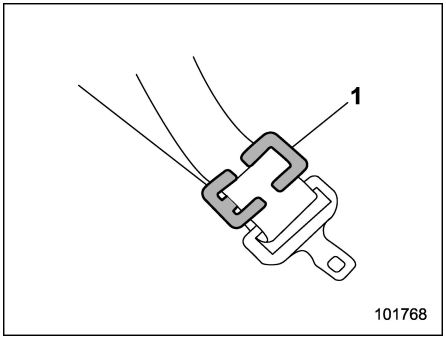
5. Release the child restraint system lock-off lever and pass the shoulder belt through the lock-off lever.
6. Take up the slack in the lap belt. At this time, to secure the child restraint system more firmly, apply your weight to push it down into the seat cushion as you tighten the seatbelt.



1) Lock-off lever

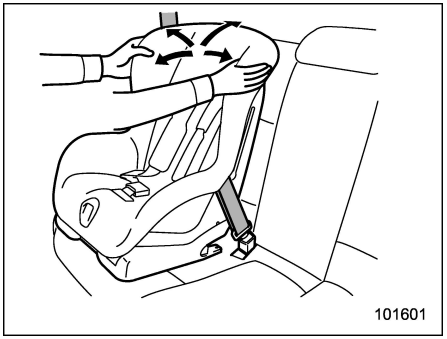
7. Lock the child restraint system lock-off lever to fix the shoulder belt.

– CONTINUED –



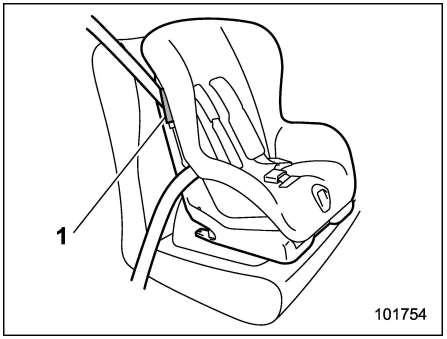
1) Locking clip

8. If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seatbelt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.

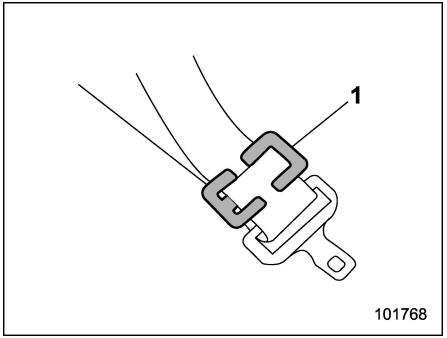


9. Before having a child sit in the child restraint system, try to move it back and forth and right and left to check if it is firmly secured. Sometimes a child restraint can be more firmly secured by pushing it down into the seat cushion and then tightening the seatbelt.

▽ **Models with ALR**



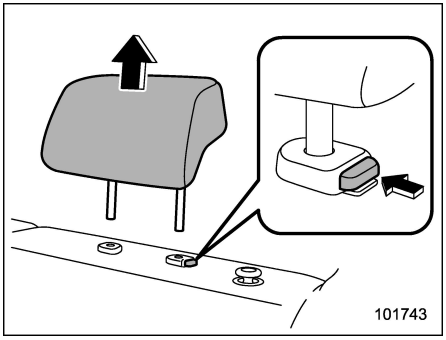
1) Lock-off lever



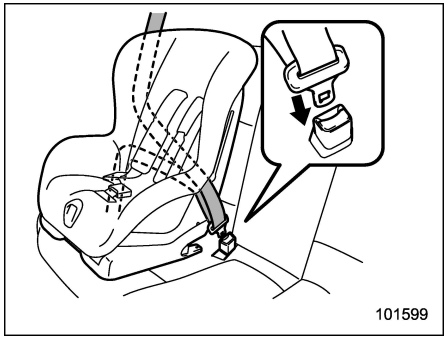
1) Locking clip

NOTE

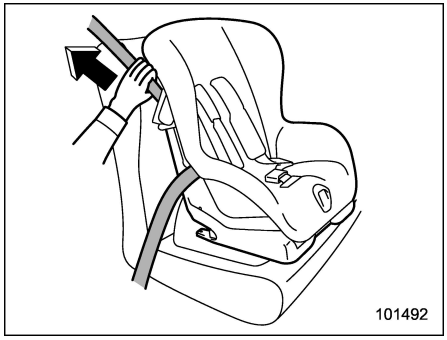
If using ALR mode is not recommended by the manufacturer's instructions supplied with the child restraint system, use the lock-off lever or the locking clip instead of using ALR mode.



1. Remove the head restraint of the rear seating position where the child restraint system is to be installed.
2. Place the child restraint system on the seat.

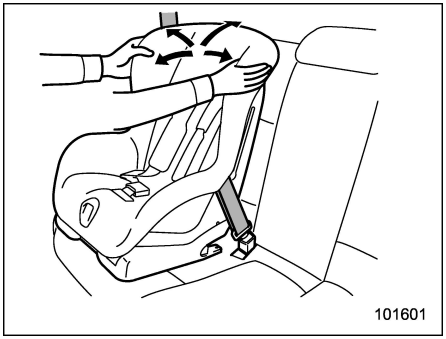


3. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the child restraint system following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.
4. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.

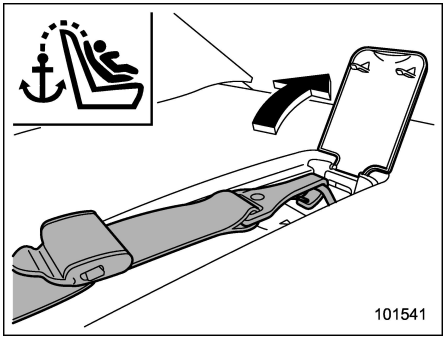


5. Take up the slack in the lap belt.
6. Pull out the seatbelt fully from the retractor to change the retractor over from the Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) to the Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) function. Then, allow the belt to rewind into the retractor. As the belt is rewinding, clicks will be heard which indicate the retractor functions as ALR.

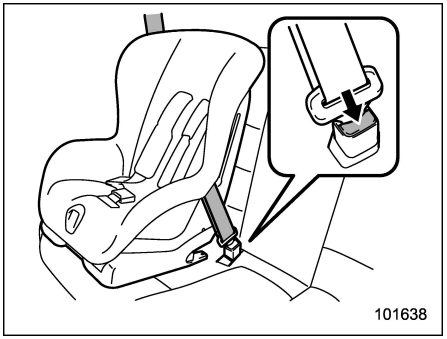
– CONTINUED –



7. Before having a child sit in the child restraint system, try to move it back and forth and right and left to check that it is firmly secured. Sometimes a child restraint can be more firmly secured by pushing it down into the seat cushion and then tightening the seatbelt.
8. Pull at the shoulder portion of the belt to confirm that it cannot be pulled out (ALR properly functioning).



9. If the child restraint system requires a top tether, latch the hook onto the top tether anchorage and tighten the top tether. For additional instructions, refer to "Top tether anchorages" ☞1-40.

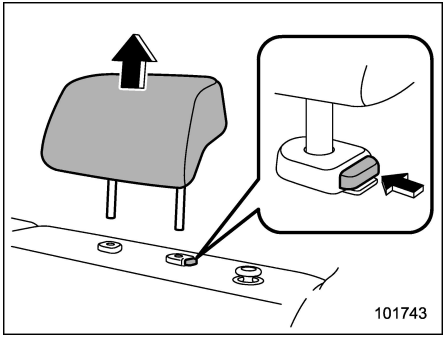


10. To remove the child restraint system, press the release button on the seatbelt buckle and allow the belt to retract completely. The belt will return to the ELR mode.

NOTE

When the child restraint system is no longer in use, remove it and restore the ELR function of the retractor. That function is restored by allowing the seatbelt to retract fully.

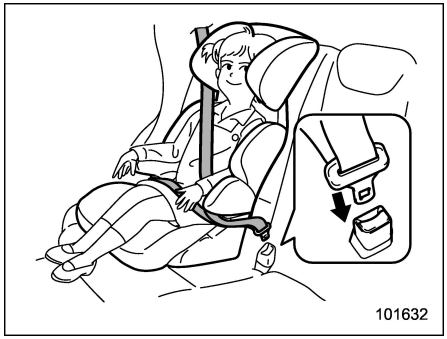
■ Installing a booster seat



1. Remove the head restraint of the rear seating position where the child restraint system is to be installed.

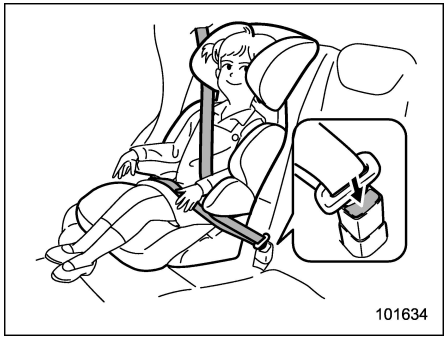
⚠ CAUTION

After removing the head restraint, store it in the trunk. Do not place the head restraint that has been removed in the passenger compartment to prevent it from being thrown around in the passenger compartment in a sudden stop or a sharp turn.



2. Place the booster seat in the rear seating position and sit the child on it. The child should sit well back on the booster seat.
3. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the booster seat and the child following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.
4. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click. Take care not to twist the seatbelt.

Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder and that the lap belt is positioned as low as possible on the child's hips.



5. To remove the booster seat, press the release button on the seatbelt buckle and allow the belt to retract.

⚠ WARNING

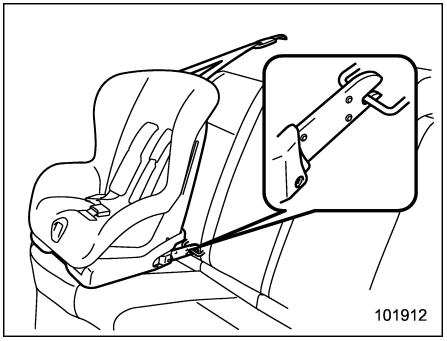
- **Never use a belt that is twisted or reversed. In an accident, this can increase the risk or severity of injury to the child.**
- **Never place the shoulder belt under the child's arm or behind the child's back. If an accident occurs, this can increase the risk or severity of injury to the child.**
- **The seatbelt should fit snugly in order to provide full restraint. Loose fitting belts are not as**

– CONTINUED –

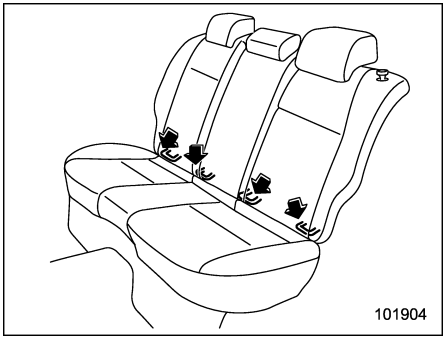
effective in preventing or reducing injury.

- **Place the lap belt as low as possible on the child's hips. High-positioned lap belt will increase the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.**
- **Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder. Placing the shoulder belt over the neck may result in neck injury during sudden braking or in a collision.**

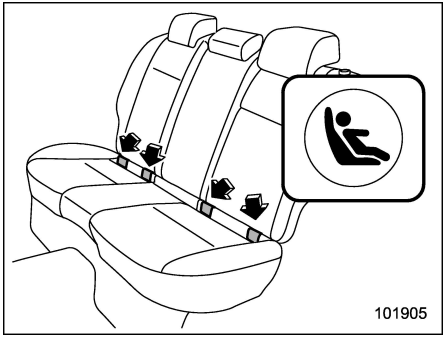
■ Installation of child restraint systems using ISOFIX anchor bars



Your vehicle is equipped with ISOFIX anchor bars that allow an approved ISOFIX child restraint system to be installed on the rear seat without use of a seatbelt.

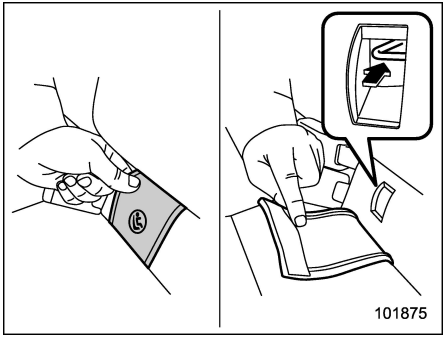


The ISOFIX anchor bars allow you to install a child restraint system only on the rear seat window-side seating positions. For each window-side seating position, two anchor bars are provided.

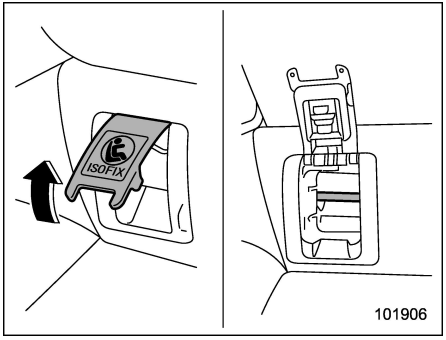


You will find the marks "" at the bottom of

the rear seat seatbacks. These marks indicate the positions of the ISOFIX anchor bars.

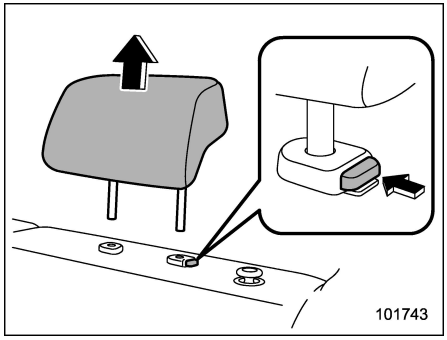


Type A



Type B

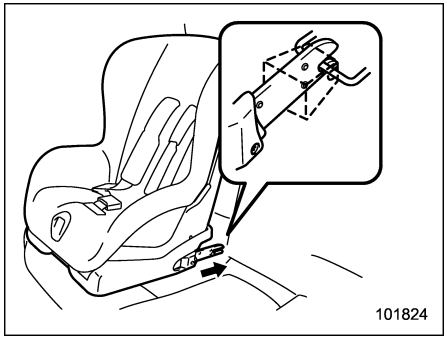
1. Open the covers.



2. Remove the head restraint of the rear seating position where the child restraint system is to be installed.

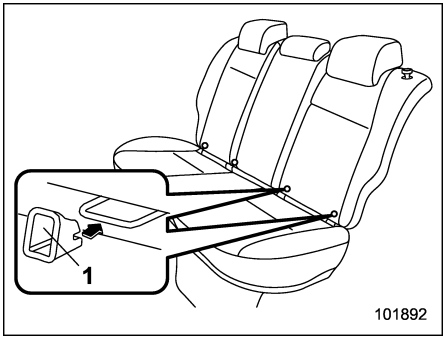
⚠ CAUTION

After removing the head restraint, store it in the trunk. Do not place the head restraint that has been removed in the passenger compartment to prevent it from being thrown around in the passenger compartment in a sudden stop or a sharp turn.



3. While following the instructions supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer, connect the connectors of the child restraint system to the anchor bars. When the connectors are fastened, make sure that the adjacent seatbelts are not caught.

– CONTINUED –



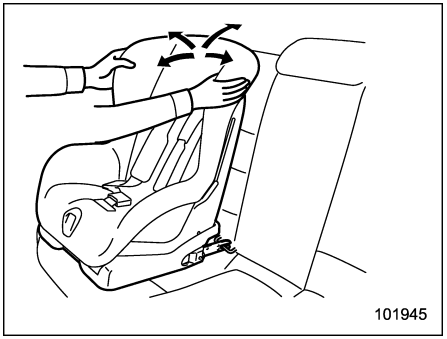
1) Inserting aid

NOTE

If your child restraint system is provided with inserting aids, clip them to the two ISOFIX anchor bars (or put them between seatback and seat cushion at the two ISOFIX fastening points) before connecting the child restraint system.

Position the two connectors just in front of the two inserting aids. Then insert the two connectors into the inserting aids to connect the connectors to the anchor bars.

The inserting aids make it easier to fit the child restraint system with ISOFIX and avoid damage to the seat.



4. Before seating a child in the child restraint system, try to move it back and forth and right and left to verify that it is held securely in position.
5. If the child restraint system requires a top tether, latch the hook onto the top tether anchorage and tighten the top tether. For additional instructions, refer to "Top tether anchorages" ☞1-40.

For further information, refer to the instruction manual supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer.

⚠ CAUTION

When you install a child restraint system, follow the manufacturer's instructions supplied with it. After installing the child restraint system, check to ensure that it is held securely in position. If it is not held tight and secure, the danger of your child suffering personal injury in the event of an accident may be increased.

NOTE

Before installing a child restraint system, ask the manufacturer of the system to confirm that it is one approved for your vehicle.

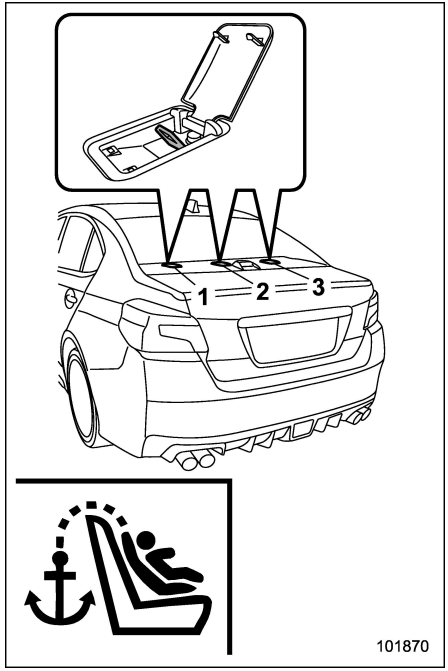
■ Top tether anchorages

Your vehicle is provided with two or three top tether anchorages so that a child restraint system having a top tether can be installed in the rear seat. When installing a child restraint system using top tether, proceed as follows, while observing the instructions by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Since a top tether can provide additional stability by offering another connection between a child restraint system and the vehicle, we recommend that you use a top tether whenever one is required or available.

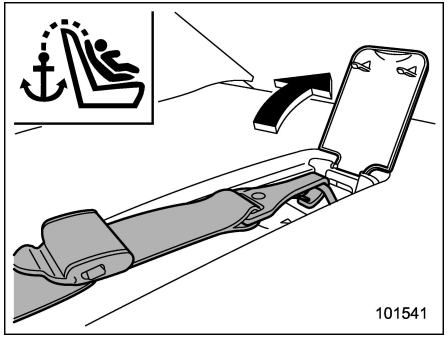
▼ **Anchorage location**

Anchorages are installed as shown in the following illustration.



1) For left seat
2) For center seat (if equipped)
3) For right seat

▼ **To hook the top tether**



1. Open the cover and attach the top tether hook to the appropriate upper anchorage.
2. Tighten the top tether securely.

We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer if you have any question regarding the installation of a child restraint system.

*SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)

*SRS: This stands for supplemental restraint system. This name is used because the airbag system supplements the vehicle's seatbelts.

Your vehicle is equipped with a supplemental restraint system to supplement the seatbelts for the front seats and rear window-side seating positions.

The supplemental restraint system (SRS) consists of the following airbags:

- **Frontal airbags** for driver and front passenger
- **Knee airbag** for driver
- **Side airbags** for driver and front passenger
- **Curtain airbags** for driver, front passenger and window-side rear passengers

These SRS airbags are designed only as a supplement to the primary protection provided by the seatbelt.

The system also controls front seatbelt pretensioners. For operation instructions and precautions concerning the seatbelt pretensioner, refer to "Front seatbelt pretensioners" ☞1-20.

– CONTINUED –

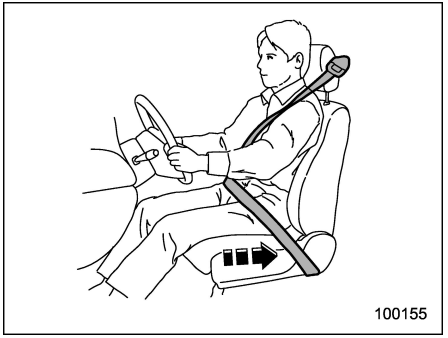
■ General precautions regarding SRS airbag system

⚠ WARNING

- **To obtain maximum protection in the event of an accident, the driver and all passengers must always wear seatbelts when in the vehicle. The SRS airbag is designed only to be a supplement to the primary protection provided by the seatbelt. It does not eliminate the need to fasten seatbelts. In combination with the seatbelts, it offers the best combined protection in case of a serious accident.**

  Not wearing a seatbelt increases the chance of severe injury or death in a crash even when the vehicle has the SRS airbag.

  For instructions and precautions concerning the seatbelt system, refer to "Seatbelts" ☞1-15.
- **The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are designed only to be a supplement to the primary protection provided by the seatbelt. They do not eliminate the need to fasten seatbelts. It is also important to wear your seatbelt to help avoid injuries that can result when an occupant is not seated in a proper upright position.**



⚠ WARNING

The SRS airbags deploy with considerable speed and force. Occupants who are out of proper position when the SRS airbag deploys could suffer very serious injuries. Because the SRS airbag needs enough space for deployment, the driver should always sit upright and well back in the seat as far from the steering wheel as practical while still maintaining full vehicle control and the front passenger should move the seat as far back as possible and sit upright and well back in the seat.



⚠ WARNING

- **Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to either front door. The SRS side airbags are stored in both front seat seatbacks next to the door, and they provide protection by deploying rapidly (faster than the blink of an eye) in the event of a side impact collision. However, the force of SRS side airbag deployment may cause injuries if your head or other parts of the body are too close to the SRS side airbag.**
- **Do not sit or lean unnecessarily**

close to the front or rear door on either side. Also, do not put your head, arms or hands out of the window. The curtain airbags on both sides of the cabin are stored in the roof side (between the front pillar and a point over the rear seat), and they provide protection by deploying rapidly (faster than the blink of an eye) in the event of a side impact. However, the force of its deployment may cause injuries if your head is too close to it.

- Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the SRS airbag. Because the SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed – faster than the blink of an eye – and force to protect in high speed collisions, the force of an airbag can injure an occupant whose body is too close to SRS airbag.

  It is also important to wear your seatbelt to help avoid injuries that can result when the SRS airbag contacts an occupant not in proper position such as one thrown forward during pre-accident braking.

  Even when properly positioned, there remains a possibility that an occupant may suffer minor injury such as abrasions and bruises to the face or arms because of the SRS airbag deployment force.
- For Russia models, the SRS curtain airbags also deploy in the event of a rollover. The deployment force may cause injuries if your head is too close to it.


102009

⚠ WARNING

- Do not rest your arm on either front door or its internal trim. You could be injured in the event of SRS side airbag deployment.
- Do not place any objects over or near the SRS airbag cover or between you and the SRS airbag. If the SRS airbag deploys, those objects could interfere with its proper operation and could be propelled inside the vehicle and cause injury.

⚠ CAUTION

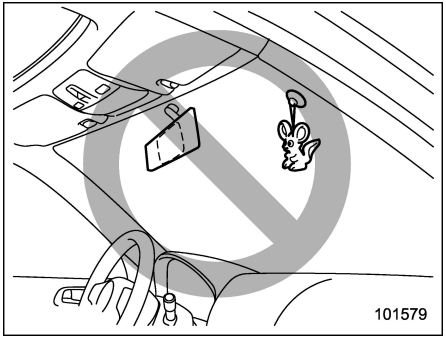
- When the SRS airbag deploys, some smoke will be released. This smoke could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. If you or your passengers have breathing problems after SRS airbag deploys, get fresh air promptly.
- A deploying SRS airbag releases hot gas. Occupants could get burned if they come into direct contact with the hot gas.

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

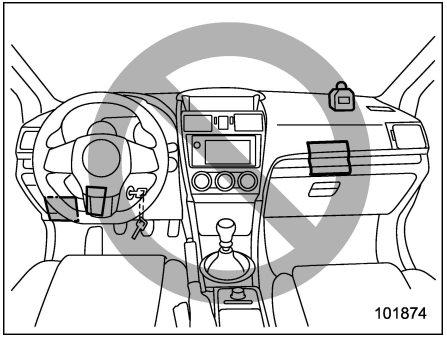
- **When you sell your vehicle, we urge you to inform the buyer that the vehicle is equipped with SRS airbags. Also, notify the buyer of the applicable section of this Owner's Manual.**
- **If the SRS airbag deploys, fuel supply will be cut off to reduce the risk of fire caused by leaking fuel. For details about restarting of the engine, refer to "If your vehicle is involved in an accident" ☞9-19.**

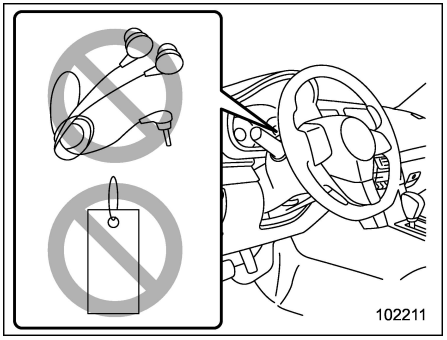
■ General precautions regarding SRS airbag system for accessories and any objects



⚠ WARNING

Do not attach accessories to the windshield, or fit an extra-wide mirror over the inside rear view mirror. If the SRS airbag deploys, these objects could become projectiles that could seriously injure vehicle occupants.



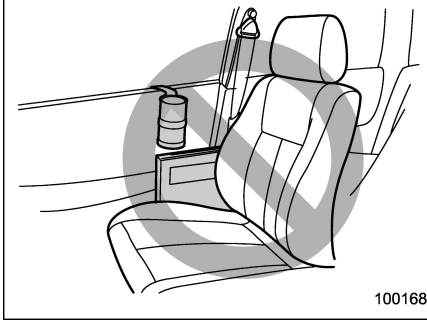


⚠ WARNING

- **Do not put any objects (including straps or cords) over the steering wheel pad, column cover or dashboard.**
  - **These objects could be entangled with the steering wheel, preventing the SRS frontal airbag, etc. from operating properly.**
  - **If the SRS frontal airbag deploys, these objects could be propelled inside the vehicle, causing injury.**
- **The key must not be attached to heavy, sharp or hard accessories, or another key. If the SRS**

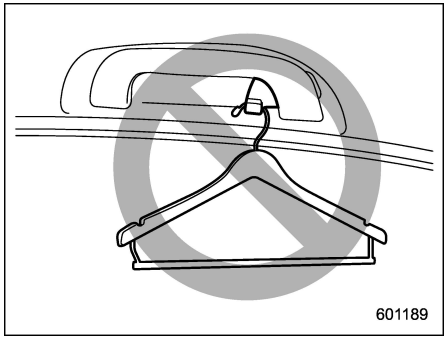
knee airbag deploys, those objects could interfere with its proper operation and could be propelled inside the vehicle and cause injury.

- Do not put any objects under the driver's side of the instrument panel. If the SRS knee airbag deploys, those objects could interfere with its proper operation and could be propelled inside the vehicle and cause injury.


100168

WARNING

- Do not attach accessories to the door trim or near either SRS side airbags and do not place objects near the SRS side airbags. In the event of SRS side airbag deployment, they could be propelled dangerously toward the vehicle's occupants and cause injuries.
- Do not attach a hands-free microphone or any other accessory to a front pillar, a center pillar, a rear pillar, the windshield, a side window, an assist grip, or any other cabin surface that would be near a deploying SRS curtain airbag. A hands-free microphone or other accessory in such a location could be propelled through the cabin with great force by the curtain airbag, or it could prevent correct deployment of the curtain airbag. In either case, the result could be serious injuries.
- Never hang or place coat hangers or other hard or pointed objects near the side windows. If such items are present when the SRS curtain airbags deploy, they could be thrown through the passenger compartment and cause serious injuries. They could also prevent proper operation of the SRS curtain airbags.

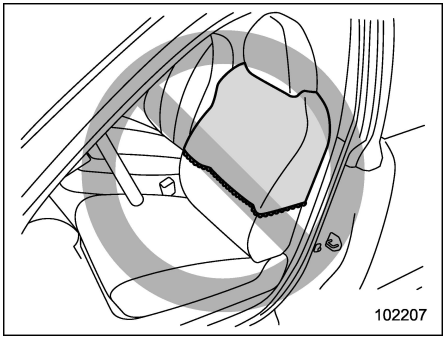

601189

WARNING

Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or pointed objects on the coat hooks. If such items are hanging on the coat hooks during deployment of the SRS curtain airbags, they could cause serious injuries by coming off the coat hooks and being thrown through the cabin or by preventing deployment of the curtain airbags.

Before hanging clothing on the coat hooks, make sure there are no sharp objects in the pockets. Hang clothing directly on the coat hooks without using hangers.

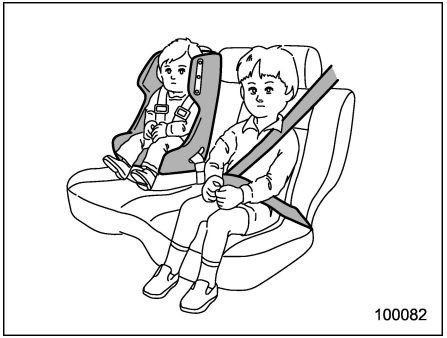
– CONTINUED –



⚠ WARNING

- **Do not put any kind of clothes or other objects over either front seatback and do not attach labels or stickers to the front seat surface on or near the SRS side airbag. They could prevent proper deployment of the SRS side airbag, reducing protection available to the front seat's occupant.**
- **Do not install a seat cover unless it is a genuine SUBARU seat cover exclusively designed for use with the SRS airbag. Even when using a genuine SUBARU seat cover, the SRS side airbag system may not function normally if the seat cover is not installed correctly.**

■ General precautions regarding SRS airbag system for children



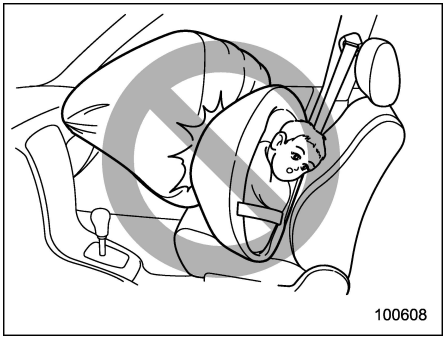
⚠ WARNING

- **Put children aged 12 and under or 1.5 m (4 feet 11 inches) tall or less in the REAR seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seatbelt, whichever is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are 12 years of age and under or 1.5 m (4 feet 11 inches) tall or less and are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.**

  Secure ALL types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the REAR seats at all times.

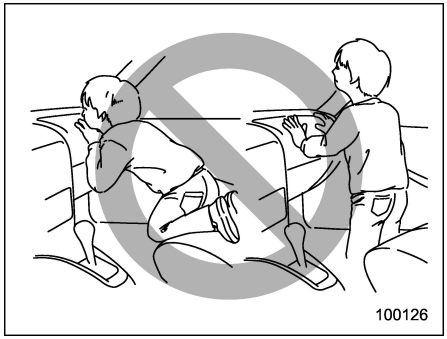
  According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.

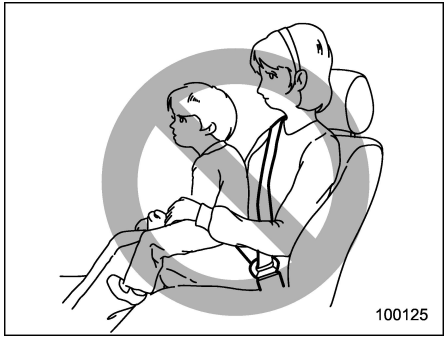
  For instructions and precautions concerning the child restraint system, refer to "Child restraint systems" ☞1-23.


100608

WARNING

NEVER INSTALL A FORWARD OR REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.


100126


100125

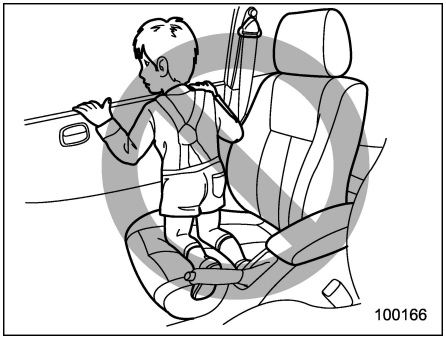
WARNING

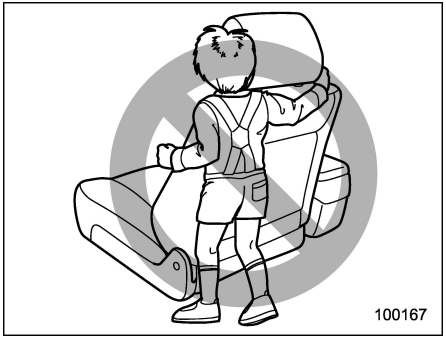
Observe the following instructions.

- **Never allow a child to stand up or kneel on the front passenger's seat.**
- **Never hold a child on your lap or in your arms.**

Since the SRS airbag deploys with considerable force, it can injure or even kill the child.

– CONTINUED –



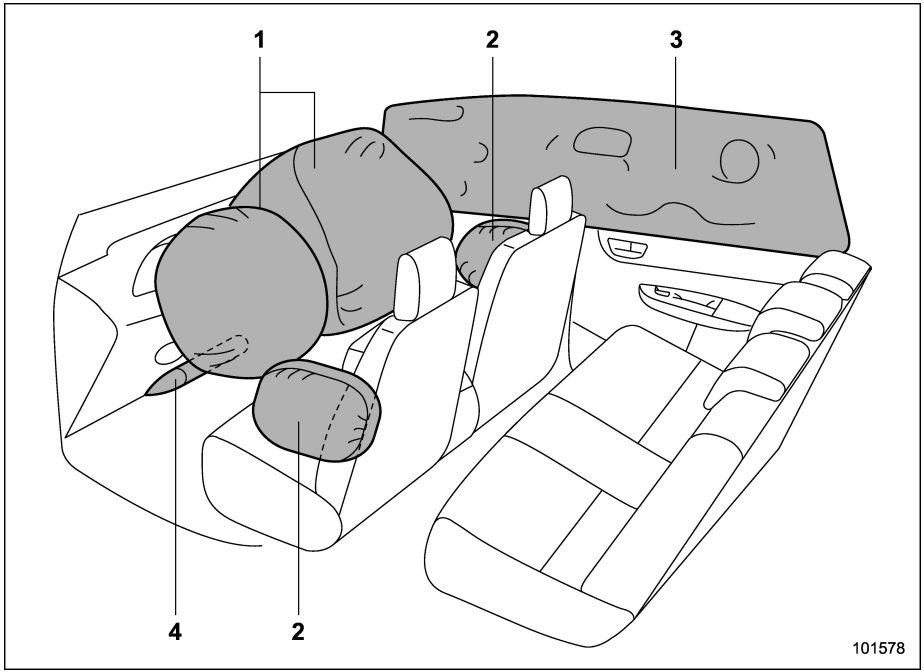


⚠ WARNING

- **Never allow a child to do the following.**
  - **– Kneel on any passenger's seat facing the side window**
  - **– Wrap his/her arms around the front seat seatback**
  - **– Put his/her head, arms or other parts of the body out of the window**

  In the event of an accident, the force of SRS side airbag and/or SRS curtain airbag deployment could injure the child seriously because his/her head, arms or other parts of the body are too close to the SRS side airbag and/or SRS curtain airbag.
- **Since your vehicle is also equipped with a front passenger's SRS frontal airbag, children aged 12 and under or 1.5 m (4 feet 11 inches) tall or less should be placed in the rear seat anyway and should be properly restrained at all times.**

■ Components



1) SRS frontal airbag
2) SRS side airbag
3) SRS curtain airbag
4) SRS knee airbag

The SRS airbags are stowed in the following locations.

Driver's SRS frontal airbag: in the center portion of the steering wheel
An "SRS AIRBAG" mark is located on the steering pad.

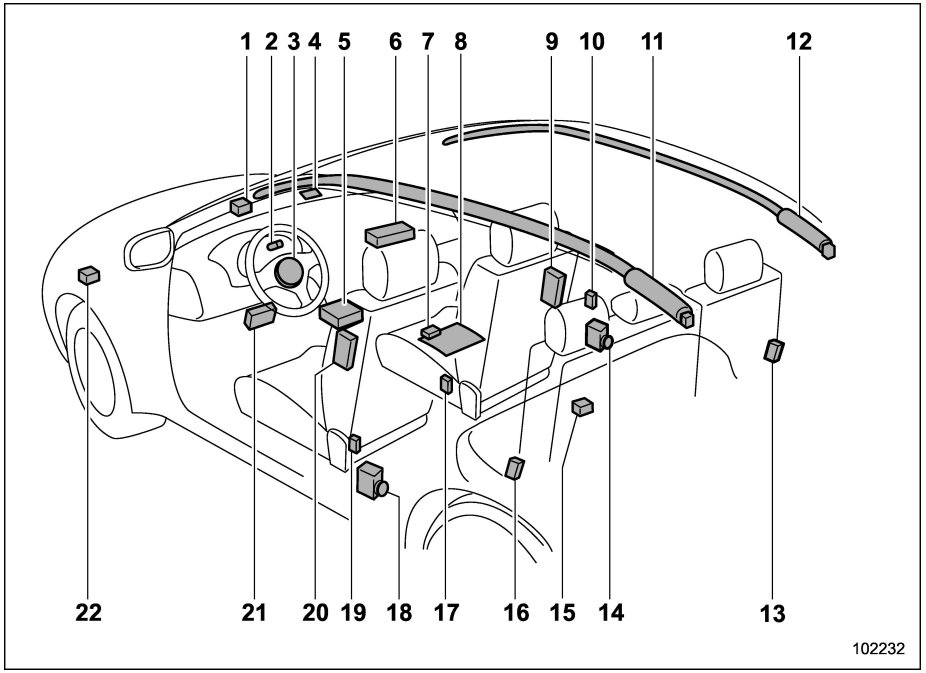
Front passenger's SRS frontal airbag: near the top of the dashboard under an "SRS AIRBAG" mark

SRS side airbag: in the door side of each front seat seatback which bears an "SRS AIRBAG" label

SRS curtain airbag: in the roof side (between the front pillar and a point over the rear seat)
An "SRS AIRBAG" mark is located at the top of each center pillar and rear pillar.

SRS knee airbag: under the steering column
An "SRS AIRBAG" mark is located on the lower cover.

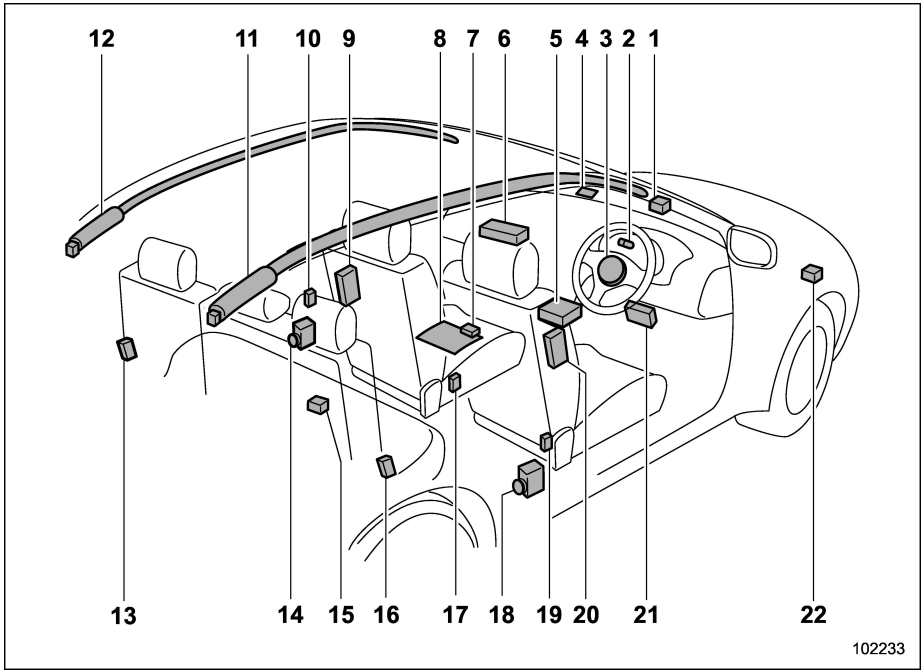
– CONTINUED –



Left-hand drive models

1) Front sub sensor (right-hand side)
2) SRS airbag system warning light
3) Frontal airbag module (driver's side)
4) Front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicator (if equipped)
5) Airbag control module (including impact sensor [all models] and rollover sensor [Russia models])
6) Frontal airbag module (front passenger's side)
7) Front passenger's occupant detection control module*
8) Front passenger's occupant detection sensor*
9) Side airbag module (front passenger's side)
10) Side airbag sensor (center pillar right-hand side)
11) Curtain airbag module (left-hand side)
12) Curtain airbag module (right-hand side)
13) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house right-hand side)
14) Seatbelt pretensioner (front passenger's side)
15) Satellite safing sensor (under the rear center seat)
16) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house left-hand side)
17) Seatbelt buckle switch (front passenger's side)*
18) Seatbelt pretensioner (driver's side)
19) Side airbag sensor (center pillar left-hand side)
20) Side airbag module (driver's side)
21) Knee airbag module (driver's side)
22) Front sub sensor (left-hand side)

*: If equipped



Right-hand drive models

1) Front sub sensor (left-hand side)
2) SRS airbag system warning light
3) Frontal airbag module (driver's side)
4) Front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicator (if equipped)
5) Airbag control module (including impact sensors)
6) Frontal airbag module (front passenger's side)
7) Front passenger's occupant detection control module*
8) Front passenger's occupant detection sensor*
9) Side airbag module (front passenger's side)
10) Side airbag sensor (center pillar left-hand side)
11) Curtain airbag module (right-hand side)
12) Curtain airbag module (left-hand side)
13) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house left-hand side)
14) Seatbelt pretensioner (front passenger's side)
15) Satellite safing sensor (under the rear center seat)
16) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house right-hand side)
17) Seatbelt buckle switch (front passenger's side)*
18) Seatbelt pretensioner (driver's side)
19) Side airbag sensor (center pillar right-hand side)
20) Side airbag module (driver's side)
21) Knee airbag module (driver's side)
22) Front sub sensor (right-hand side)

*: If equipped

– CONTINUED –

■ SRS airbags

⚠ WARNING

Warning labels are located on both sides of the front passenger's sun visor. Carefully read the description in "Warning label" ☞1-26.

For the locations of the SRS airbags, refer to "Components" ☞1-49.

In a moderate to severe frontal collision, the following components deploy.

- SRS frontal airbag for driver
- SRS frontal airbag for front passenger
- SRS knee airbag for driver

These components supplement the seatbelts by reducing the impact to the occupant's head, chest and knees.

In a moderate to severe side impact collision, the SRS side airbag on the impacted side of the vehicle deploys between the occupant and the door panel and supplements the seatbelt by reducing the impact to the occupant's chest and waist. The SRS side airbag operates only for front seat occupants.

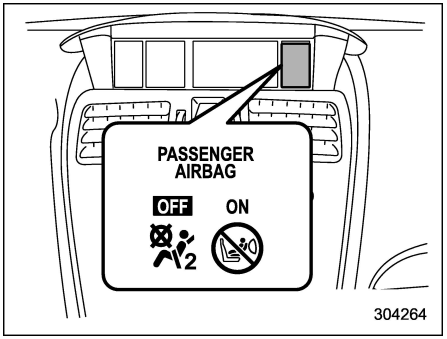
In a moderate to severe side impact collision, the SRS curtain airbag on the impacted side of the vehicle deploys between the occupant and the side window and supplements the seatbelt by reducing the impact to the occupant's head.

For Russia models, in a rollover, SRS curtain airbags on both sides of the vehicle deploy between the occupants and the side windows and supplement the seatbelts by reducing the impact on the occupant's head.

▼ Occupant detection system (if equipped)

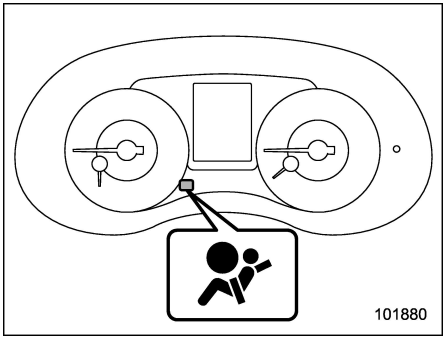
The occupant detection sensor is installed under the seat upholstery and monitors the physique and posture of the front passenger. The occupant detection system determines whether the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag should be deployed or not from the physique and posture of the front passenger.

The occupant detection system may not inflate the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag even when the driver's SRS frontal airbag deploys. This is normal.



: Front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator
: Front passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator

If the front passenger's seat cushion is wet, this may adversely affect the ability of the occupant detection system. If the seat cushion is wet, do not use the front passenger's seat. Wipe off liquid from the seat immediately, let the seat dry naturally and then check the SRS airbag system warning light as follows.



SRS airbag system warning light

- If the SRS airbag system warning light illuminates, continue to dry the seat until the warning light turns off. If the SRS airbag system warning light stays on even when the seat has dried, do not allow anyone to sit on the front passenger's seat. We recommend that you have the system checked by your SUBARU dealer.
- If the SRS airbag system warning light does not illuminate, check that the front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators work properly. For details about the indicators, refer to "Front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators" ☞3-17. If the indicators do not work properly, do not allow anyone to sit on the front passenger's seat. We recommend that you have the system checked by your SUBARU dealer.

Also, if luggage or electronic devices are placed on the front passenger's seat, this may adversely affect the ability of the occupant detection system. This may prevent the front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators from working properly. Check that the indicators work properly.

When the OFF indicator turns off and the ON indicator illuminates, the front passenger's frontal airbag may deploy during a collision. Remove luggage and electronic devices from the front passenger's seat.

⚠ CAUTION

Electronic devices* may affect the occupant detection system, especially under either of the following conditions.

- **when placed on the front passenger's seat while connected to the accessory power outlet**
- **when used by the front passenger**

***Example: cell phones, laptops, portable music players, or electronic games**

If either of the following situations occurs when using an electronic device in the vehicle, at first try to relocate that device to avoid it creating any interference.

- **The SRS airbag system warning light illuminates.**
- **The front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators operate erratically.**

If the interference remains, stop using the device in the vehicle.

– CONTINUED –

▽ **Technical information**

第十二條
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

500631

▼ **Front passenger's SRS frontal airbag for models with occupant detection system**

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may prevent the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag from functioning correctly or cause the system to fail.

- **Do not apply any strong impact to the front passenger's seat such as by kicking.**
- **Do not let rear passengers rest their feet between the front seatback and seat cushion.**
- **Do not spill liquid on the front passenger's seat. If liquid is spilled, wipe it off immediately.**
- **Do not remove or disassemble the front passenger's seat.**
- **Do not install any accessory (such as an audio amplifier) other than a genuine SUBARU accessory or an equivalent under the front passenger's seat.**
- **Do not place anything (shoes, umbrella, etc.) under the front passenger's seat.**
- **Do not use the front passenger's seat with the head restraint removed.**
- **Do not leave any articles on the front passenger's seat or the seatbelt tongue and buckle engaged when you leave your vehicle.**
- **Do not put sharp object(s) on the seat or pierce the seat upholstery.**
- **Do not place a magnet near the seatbelt buckle and the seatbelt retractor.**
- **Do not use front seats with their backward-forward position and seatback not being locked into place securely. If any of them are not locked securely, adjust them again. For adjusting procedure, refer to "Manual seat" ☞1-4 (models equipped with manual seats only).**

If the seatbelt buckle switch and/or front passenger's occupant detection system have failed, the SRS airbag system warning light will illuminate. We recommend that you have the system inspected by your SUBARU dealer immediately if the SRS airbag system warning light illumi-

nates.

If your vehicle has sustained impact, this may affect the proper function of the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag system. We recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at your SUBARU dealer. Do not use the front passenger's seat while driving the vehicle to your SUBARU dealer or another service center.

NOTE

The front passenger's SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are not controlled by the SRS frontal airbag system.

▼ Passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators (if equipped)

Refer to "Front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators" ☞3-17.

▼ Conditions in which front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is not activated (models with occupant detection system)

The front passenger's SRS frontal airbag will not be activated when any of the following conditions are met regarding the front passenger's seat:

- The seat is empty.
- The seat is equipped with an appropriate child restraint system and an infant is restrained in it. (See WARNING that follows.)
- The system is being checked after the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position.
- The front passenger's occupant detection system is malfunctioning.

⚠ WARNING

NEVER INSTALL A FORWARD OR REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SEAT EVEN IF THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SRS FRONTAL AIRBAG IS DEACTIVATED. Be sure to install it in the REAR seat in a correct manner. Also, it is strongly recommended that any forward facing child seat or booster seat be installed in the REAR seat, and that even children who have outgrown a child restraint system be also seated in the REAR seat. This is because children sitting in the front passenger's seat may be killed or severely injured should the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag deploy. REAR seats are the safest place for children.

⚠ CAUTION

When the front passenger's seat is occupied by an infant in an appropriate child restraint system, observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may interfere with the proper operation of the occupant detection system, activating the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag even though that seat is occupied by the infant in the child restraint system.

- **Do not place any article (including electronic devices) on the seat other than the infant in the child restraint system.**
- **Do not place more than one infant in the child restraint system.**

– CONTINUED –

▽ **If the front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator illuminates and the OFF indicator turns off even when an infant or a small child is in a child restraint system (including booster seat)**

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
2. Remove the child restraint system from the seat.
3. By referring to the child restraint manufacturer's recommendations as well as the child restraint system installation procedures in "Child restraint systems" ☞1-23, correctly install the child restraint system.
4. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position and make sure that the front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator turns off and the OFF indicator illuminates.

If still the ON indicator remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off, take the following actions.

- Ensure that no article is placed on the seat other than the child restraint system and the child occupant.
- Ensure that the backward-forward position and seatback of front passenger's seat are locked into place securely by moving the seat back and forth (models with manual seat only).

If the ON indicator still remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off after taking relevant corrective actions described above, relocate the child restraint system to the rear seat. We recommend that you immediately contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.

NOTE

When a child who has outgrown a child restraint system or a small adult is seated in the front passenger's seat, the SRS frontal airbag system may or may not activate the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag depending on the occupant's seating posture. Children should always wear a seatbelt when sitting in the seat irrespective of whether the airbag is deactivated or activated. If the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is activated (the ON indicator remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off), ensure that no article is placed on the seat other than the occupant.

If the ON indicator still remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off despite the fact that the actions noted above have been taken, seat the child/small adult in the rear seat. We recommend that you immediately contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.

Even if the system has passed the dealer inspection, it is recommended that on subsequent trips the child/small adult always take the rear seat.

Children who have outgrown a child restraint system should always wear the seatbelt irrespective of whether the airbag is deactivated or activated.

▼ **Conditions in which front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is activated (models with occupant detection system)**

The front passenger's SRS frontal airbag will be activated for deployment upon impact when any of the following conditions are met regarding the front passenger's seat.

- When the seat is occupied by an adult.
- When certain items (e.g. jug of water) are placed on the seat.

⚠ CAUTION

When the front passenger's seat is occupied by an adult, do not place anything (shoes, umbrella, etc.) under the front passenger's seat. Doing so may deactivate the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag despite the fact that the seat is occupied by an adult. This may result in personal injury.

▽ **If the passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator illuminates and the ON indicator turns off even when the front passenger's seat is occupied by an adult**

This can be caused by the adult incorrectly sitting in the front passenger's seat.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/ "OFF" position.
2. Ask the front passenger to set the seatback to the upright position, sit up straight in the center of the seat cushion, correctly fasten the seatbelt, position his/her legs out forward, and adjust the seat to the rearmost position.
3. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.

If the OFF indicator remains illuminated while the ON indicator remains off, take the following actions.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/ "OFF" position.
2. Make sure that the front passenger does not use a blanket, seat cushion, seat cover, seat heater or massager, etc.
3. If wearing excessive layers of clothing, the front passenger should remove any unnecessary items before sitting in the front passenger's seat, or should sit in a rear seat.
4. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position and wait 6 seconds to allow the system to complete self-checking. Following the system check, both indicators turn off for 2 seconds. Now, the ON indicator should illuminate while the OFF indicator remains off.

If the OFF indicator still remains illuminated while the ON indicator remains off, ask the occupant to move to the rear seat. We recommend that you immediately contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.

■ System operation

⚠ CAUTION

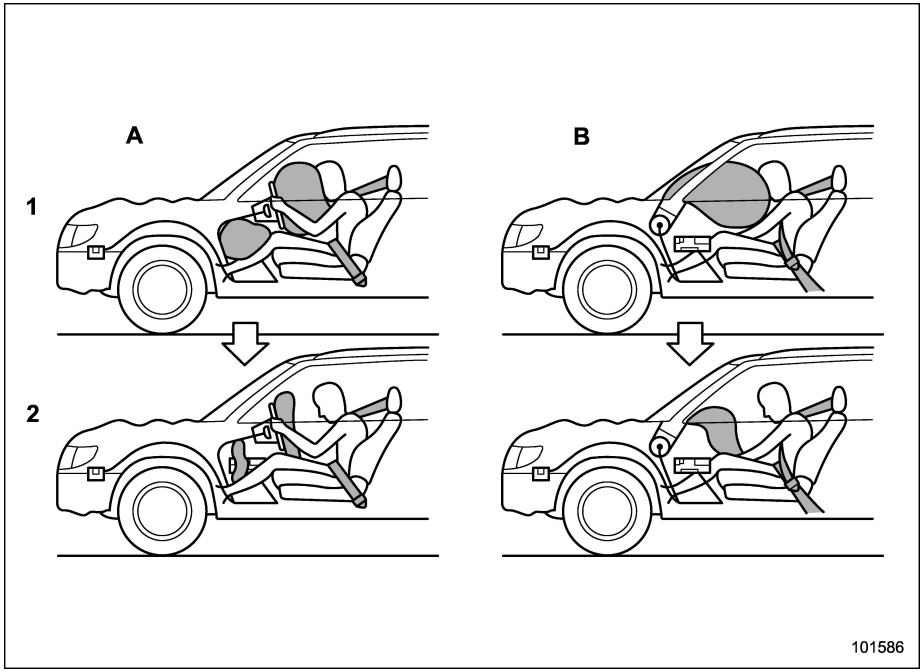
Do not touch the SRS airbag system components with bare hands right after deployment. Doing so can cause burns because the components can be very hot as a result of deployment.

The SRS airbags can function only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

When the SRS airbag(s) deploy(s), a sudden, fairly loud inflation noise will be heard and some smoke will be released. These occurrences are a normal result of the deployment. This smoke does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.

– CONTINUED –

▼ SRS frontal airbag operation



A) Driver's side
B) Passenger's side
1) SRS AIRBAGs deploy as soon as a collision occurs.
2) After deployment, SRS AIRBAGs start to deflate immediately so that the driver's vision is not obstructed.

If the following sensors detect a certain predetermined amount of force during a frontal collision, the control module sends signals to the frontal airbag modules instructing them to inflate the SRS frontal airbags.

- front sub sensors located on both the right and left sides at the front of the vehicle
- impact sensors in the airbag control module

Then both airbag modules produce gas, which instantly inflates driver's and passenger's SRS frontal airbags. The SRS knee airbag is also inflated in combination with the SRS frontal airbags.

▽ After deployment

After deployment, the SRS airbags immediately start to deflate so that the driver's vision is not obstructed and the driver's ability to maintain control of the vehicle is not inhibited. The time required from detecting impact to the deflation of the SRS airbag after deployment is shorter than the blink of an eye.

If the vehicle is equipped with the occupant detection system for the front passenger's seat, the SRS system detects whether the front passenger's seat is occupied by a passenger or not. If the seat is not

occupied, the system does not inflate the front passenger's SRS airbag.

Although it is highly unlikely that the SRS airbag would activate in a non-accident situation, should it occur, the SRS airbag will deflate quickly, not obscuring vision and will not interfere with the driver's ability to maintain control of the vehicle.

▽ Example of the type of accident

The SRS frontal airbag (and also the SRS knee airbag) are designed as follows.

- to deploy in the event of an accident involving a moderate to severe frontal collision.
- to function on a one-time-only basis.

The SRS frontal airbag (and also the SRS knee airbag) are not designed as follows.

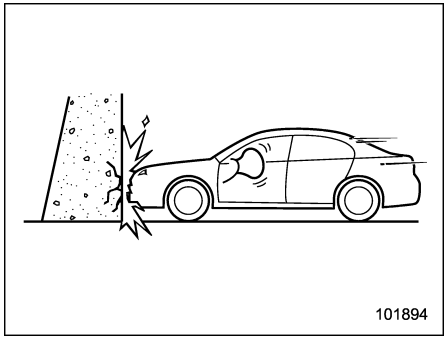
- to deploy in most lesser frontal impacts*1
- to deploy in most side or rear impacts or in most roll-over accidents*2

*1: Because the necessary protection can be achieved by the seatbelt alone.

*2: Because deployment of the SRS frontal airbag would not protect the occupant in those situations.

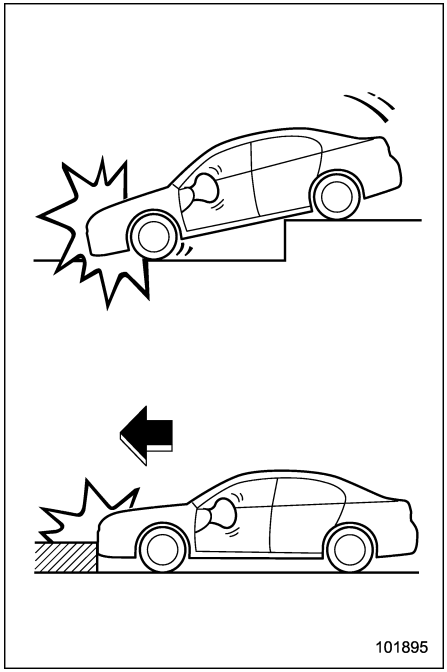
SRS airbag deployment depends on the level of force experienced in the passenger compartment during a collision. That level differs from one type of collision to another, and it may have no bearing on the visible damage done to the vehicle itself.

▽ When will the SRS frontal airbag most likely deploy?



A head-on collision against a thick concrete wall at a vehicle speed of 20 to 30 km/h (12 to 19 mph) or higher activates the SRS frontal airbag. The SRS frontal airbag will also be activated when the vehicle is exposed to a frontal impact similar in fashion and magnitude to the collision described above.

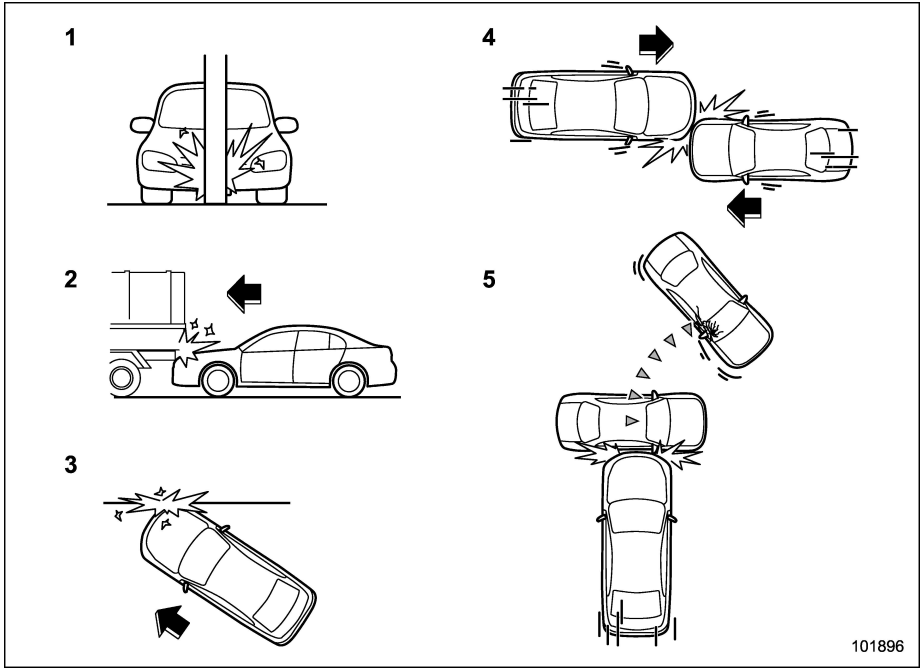
▽ At what other times might the SRS frontal airbag deploy?



– CONTINUED –

The SRS frontal airbag may be activated when the vehicle sustains a hard impact in the undercarriage area from the road surface (such as when the vehicle plunges into a deep ditch, is severely impacted or knocked hard against an obstacle on the road such as a curb).

▽ **When is the SRS frontal airbag unlikely to deploy?**

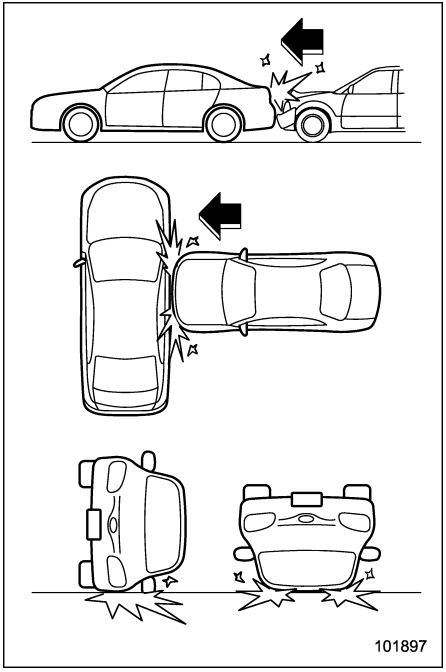


1) The vehicle strikes an object, such as a telephone pole or sign pole.
2) The vehicle slides under the load bed of a truck.
3) The vehicle sustains an oblique offset frontal impact.
4) The vehicle sustains an offset frontal collision.
5) The vehicle strikes an object that can move or deform, such as a parked vehicle.

There are many types of collisions which might not necessarily require SRS frontal airbag deployment. In the event of accidents like those illustrated, the SRS frontal airbag may not deploy depending on the level of accident forces involved.

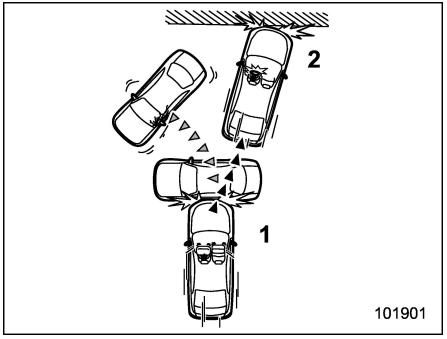
– CONTINUED –

▽ When will the SRS frontal airbag not deploy?



The SRS frontal airbag is not designed to deploy in most of the following cases.

- If the vehicle is struck from the side or from behind
- If the vehicle rolls onto its side or roof
- If the vehicle is involved in a low-speed frontal collision



1) First impact
2) Second impact

In an accident where the vehicle is impacted more than once, the SRS frontal airbag deploys only once on the first impact.

Example: In the case of a double collision, first with another vehicle, then against a concrete wall in immediate succession, once the SRS frontal airbag is activated on the first impact, it will not be activated on the second.

▼ SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag operation



The following airbags deploy independently of each other since each has its own impact sensor.

- Driver's SRS side airbag
- Front passenger's SRS side airbag
- SRS curtain airbag (right-hand side)
- SRS curtain airbag (left-hand side)

Therefore, they may not both deploy in the same accident. Also, the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deploy independently of the driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbags in the steering wheel and instrument panel.

An impact sensor, which senses impact force, is located in each of the following locations.

- In the left and right center pillars
- In the left and right rear wheel houses
- Under the rear center seat (satellite safing sensor)

The following sensors are located inside the airbag control module which is located under the center of the instrument panel.

- frontal impact sensor (all models)
- rollover sensor (Russia models)

If one of the center pillar impact sensors and the satellite safing sensor that is located under the rear center seat together sense an impact force above a predetermined level in a side collision, the control module causes both the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag on the impacted side to inflate regardless of whether the rear wheel house impact sensor on the same side senses an impact.

If one of the rear wheel house impact sensors and the satellite safing sensor that is located under the rear center seat together sense an impact force above a predetermined level in a side collision, the control module causes only the SRS curtain airbag on the impacted side to inflate.

For Russia models, if the rollover sensor detects a vehicle rollover, the control module inflates the SRS curtain airbags on both sides. At this time, the driver's and front passenger's seatbelt pretensioners also operate simultaneously.

NOTE

In a side collision, the following components will operate simultaneously.

- **SRS curtain airbag (impacted side)**
- **SRS side airbag (impacted side) (when both the satellite safing sensor and any of the center pillar impact sensors/front door impact sensors sense an impact force)**

▽ After deployment

After the deployment, the SRS side airbag immediately starts to deflate. The time required from detection of an impact to deflation of an SRS side airbag after deployment is shorter than the blink of an eye. The SRS curtain airbag remains inflated for a while following deployment then slowly deflates.

The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deploy even when no one occupies the seat on the side on which an impact is applied.

▽ Example of the type of accident

The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are designed as follows:

- to deploy in the event of an accident involving a moderate to severe side impact collision.
- to function on a one-time-only basis.

The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are not designed to deploy in the following cases:

- in most lesser side impact
- in most frontal or most rear impacts (because the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deployment would not protect the occupant in those situations)

For Russia models, the SRS curtain airbags are also designed to deploy when the vehicle is in an extremely inclined state such as during a rollover. They are not designed to deploy in most lesser inclined states.

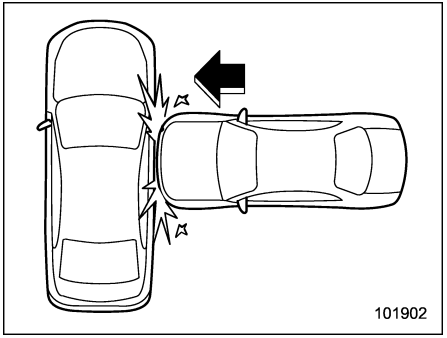
The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deployment depend on the level of force experienced in the passenger compartment during a side impact collision. That level differs from one type of collision to another, and it may have no bearing on the visible damage done to the vehicle itself.

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

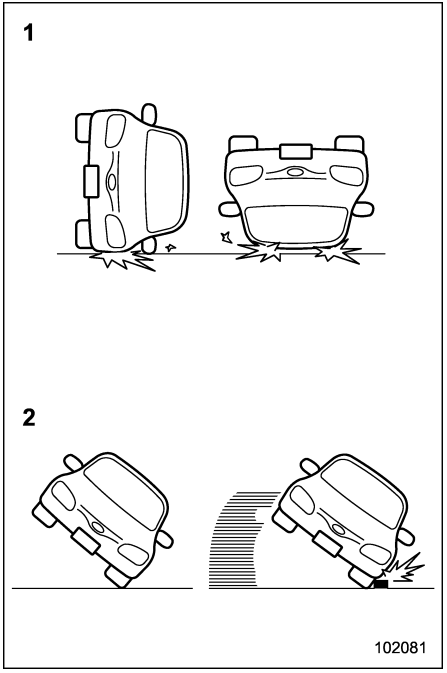
The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deploy even when no one occupies the seat on the side on which an impact is applied.

▽ When will the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag most likely deploy?



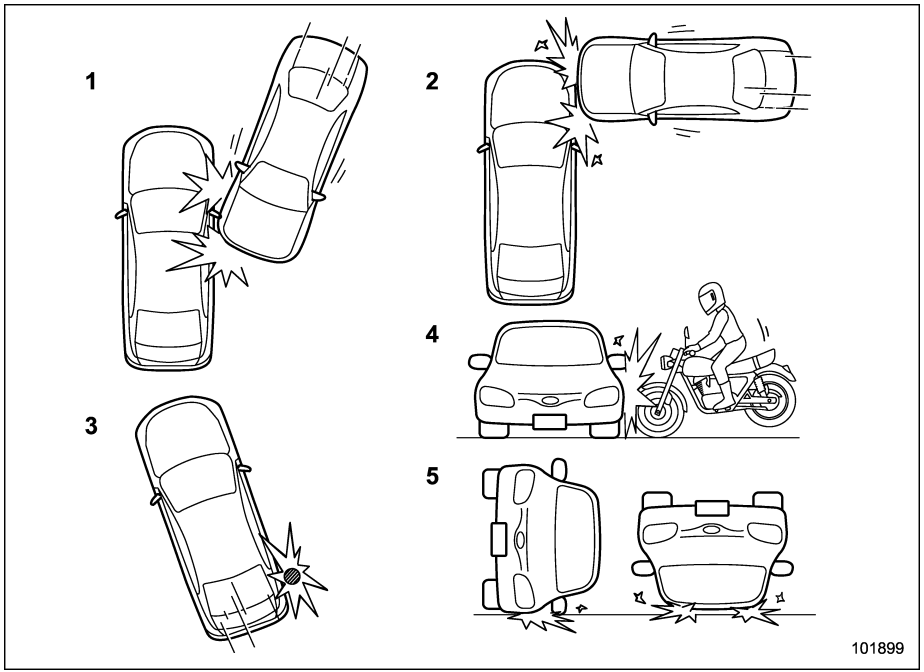
A severe side impact near the front seat activates the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag.

▽ When will the SRS curtain airbag most likely deploy? (Russia models)



1) The vehicle rolls onto its side or the roof.
2) The angle of vehicle tip-up is marginal or the skidding vehicle's tires hit a curbstone laterally.

▽ **When is the SRS side airbag unlikely to deploy?**



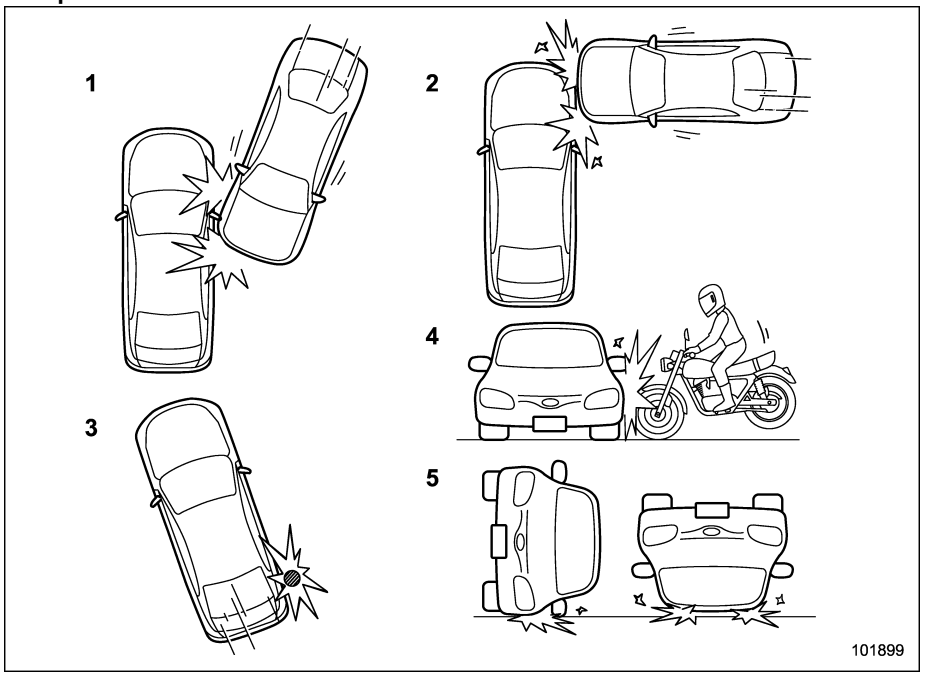
1) The vehicle is involved in an oblique side-on impact.
2) The vehicle is involved in a side-on impact in an area outside the vicinity of the passenger compartment.
3) The vehicle strikes a telephone pole or similar object.
4) The vehicle is involved in a side-on impact from a motorcycle.
5) The vehicle rolls onto its side or roof.

There are many types of collisions which might not necessarily require SRS side airbag deployment. In the event of accidents like those illustrated, the SRS side airbag may not deploy depending on the level of accident forces involved.

– CONTINUED –

▽ When is the SRS curtain airbag unlikely to deploy?

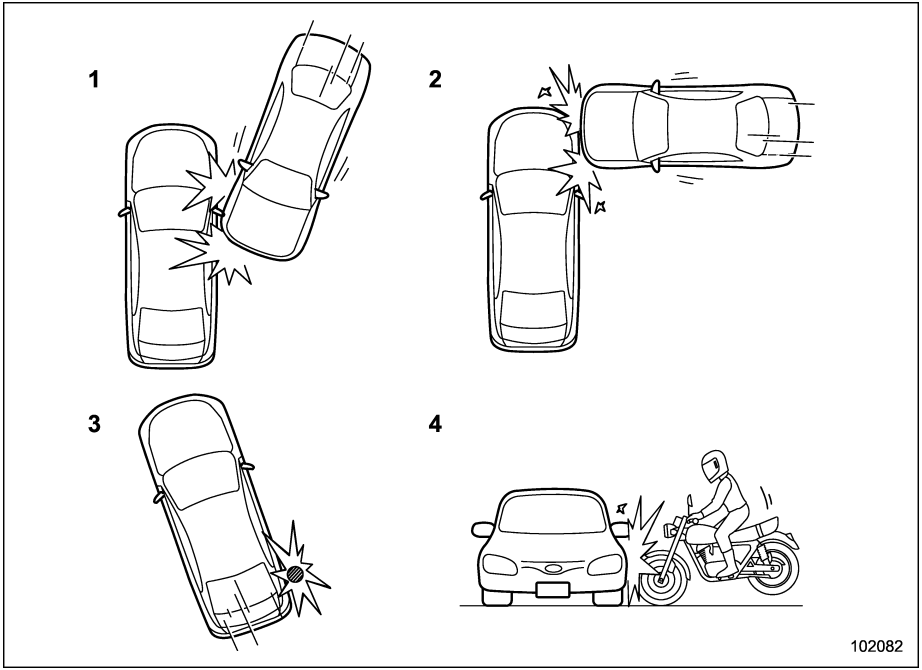
Except Russia models



1) The vehicle is involved in an oblique side-on impact.
2) The vehicle is involved in a side-on impact in an area outside the vicinity of the passenger compartment.
3) The vehicle strikes a telephone pole or similar object.
4) The vehicle is involved in a side-on impact from a motorcycle.
5) The vehicle rolls onto its side or roof.

There are many types of collisions which might not necessarily require SRS curtain airbag deployment. In the event of accidents like those illustrated, the SRS curtain airbag may not deploy depending on the level of accident forces involved.

Russia models

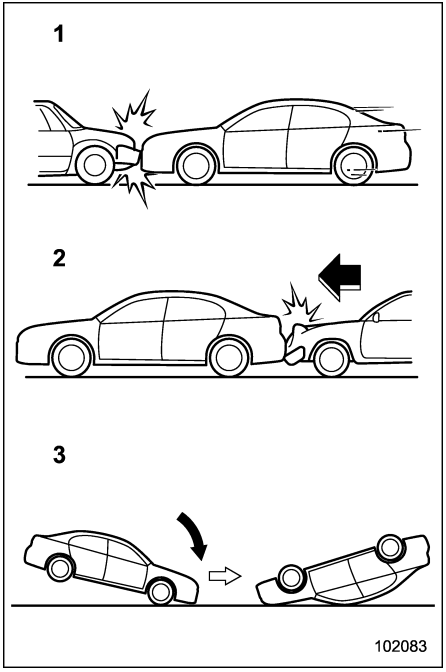


1) The vehicle is involved in an oblique side-on impact.
2) The vehicle is involved in a side-on impact in an area outside the vicinity of the passenger compartment.
3) The vehicle strikes a telephone pole or similar object.
4) The vehicle is involved in a side-on impact from a motorcycle.

There are many types of collisions which might not necessarily require SRS curtain airbag deployment. In the event of accidents like those illustrated, the SRS curtain airbag may not deploy depending on the level of accident forces involved.

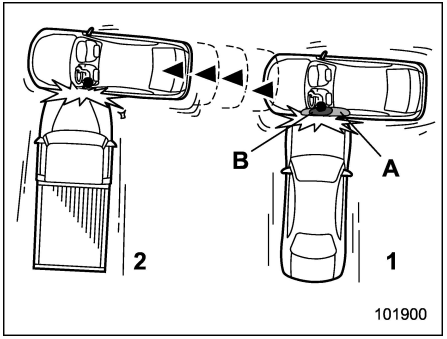
– CONTINUED –

▽ When will the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag not deploy?



1) The vehicle is involved in frontal collision with another vehicle (moving or stationary).
2) The vehicle is struck from behind.
3) The vehicle pitches end over end.

In the event of accidents like those illustrated, the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are not designed to deploy in most cases.

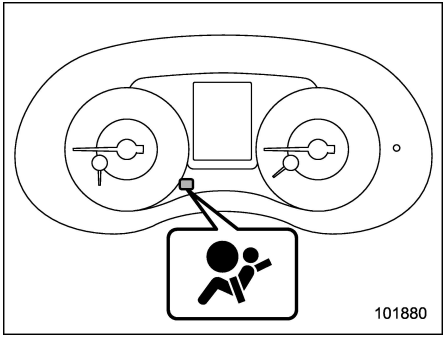


1) First impact
2) Second impact
A) SRS curtain airbag
B) SRS side airbag

In an accident where the vehicle is struck from the side more than once, the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deploy only once on the first impact.

Example: In the case of a double side impact collision, first with one vehicle and immediately followed by another from the same direction, once the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are activated on the first impact, they will not be activated on the second.

■ SRS airbag system monitor



SRS airbag system warning light

A diagnostic system continually monitors the readiness of the SRS airbag system (including front seatbelt pretensioners) with the ignition switch in the “ON” position. The SRS airbag system warning light will show normal system operation by illuminating for approximately 6 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position.

The following components are monitored by the indicator.

- Front sub sensor
  - Right-hand side
  - Left-hand side
- Airbag control module (including impact sensor [all models] and rollover sensor [Russia models])
- Frontal airbag module
  - Driver's side
  - Front passenger's side
- Knee airbag module (driver's side)
- Side airbag sensor
  - Center pillar right-hand side
  - Center pillar left-hand side
- Side airbag module
  - Driver's side
  - Front passenger's side
- Front passenger's occupant detection sensor (if equipped)
- Front passenger's occupant detection control module (if equipped)
- Seatbelt buckle switch (front passenger's side – if occupant detection system is equipped)
- Curtain airbag sensor
  - Rear wheel house right-hand side
  - Rear wheel house left-hand side
- Curtain airbag module
  - Right-hand side
  - Left-hand side
- Satellite safing sensor (under the rear center seat)
- Seatbelt pretensioner
  - Driver's side
  - Front passenger's side
- All related wiring

WARNING

If the warning light exhibits any of the following conditions, there may be a malfunction in the seatbelt pretensioners and/or SRS airbag system.

- **Flashing or flickering of the warning light**
- **No illumination of the warning light when the ignition switch is first turned to the "ON" position**
- **Continuous illumination of the warning light**
- **Illumination of the warning light while driving**

We recommend that you have the system checked immediately by your nearest SUBARU dealer. Unless checked and properly repaired, the seatbelt pretensioners and/or SRS airbags will operate improperly (e.g. SRS airbags may inflate in a very minor collision or not inflate in a severe collision), which may increase the risk of injury.

■ SRS airbag system servicing

WARNING

- **When discarding an airbag module or scrapping the entire vehicle damaged by a collision, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.**
- **The SRS airbag has no user-serviceable parts. Do not use electrical test equipment on any circuit related to the SRS airbag system. For required servicing of the SRS airbag, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer. Tampering with or disconnecting the system's wiring could result in accidental inflation of the SRS airbag or could make the system inoperative, which may result in serious injury.**

– CONTINUED –

⚠ CAUTION

If you need service or repair in areas indicated in the following list, we recommend that you have the work performed by an authorized SUBARU dealer. The SRS airbag control module, impact sensors and airbag modules are stored in the following areas.

- **Under the center of the instrument panel**
- **On both the right and left sides at the front of the vehicle**
- **Steering wheel and column and nearby areas**
- **Bottom of the steering column and nearby areas**
- **Top of the dashboard on front passenger's side and nearby areas**
- **Each front seat and nearby area**
- **Inside each center pillar**
- **In each roof side (from the front pillar to a point over the rear seat)**
- **Between the rear seat cushion and rear wheel house on each side**
- **Under the rear center seat**

In the event that the SRS airbag system is deployed, we recommend that you have the system replaced with genuine SUBARU parts at an authorized SUBARU dealer.

NOTE

In the following cases, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

- **The front part of the vehicle was involved in an accident in which the SRS frontal airbags did not deploy.**
- **The pad of the steering wheel, the cover over the front passenger's frontal airbag, or either roof side (from the front pillar to a point over the rear seat) is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.**
- **The center pillar, rear wheel house or rear sub frame, or an area near these parts, was involved in an accident in which the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag did not deploy.**
- **The fabric or leather of either front seatback is cut, frayed, or otherwise damaged.**
- **The rear part of the vehicle was involved in an accident.**

■ Precautions against vehicle modification

⚠ WARNING

To avoid accidental activation of the system or rendering the system inoperative, which may result in serious injury, no modifications should be made to any components or wiring of the SRS airbag system.

This includes the following modifications.

- **Installation of custom steering wheels**
- **Attachment of additional trim materials to the dashboard**
- **Installation of custom seats**
- **Replacement of seat fabric or leather**
- **Installation of additional fabric or leather on the front seat**
- **Attachment of a hands-free microphone or any other accessory to a front pillar, a center pillar, a rear pillar, the windshield, a side window, an assist grip, or any other cabin surface that would be near a deploying SRS curtain airbag.**

- **Installation of additional electrical/electronic equipment such as a mobile two-way radio on or near the SRS airbag system components and/or wiring is not advisable. This could interfere with proper operation of the SRS airbag system.**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not perform any of the following modifications. Such modifications can interfere with proper operation of the SRS airbag system.

- **Attachment of any equipment (bush bar, bullbar, winches, snow plow, skid/sump plate, etc.) to the front end other than genuine SUBARU accessory parts or parts that match the quality of genuine SUBARU accessory parts.**
- **Modification of the suspension system or front end structure.**
- **Installation of a tire of different size and construction from the tires specified on the vehicle placard attached to the driver's door pillar or specified for individual vehicle models in this Owner's Manual.**
- **Attachment of any equipment (side steps or side sill protectors, etc.) to the side body other than genuine SUBARU accessory parts specially designed for SRS side airbags, or parts that match the quality of genuine SUBARU accessory parts specially designed for SRS side airbags.**

We recommend that you always consult your SUBARU dealer if you want to install any accessory parts on your vehicle.

Keys 2-2
Models without “keyless access with push-button start system” 2-2
Models with “keyless access with push-button start system” 2-2
Key number plate 2-3
Technical information for Europe models 2-4
Immobilizer 2-4
Immobilizer indicator light 2-5
Key replacement 2-5
Technical information for Europe models 2-5
Door locks 2-5
Locking and unlocking from the outside with key 2-5
Locking from the outside without key 2-6
Locking and unlocking from the inside 2-7
Battery drainage prevention function 2-7
Power door locking switch 2-8
Key lock-in prevention function (except models with double locking system) 2-8
Keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped) 2-9
Safety precautions 2-9
Locking and unlocking by holding the access key fob 2-12
Unlocking using PIN Code Access 2-14
Power saving function 2-15
Automatic locking (except models with double locking system) 2-16
Warning chimes and warning indicator 2-16
Disabling keyless access function 2-16
When access key fob does not operate properly 2-18
Replacing battery of access key fob 2-18
Technical information for Europe models 2-18
Tips 2-18
Remote keyless entry system 2-19
Locking and unlocking doors 2-20
Opening trunk lid 2-21
Technical information 2-22
Double locking system (if equipped) 2-22
To set double locking system 2-22
To cancel double locking system 2-23
In an emergency 2-23
If a battery goes dead 2-24
To reset double locking system 2-24
Child safety locks 2-24
Windows 2-24
Power window operation 2-25
Initialization of power window 2-27
Trunk lid 2-27
To open and close the trunk lid from outside 2-28
To open the trunk lid from inside 2-28
Internal trunk lid release handle 2-28
Sunroof (if equipped) 2-30
Sunroof switches 2-31
Sun shade 2-32

Keys

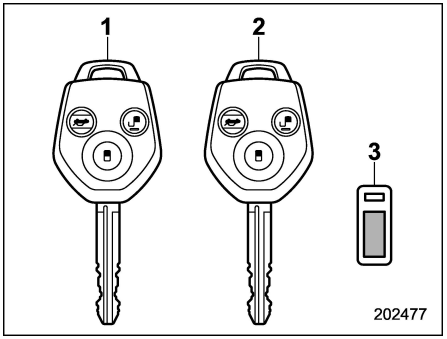
CAUTION

When traveling in an airplane, do not press the button of the key. When any button of the key is pressed, radio waves are emitted and may affect the operation of the airplane. When carrying the key in a bag, take measures to prevent the buttons from being pressed accidentally.

NOTE

Press the buttons of the key to lock/unlock with the remote keyless entry system. For details, refer to "Remote keyless entry system" ☞2-19.

■ Models without "keyless access with push-button start system"



1) Key (main)
2) Key (sub)
3) Key number plate

Your vehicle has two keys and a key number plate.

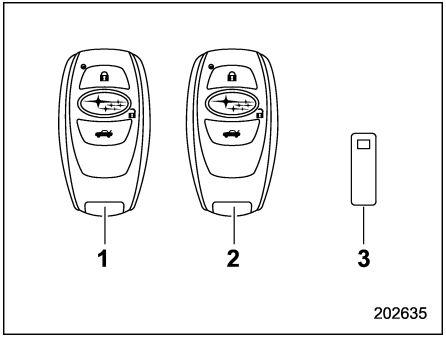
All keys provided for your vehicle fit all locks on your vehicle.

- Ignition switch
- Driver's door
- Glove box (models with key cylinder on the glove box handle)

CAUTION

Do not attach a large key holder or key case to the key. If it bangs against your knees while you are driving, it could turn the ignition switch from the "ON" position to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position, thereby stopping the engine.

■ Models with "keyless access with push-button start system"



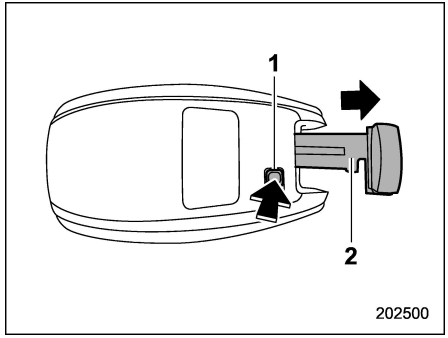
1) Access key fob (main)
2) Access key fob (sub)
3) Key number plate

The vehicle has two or three access key fobs and a key number plate. For details about the key number plate, refer to “Key number plate” ☞2-3.

A emergency key is attached to each access key fob. The emergency key is used for the following operations.

- Locking and unlocking the driver’s door
- Locking and unlocking the glove box (for some models)

For some models, you cannot unlock the glove box without using the emergency key. You can keep the glove box locked when you leave your vehicle and the access key fob (with the emergency key removed) at a parking facility.



1) Release button
2) Emergency key

While pressing the release button of the access key fob, take out the emergency key.

⚠ CAUTION

If the access key fob is dropped, the integrated emergency key inside may become loose. Be careful not to lose the emergency key.

NOTE

- The access key fob is always communicating with the vehicle and is continuously using the battery. Although the life of the battery varies depending on the operating conditions, it is approximately 1 to 2 years. If the battery becomes fully discharged, replace it with a new one.

- If an access key fob is lost, it is recommended that the remaining access key fob be reregistered. For reregistration of an access key fob, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.

- Up to 7 access key fobs can be registered for one vehicle. For a spare access key fob, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.

- Do not leave the access key fob in the storage spaces inside the vehicle. Vibrations can damage the key or turn on the switch, possibly resulting in a lockout.

■ Key number plate

⚠ CAUTION

Carefully store the key number plate. It is necessary for vehicle repair and additional registration of access key fobs.

The key number is stamped on the key number plate attached to the key set. Write down the key number and keep it in another safe place, not in the vehicle. This number is needed to make a replacement key if you lose your key or lock it inside the vehicle.

For information on making replacement keys, refer to “Key replacement” ☞2-5.

– CONTINUED –

■ Technical information for Europe models

These devices comply with the essential requirements and provisions such as the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC.

Requirements and provisions differ depending on the country.

See chapter 13 to confirm the information relevant to each country (e.g., a copy of the original Declaration of Conformity and the CE marking are required for the EU).

Immobilizer

The immobilizer system is designed to prevent an unauthorized person from starting the engine. Only keys registered with your vehicle's immobilizer system can be used to operate your vehicle. This system, however, is not a 100% anti-theft guaranty.

For models with "keyless access with push-button start system":

If you press the push-button ignition switch when carrying an unregistered access key fob, the switch will not turn to the "ON" position and the engine will not start.

If the engine does not start, perform the procedure described in "Starting engine" ☞9-18.

For models without "keyless access with push-button start system":

Even if an unregistered key fits into the ignition switch and can be turned to the "START" position, the engine will automatically stop after several seconds.

If the engine does not start, pull out the key once before trying again. Refer to "Ignition switch" ☞3-4.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not place the key under direct sunlight or anywhere it may become hot.**
- **Do not get the key wet. If the key gets wet, wipe it dry with a cloth immediately.**
- **Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.**

NOTE

• To protect your vehicle from theft, please pay close attention to the following security precautions.

– Never leave your vehicle unattended with its keys inside.

– Before leaving your vehicle, close all windows and the sunroof, and lock the doors.

– Do not leave spare keys or any record of your key number in the vehicle.

• The vehicle has a maintenance-free type immobilizer system.

■ Immobilizer indicator light

Refer to “Immobilizer indicator light” ☞3-34.

■ Key replacement

Your key number plate will be required if you ever need a replacement key made. Any new key must be registered for use with your vehicle’s immobilizer system before it can be used. The maximum number of keys that can be registered for use with one vehicle is as follows.

- Four (models without “keyless access with push-button start system”)
- Seven (models with “keyless access with push-button start system”)

One key that has already been registered is required in order to register a new key.

If you lose a key, the lost key’s ID code still remains in the memory of the vehicle’s immobilizer system. For security reasons, the lost key’s ID code should be erased from the memory. To erase the lost key’s ID code, all keys that will be used are required.

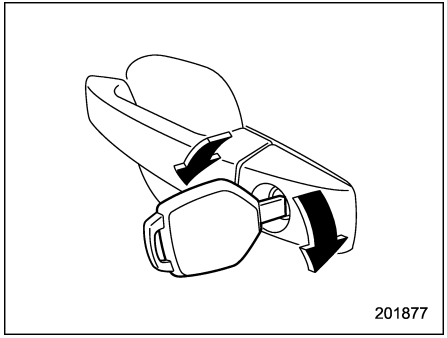
For details about new key registration and erasing the lost key’s ID code, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

■ Technical information for Europe models

This device complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original Declaration of Conformity and the CE marking are found in the chapter 13.

Door locks

■ Locking and unlocking from the outside with key



▼ Models without double locking system

To lock the driver’s door from the outside with the key, turn the key toward the front. To unlock the door, turn the key toward the rear. Pull the outside door handle to open an unlocked door.

NOTE

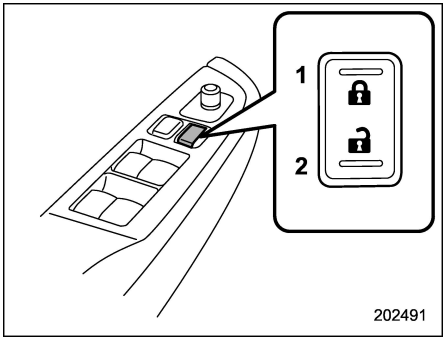
Only the driver’s door can be locked from the outside using the key.

To lock the doors, refer to the following procedure.

– CONTINUED –

1. Remove the key from the ignition switch (models without keyless access with push-button start system) or turn off the ignition switch (models with keyless access with push-button start system).

2. Close the doors except for the driver's door.



1) Lock
2) Unlock

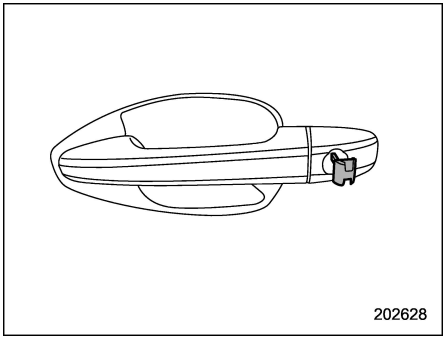
3. Push the lock side of the power door locking switch that is located on the driver's door.

4. Close the driver's door and insert the key. Turn the key forward to lock the driver's door.

▼ Models with double locking system

To lock the doors from the outside with the key, turn the key toward the front. To unlock the doors, turn the key toward the rear. Pull the outside door handle to open an unlocked door.

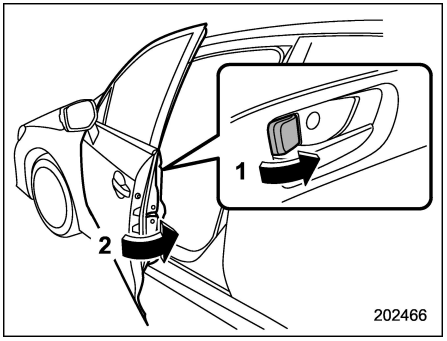
▼ Models with "keyless access with push-button start system"



NOTE

The emergency key is directional. If the key cannot be inserted, change the direction that the grooved side is facing and insert it again.

■ Locking from the outside without key



1) Rotate the lock lever forward.
2) Close the door while holding the handle pulled.

To lock the front door from the outside without the key, rotate the lock lever forward and hold the outside door handle pulled while closing the door.

To lock the rear door from the outside without the key, rotate the lock lever forward and close the door.

Always make sure that all doors are locked before leaving your vehicle.

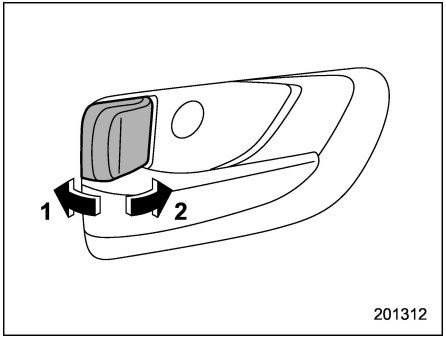
NOTE

Make sure that you do not leave the key inside the vehicle when locking the doors from the outside without the key.

▼ Models with double locking system

It is not possible to place the lock lever on the driver's door in the locking position while the driver's door is open. The door lock levers function only when the driver's door is securely closed and the double locking system is not set.

■ Locking and unlocking from the inside



1) Unlock
2) Lock

To lock the door from the inside, rotate the lock lever forward. To unlock the door from the inside, rotate the lock lever rearward.

The red mark on the lock lever appears when the door is unlocked.

Pull the inside door handle to open an unlocked door.

Always make sure that all doors are closed before starting to drive.

▼ Models with double locking system

If the double locking system is activated, the door will not be unlocked even when you move the door lock lever rearward.

■ Battery drainage prevention function

If a door is not completely closed, the interior lights will remain illuminated as a result. However, several lights will automatically be turned off by the battery drainage prevention function to prevent the battery from discharging. The following interior lights will be affected by this function.

Item	Switch position	Automatically turning off
Map lights*	OFF*	Approximately 20 minutes later
Dome light	DOOR	Approximately 20 minutes later
Ignition switch light	—	Approximately 20 minutes later
Trunk light	—	Approximately 20 minutes later

*: The battery drainage prevention function affects only the map lights on models with the sunroof, and only when the map light switches are in the OFF position. The map lights on models without the sunroof do not turn off automatically, so push the light switches manually to turn them off.

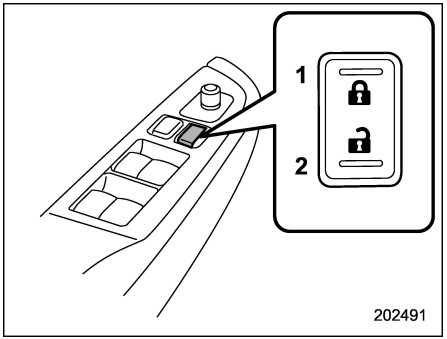
The operational/non-operational setting of this function can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer to change the setting.

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

• The factory setting (default setting) for this function is set as “operational”.
• When leaving the vehicle, please make sure that all doors are completely closed.
• For models with the push-button ignition switch, the battery drainage prevention function does not operate while the ignition switch is in “ACC” or “ON” position.
• For models without the push-button ignition switch, the battery drainage prevention function does not operate while the key is in the ignition switch.

Power door locking switch



1) Lock
2) Unlock

All doors can be locked and unlocked by the power door locking switch located at the driver’s side door.

To lock the doors, push the front side of the switch.

To unlock the doors, push the rear side of the switch.

NOTE

With a vehicle that has a double locking system, pushing the unlocking position of the power door locking switch has no effect when the double locking system is activated.

■ Key lock-in prevention function (except models with double locking system)

This function prevents the doors from being locked under the following conditions.

• The key is still in the ignition switch (models without “keyless access with push-button start system”)
• The ignition switch is in the “ON” position (models with “keyless access with push-button start system”)

This function’s operational/non-operational setting can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer for details.

NOTE

When leaving the vehicle, make sure that you are holding the key before locking the doors.

▼ **Behavior with key lock-in prevention function operational**

With the driver's door open, the doors are automatically kept unlocked even if the front side of the power door locking switch is pressed.

▼ **Behavior with key lock-in prevention function non-operational**

- If the lock lever is turned to the front ("LOCK") position with the driver's door open and the driver's door is then closed, the driver's door is locked.
- If the spare key is used to lock the driver's door from the outside of the vehicle, the door is locked.

Keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped)

You can perform the following operations using "keyless access with push-button start system" when you are holding the access key fob.

- Locking and unlocking of the doors and unlocking of the trunk
- Opening the trunk
- Starting and stopping the engine. For details, refer to "Models with push-button start system" ☞7-9.

Locking and unlocking by the remote keyless entry system can also be controlled with the buttons on the access key fob. For the engine starting procedure, refer to "Models with push-button start system" ☞7-9.

■ Safety precautions

▼ **Regarding radio wave**

⚠ WARNING

If you wear an implanted pacemaker or an implanted defibrillator, stay at least 22 cm (8.7 in) away from the transmitting antennas installed on the vehicle.

The radio waves from the transmitting antennas on the vehicle could adversely affect the operation of implanted pacemakers and implanted defibrillators.

If you wear electric medical equipment other than an implanted pacemaker or an implanted defibrillator, before using the keyless access with push-button start system, refer to "Radio waves used for the keyless access with push-button start system" ☞2-11, and contact the electric medical equipment manufacturer for more information. The radio waves from the transmitting antennas on the vehicle could adversely affect the operation of the electric medical equipment.

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

The keyless access with push-button start system uses weak radio waves. The status of the access key fob and environmental conditions may interfere with the communication between the access key fob and the vehicle under the following conditions.

- **When you operate near a source of strong radio waves or other interference, such as a broadcast station or power transmission lines**
- **When products that transmit radio waves are used, such as an access key fob or a remote transmitter key of another vehicle**
- **When you carry the access key fob of your vehicle together with an access key fob or a remote transmitter of another vehicle**
- **When the access key fob is placed near wireless communication equipment such as a cell phone, or near a metallic object**
- **When metallic accessories are attached to the access key fob**
- **When you carry the access key fob with electronic appliances such as a laptop computer**
- **When the battery of the access key fob is discharged**

In such cases, it may not be possible to lock or unlock the doors or start the engine.

▼ **Regarding malfunction**

⚠ CAUTION

- **Never leave or store the access key fob inside the vehicle (e.g., on the instrumental panel, inside the glove box, on the seat, in the door pocket or on the rear shelf) or within 2 m (6.6 ft) around the vehicle (e.g., in the garage). The access key fob may be locked inside the vehicle, or the battery may discharge rapidly. Note that the push-button ignition switch may not turn on in some cases depending on the location of the access key fob.**
- **The access key fob contains electronic components. Observe the following precautions to prevent malfunctions or battery discharge.**
  - **It is recommended to have the battery of the access key fob replaced at an authorized SUBARU dealer to avoid the risk of damage.**
  - **Do not get the access key fob wet. If the access key fob gets wet, wipe it off immediately and let it dry completely.**
  - **Do not apply strong impacts to the access key fob.**
  - **Never leave the access key fob in direct sunlight or anywhere that may become hot, such as on the dashboard.**
  - **Do not wash the access key fob in an ultrasonic washer.**
  - **Do not leave the access key fob in humid or dusty locations.**
  - **Do not leave the access key fob near personal computers or home electric appliances.**
  - **Keep the access key fob away from magnetic sources.**
  - **Do not leave the access key fob near a battery charger or any electrical accessories.**
  - **Do not apply metallic window tint or attach metallic objects to the windows.**
  - **Do not fit non genuine accessories or parts.**

NOTE

After the vehicle battery is discharged or replaced, initialization of the steering lock system may be required to start the engine. In this case, perform the following procedure to initialize the steering lock.

1) Turn the push-button ignition switch to the "OFF" position. For details, refer to "Switching power status" ☞3-7.
2) Open and close the driver's door.
3) Wait for approximately 10 seconds.

When the steering is locked, the initialization is completed.

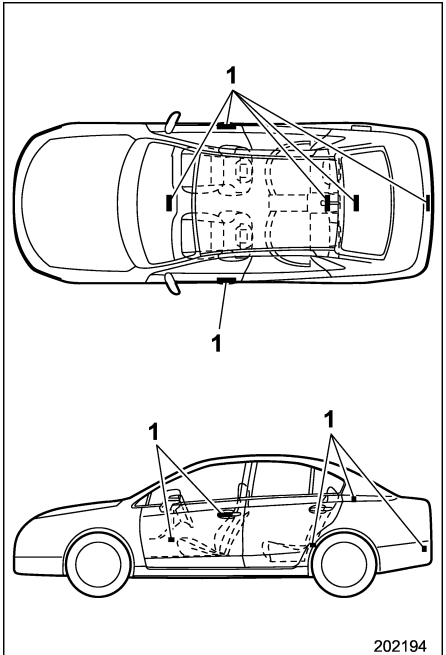
▼ Regarding setting

NOTE

- **You can change the operational/non-operational setting for the keyless access function. For the setting procedure, refer to "Disabling keyless access function" ☞2-16. The setting can also be changed by a SUBARU dealer. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.**
- **For detailed information about the operation method for the push-button ignition switch while the keyless access function is switched to the non-operational mode, refer to "Access key fob – if access key fob does not operate properly" ☞9-17.**

▼ Radio waves used for the keyless access with push-button start system

The keyless access with push-button start system uses radio waves of 134.2 kHz, in addition to the radio waves used for the remote keyless entry system. The radio waves are periodically output from the antennas installed on the vehicle as shown in the following illustration.



1) Antenna

– CONTINUED –

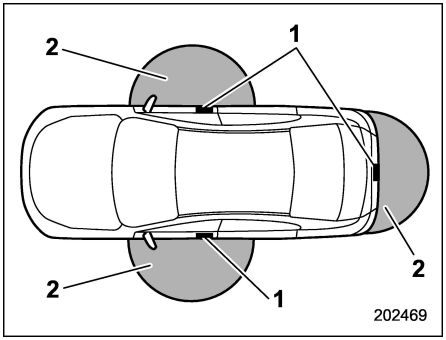
■ Locking and unlocking by holding the access key fob

With the access key fob carried within the operating range, you can lock/unlock the doors just by touching the door handle.

NOTE

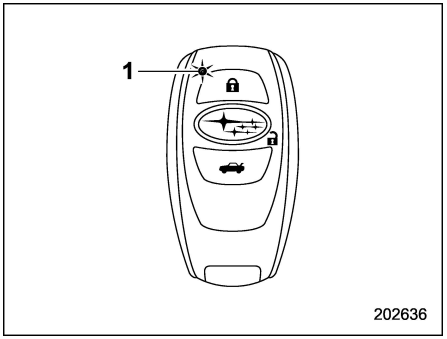
You can lock/unlock the vehicle with the remote keyless entry system. For details, refer to "Remote keyless entry system" ☞2-19.

▼ Operating ranges



1) Antenna
2) Operating range

The operating ranges of the door locking/unlocking functions and the trunk lid opening function are approximately 40 to 80 cm (16 to 32 in) from the respective door handles and the trunk ornament.

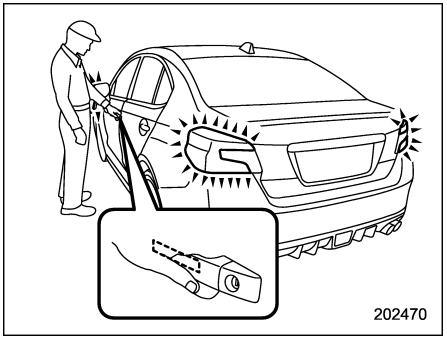


1) LED indicator

When the access key fob is within either of the operating ranges of the front doors, the LED indicator on the access key fob flashes. When the keyless access functions are disabled, the LED indicator does not flash unless a button on the access key fob is pressed.

▼ How to lock and unlock

▽ Unlocking



Carry the access key fob, and grip either of the front door handles.

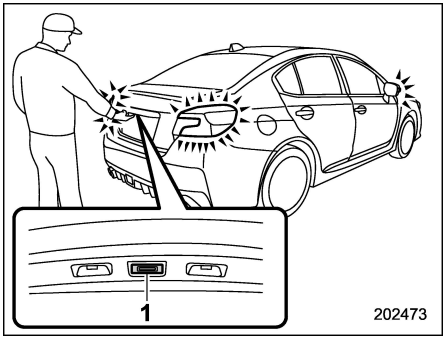
Models without double locking system:
All doors will be unlocked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

Models with double locking system:

- When gripping the driver's door handle: Only the driver's door will be unlocked.
- When gripping the front passenger's door handle: All doors will be unlocked.

Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

▽ **Opening trunk**

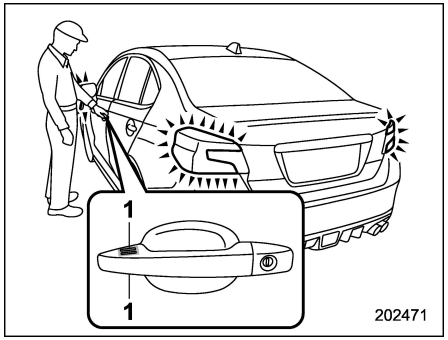


1) Trunk lid opener button

Carry the access key fob, and press the trunk lid opener button.

- Only the trunk lid will be unlocked and opened.
- The hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

▽ **Locking**



1) Door lock sensor (above and below)

Carry the access key fob, close all doors and the trunk lid, and touch the door lock sensor on the door handle.

- All doors will be unlocked.
- The hazard warning flashers will flash once.

NOTE

After touching the door lock sensor to lock all of the doors, if you touch the door lock sensor once more to attempt the lock operation without first unlocking the doors, nothing will happen, even if the door lock sensor is touched. In this case, perform the unlocking operation once first. You can then touch the door lock sensor to lock the doors.

▼ **Door unlock selection function**

The door unlock selection function makes it possible to unlock the driver's door without unlocking any other doors.

The operational/non-operational setting for this function can be changed by a SUBARU dealer.

Operational: Only the driver's door will be unlocked.

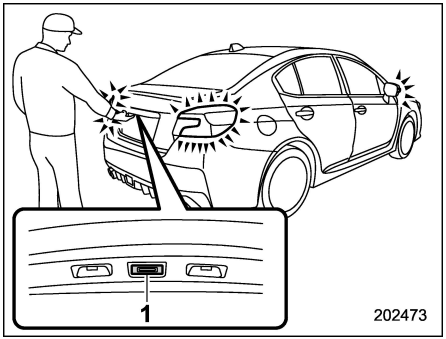
Non-operational: All doors will be unlocked.

For the factory setting (default setting), refer to "Function settings" ☞27.

For further details, we recommend that you consult a SUBARU dealer.

– CONTINUED –

■ Unlocking using PIN Code Access



1) Trunk lid opener button

When all doors are locked, you can unlock them without a key by operating the trunk lid opener button.

You need to register a PIN code to your vehicle before using this function.

NOTE

PIN Code Access will be helpful if the key is accidentally left in the vehicle. It is recommended that a 5-digit security code (PIN code) is registered.

▼ Preparation for registering a PIN code

1. Turn off the ignition switch.
2. Close all doors and the trunk lid.
3. Press and hold the "🔒" button on the access key fob. Then all doors and the trunk lid will be locked.
4. While pressing the "🔒" button, press and hold the trunk lid opener button within 5 seconds after completing step 3.
5. Press and hold the trunk lid opener button for more than 5 seconds. Then a chirp will sound.
6. Release the "🔒" button and the trunk lid opener button.
7. Press the "🔒" button on the access key fob while the chirp sounds. Then the chirp will stop and the preparation is complete.

NOTE

If you do not press the "🔒" button on the access key fob, the chirp will sound for 30 seconds. In this case, the preparation for registering a PIN code does not complete even if the chirp stops.

▼ Registration for a PIN code

For example, to register "32468" as the PIN code, perform the following procedure.

1. Press the trunk lid opener button three times.
2. After a buzzer (ding) sounds once, press the trunk lid opener button twice.
3. After a buzzer (ding) sounds once, press the trunk lid opener button four times.
4. After a buzzer (ding) sounds once, press the trunk lid opener button six times.
5. After a buzzer (ding) sounds once, press the trunk lid opener button eight times.
6. Perform steps 1 to 5 again within approximately 30 seconds after the buzzer starts sounding intermittently.
7. All doors and the trunk lid that has been unlocked will be locked. Then the PIN code will be registered.

NOTE

- **To register "0" as a PIN code, press the trunk lid opener button on the trunk lid ten times.**
- **Change the PIN code frequently to protect your vehicle from theft.**

• If you have lent your vehicle to another person, confirm that the PIN code has not been changed or deleted. If the PIN code has been changed or deleted, reregister a new PIN code.
• If you make an error during the registration procedure, press the "?" button on the access key fob. Then, start over from the procedure described in "Preparation".
• To protect your vehicle from theft, you cannot register a string of the same five numbers together, such as "00000", nor "12345" as a PIN code.
• Do not register your vehicle license plate number or simple numbers such as "11122" or "12121" as a PIN code. Doing so will increase the risk of vehicle theft.
• When you try to register "22222", the registered PIN code will be deleted. You cannot unlock the doors by PIN Code Access until a new code is registered.
• After registering a new PIN code, make sure that you can unlock the doors using the PIN code.
• The PIN code cannot be deleted while the keyless access function is disabled by operating the access key fob.
• Reregister the PIN code in the following case.
– when you forget the PIN code
– when you want to change the PIN code

▼ Unlocking

Perform steps 1 to 5 described in "Registration".

NOTE

• You cannot unlock by PIN Code Access in the following cases.
– when the access key fob is within the operating ranges
– when the ignition switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position
• If you make an operation error during the unlocking procedure, start over with the unlocking procedure after waiting for 5 seconds or longer.
• To protect your vehicle from theft, a buzzer will sound if incorrect PIN codes are entered five times continuously. If this occurs, you cannot unlock the doors by PIN Code Access for 5 minutes.

■ Power saving function

The keyless access function will be disabled in the following cases to protect the battery of the access key fob and the vehicle battery.

Case 1: When the keyless access function and the remote keyless entry system have not been used for 2 weeks or longer while all doors are locked

Case 2: When the access key fob has been left in the operating range for 10 minutes or longer while all doors are locked

▼ Recovery from power saving mode

When one of the following is operated, the keyless access function will be recovered.

Case 1:

- Unlock the doors by operating any procedure other than gripping the front passenger's door handle
- Lock or unlock the doors
- Open a door and then close it

Case 2:

- Unlock the doors by gripping the door handle
- Lock the doors by touching the door lock sensor
- Lock or unlock the doors by using the remote keyless entry system
- Lock or unlock the doors by using the power door locking switch
- Open either of the front doors

– CONTINUED –

■ Automatic locking (except models with double locking system)

If any of the doors was not opened within 30 seconds after unlocking, they will be automatically locked again.

The function's operational/non-operational setting and the time until automatic locking takes place can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.

The setting and the time can also be changed by operating the multi-function display. For details, refer to "Security relocking setting" ☞3-61.

■ Warning chimes and warning indicator

The warning chime and the access key warning indicator serve the following purposes:

- To minimize improper operation of the keyless access with push-button start system
- To protect your vehicle from theft

For details, refer to "Warning chimes and warning indicator of the keyless access with push-button start system" ☞3-29.

■ Disabling keyless access function

⚠ WARNING

If you wear an implanted pacemaker or an implanted defibrillator, operate the driver's door to disable the keyless access function. Otherwise, the operation of an implanted pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be affected by the radio waves from the transmitter antenna.

When the vehicle is not going to be used for a long time, or when you choose not to use the keyless access function, the keyless access function can be disabled.

NOTE

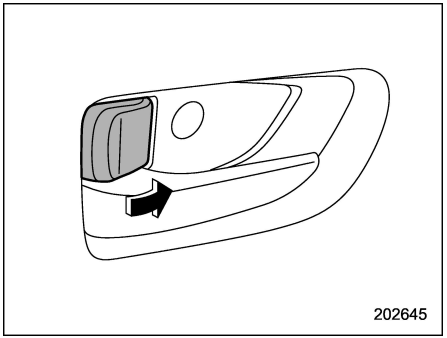
- **The locking and unlocking function by the remote keyless entry system is not disabled.**
- **The setting can also be changed at SUBARU dealers. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.**
- **To start the engine while the functions are disabled, perform the procedure described in "Starting engine" ☞9-18.**
- **We recommend that you disable the keyless access functions under the following conditions.**
  - **When the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended period of time**
  - **When the keyless access functions are not going to be used**

▼ Disabling functions

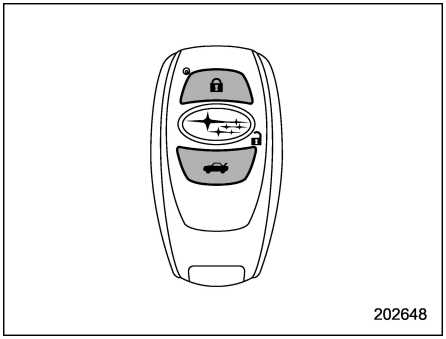
▽ By operating the access key fob

If you have registered a PIN code for PIN Code Access, you can disable the keyless access function by operating the access key fob. For details about registering a PIN code, refer to "Unlocking using PIN Code Access" ☞2-14.

1. Open the driver's door.



2. Rotate the lock lever forward.

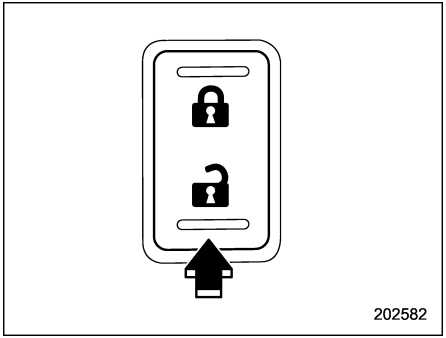


3. Press and hold the "🔒" button and "🚗" button on the access key fob simultaneously for more than 5 seconds.

A chirp sound will be heard, and the function will be disabled.

▽ **By operating the driver's door**

1. Sit in the driver's seat, and close the door.



2. Push the rear side (unlock side) of the power door locking switch.
3. Within 5 seconds after step 2 is performed, open the driver's door.
4. Within 5 seconds after step 3 is performed, push the rear side (unlock side) of the power door locking switch twice while the door is open.
5. Within 10 seconds after step 4 is performed, close and open the driver's door twice.
6. Within 10 seconds after step 5 is performed, push the rear side (unlock side) of the power door locking switch twice while the door is open.
7. Within 10 seconds after step 6 is performed, close and open the driver's door once.
8. Within 5 seconds after step 7 is performed, close the door. A chirp sound will be heard for 2 seconds, and the functions will be disabled.

NOTE

In steps 4 and 6, press the power door locking switch slowly. If the switch is pressed quickly, the functions may not be disabled.

▼ **Enabling functions**

When the procedure to disable the functions is performed again, a chirp sound will be heard, and the functions will be enabled.

NOTE

- **The keyless access function will be enabled only if you perform the procedure in the same manner you disabled the function (for example, when disabling by operating the driver's door, the function will not be enabled even if you operate the access key fob).**
- **Press the push-button ignition switch if you do not know the procedure in which the keyless access function was disabled.**

– CONTINUED –

– When disabling by operating the driver's door: a chirp will not be heard

– When disabling by operating the access key fob: a chirp will be heard

■ When access key fob does not operate properly

Refer to "Access key fob – if access key fob does not operate properly" ☞9-17.

■ Replacing battery of access key fob

Refer to "Replacing battery of access key fob" ☞11-59.

■ Technical information for Europe models

- This device complies with the essential requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original Declaration of Conformity and the CE marking are found in chapter 13.
- Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this 13CZY/14AHB is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

■ Tips

▼ Operating range tips

Regarding malfunction:

The keyless access function may not operate properly due to the following reasons.

- The access key fob is placed too close to the vehicle body (in this case, repeat the operation from further away).
- The access key fob is placed near the ground or in an elevated location from the ground, even if it is in the indicated operating range.
- The status of the access key fob and the radio wave conditions around the vehicle (in this case, perform the procedure described in "Locking and unlocking" ☞9-17.)

Precautions:

- When the access key fob is within the operating range, it is possible for anyone, even someone who is not carrying the access key fob, to operate the keyless access function. Please note that the keyless access function is only available for the following items when the access key fob is detected within operating range.
  - Door handle
  - Door lock sensor
  - Trunk opener button
- It is not possible to lock the doors using the keyless access function when the access key fob is inside the vehicle. However, depending on the status of the access key fob and the environmental conditions, the access key fob may be locked inside the vehicle. Before locking, make sure that you have the access key fob.
- The operating ranges may be reduced, or the keyless access function may not operate in the following cases:
  - When the battery of the access key fob is discharged
  - When the access key fob is in a location with strong radio waves or noise (e.g., near a radio tower, power plant, broadcast station or an area where wireless equipment is used)
  - While talking on a cell phone

In such a case, perform the procedure described in "Locking and unlocking" ☞9-17

- When an access key fob is in the operating range, if the door handle becomes wet due to exposure to a significant amount of water when the vehicle is washed or during heavy rain, the doors may be locked or unlocked.

▼ **Keyless access function tips**

- Turn off the push-button ignition switch before locking the doors using the keyless access function. It is not possible to lock the doors using the keyless access function when the push-button ignition switch is on the “ACC” or “ON” position. For details about turning off the push-button ignition switch, refer to “Switching power status” ☞3-7.
- If the door handle is gripped or the door lock sensor is touched with a gloved hand, the doors may not be locked or unlocked.
- If the door lock sensor is touched three times or more repeatedly, the system will ignore the sensor operation.
- When performing the locking procedure too quickly, doors may not be locked. After the locking procedures, it is recommended to pull the REAR door handles to confirm that the doors have been locked.
- It is not possible to lock the doors when one of the doors is open. Close all doors and then lock them.
- Within 3 seconds after locking the doors using the keyless access function, it is not possible to unlock doors using the keyless access function.
- When locking, be sure to carry the access key fob to prevent locking the access key fob in the vehicle.
- The settings of the hazard warning flasher operation and the volume of the audible signal can be changed by your SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details.
- You can also change the setting of the hazard warning flasher operation by operating the multi-function display. For details, refer to “Hazard warning flasher setting” ☞3-61.

Remote keyless entry system

The remote transmitter can be used within a distance of approximately 1.0 m (3.2 ft) of the vehicle. It can be used to lock and unlock all of the doors and to open the trunk lid.

The system’s operable distance will be shorter in areas near a facility or electronic equipment emitting strong radio waves such as a power plant, broadcast station, TV tower, or remote controller of home electronic appliances.

⚠ CAUTION

- **When you carry the remote transmitter on an airplane, do not press the button of the remote transmitter while in the airplane. When any button of the remote transmitter is pressed, radio waves are sent and may affect the operation of the airplane. When you carry the remote transmitter in a bag on an airplane, take measures to prevent the buttons of the remote transmitter from being pressed.**
- **Do not expose the transmitter to shocks.**

– CONTINUED –

- **Do not take the transmitter apart.**
- **Do not get the transmitter wet. If it gets wet, wipe it dry with a cloth immediately.**

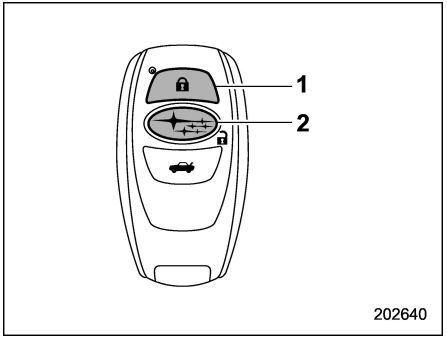
NOTE

- **Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the doors are locked.**
- **If any of the doors is open, this function does not operate.**
- **For models with "keyless access with push-button start system", when the lock button on the access key fob is pressed while the access key fob is placed too close to the vehicle body, unlocking by the keyless access functions may not work. In such a case, the functions will recover by unlocking using the remote keyless entry system.**

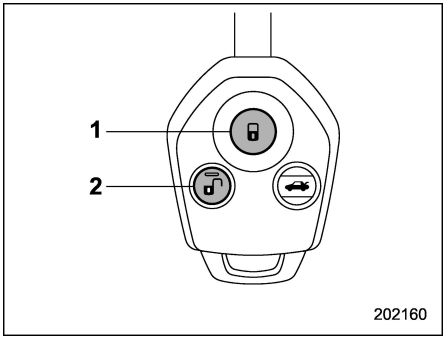
■ Locking and unlocking doors

NOTE

The setting of the hazard warning flasher operation can be changed by your SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details. Also, the setting of the hazard warning flasher operation can be changed by operating the multi-function display. For details, refer to "Hazard warning flasher setting" ☞3-61.



Access key fob



Remote transmitter

1) Lock button
2) Unlock button

▼ Unlocking

Press the unlock button on the access key fob/transmitter near the vehicle.

▽ Models without door unlock selection function

Models without double locking system:
All doors will be unlocked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

Models with double locking system:

1. Only the driver's door will be unlocked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.
2. If you press the unlock button again within 5 seconds of unlocking the driver's door, all of the other doors will be unlocked.

▽ Models with door unlock selection function

NOTE

For security reasons, confirm the setting is set as "operational" or "non-operational".

The door unlock selection function makes it possible to unlock the driver's door without unlocking any other doors. The operational/non-operational setting for this function can be changed by a SUBARU dealer.

Operational: Only the driver's door will be unlocked. If you press the unlock button again within 5 seconds of unlocking the driver's door, all of the other doors will be unlocked.

Non-operational: All doors will be unlocked.

For further details, we recommend that you consult a SUBARU dealer.

▼ **Locking**

Pressing the lock button on the access key fob/transmitter locks all doors. When leaving the vehicle, pull the REAR door handle to make sure that the doors have been locked.

NOTE

● The remote keyless entry system does not operate when the key is inserted in the ignition switch or when any of the doors is not fully closed.

● If any of the doors is not fully closed, the hazard warning flashers will flash five times (the outside warning chime also sounds five times for models with "keyless access with push-button start system") to alert you that the doors are not properly closed.

● For models with "keyless access with push-button start system", the front door will be unlocked if you grip the front door handle while an access key fob is in the operating range. Pull the REAR door handle to make sure that the doors have been locked.

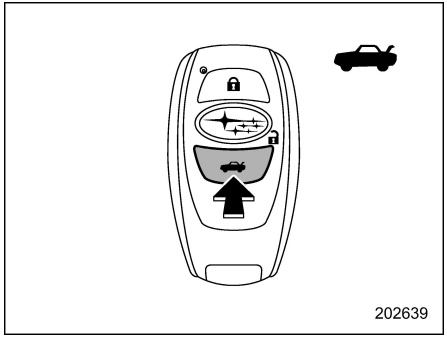
▼ **Automatic locking (except models with double locking system)**

When the unlock button is pressed, all of the doors will be automatically locked 30 seconds later unless any one of the four doors is opened during that period.

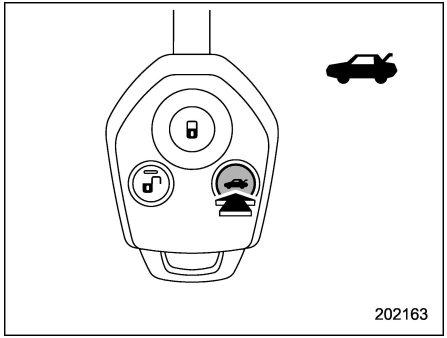
The automatic locking function's operational/non-operational setting and the setting for the locking time period (the time period after which locking takes place) can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact the nearest SUBARU dealer for details.

The setting and the time can also be changed by operating the multi-function display. For details, refer to "Security relocking setting" ☞3-61.

■ Opening trunk lid



Access key fob



Remote transmitter

Press the "🚗" button to open the trunk lid. At this time, the hazard warning lights flash twice.

– CONTINUED –

■ Technical information

The trade, model and supplier's names of this device are as follows.

- Equipment's trade name: SUBARU
- Equipment's model name: TWB1G762/TB1G077
- Supplier's name: ALPS ELECTRIC

For Europe:

This device complies with the essential requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original Declaration of Conformity and the CE marking are found in the chapter 13.

Double locking system (if equipped)

The double locking system is an anti-theft system. It operates when the doors are locked using the key or remote transmitter. While this system is operating, the power door locking switch and door lock levers inside the cabin cannot be used to unlock the doors.

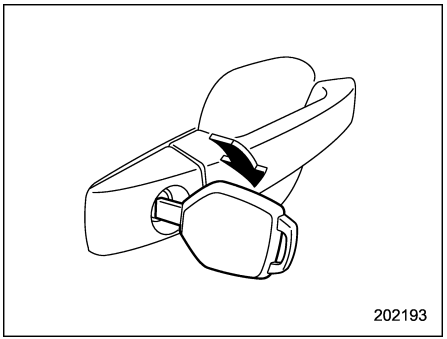
⚠ WARNING

Never set the double locking system while passengers are inside the vehicle. With the system set, people in the vehicle would not be able to open the doors from the inside. The result could be serious injuries or death.

■ To set double locking system

▼ Setting system using key

1. Remove the key from the ignition switch (models without "keyless access with push-button start system")/turn the push-button ignition switch to the "OFF" position (models with "keyless access with push-button start system") and have all occupants get out of the vehicle.
2. Close all of the doors securely.



3. Insert the key into the key cylinder of the driver's door, then turn it in the locking direction to set the double locking system. All of the doors will be locked.

▼ **Setting system using remote transmitter**

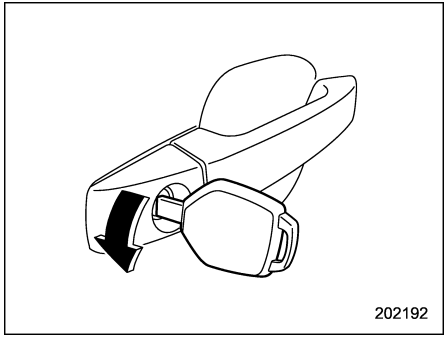
1. Remove the key from the ignition switch (models without “keyless access with push-button start system”)/turn the push-button ignition switch to the “OFF” position (models with “keyless access with push-button start system”) and have all occupants get out of the vehicle.
2. Close all of the doors securely.
3. Press the “” button on the access key fob or “” button on the transmitter. The hazard warning flashers will flash once and the double locking system will be set. All of the doors will be locked.

NOTE

For models with the keyless access function, it is possible to set the double locking system by touching the door lock sensor.

■ To cancel double locking system

▼ **Canceling system using key**



Insert the key into the key cylinder of the driver’s door, then turn it in the unlocking direction to cancel the double locking system. All of the doors will be unlocked.

▼ **Canceling system using remote transmitter**

Press the “” button on the access key fob or “” button on the transmitter. The hazard warning flashers will flash twice and the double locking system will be canceled. The driver’s door will be unlocked.

NOTE

For models with the keyless access function, it is possible to cancel the double locking system by gripping the door handle.

■ In an emergency

If you become trapped inside the vehicle owing to an accident or some other unexpected circumstance, unlock the doors using one of the following methods.

- Remove the key from the ignition switch, then press the “” button on the transmitter (models without keyless access function).
- Turn the push-button ignition switch off, then press the “” button on the access key fob (models with keyless access function).
- Set the ignition switch to the “ON” position and open the driver’s window. Insert the key into the key cylinder of the

– CONTINUED –

driver's door and turn it in the unlocking direction.

- Break one of the windows and climb out through the window opening.

■ If a battery goes dead

If the double locking system cannot be canceled because the vehicle battery or transmitter battery has gone dead or because of a blown fuse or other electrical problem, insert the key into the key cylinder of the driver's door and turn it in the unlocking direction.

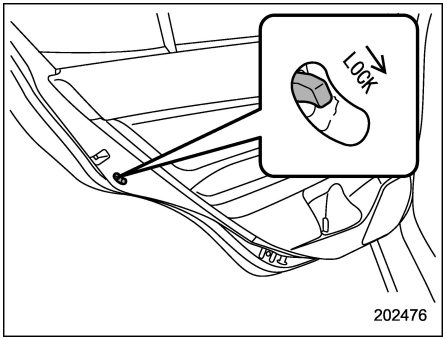
■ To reset double locking system

The double locking system must be reset when the vehicle battery has been temporarily disconnected for replacement or charging. To reset the system, turn the key once in the unlocking direction or press the "🔓" button on the access key fob or "🔓" button on the transmitter. The double locking system will then operate normally.

NOTE

For models with the keyless access function, it is possible to reset the double locking system by gripping the door handle.

Child safety locks



Each rear door has a child safety lock. When the child safety lock lever is in the "LOCK" position, the door cannot be opened from inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

⚠ WARNING

Always turn the child safety locks to the "LOCK" position when children sit on the rear seat. Serious injury could result if a child accidentally opens the door and falls out.

Windows

⚠ WARNING

To avoid serious personal injury caused by accidental, child's mischief, or improper operation, the driver is responsible for obeying the following instructions without exception.

- **When operating the power windows, be extremely careful to prevent anyone's fingers, arms, neck, head or other objects from being caught in the window.**
- **Do not allow children to operate the power windows. Closing a power window on someone can cause death or serious injury. The driver is responsible for instructing children not to operate the power windows.**
- **Always lock the passengers' windows using the lock switch when children are riding in the vehicle.**
- **Always carry the key when you leave the vehicle for safety reasons and never allow an unattended child to remain in the vehicle. Failure to follow this**

procedure could result in injury to a child operating the power window.

The power windows operate only when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

NOTE

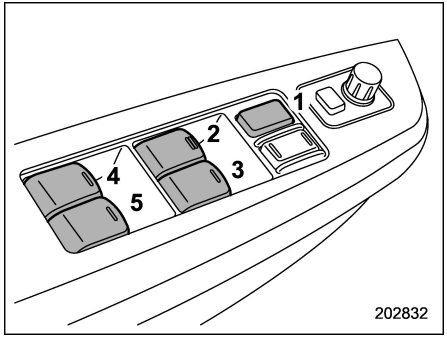
If the vehicle battery is disconnected (e. g., the battery or fuse is replaced), the following functions will be deactivated.

- **One-touch auto up/down function**
- **Anti-entrapment function**

Initialize the power window to reactivate such functions. For details, refer to “Initialization of power window” ☞2-27.

■ Power window operation

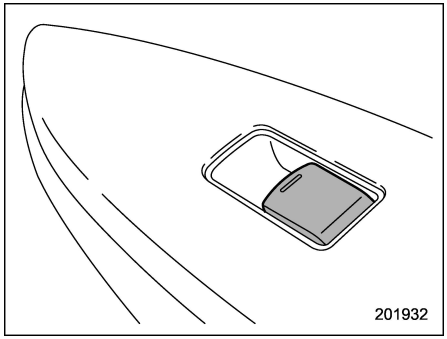
▼ Power window switches



Driver’s side power window switches

1) Lock switch
2) For driver’s window
3) For front passenger’s window
4) For rear left window
5) For rear right window

All door windows can be controlled by the power window switch cluster at the driver side door.

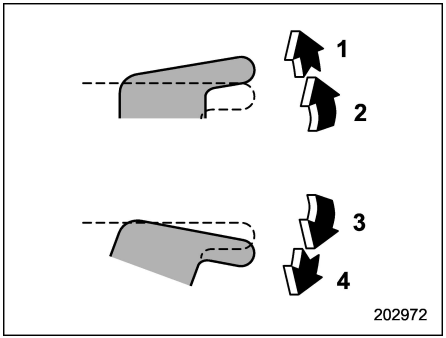


Passenger’s side power window switches

Each passenger window can be controlled by the power window switch located on the door.

– CONTINUED –

▼ **Operating the window**



1) Automatically close
2) Close
3) Open
4) Automatically open

NOTE

• To stop the window midway during automatically open/close, press down or pull up the switch slightly.

• When you operate as follows, the power window breaker will operate and it may not be possible to open or close the window.

– After the driver's side window is fully closed or fully opened, the switch is continuously operated in the same direction for a few seconds.

– After the windows for three or more seats are fully closed or fully opened, each switch is continuously operated in the same direction simultaneously for a few seconds.

In this case, after the breaker recovers, be sure to initialize the power windows. If they are not initialized, the one-touch auto up/down function will not operate. Refer to "Initialization of power window" ☞2-27.

▼ **Off delay function**

It is possible to open or close all windows for approximately 40 seconds after turning the ignition switch to the "ACC" or "LOCK"/ "OFF" position (off delay function). If either front door is opened within 40 seconds, the off delay function will be canceled.

NOTE

While the indicator light on the switch is illuminated, it may be possible to open or close the driver's window.

▼ **Anti-entrapment function**

⚠ CAUTION

- **Never attempt to test this function using fingers, hands or other parts of your body.**
- **The anti-entrapment function may not operate properly if some object gets trapped just before the window fully closes.**

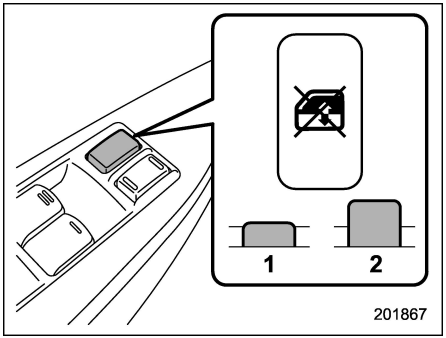
NOTE

• If a window detects an impact similar to that caused by trapping an object (for example, when the vehicle encounters a deep pothole), the anti-entrapment function may operate.

• The window cannot be operated for a few seconds after the anti-entrapment function operates.

While closing with the one-touch auto up function, if the window senses a substantial enough object trapped between the window and the window frame, it automatically moves down slightly and stops.

▼ Locking the passengers' windows



1) Lock
2) Unlock

To lock:
Press the lock switch. When the lock switch is in the lock position, the passengers' windows cannot be opened or closed.

To unlock:
Press the lock switch again.

■ Initialization of power window

If the vehicle's battery is disconnected due to situations such as battery or fuse replacement, the following functions will be deactivated.

- One-touch auto up/down function
- Anti-entrapment function

Initialize the power window using the following procedure to reactivate these functions. Perform the following procedure for each of the doors that have the one-touch auto up/down function.

1. Close the door.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.
3. Open the window of the door that you closed in step 1 halfway by pushing down the power window switch.
4. Pull up the power window switch of the door that you closed in step 1 and close the window completely. Continue pulling up the switch for approximately 1 second after the window is closed completely.

Trunk lid

⚠ WARNING

- **To prevent dangerous exhaust gas from entering the vehicle, always keep the trunk lid closed while driving.**
- **Help prevent young children, adults or animals from locking themselves in the trunk. On hot or sunny days, the temperature in the trunk could quickly become high enough to cause death or serious heat-related injuries including brain damage to anyone locked inside, particularly for small children.**
- **When leaving the vehicle, close all windows and lock all doors. Also make certain that the trunk is closed.**

– CONTINUED –

■ To open and close the trunk lid from outside

To open the trunk lid from outside, use the keyless access function or remote keyless entry system. For details, refer to the following section.

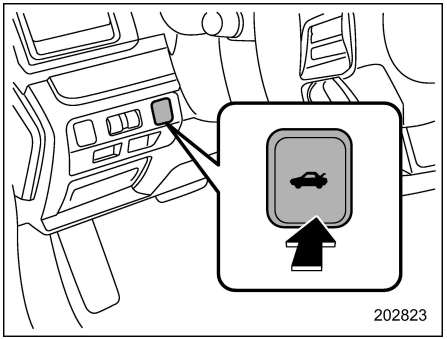
- For models with “keyless access with push-button start system”, refer to “Locking and unlocking by holding the access key fob” ☞2-12 or “Opening trunk lid” ☞2-21.
- For models without “keyless access with push-button start system”, refer to “Opening trunk lid” ☞2-21.

To close the trunk lid, lightly press the trunk lid down until the latch engages.

NOTE

Do not leave your valuables in the trunk when you leave your vehicle.

■ To open the trunk lid from inside



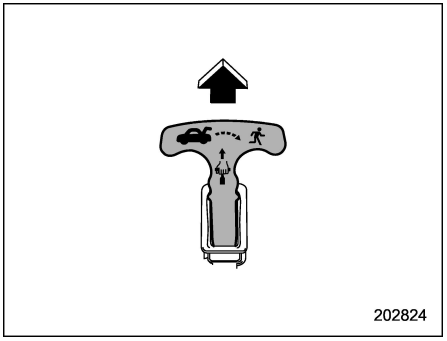
Press the trunk lid opener switch for more than 1 second.

NOTE

The trunk lid will not open when the select lever is in a position other than the “P” position (CVT models) or the vehicle is moving.

■ Internal trunk lid release handle

The internal trunk lid release handle is a device designed to open the trunk lid from inside the trunk. In the event children or adults become locked inside the trunk, the handle allows them to open the lid. The handle is located on the inside of the trunk lid.



The type of handle differs depending on the model.

To open the trunk lid from inside the trunk, pull the yellow handle as indicated by the arrow on the handle. This operation unlocks the trunk lid. Then, push up the lid.

The handle is made of material that remains luminescent for approximately an hour in the dark trunk space after it is exposed to ambient light even for a short time.

⚠ WARNING

Never allow any child to get in the trunk and play with the release handle. If the driver starts the vehicle without knowing that a child is

inside the trunk and the child opens the lid using the release handle, the child could fall out and be killed or seriously injured.

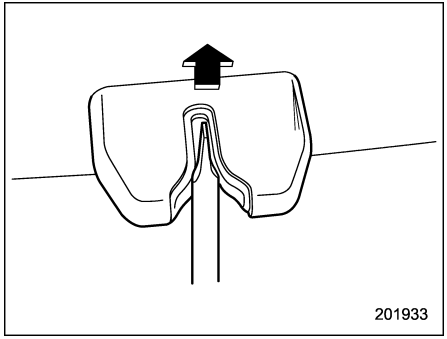
⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not close the lid while gripping the release handle. The handle may be damaged.**
- **Do not use the handle as a hook to fasten straps or ropes to secure your cargo in the trunk. Such use may result in damage of the handle.**
- **Load the trunk so that cargo cannot strike the release handle. If the cargo hits the handle while the vehicle is being driven, the handle may be pulled and the trunk lid may open. That may cause cargo to fall out of the trunk, which could create a traffic safety hazard.**

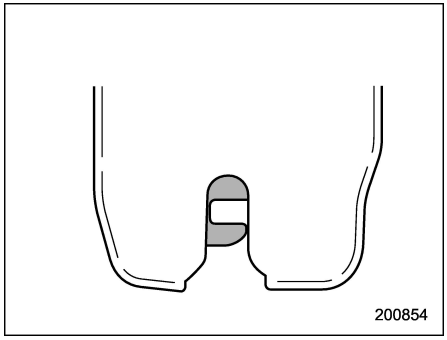
▼ Inspection

Perform the following steps at least twice a year to check the release handle for correct operation.

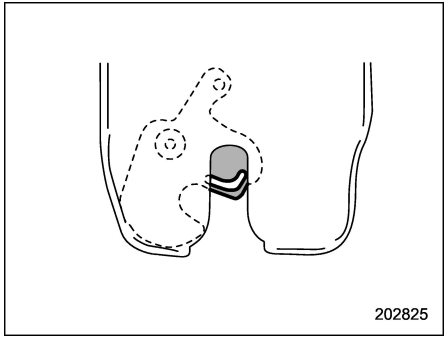
1. Open the trunk lid.



2. Use a flat-head screwdriver with a thin blade. Slide the flat-head screwdriver blade from the slit aperture of the lock assembly fully to the end until you hear a click.



This places the latch in the locked position.



3. Move the release handle, from outside the vehicle, in the direction of the arrow to check if the latch is released.

– CONTINUED –

If the latch is not released, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

In that case, use the key to release the latch, then close the trunk lid.

Also, if the movement of the release handle feels restricted or not entirely smooth during operation, or the handle and/or handle base is cracked, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

Sunroof (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

Never let anyone's hands, arms, head or any objects protrude from the sunroof. A person could be seriously injured if any of the following conditions occur.

- **The vehicle stops suddenly.**
- **The vehicle turns sharply.**
- **The vehicle is involved in an accident.**
- **Body parts protruding from the vehicle are struck by outside objects.**

To avoid serious personal injury caused by accidental, child's mischief, or improper operation, the driver is responsible for obeying the following instructions without exception.

- **Before closing the sunroof, make sure that no one's hands, arms, head or other objects will be accidentally caught in the sunroof.**
- **Always carry the key when you leave the vehicle for safety reasons and never allow an unattended child to remain in the vehicle. Failure to follow this procedure could result in injury to a child operating the sunroof.**
- **Never try to check the anti-entrapment function by deliberately placing part of your body in the sunroof.**

⚠ CAUTION

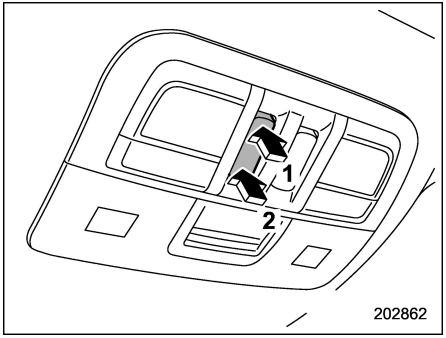
- **Do not sit on the edge of the open sunroof.**
- **Do not operate the sunroof if falling snow or extremely cold conditions have caused it to freeze shut.**
- **Do not touch the moving parts of the sunroof while the sunroof is operating.**
- **If the sunroof does not close, we recommend that you have the system checked by a SUBARU dealer.**

The sunroof has both tilting and sliding functions.

The sunroof operates only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

■ Sunroof switches

▼ Tilting sunroof



1) Raise
2) Lower

The tilting function is activated only when the sunroof is fully closed.

To raise:

Press and hold the rear side of the “UP/DOWN” switch for a short time. The sunroof raises completely.

To lower:

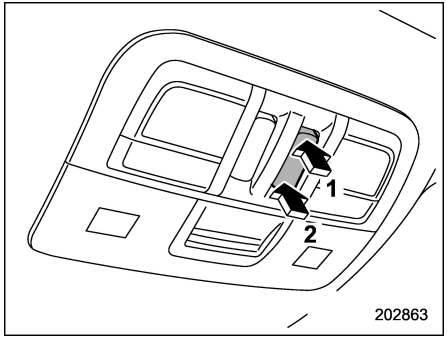
Press and hold the front side of the “UP/DOWN” switch until the preferred position has reached.

Release the switch after the sunroof has been raised or has been lowered completely. Pressing the switch continuously may cause damage to the sunroof.

NOTE

One-touch operation does not take place when the sunroof is lowered. Press the switch continuously to lower the sunroof.

▼ Sliding sunroof



1) Open
2) Close

Tilt down the sunroof completely before performing the sliding operation.

To open:

Press the rear side of the “OPEN/CLOSE” switch. The sun shade will also be opened together with the sunroof. The sunroof will stop once at a midway position. Press the rear side of the switch again to open the sunroof completely.

To close:

Press the front side of the “OPEN/CLOSE” switch. To stop the sunroof at a selected mid-way position while opening or closing it, momentarily press the front side or rear side of the switch.

After washing the vehicle or after it rains, wipe away water on the roof prior to opening the sunroof to prevent drops of water from falling into the passenger compartment.

NOTE

Driving with the sunroof fully open can cause an annoying sound to be generated at high speeds. If this occurs, use the sunroof at the midway stop position when the sunroof is opened.

▼ Anti-entrapment function

When the sunroof senses a substantial enough object trapped between its glass and the vehicle’s roof during closure, it automatically moves back to the fully open position and stops there. The anti-entrapment function may also be activated by a strong shock on the sunroof even when there is nothing trapped.

– CONTINUED –

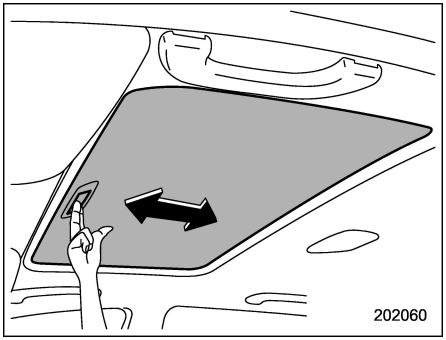
⚠ CAUTION

Never attempt to test this function using fingers, hands or other parts of your body.

NOTE

For the sake of safety, it is recommended that you avoid driving with the sunroof fully opened.

■ Sun shade



You can slide the sun shade forward or backward by hand while the sunroof is closed.

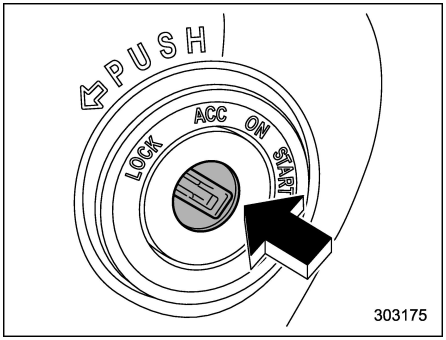
If the sunroof is opened, the sun shade also moves back.

Ignition switch 3-4
Conventional type ignition switch 3-5
Push-button ignition switch 3-6
Hazard warning flasher 3-8
Meters and gauges 3-9
Combination meter illumination 3-9
Canceling the function for meter/gauge needle movement upon turning on the ignition switch 3-9
Speedometer 3-9
Odometer 3-9
Double trip meter 3-10
Tachometer 3-10
Fuel gauge 3-11
Temperature gauge 3-12
ECO gauge 3-12
REV indicator light and buzzer (STI) 3-13
Warning and indicator lights 3-13
Initial illumination for system check 3-13
Seatbelt warning light and chime 3-14
Rear seatbelt indicator light (if equipped) 3-16
SRS airbag system warning light 3-16
Front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators (if equipped) 3-17
Malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light) 3-17
Charge warning light 3-18
Oil pressure warning light 3-18
Engine low oil level warning indicator (except STI) 3-18
AT OIL TEMP warning light (CVT models) 3-19
Rear differential oil temperature warning light (STI) 3-19
Low tire pressure warning light (if equipped) 3-20
ABS warning light 3-22
Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light 3-22
Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light/ Traction mode indicator light 3-24
Brake system warning light (red) 3-25
Electronic parking brake warning light (yellow) (models with electronic parking brake system) 3-26
Electronic parking brake indicator light (models with electronic parking brake system) 3-26
Auto Vehicle Hold ON indicator light (models with electronic parking brake system) 3-27
Auto Vehicle Hold operation indicator light (models with electronic parking brake system) 3-27
Vacuum pump system warning light (yellow) (except STI) 3-27
Low fuel warning light 3-27
Windshield washer fluid warning indicator 3-27
Hill start assist warning light/Hill start assist OFF indicator light (if equipped) 3-27
Door open warning light 3-28
All-Wheel Drive warning light (if equipped) 3-28
Power steering warning light (except STI) 3-28
Automatic headlight beam leveler warning light (models with LED headlights) 3-29
LED headlight warning light (if equipped) 3-29
Warning chimes and warning indicator of the keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped) 3-29
Immobilizer indicator light 3-34

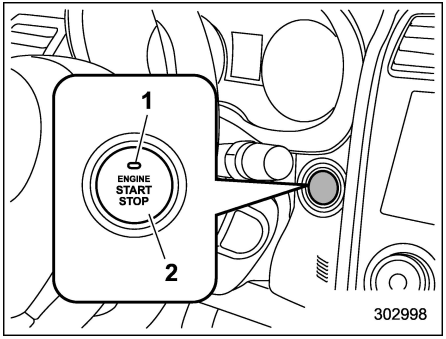
SI-DRIVE indicator (if equipped) 3-34
Shift-up indicator (STI without gear shift indicator models) 3-35
Select lever/gear position indicator (if equipped) 3-35
Turn signal indicator lights 3-35
High beam indicator light 3-35
High Beam Assist indicator light (green) (if equipped) 3-36
High Beam Assist warning indicator (yellow) (if equipped) 3-36
Cruise control indicator 3-36
Cruise control set indicator 3-36
Headlight indicator light 3-36
Steering Responsive Headlight warning light/cr/>Steering Responsive Headlight OFF indicator light (if equipped) 3-36
Front fog light indicator light (if equipped) 3-36
Rear fog light indicator light 3-36
Driver's control center differential auto indicator (STI) 3-37
Driver's control center differential indicator and warning (STI) 3-37
REV indicator light (STI) 3-38
SUBARU Rear Vehicle Detection warning indicator (if equipped) 3-38
SUBARU Rear Vehicle Detection OFF indicator (if equipped) 3-38
Combination meter display (color LCD) 3-38
Basic operation 3-39
Welcome screen and Good-bye screen 3-40
Warning screen 3-40
Basic screens 3-40
Warning indication 3-41
Menu screens 3-42
Multi-function display (color LCD) 3-45
Welcome screen 3-46
Self-check screen 3-46
Interruption screen 3-47
Basic operation 3-47
Basic screens 3-48
Setting screen 3-53
How to get the source code using the open source 3-62
Light control switch 3-63
Headlights 3-63
High/low beam change (dimmer) 3-65
High Beam Assist function (if equipped) 3-65
Headlight flasher 3-69
Daytime running light system (if equipped) 3-69
Steering Responsive Headlight (SRH) (if equipped) 3-70
To turn on/off the SRH 3-70
Turn signal lever 3-71
One-touch lane changer 3-71
Illumination brightness control 3-71
Headlight beam leveler 3-72
Automatic headlight beam leveler (models with LED headlights) 3-72
Manual headlight beam leveler (models without LED headlights) 3-72
Fog light switch 3-74
Front fog light switch (if equipped) 3-74

Rear fog light switch 3-75
Wiper and washer 3-76
General precautions 3-76
General tips 3-77
Windshield wiper and washer switches 3-78
Headlight washer 3-80
Mirrors 3-81
Inside mirror 3-81
Auto-dimming mirror (if equipped) 3-81
Outside mirrors 3-82
Defogger and deicer 3-83
Tilt/telescopic steering wheel 3-85
Horn 3-85

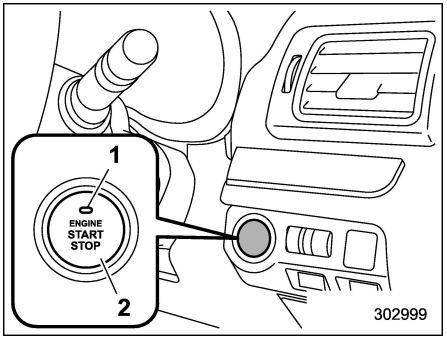
Ignition switch



Conventional type ignition switch



Push-button ignition switch (left-hand drive models)



Push-button ignition switch (right-hand drive models)

1) Operation indicator
2) Push-button ignition switch

⚠ WARNING

- **Before leaving the vehicle, observe the following instructions for safety.**
  - **Remove the key from the ignition switch (models with conventional type ignition switch).**
  - **Carry out the access key fob (models with push-button ignition switch).**
  - **Never allow an unattended child to remain in the vehicle.**

  Failure to observe these instructions could result in injury to a child or others. Children could operate the power windows, the sunroof or other controls, or even make the vehicle move.
- **Never turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position while driving or being towed. Doing so will lock the steering wheel, preventing steering control. In addition, when the engine stops, it takes a much greater effort than usual to steer.**

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent the vehicle battery from discharging, keep the ignition switch in the "LOCK"/"OFF" position when the engine is not running.

■ Conventional type ignition switch

⚠ CAUTION

Do not attach a large key holder or key case to either key. If it hits your knees or hands while you are driving, it could turn the ignition switch to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position, stopping the engine. Also, if the key is attached to a keyholder or to a large bunch of other keys, centrifugal force may act on it as the vehicle moves, resulting in unwanted turning of the ignition switch.

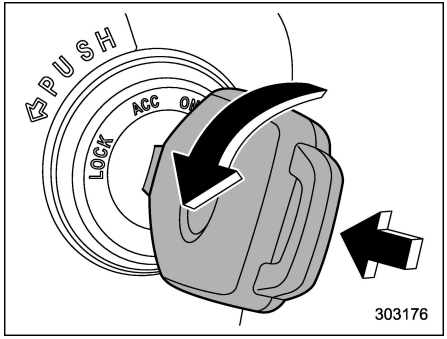
▼ Switch positions

Position	Description
LOCK	You can insert or remove the key only in this position. The steering wheel will be locked with the key removed.
ACC	You can use the electrical accessories (audio, accessory power outlet, etc.).
ON	Normal operating position after starting the engine
START	The engine is started in this position.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not turn the ignition switch to the "START" position while the engine is running.

NOTE



● To turn the key from the "ACC" to "LOCK" position:

– Place the select lever in the "P" position (CVT models).

– Push in and turn the key.

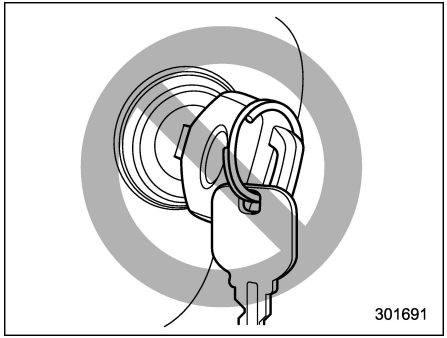
● If your registered key fails to start the engine, perform the following procedure to restart the engine.

(1) Pull out the key once (the immobilizer indicator light will blink).

(2) Insert the key again.

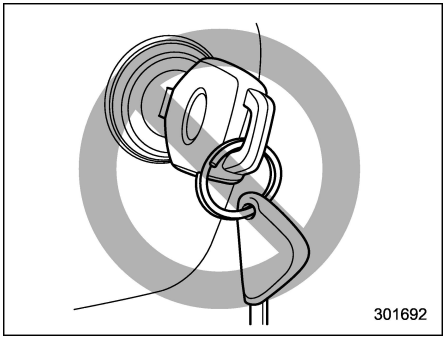
(3) Return the ignition switch to the "START" position.

● The engine may not start in the following cases:



– The key grip is touching another key or a metallic key holder.

– CONTINUED –



– The key is near another key that contains an immobilizer transponder.

– The key is near or touching another transmitter.

▼ Key reminder chime (Middle East models)

The reminder chime sounds when opening the driver's door with the ignition switch in the "LOCK" or "ACC" position.

The chime stops under the following conditions.

- when turning the ignition switch to the "ON" position
- when removing the key from the ignition switch
- when closing the driver's door

▼ Ignition switch light

For easy access to the ignition switch in the dark, the ignition switch light illuminates under the following conditions.

- when opening the driver's door
- when unlocking the driver's door using the remote keyless entry transmitter.

The light remains illuminated for several tens of seconds and then gradually turns off under the following conditions.

- when closing the driver's door
- when unlocking the doors using the remote keyless entry transmitter

The light turns off immediately under the following conditions.

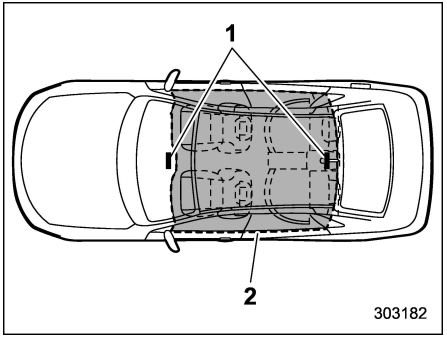
- when turning the ignition switch to the "ON" position
- when locking all doors using the remote keyless entry transmitter

■ Push-button ignition switch

▼ Safety precautions

Refer to "Safety precautions" ☞2-9.

▼ Operating range



1) Antenna
2) Operating range

NOTE

• If the access key fob is not detected within the operating range, you cannot operate the push-button ignition switch or start the engine.

• Even when the access key fob is outside the vehicle, if it is placed too close to the glass, it may be possible to switch the power or to start the engine.

• Do not leave the access key fob in the following places. It may become

impossible to operate the push-button ignition switch or start the engine.

- **– On the instrument panel**
- **– On the floor**
- **– Inside the glove box**
- **– Inside the door trim pocket**
- **– On the rear seat**
- **– On the rear shelf**
- **– Inside the trunk**

● If the battery of access key fob is discharged, perform the procedure described in "Access key fob – if access key fob does not operate properly" ☞9-17 to operate the push-button ignition switch or start the engine. In such a case, replace the battery immediately. Refer to "Replacing battery of access key fob" ☞11-59.

▼ Switching power status

Power status	Indicator color	Operation
OFF	Turned off	Power is turned off.
ACC	Orange	You can use the audio and accessory power outlet.
ON	Orange (while the engine is stopped)	You can use all electrical systems.
	OFF (during engine operation)	

The power will be switched every time you press the push-button ignition switch.

1. Carry the access key fob, and sit in the driver's seat.
2. Shift the shift lever in neutral (MT models) or the select lever in the "P" position (CVT models).
3. Press the push-button ignition switch without depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (CVT models).

The power will be switched in the sequence of "OFF", "ACC", "ON" and "OFF".

When the engine is stopped and the push-button ignition switch is in "ACC" or "ON", the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch illuminates in orange.

⚠ CAUTION

- **To avoid a malfunction, observe the following precautions.**
  - **– Do not spill drinks or other liquids on the push-button ignition switch.**
  - **– Do not touch the push-button ignition switch with a hand that is soiled with oil or other contaminants.**
- **If the push-button ignition switch does not operate smoothly, stop the operation. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.**
- **If the push-button ignition switch does not illuminate even when the instrument panel illumination is on, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer.**
- **If the vehicle was exposed to sunlight for a long time, the surface of the push-button ignition switch may get hot. Be careful not to burn yourself.**

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

• When operating the push-button ignition switch, firmly press it.
• If you press the push-button ignition switch quickly, the power may not turn on or off.
• If the indicator light on the push-button ignition switch flashes in green when pressing the push-button ignition switch, steering is locked. When this occurs, press the push-button ignition switch while turning the steering wheel left and right.

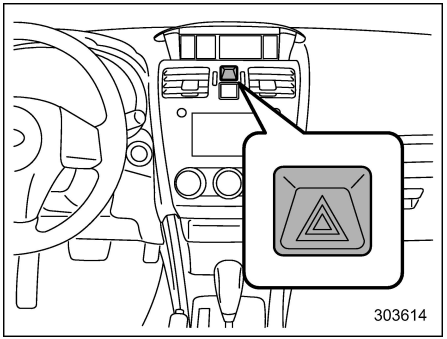
▽ Battery drainage prevention function

When the push-button ignition switch is left in the “ACC” or “ON” position for approximately 1 hour, the push-button ignition switch will be automatically switched to “OFF” to prevent the battery from going dead. (In CVT models, this function is activated when the select lever is in the “P” position.)

▼ When access key fob does not operate properly

Refer to “Access key fob – if access key fob does not operate properly” ☞9-17.

Hazard warning flasher



Use the hazard warning flasher to warn other drivers when you have to park your vehicle under emergency conditions. The hazard warning flasher works with the ignition switch in any position.

To turn on the hazard warning flasher, press the hazard warning button on the instrument panel. To turn off the flasher, press the button again.

NOTE

• When the hazard warning flasher is on, the turn signals do not work.
• If you depress the brake pedal suddenly, the hazard warning flasher may blink rapidly. For details, refer to “Emergency Stop Signal” ☞7-31.

Meters and gauges

NOTE

Liquid-crystal displays are used in some of the meters and gauges on the combination meter. You will find their indications hard to see if you wear polarized glasses.

■ Combination meter illumination

When you turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position, the various parts of the combination meter are illuminated in the following sequence.

1. Warning lights, indicator lights, meter needles, gauge needles illuminate.
2. Meter and gauge indications each show MAX position.
3. Meter and gauge indications each show MIN position.
4. Regular illumination (for driving) begins.

NOTE

This sequence of operations may not take place if you quickly turn the ignition switch to start the engine. This is not a malfunction.

■ Canceling the function for meter/gauge needle movement upon turning on the ignition switch

It is possible to activate or deactivate the movement of the meter needles and gauge needles that takes place when you turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position. To change the setting, perform the procedures described in "Gauge Initial Movement" ☞3-44.

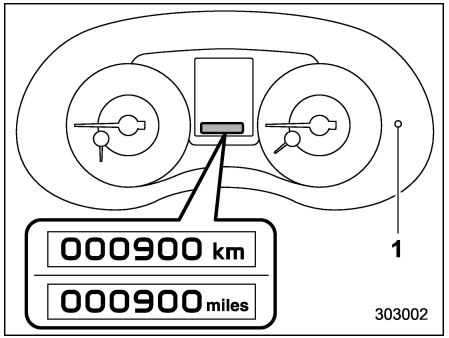
■ Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle speed. The digital speedometer can be also displayed on the combination meter display (color LCD).

▼ Speed warning chime (Middle East models)

When the speed is over approximately 120 km/h (75 mph), a chime sounds.

■ Odometer



1) Trip knob

This meter displays the odometer when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

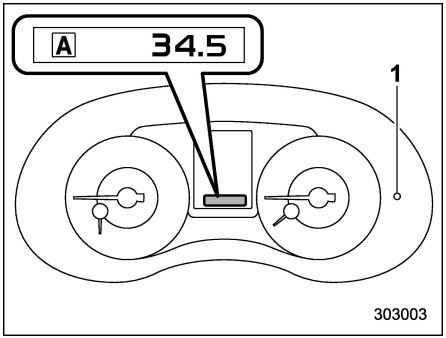
The odometer shows the total distance that the vehicle has been driven.

If you press the trip knob when the ignition switch is in the "LOCK"/"OFF" or "ACC" position, the odometer/trip meter will light up. If you do not press the trip knob within 10 seconds of illumination of the odometer/trip meter, the odometer/trip meter will turn off.

Also, if you open and close the driver's door within 10 seconds of illumination of the odometer/trip meter, the odometer/trip meter will turn off.

– CONTINUED –

■ Double trip meter



1) Trip knob

This meter displays the two trip meters when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

The trip meter shows the distance that the vehicle has been driven since you last set it to zero.

If you press the trip knob when the ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” or “ACC” position, the odometer/trip meter will light up. It is possible to switch between the A trip meter and B trip meter indications while the odometer/trip meter is lit up. If you do not press the trip knob within 10 seconds of illumination of the odometer/trip meter, the odometer/trip meter will turn off.

Also, if you open and close the driver’s door within 10 seconds of illumination of the odometer/trip meter, the odometer/trip meter will turn off.

You can switch the display as shown in the following sequence by pressing the trip knob.

TRIP A ⇄ TRIP B

To set the trip meter to zero, select the A trip or B trip meter by pressing the knob and keep the knob pressed for more than 2 seconds.

⚠ CAUTION

To ensure safety, do not attempt to change the function of the indicator while driving, as an accident could result.

NOTE

If the connection between the combination meter and battery is broken for any reason such as vehicle maintenance or fuse replacement, the data recorded on the trip meter will be lost.

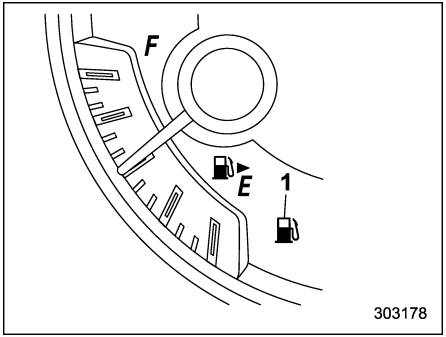
■ Tachometer

The tachometer shows the engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the engine with the pointer of the tachometer in the red zone. In this range, fuel injection will be cut by the engine control module to protect the engine from overrevving. The engine will resume running normally after the engine speed is reduced below the red zone.

■ Fuel gauge



1) Low fuel warning light

The fuel gauge shows the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the tank.

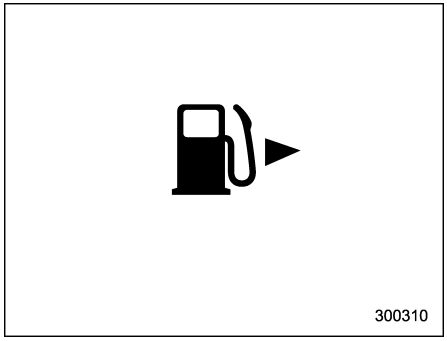
When the ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” or “ACC” position, the fuel gauge shows “E” even if the fuel tank contains fuel.

The gauge may move slightly during braking, turning or acceleration due to fuel level movement in the tank.

If you press the trip knob while the ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” or “ACC” position, the fuel gauge’s dial will illuminate and the needle will indicate the amount of fuel remaining in the tank.

If, while the fuel gauge needle is indicating the amount of fuel remaining in the tank, you (a) do not press the trip knob for 10 seconds or (b) open and close the driver’s door, the fuel gauge needle will drop to the “E” position and the dial and needle will turn off.

NOTE



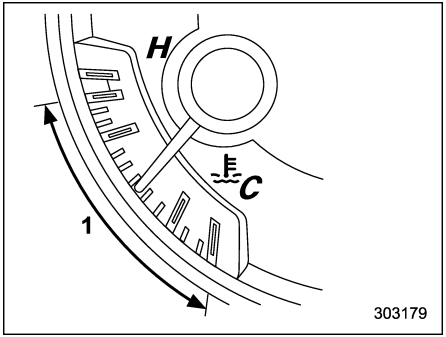
- **You will see the “⛽▶” sign in the fuel gauge.**

This indicates that the fuel filler door (lid) is located on the right side of the vehicle.

- **When you have refueled, the fuel gauge indicates the amount in the fuel tank after starting the engine. Also, it may take some time until the fuel gauge indication stabilizes.**
- **The gauge indicates only an approximate amount of fuel remaining in the tank. Use this indication only as a guide.**
- **If you refuel while the ignition switch is in the “ON” position, the fuel gauge may not indicate the correct amount of the fuel in the fuel tank.**
- **If the refuel amount is less than approximately 15 liters (4.0 US gal, 3.3 Imp gal), it may take some time until the fuel gauge indication stabilizes.**

– CONTINUED –

■ Temperature gauge



1) Normal operating range

The temperature gauge shows engine coolant temperature when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

The coolant temperature will vary in accordance with the outside temperature and driving conditions.

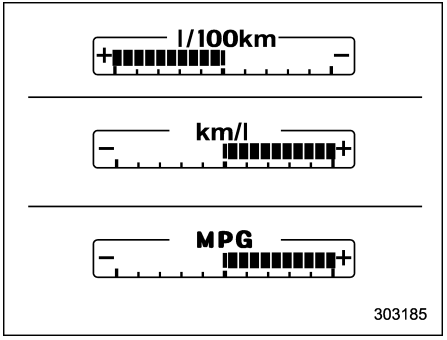
We recommend that you drive moderately until the pointer of the temperature gauge reaches near the middle of the range. Engine operation is optimum with the engine coolant at this temperature range and high revving operation when the engine is not warmed up enough should be avoided.

⚠ CAUTION

If the pointer exceeds the normal operating range, safely stop the vehicle as soon as possible.

Refer to “Engine overheating” ☞9-12.

■ ECO gauge



The unit displayed varies depending on the models.

The ECO gauge shows the difference between the current rate of fuel consumption and the average rate of fuel consumption since the trip meter was last reset.

The ECO gauge indicates the current fuel efficiency as shown in the following chart.

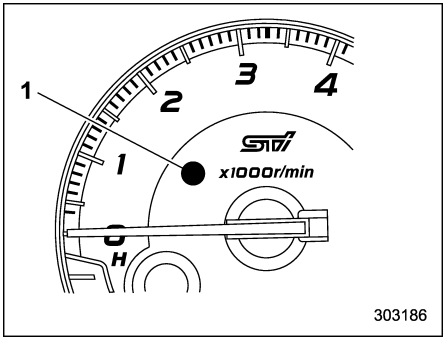
Displayed unit	Needle position	
	“+” side	“-” side
l/100km	Poorer	Better
km/l	Better	Poorer
MPG		

NOTE

● The ECO gauge shows only an approximate indication.

● After resetting the trip meter, the average rate of fuel consumption is not shown until driving 1 km (0.6 mile). Until that time, the ECO gauge does not operate.

REV indicator light and buzzer (STI)



1) REV indicator light

The REV alarm system has the following functions.

- When the engine speed reaches the level that was previously set, the REV indicator light illuminates to inform you. At this time, a buzzer also sounds if the buzzer setting is activated.
- Whenever the engine speed enters the red zone of the tachometer, the REV indicator light flashes.

NOTE

Even if the REV alarm system is not set, the REV indicator light will flash whenever the engine speed enters the red zone of the tachometer.

To change the REV indicator light settings, perform the procedures described in "REV settings (STI)" ☞3-44.

Warning and indicator lights

■ Initial illumination for system check

Several of the warning and indicator lights illuminate when you initially turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position. This permits checking the operation of the bulbs.

Apply the parking brake and turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position. For the system check, the following lights illuminate and then turn off after several seconds or after the engine has started.

: Seatbelt warning light
(The driver's seatbelt warning light and the front passenger's seatbelt warning light turn off only when each seatbelt is fastened.)

: SRS airbag system warning light

: Rear seatbelt indicator light (if equipped)

: Front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator light (if equipped)

: Front passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator light (if equipped)

: Malfunction indicator light
(Check Engine light)

– CONTINUED –

: Charge warning light

: Oil pressure warning light

: REV indicator light (STI)

AT OIL TEMP: AT OIL TEMP warning light (CVT models)

R.DIFF TEMP: Rear differential oil temperature warning light (STI)

: Low tire pressure warning light (if equipped)

: ABS warning light

: Brake system warning light

: Low fuel warning light

: Hill start assist warning light/Hill start assist OFF indicator light

: Door open warning light

AWD: AWD warning light (if equipped)

: Power steering warning light (except STI)

: Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/ Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light

OFF: Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light

: LED headlight warning light (if equipped)

: Automatic headlight beam leveler warning light (models with LED headlights)

TRAC MODE: Traction mode indicator light

: High Beam Assist indicator light (if equipped)

If any lights fail to illuminate, it indicates a burned-out bulb or a malfunction of the corresponding system.

We recommend that you consult your authorized SUBARU dealer for repair.

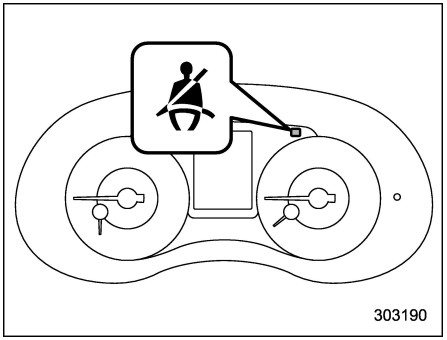
■ Seatbelt warning light and chime

NOTE

If your seatbelt warning device does not operate as described below, it may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you have the device inspected and, if necessary, repaired by the nearest SUBARU dealer.

▼ Seatbelt warning for driver's seat

Your vehicle is equipped with a seatbelt warning device for the driver's seat.



Driver's warning light

This device causes the seatbelt warning light on the combination meter to illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to "ON" to remind the driver to wear the seatbelt.

If the vehicle is driven at a speed no higher than approximately 20 km/h (12.5 mph) with the driver's seatbelt not fastened, the warning light will illuminate continuously.

If the vehicle reaches a speed of approximately 20 km/h (12.5 mph) with the driver's seatbelt not fastened, the warning light will flash and the chime will sound. This condition will continue for approximately 2 minutes.

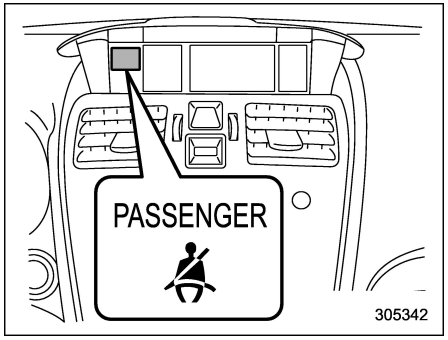
If either of the unfastened seatbelts are fastened at this time, the warning light corresponding to that seatbelt will immediately turn off but the chime will continue operating unless the remaining seatbelt is fastened.

If the driver's seatbelt is still not fastened when the 2-minute period has elapsed, the warning light will stop flashing and the chime will stop sounding.

The warning light, however, will remain illuminated continuously unless the seatbelt is fastened.

▼ Seatbelt warning for front passenger's seat (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a seatbelt warning device for the front passenger's seat.



Front passenger's warning light

With the ignition switch turned to the "ON" position, this device reminds the front passenger to fasten his/her seatbelt by illuminating a warning light as shown in the illustration.

If the vehicle is driven at a speed no higher than approximately 20 km/h (12.5 mph) with the front passenger's seatbelt not fastened, the warning light(s) corresponding to the unfastened seatbelt(s) will illuminate continuously.

If the vehicle reaches a speed of approximately 20 km/h (12.5 mph) with the front passenger's seatbelt not fastened, the warning light will flash and the chime will sound. This condition will continue for approximately 2 minutes.

If either of the unfastened seatbelts are fastened at this time, the warning light corresponding to that seatbelt will immediately turn off but the chime will continue operating unless the remaining seatbelt is fastened.

If the passenger's seatbelt is still not fastened when the 2-minute period has elapsed, the warning light will stop flashing and the chime will stop sounding. The warning light, however, will remain illuminated continuously unless the seatbelt is fastened.

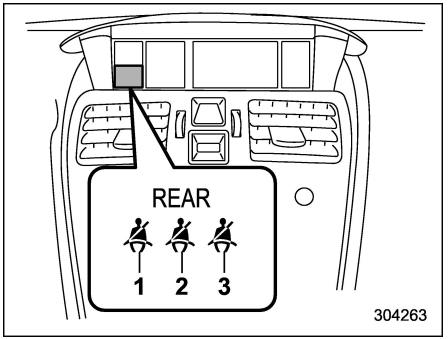
NOTE

• The occupant detection system of the front passenger's seat detects if the seat is occupied by a passenger. However, if there is an object on the seat, the seatbelt warning system may be activated even the seat is not occupied.

• If you use a cushion on the front passenger's seat, there is the possibility that the occupant detection system cannot detect the passenger.

– CONTINUED –

■ Rear seatbelt indicator light (if equipped)



1) Rear seat (left position)
2) Rear seat (center position)
3) Rear seat (right position)

This indicator light is located as shown in the illustration.

This indicator light illuminates when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position and any rear seatbelts are not fastened. Once 30 seconds have elapsed after the vehicle started moving or the rear seatbelts have been fastened, the indicator light turns off.

If rear passengers unfasten the seatbelts while driving, the indicator light will illuminate.

NOTE

The indicator light will illuminate in the following cases regardless of whether there are no passengers in the rear seat.

- **Any of the rear doors is opened or closed.**
- **You turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position within 30 minutes after any of the rear doors was opened or closed.**
- **You turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position within 30 minutes after you turned it to the “LOCK”/“OFF” or “ACC” position.**

The indicator light will turn off if any of the following actions was performed.

- **The rear seatbelts have been fastened (the tongue plate of the corresponding seatbelts has been inserted into the buckle).**
- **The vehicle has been driven more than 10 km/h (6 mph) for 30 seconds or longer.**

■ SRS airbag system warning light

For details about the SRS airbag system warning light, refer to “SRS airbag system monitor” ☞1-68.

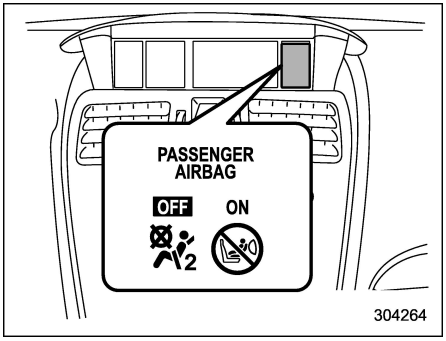
⚠ WARNING

If the warning light exhibits any of the following conditions, there may be a malfunction in the seatbelt pretensioners and/or SRS airbag system.

- **Flashing or flickering of the warning light**
- **No illumination of the warning light when the ignition switch is first turned to the “ON” position**
- **Continuous illumination of the warning light**
- **Illumination of the warning light while driving**

We recommend that you have the system checked immediately by your nearest SUBARU dealer. Unless checked and properly repaired, the seatbelt pretensioners and/or SRS airbags will operate improperly (e.g. SRS airbags may inflate in a very minor collision or not inflate in a severe collision), which may increase the risk of injury.

■ Front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators (if equipped)



: Front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator
: Front passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator

The front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators show you the status of the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag.

When the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, both the ON and OFF indicators illuminate for 6 seconds during which time the system is checked. Following the system check, both indicators turn off for 2 seconds. After that, one of the indicators illuminates depending on the status of the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag determined by the frontal airbag system monitoring.

If the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is activated, the passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator will illuminate while the OFF indicator will remain off.

If the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is deactivated, the passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator will remain off while the OFF indicator will illuminate.

With the ignition switch turned to the "ON" position, if both the ON and OFF indicators remain illuminated or off simultaneously even after the system check period, the system is malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer immediately for an inspection.

■ Malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light)

▼ Models equipped with OBD system

Vehicles sold in Europe are equipped with an enhanced on-board diagnostics system called OBD that monitors the performance of the vehicle's emission control system.

Vehicles sold in some countries outside Europe may be equipped with the OBD system. We recommend that you ask your SUBARU dealer to ascertain whether your vehicle has the OBD system.

The OBD system helps to protect the environment by ensuring that emissions are at acceptable levels for the life of the vehicle.

If the malfunction indicator light illuminates steadily or blinks while the engine is running, it may indicate that there is at least one problem or potential problem somewhere in the emission control system and that service is required. The OBD system also assists your service technician in properly diagnosing any malfunction.

⚠ CAUTION

If the malfunction indicator light illuminates while you are driving, we recommend that you have your vehicle checked/repaired by your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible. Continued vehicle operation without having the emission control system checked and repaired as necessary could cause serious damage, which may not be covered by your vehicle's warranty.

– CONTINUED –

▽ **If the light illuminates steadily**

If the light illuminates steadily while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, an emission control system malfunction has been detected.

We recommend that you have your vehicle checked by an authorized SUBARU dealer immediately.

▽ **If the light is blinking**

If the light is blinking while driving, an engine misfire condition has been detected which may damage the emission control system.

To prevent serious damage to the emission control system, you should do the following:

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard acceleration.
- Avoid steep uphill grades.
- Reduce the amount of cargo, if possible.

The malfunction indicator light may stop blinking and illuminate steadily after several driving trips. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked by an authorized SUBARU dealer immediately.

▼ **Models NOT equipped with OBD system**

If the malfunction indicator light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that there is a problem somewhere in the engine control system.

If the light illuminates while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

■ Charge warning light



If this light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that the charging system is not working properly.

If the light illuminates while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, stop the engine at the first safe opportunity and check the alternator belt. If the belt is loose, broken or if the belt is in good condition but the light remains illuminated, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

■ Oil pressure warning light



If this light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that the engine oil pressure is low and the lubricating system is not working properly.

If the light illuminates while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, stop the engine at the first safe opportunity and check the engine oil level. If the oil level is low, add oil immediately. If the engine oil is at the proper level but the light remains illuminated, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

For details about checking the oil level or adding the engine oil, refer to “Engine oil” ☞11-16.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the engine with the oil pressure warning light on. This may cause serious engine damage.

■ Engine low oil level warning indicator (except STI)



This indicator appears when the engine oil level decreases to the lower limit.

If the indicator appears while driving, park the vehicle in a safe and level location, and then check the engine oil level. When the engine oil level is not within the normal range, refill with engine oil as soon as possible. Refer to “Engine oil” ☞11-16.

If the indicator does not disappear after refilling the engine oil, or the indicator appears even though the engine oil level is within the normal range, we recommend that you have the vehicle checked by a SUBARU dealer.

NOTE

• After replacing or adding engine oil, if the engine oil level is within the normal range when restarting the engine on a level surface, the warning indicator will be off.

• The warning indicator may appear temporarily in the following conditions because a low oil level may be detected as a result of significant oil movement in the engine.

– when the vehicle is considerably inclined on an uphill or steep slope

– when the vehicle has continuously accelerated and decelerated

– when the vehicle is continuously turned

– when the vehicle is driven on a road that alternates continuously between uphill and downhill

■ AT OIL TEMP warning light (CVT models)

AT OIL TEMP

If this light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that the transmission fluid temperature is too hot.

If the light illuminates while driving, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe location and let the engine idle until the warning light turns off.

▼ Transmission control system warning

If the “AT OIL TEMP” warning light flashes after the engine has started, it may indicate that the transmission control system is not working properly. We recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer for service immediately.

■ Rear differential oil temperature warning light (STI)

R.DIFF TEMP

⚠ CAUTION

Reduce the vehicle speed and park the vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible if the R.DIFF TEMP warning light illuminates. Sustained driving with this light on can cause the rear differential and other parts of the powertrain to be damaged.

If this light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that the rear differential oil temperature is too hot.

At this time, the driver’s control center differential will automatically cancel the current torque-distribution ratio setting and adopt its minimum ratio.

If the light illuminates while driving, reduce vehicle speed and stop the vehicle in the nearest safe location. Park the vehicle for several minutes. After the light turns off, you can start driving.

If the light does not turn off, we recommend that you contact the nearest SUBARU dealer for service.

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

• If the tire pressures are not correct and/or the tires are not all the same size and brand, the rear differential will be heavily loaded when the vehicle is driven, resulting in an abnormally high oil temperature.

• The rear differential oil will deteriorate if its temperature increases enough for the rear differential oil temperature warning light to illuminate. It is advisable to have the rear differential oil replaced as soon as possible.

■ Low tire pressure warning light (if equipped)



When the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, the low tire pressure warning light will illuminate for approximately 2 seconds to check that the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) is functioning properly. If the system functions normally and the tire pressure of all four wheels is appropriate for the selected TPMS mode, the warning light will turn off. The TPMS mode should be changed according to the specified pressure shown on the tire inflation pressure label. For how to change a mode and information about the mode to be selected, refer to "Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)" ☞11-35.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly underinflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Should the warning light illuminate steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you have the system inspected by your nearest SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

- If this light does not illuminate briefly after the ignition switch is turned ON or the light illuminates steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you have your Tire Pressure Monitoring System checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.
- If this light illuminates while driving, never brake suddenly. Instead, perform the following procedure. Otherwise an accident involving serious vehicle damage and serious personal injury could occur.
  (1) Keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed.
  (2) Slowly pull off the road to a safe place.
  (3) Check the pressure for all four tires and adjust the pressure to the most appropriate one of two (normal or loading) COLD tire pressure shown on the tire placard on the door pillar on the driver's side.

If this light still illuminates while driving after adjusting the tire pressure, a tire may have significant damage and a fast leak that causes the tire to lose air rapidly. If you have a flat tire, replace it with a spare tire as soon as possible.

- When a spare tire is mounted or a wheel rim is replaced without the original pressure sensor/transmitter being transferred, the Low tire pressure warning light will illuminate steadily after blinking for approximately one minute. This indicates the TPMS is unable to monitor all four road wheels. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible for tire and sensor replacement and/or system resetting. If the light illuminates steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you promptly contact a SUBARU dealer to have the system inspected.

⚠ CAUTION

The tire pressure monitoring system is NOT a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge. Change the TPMS mode according to the specified pressure shown on the tire inflation pressure label. After any change to tire pressure(s), the tire pressure monitoring system will not re-check tire inflation pressures until the vehicle is first driven to a vehicle speed of at least 40 km/h (25 mph). After adjusting the tire pressures, increase the vehicle speed to at least 40 km/h (25 mph) to start the TPMS re-checking of the tire inflation pressures. If the tire pressures are now above the severe low pressure threshold, the low tire pressure warning light should turn off a few minutes later. Therefore, be sure to install the specified size for the front and rear tires.

– CONTINUED –

■ ABS warning light

CAUTION

- **If any of the following conditions occur, we recommend that you have the ABS system repaired at the first available opportunity by your SUBARU dealer.**
  - **The warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position.**
  - **The warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, but it does not turn off even after starting the vehicle.**
  - **The warning light illuminates while driving.**
- **When the warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the ABS function shuts down. However, the conventional brake system continues to operate normally.**

The ABS warning light illuminates together with the brake system warning light if the EBD system malfunctions. For further details of the EBD system malfunction warning, refer to "Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning" ☞3-25.

NOTE

If the warning light behavior is as shown in the following, the ABS system may be considered normal.

- **The warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position and turns off approximately 2 seconds after the engine has started.**
- **The warning light illuminates right after the engine is started but turns off immediately, remaining off.**
- **The warning light remains illuminated after the engine has been started, but it turns off while driving.**
- **The warning light illuminates while driving, but it turns off immediately and remains off.**

When driving with an insufficient battery voltage such as when the engine is jump started, the ABS warning light may illuminate. This is due to the low battery voltage and does not indicate a malfunction. When the battery becomes fully charged, the light will turn off.

■ Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light

▼ Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light

CAUTION

The Vehicle Dynamics Control system provides its ABS control through the electrical circuit of the ABS system. Accordingly, if the ABS is inoperative, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system becomes unable to provide ABS control. As a result, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system becomes inoperative, causing the warning light to illuminate. Although both the Vehicle Dynamics Control and ABS systems are inoperative in this case, the ordinary functions of the brake system are still available. You will be safe while driving with this condition, but drive carefully and we recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

NOTE

• If the electrical circuit of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system itself malfunctions, the warning light only illuminates. At this time, the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) remains fully operational.

• The warning light illuminates when the electronic control system of the ABS/Vehicle Dynamics Control system malfunctions.

The Vehicle Dynamics Control system is probably inoperative under any of the following conditions. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer immediately.

• The warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position.

• The warning light illuminates while the vehicle is running.

NOTE

If the warning light behavior is as described in the following examples, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system may be considered normal.

• The warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position and turns off approximately 2 seconds after the engine has started.

• The warning light illuminates right after the engine is started but turns off immediately and remains off.

• The warning light illuminates after the engine has started and turns off while the vehicle is subsequently being driven.

• The warning light illuminates while driving, but turns off immediately and remains off.

• The warning light illuminates when the engine has stalled and continues to illuminate after the engine has been restarted. However, it will turn off once the vehicle starts moving.

▼ Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light

The indicator light flashes during activation of the skid suppression function and during activation of the traction control function.

NOTE

• The light may remain illuminated for a short period of time after the engine has been started, especially in cold weather. This does not indicate the existence of a problem. The light should turn off as soon as the engine has warmed up.

• The indicator light illuminates when the engine has developed a malfunction and the malfunction indicator light/ CHECK ENGINE warning light is on.

The Vehicle Dynamics Control system is probably malfunctioning under the following condition. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

• The light does not turn off even after the lapse of several minutes (the engine has warmed up) after the engine has started.

– CONTINUED –

■ Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light/Traction mode indicator light OFF/TRAC. MODE

The indicator light shows the activated/deactivated conditions as follows.

		Activated/deactivated status for each function		
		Traction Control	Vehicle Dynamics Control system	ABS
Indicator light	Turn off	Activated	Activated	Activated
	TRAC. MODE OFF	Deactivated	Activated	Activated
	OFF	Deactivated	Deactivated	Activated

For details about the Traction Control and Vehicle Dynamics Control system, refer to “Vehicle Dynamics Control system” ☞7-35.

▼ Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light

This light illuminates when the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch is operated to select the traction mode or the Vehicle Dynamic Control OFF mode. For details, refer to “Vehicle Dynamics Control system” ☞7-35.

NOTE

- **The light may remain illuminated for a while after the engine has been started, especially in cold weather. This does not indicate the existence of a problem. The light should turn off as soon as the engine has warmed up.**
- **The indicator light illuminates when the engine has developed a problem and the CHECK ENGINE warning light/ malfunction indicator light is on.**

The Vehicle Dynamics Control system is probably malfunctioning under the following conditions. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

- The light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position.

• The light does not turn off even after the lapse of several minutes (the engine has warmed up) after the engine has started.

▼ **Traction mode indicator light**

The light illuminates when the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch is pressed briefly to select the traction mode. For details, refer to “Traction mode” ☞7-38.

■ Brake system warning light (red)



⚠ WARNING

- **Driving with the brake system warning light on is dangerous. This indicates your brake system may not be working properly. If the light remains illuminated, we recommend that you have the brakes inspected by a SUBARU dealer immediately.**
- **If at all in doubt about whether the brakes are operating properly, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have your vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair.**

This light has the following functions.

▼ **Parking brake indicator (models without electronic parking brake system)**

This light illuminates with the parking brake applied while the ignition switch is in the “ON” position. It turns off when the parking brake is fully released.

▼ **Brake fluid level warning**

The light illuminates when the brake fluid level has dropped to near the “MIN” level of the brake fluid reservoir with the ignition switch in the “ON” position and with the parking brake fully released.

If the light should illuminate while driving (with the parking brake fully released and with the ignition switch positioned in “ON”), it could be an indication of leaking of brake fluid or worn brake pads. If this occurs, immediately stop the vehicle at the nearest safe place and check the brake fluid level. For details, refer to “Brake fluid” ☞11-28. If the fluid level is below the “MIN” mark in the reservoir, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have the vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair. For details, refer to “Towing” ☞9-13.

▼ **Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning**

The brake system warning light also illuminates if a malfunction occurs in the EBD system. In that event, it illuminates together with the ABS warning light.

The EBD system may be malfunctioning if the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously while driving.

Even if the EBD system fails, the conventional braking system will still function. However, the rear wheels will be more prone to locking when the brakes are applied harder than usual and the vehicle’s motion may therefore become somewhat harder to control.

If the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously, take the following steps.

1. Stop the vehicle in the nearest safe, flat place.
2. Shut down the engine, apply the parking brake, and then restart it.
3. Release the parking brake. If both warning lights turn off, the EBD system may be malfunctioning.

We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.

– CONTINUED –

4. If both warning lights illuminate again and remain illuminated after the engine has been restarted, shut down the engine again, apply the parking brake, and check the brake fluid level. For details, refer to “Brake fluid” ☞11-28.

5. If the brake fluid level is not below the “MIN” mark, the EBD system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.

6. If the brake fluid level is below the “MIN” mark, DO NOT drive the vehicle. Instead, we recommend that you have the vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair. For details, refer to “Towing” ☞9-13.

■ Electronic parking brake warning light (yellow) (models with electronic parking brake system)

This light illuminates when the electronic parking brake system is malfunctioning.

⚠ WARNING

When the electronic parking brake warning light illuminates, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe location and we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

NOTE

• If the warning light behaves as described in the following conditions, the electronic parking brake system is operating normally.

– The warning light remains illuminated after the engine is started, but it turns off after the electronic parking brake is released, and the warning light remains off.

– The warning light illuminates while driving, but it turns off and remains off.

• If you start the engine while operating the electronic parking brake switch, the electronic parking brake warning light may illuminate. In this case, restart the engine and then operate the electronic parking brake switch. If the warning light turns off, the system may be considered normal.

■ Electronic parking brake indicator light (models with electronic parking brake system)



This light illuminates while the electronic parking brake is applied. If you operate the electronic parking brake switch while the electronic parking brake cannot be operated, this light flashes for approximately 10 seconds. When the electronic parking brake system is malfunctioning, this light may flash.

⚠ WARNING

- **When the electronic parking brake indicator light continues to flash, the electronic parking brake system may malfunction (excluding when the vehicle was stopped on a steep up/downhill slope, or when the electric parking brake was applied at high brake temperature). Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe location**

and we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

- **When the electronic parking brake indicator light does not turn off even if you release the electronic parking brake while the engine is running, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe location, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer and have the electronic parking brake system inspected.**

■ Auto Vehicle Hold ON indicator light (models with electronic parking brake system)

AVH

This indicator light illuminates when the Auto Vehicle Hold is activated. For details, refer to “Auto Vehicle Hold function” ☞7-44.

■ Auto Vehicle Hold operation indicator light (models with electronic parking brake system)



This indicator light illuminates while the vehicle is stopped by the Auto Vehicle Hold function. For details, refer to “Auto Vehicle Hold function” ☞7-44.

■ Vacuum pump system warning light (yellow) (except STI)



This light illuminates when a malfunction is detected in the vacuum pump system.

NOTE

The vacuum pump system assists the boost pressure when driving at high altitudes while the engine is cold.

■ Low fuel warning light



The low fuel warning light illuminates when the tank is nearly empty, at approximately 9.0 liters (2.3 US gal, 1.9 Imp gal). It only operates when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position. When this light illuminates, fill the fuel tank immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

Promptly put fuel in the tank whenever the low fuel warning light illuminates. Engine misfires as a result of an empty tank could cause damage to the engine.

■ Windshield washer fluid warning indicator



This indicator appears when the fluid level in the windshield washer fluid tank decreases to the lower limit (approximately 1.1 US qt, 1.0 liter, 0.9 Imp qt).

■ Hill start assist warning light/Hill start assist OFF indicator light (if equipped)



▼ Hill start assist warning light

While the engine is running, if there are any malfunctions in the Hill start assist system, the warning light will illuminate.

– CONTINUED –

⚠ WARNING

When the Hill start assist warning light illuminates, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected at an authorized SUBARU dealer.

▼ Hill start assist OFF indicator light

While the Hill start assist system is deactivated, the Hill start assist OFF indicator light illuminates continuously to inform the driver that the Hill start assist system is not operational.

■ Door open warning light

The warning light illuminates if any door or the trunk lid is not fully closed. This function is effective even if the ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” or “ACC” position, or the key is removed from the ignition switch.

Always make sure this light is not illuminated before you start to drive.

■ All-Wheel Drive warning light (if equipped) AWD

⚠ CAUTION

Continuing to drive with the AWD warning light flashing can damage the powertrain. If the AWD warning light starts to flash, promptly park in a safe location and check whether the tires have differing diameters and whether any of the tires has an excessively low inflation pressure.

NOTE

If the temporary spare tire is used, the AWD warning light may flash. Use of the temporary spare tire should therefore be restricted to the minimum time necessary. Replace the temporary spare tire with a conventional tire as soon as possible.

This light flashes if the vehicle is driven with tires of different diameters fitted on its wheels or with the air pressure excessively low in any of its tires.

■ Power steering warning light (except STI)

While the engine is running, this warning light illuminates when a malfunction has been detected in the electric power steering system.

⚠ CAUTION

When the power steering warning light is illuminated, there may be more resistance when the steering wheel is operated. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the vehicle inspected immediately.

NOTE

If the steering wheel is operated in the following ways, the power steering control system may temporarily limit the power assist in order to prevent the system components, such as the control computer and drive motor, from overheating.

- **The steering wheel is operated frequently and turned sharply while the vehicle is maneuvered at extremely low speeds, such as while frequently turning the steering wheel during parallel parking.**

● The steering wheel remains in the fully turned position for a long period of time.

At this time, there will be more resistance when steering. However this is not a malfunction. Normal steering force will be restored after the steering wheel is not operated for a while and the power steering control system has an opportunity to cool down. However, if the power steering is operated in a non-standard way which causes power assist limitation to occur too frequently, this may result in a malfunction of the power steering control system.

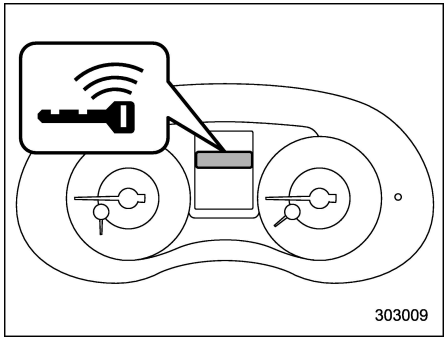
■ Automatic headlight beam leveler warning light (models with LED headlights)

This light illuminates when the automatic headlight beam leveler does not operate normally.
If this light illuminates while driving or does not turn off approximately 3 seconds after turning the ignition switch to the “ON” position, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at your SUBARU dealer.

■ LED headlight warning light (if equipped)

This light illuminates if the LED headlights malfunction. We recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

■ Warning chimes and warning indicator of the keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped)



Access key warning indicator

The warning chime and the access key warning indicator serve the following purposes:

- To minimize improper operation of the keyless access with push-button start system
- To protect your vehicle from theft

When the warning chime sounds and/or the warning indicator appears, take the appropriate action.

– CONTINUED –

⚠ WARNING

Never drive the vehicle if the indicator on the push-button ignition switch is flashing in green when starting the engine. This indicates the status that the steering wheel is not released and could result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION

- **When starting the engine again after the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch flashes in green, if the operation indicator is still flashing in green, there could be a steering lock malfunction. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.**
- **When the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch flashes in orange, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.**

NOTE

- **When doors are not locked because the access key fob is left inside the trunk, you cannot open the trunk lid by pushing the trunk opener button on the trunk lid. Press the trunk lid opener switch for approximately 1 second to open the trunk lid. Refer to "To open the trunk lid from inside" ☞2-28.**
- **Do not leave the access key fob inside the trunk. Depending on the status of the access key fob and situation, the trunk lockout protect function may not operate. Make sure that you carry the access key fob, and close the trunk lid.**
- **Even when the access key fob is within the operating ranges inside the vehicle, the access key warning for engine start may be provided depending on the status of the access key fob and the environmental conditions.**
- **When the access key fob is taken out of the vehicle through an open window, the access key takeout warning or passenger access key takeout warning will not be provided.**

▼ List of warnings

⚠ CAUTION

When any of the following warnings occurs even if the access key warning indicator does not appear, take the appropriate action.

Inside warning chime	Outside warning chime	Operation indicator on push-button ignition switch	Status	Action
Ding, ding ... (intermittent)*	—	—	You open the driver's door while the push-button ignition switch is "ACC" (in CVT models, when the select lever is in the "P" position).	Switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF", or close the driver's door. *When exiting the vehicle, be sure to switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF".
			You switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF" while the driver's door is open.	Close the driver's door.
Ding	Short beep (2 seconds)	—	**Lockout warning:** You attempt to lock all doors by using the door lock lever or power door locking switch while the access key fob is inside the vehicle.	Take out the access key fob from the vehicle, and lock the doors. *The doors cannot be locked while the access key fob is inside the vehicle. *A chirp sound will be heard, and all doors will be unlocked.
—	Short beep (2 seconds)	—	**Trunk lockout warning:** You close the trunk with the access key fob in it while all doors are locked (or during the automatic lock time period).	Take out the access key fob from the trunk, and close the trunk. *By pressing the trunk lid opener button after this warning chime sounds, the trunk can be unlocked.
			Access key lock-in warning: You touch the door lock sensor while the push-button ignition switch is "OFF" and the access key fob is inside the vehicle.	Take out the access key fob from the vehicle, and lock the doors. *If the access key fob is inside the vehicle, the doors cannot be locked.
—	Beep, beep ... (5 beeps)	—	**Door ajar warning:** You touch the door lock sensor while the push-button ignition switch is in the "OFF" position and another door or the trunk is opened.	Close the doors securely and lock them. *If one of the doors is opened, the doors cannot be locked.

*: if equipped

– CONTINUED –

Inside warning chime	Outside warning chime	Operation indicator on push-button ignition switch	Status	Action
Ding	Long beep (60 seconds max.)	—	**Power warning:** You touch the door lock sensor while carrying the access key fob and the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than “OFF” (in CVT models, when the select lever is in the “P” position).	Open the door and return the access key fob inside the vehicle, or switch the push-button ignition switch to “OFF”. *If the push-button ignition switch is not switched to “OFF”, the doors cannot be locked.
Ding, ding ... (7 seconds)	—	—	**Access key warning:** You drive the vehicle while the access key fob is not inside the vehicle.	Carry the access key fob, and drive the vehicle.
Ding	—	—	**Access key warning for engine start:** You press the push-button ignition switch while the access key fob is not inside the vehicle.	Carry the access key fob, and press the push-button ignition switch.
Ding	Beep, beep, beep (3 beeps)	—	**Access key takeout warning:** The driver exits the vehicle with the access key fob and closes the driver’s door while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than “OFF” (in CVT models, when the select lever is in the “P” position).	Switch the push-button ignition switch to “OFF”, and get out of the vehicle.
Ding	Beep, beep, beep (3 beeps)	—	**Passenger access key takeout warning:** A fellow passenger exits the vehicle with the access key fob and closes a door other than the driver’s door while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than “OFF”.	Return the access key fob to inside the vehicle, or switch the push-button ignition switch to “OFF”.

Inside warning chime	Outside warning chime	Operation indicator on push-button ignition switch	Status	Action
Long beep (continuous)	Long beep (continuous)	—	**Access key takeout without P position warning:** The driver exits the vehicle with the access key fob and closes the driver's door while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" (all models) and the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position (CVT models).	Shift the select lever to the "P" position (CVT models), switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF" (all models) and exit the vehicle.
Long beep (continuous)	—	—	**Select lever position warning (CVT models):** ● Case 1: You open the driver's door while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" and the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position. ● Case 2: You turn off the engine by pressing the push-button ignition switch and the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position.	● Case 1: Shift the select lever to the "P" position, switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF" and exit the vehicle. ● Case 2: Start the engine, shift the select lever to the "P" position, switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF" and exit the vehicle.
Ding	—	—	The battery of the access key fob is low.	Replace the battery of the access key fob.
Ding	—	Flashes in green (15 seconds max.)	**Steering lock warning:** You perform the engine start procedure, but the steering is still locked.	While turning the steering wheel right and left lightly, depress the brake pedal and press the push-button ignition switch.
Ding	—	Flashes in orange	**System malfunction warning:** A malfunction is detected in the power system or steering lock.	We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately and have the vehicle inspected.

NOTE

The select lever position warning chime will not sound while the select lever is in the "R" position. In this case, an electronic chirp will sound instead.

– CONTINUED –

■ Immobilizer indicator light

This light begins flashing under any of the following conditions.

For models with "keyless access with push-button start system":

- Immediately after the push-button ignition switch is turned to the "OFF" position.
- Immediately after the driver's door is opened or closed when all of the following conditions are met.
  - – The push-button ignition switch is in the "ON" or "ACC" position.
  - – The access key fob is outside the vehicle.
  - – The engine is not running.

In the event that an unauthorized key is used (for example, the key is unregistered or the ID code does not match), the power is not switched to "ON" and the immobilizer indicator light continues blinking.

For models without "keyless access with push-button start system":

- Approximately 60 seconds after the ignition switch is turned from the "ON" position to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position.
- Immediately after the key is pulled out.

If the indicator light does not blink in the above conditions, it may indicate that immobilizer system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

In the event that an unauthorized key (for example, an unauthorized duplicate) is used, the immobilizer indicator light illuminates. For details about the immobilizer system, refer to "Immobilizer" ☞2-4.

NOTE

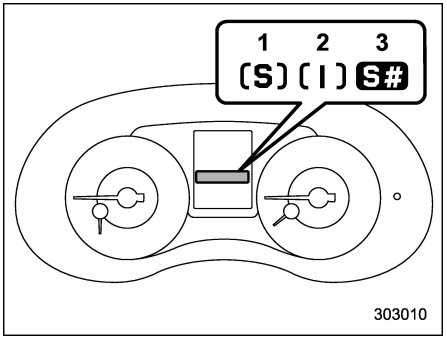
- The immobilizer indicator light remains off in the following conditions. It means that the matching of the ID code is completed and the immobilizer system is deactivated, and it does not indicate a malfunction.

Models with "keyless access with push-button start system":
– while the engine is running
– the push-button ignition switch has been turned to the "ON" or "ACC" position and the driver's door has not been opened or closed

Models without "keyless access with push-button start system":
– while the engine is running
– for approximately 60 seconds after the ignition switch is turned from the "ON" position to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position
– when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position

- Even if a malfunction occurs, such as the immobilizer indicator light flashes irregularly, it will not affect the functionality of the immobilizer system.

■ SI-DRIVE indicator (if equipped)

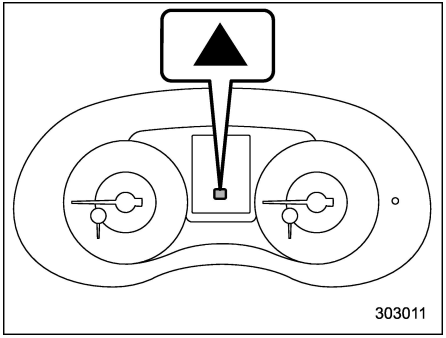


1) Sport (S) mode
2) Intelligent (I) mode
3) Sport Sharp (S#) mode

This indicator shows the current SI-DRIVE mode.

For details of SI-DRIVE mode, refer to "SI-DRIVE" ☞7-26.

■ Shift-up indicator (STI without gear shift indicator models)

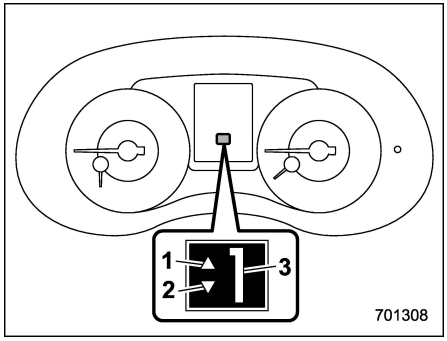


While driving, this indicator appears and informs the driver about the upshift timing for fuel-efficient driving.

The shift-up indicator can be activated or deactivated.

Refer to “Gear Position Indicator Setting (MT without gear shift indicator models)” ☞3-44.

■ Select lever/gear position indicator (if equipped)



1) Upshift indicator
2) Downshift indicator
3) Select lever/gear position indicator

This indicator shows the position of the shift lever (MT models)/select lever (CVT models).

For CVT models, when the manual mode is selected, the gear position indicator (which shows the current gear selection) and the upshift/downshift indicator appear. Refer to “Selection of manual mode” ☞7-22.

▼ Gear shift indicator (if equipped)

When shifting up is recommended for good fuel economy, the upshift indicator blinks. When shifting down is recommended, the downshift indicator blinks.

NOTE

The gear shift indicator cannot be deactivated.

■ Turn signal indicator lights

These lights show the operation of the turn signal or lane change signal.

If the indicator lights do not blink or blink rapidly, the turn signal bulb may be burned out. Replace the bulb as soon as possible. Refer to “Low beam headlight*, position light* and front turn signal light*” ☞11-50 or “Rear combination lights” ☞11-54.

■ High beam indicator light

This light shows that the headlights are in the high beam mode.

This indicator light also illuminates when the headlight flasher is operated.

– CONTINUED –

■ High Beam Assist indicator light (green) (if equipped)

This light illuminates when the High Beam Assist function is activated. For details about the High Beam Assist function, refer to “High Beam Assist function” ☞3-65.

■ High Beam Assist warning indicator (yellow) (if equipped)

This warning indicator appears when the High Beam Assist function malfunctions. When this warning indicator appears, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by your SUBARU dealer.

■ Cruise control indicator

This indicator appears when the cruise control main button is pressed to activate the cruise control function. For details, refer to “To set cruise control” ☞7-52.

If this light blinks, do not use the cruise control. In addition, if it blinks frequently, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.

⚠ CAUTION

If the malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light) illuminates, the cruise control indicator flashes at the same time. At this time, avoid driving at high speed and we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

NOTE

If this indicator does not appear even when you press the cruise control main button, the cruise control system may not operate properly. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked by your nearest SUBARU dealer.

■ Cruise control set indicator

This indicator appears when vehicle speed has been set to use the cruise control function. For details, refer to “To set cruise control” ☞7-52.

■ Headlight indicator light

This indicator light illuminates while the front position lights are on (e.g., the light control switch is in the first position.)

■ Steering Responsive Headlight warning light/ Steering Responsive Headlight OFF indicator light (if equipped)

This light illuminates when the Steering Responsive Headlight is deactivated. Also, the light flashes when a malfunction occurs in the Steering Responsive Headlight. Refer to “Steering Responsive Headlight (SRH)” ☞3-70.

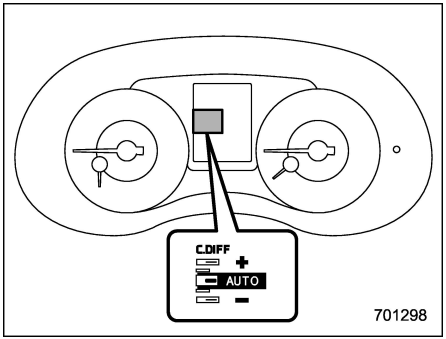
■ Front fog light indicator light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates while the front fog lights are illuminated.

■ Rear fog light indicator light

This indicator light illuminates while the rear fog light is illuminated.

■ Driver's control center differential auto indicator (STI)



This indicator functions while the ignition switch is "ON". When it appears, it indicates that the driver's control center differential is set to the auto mode. It disappears when the driver's control center differential is set to the manual mode. For details, refer to "Driver's Control Center Differential (C.DIFF/DCCD) (STI)" ☞7-15.

▼ Driver's control center differential auto [+] indicator (STI)

When the AUTO [+] mode is set, the AUTO [+] indicator appears.

For details, refer to "Driver's Control Center Differential (C.DIFF/DCCD) (STI)" ☞7-15.

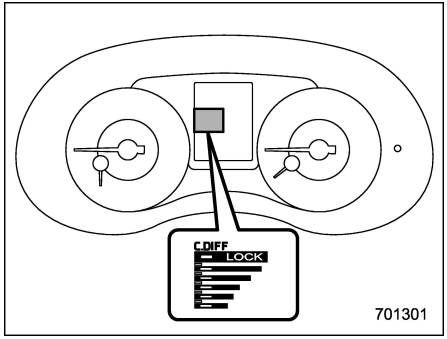
▼ Driver's control center differential auto [−] indicator (STI)

When the AUTO [−] mode is set, the AUTO [−] indicator appears.

For details, refer to "Driver's Control Center Differential (C.DIFF/DCCD) (STI)" ☞7-15.

■ Driver's control center differential indicator and warning (STI)

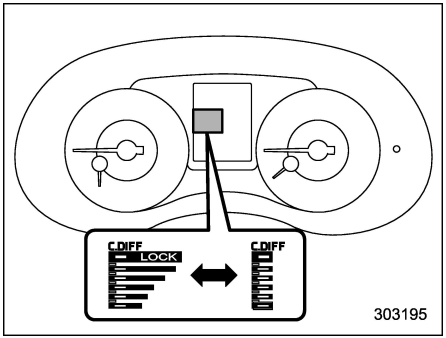
▼ Indicator



When you select the manual mode of the driver's control center differential, these indicators will appear. They indicate the initial limited slip differential (LSD) the torque that is currently selected for the center differential.

– CONTINUED –

▼ **Warning indicator**



All the indicators will flash when the driver's control center differential has a malfunction. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by your SUBARU dealer. For details, refer to "Driver's Control Center Differential (C. DIFF/DCCD) (STI)" ☞7-15.

If a malfunction occurs in the vehicle (for example, when the rear differential oil becomes hot), all of the indicators may disappear. In this case, the setting value for the initial limited slip differential (LSD) torque of the driver's control center differential (C.DIFF/DCCD) will be canceled. However, it does not indicate a malfunction of the C.DIFF/DCCD itself.

■ REV indicator light (STI)

This indicator light illuminates when the engine speed reaches the level that was previously set. This indicator light also flashes when the tachometer needle enters the red zone. For details, refer to "REV indicator light and buzzer (STI)" ☞3-13.

■ SUBARU Rear Vehicle Detection warning indicator (if equipped)

This warning indicator appears when the SUBARU Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD) is malfunctioning. When this indicator appears, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

■ SUBARU Rear Vehicle Detection OFF indicator (if equipped)

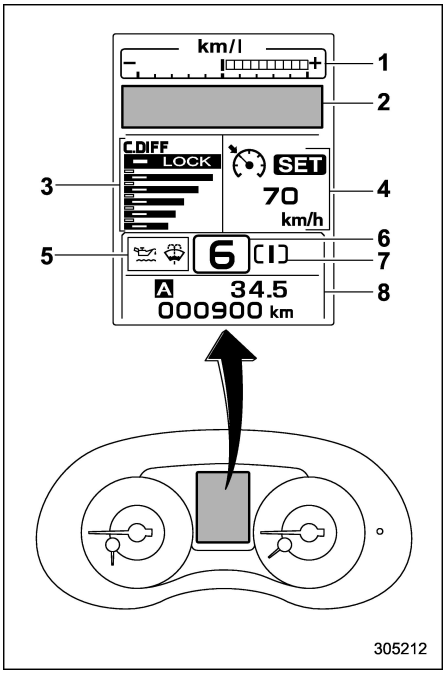
The indicator appears when the SUBARU Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD) is deactivated. For details, refer to "Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)" ☞7-55.

Combination meter display (color LCD)

⚠ WARNING

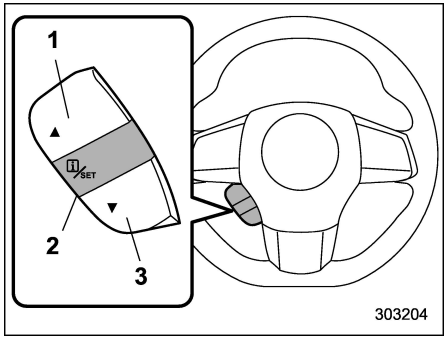
Always pay adequate attention to safe driving when operating the combination meter display (color LCD) while the vehicle is in motion. When operation of the combination meter display (color LCD) interferes with your ability to concentrate on driving, stop the vehicle before performing operations on the screen. Also, do not concentrate on the display while driving. Doing so may cause you to look away from the road and could result in an accident.

Various information will be shown on the combination meter display (color LCD). Also, a warning message will appear on the display if a malfunction, etc. is detected. In addition, several settings for the displayed content can be performed.



Combination meter display (color LCD)

1) ECO gauge (refer to "ECO gauge" ☞3-12.)
2) Warning screen (refer to "Warning screen" ☞3-40.)/Basic screen (refer to "Basic screens" ☞3-40.)
3) C.DIFF/DCCD indicator
4) Cruise control information display
5) Warning indication (refer to "Warning indication" ☞3-41.)
6) Select lever/gear position indicator (refer to "Select lever/gear position indicator" ☞3-35.)
7) SI-DRIVE indicator (refer to "SI-DRIVE indicator" ☞3-34.)
8) Odometer (refer to "Odometer" ☞3-9.)/double trip meter (refer to "Double trip meter" ☞3-10.)/the settings of TPMS



Control switch

1) Up (select)
2) [i]/SET (enter)
3) Down (select)

■ Basic operation

Pull "▲" or "▼" of the control switch toward you to switch the screens and selection items. Pull the "[i]/SET" switch toward you to select and set the item.

If there are some useful messages, such as vehicle information, warning information, etc., they will interrupt the current screen, and appear on the display accompanied by a beep. If such a screen is displayed, take proper action according to the message shown on the screen.

The warning screen will return to the original screen after a few seconds. While the "[i]" information reminder is shown on the display, it may be possible to display the warning screen again. To recall the message marked with "[i]" on the display, pull the "[i]/SET" switch toward you.

– CONTINUED –

■ Welcome screen and Good-bye screen

When the driver's door is opened and closed after unlocking the door, the welcome screen will appear on the combination meter display (color LCD) for approximately 20 seconds.

When the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position, the combination meter display (color LCD) gradually turns off (Good-bye screen).

NOTE

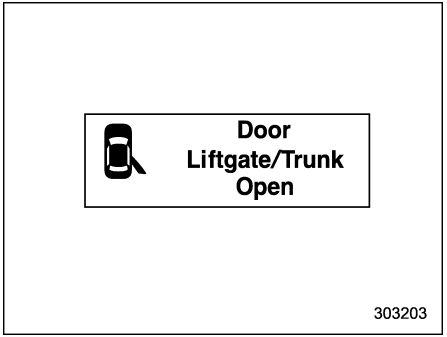
• Once the welcome screen appears, it takes a certain period of time to display it again.

• The welcome screen will disappear after turning the ignition switch to the "ON" position while the welcome screen is displayed.

• If you open any of the doors while the welcome screen is displayed, the door ajar warning will appear.

• You can set the welcome screen and Good-bye screen to on or off. For details, refer to "Welcome Good-bye Screen" ☞3-44.

■ Warning screen



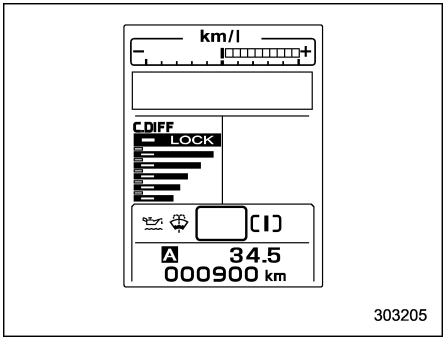
Example of warning

If a warning or a malfunction is detected, a message will appear. Take the appropriate actions based on the messages indicated.

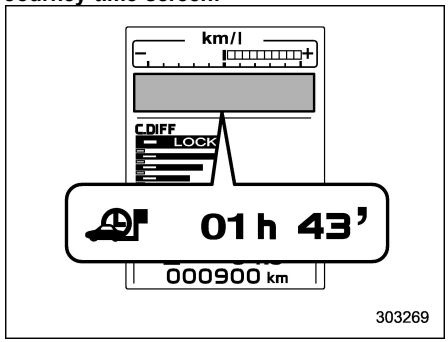
■ Basic screens

Pull "▲" or "▼" of the control switch toward you to change the screen that is always displayed.

Default screen:

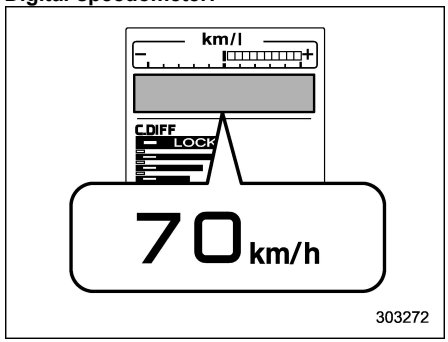


Journey time screen:

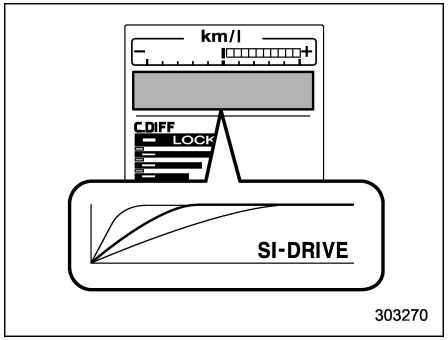


This screen displays the journey time (the time that has elapsed since the ignition switch was turned to the “ON” position).

Digital speedometer:

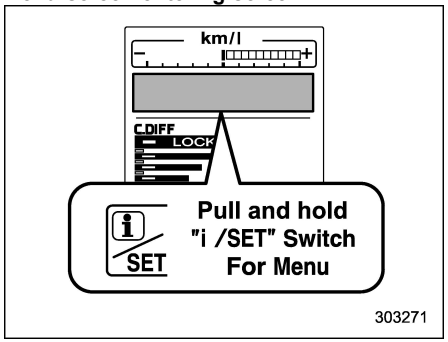


SI-DRIVE mode screen:



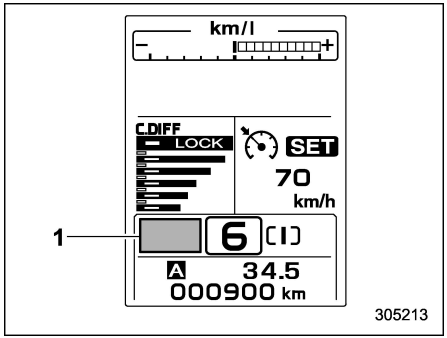
This screen indicates the current SI-DRIVE mode with its throttle angle.

Menu screen entering screen:



While this screen is selected, pull and hold the “i/SET” switch to enter the menu screen.

■ Warning indication



1) Warning indication

When the corresponding situation occurs, the following warning indications will be displayed.

– CONTINUED –

Mark	Name	Page
	Engine low oil level warning indicator	3-18
	SUBARU Rear Vehicle Detection warning indicator (if equipped)	3-38
	SUBARU Rear Vehicle Detection OFF indicator (if equipped)	3-38
	High beam assist warning indicator (yellow) (if equipped)	3-36
	Windshield washer fluid warning indicator	3-27
SRH OFF	Steering Responsive Headlight warning light (if equipped)	3-36

■ Menu screens

Pull and hold the "i/SET" switch to enter the menu screens when all of the following conditions are satisfied.

- The vehicle has been completely stopped.
- The select lever is in the "P" position (CVT models).
- The shift lever is in the neutral position (MT models).
- The menu screen entering screen is selected.

Pull the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the menu. Pull the "i/SET" switch to enter the selected menu.

NOTE

If you enter the "Go Back" menu, the system will return to the previous screen.

The menu list is as follows.

Top menu	Menu option		Possible settings	Initial settings
Screen Settings	Welcome Good-bye Screen		On or Off	On
	Gauge Initial Movement		On or Off	On
	Gear Position Indicator Setting (MT without gear shift indicator models)		On or Off	On
	Languages		Select the display language.	The default language settings vary depending on individual countries.
SRH (if equipped)	—		On or Off	On
REV settings (STI)	REV Indicator Light		On or Off	Off
	REV Alarm Level Engine Speed		2000 rpm - RED ZONE	2000 rpm
	REV Buzzer		On or Off	Off
EyeSight (models with the EyeSight system)	Warning Volume		Max/Mid/Min	Mid
	Lead Vehicle Acquisition Sound		On or Off	On
	Lead Vehicle Moving Monitor Function		On or Off	On
	EyeSight Assist Monitor (if equipped)	EyeSight Assist Monitor Red indicator	On or Off	On
		EyeSight Assist Monitor Yellow indicator	On or Off	On
		EyeSight Assist Monitor Green indicator	On or Off	On
SRVD (if equipped)	Warning Volume		Max/Mid/Min/Off	Mid
Default Settings	—		Yes or No	—

– CONTINUED –

▼ **Screen Settings**

After entering the “Screen Settings” menu, select one of the following menus.

▽ **Welcome Good-bye Screen**

The welcome screen/good-bye screens can be activated or deactivated. Select “On” to activate the screens. Select “Off” to deactivate the screens.

▽ **Gauge Initial Movement**

The movement of the meter needles and gauge needles that occurs when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position can be activated or deactivated. Select “On” to activate. Select “Off” to deactivate.

▽ **Gear Position Indicator Setting (MT without gear shift indicator models)**

Display of the shift position indicator can be activated or deactivated. Select “On” to activate display of the shift position indicator or “Off” to deactivate it.

▽ **Languages**

Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch on the steering wheel to display the preferred language. Then pull the “i/SET” switch to select the displayed language.

▼ **SRH (if equipped)**

Select “On” to activate the Steering Responsive Headlight (SRH). Select “Off” to deactivate the SRH.

▼ **REV settings (STI)**

NOTE

If the setting of the REV Indicator Light is “Off”, the setting menus of the REV Alarm Level Engine Speed and the REV Buzzer are not displayed.

After entering the “REV settings” menu, select any of the following menus.

▽ **REV Indicator Light**

Display of the REV indicator light can be activated or deactivated. Select “On” to activate display of the REV indicator light or “Off” to deactivate it.

▽ **REV Alarm Level Engine Speed**

The alarm-level engine speed can be set (in 100 rpm steps) within the range from 2,000 rpm to red zone.

▽ **REV Buzzer**

REV buzzer can be activated or deactivated. Select “On” to activate the REV buzzer or “Off” to deactivate it.

▼ **EyeSight (models with the EyeSight system)**

NOTE

For models with the EyeSight system, refer to the Owner’s Manual supplement for the EyeSight system.

▼ **SRVD (Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection) (if equipped)**

After entering the “SRVD” menu, select the “Warning Volume” menu. You can set the volume of the warning buzzer for RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert). You can select “Max”, “Mid”, “Min” or “Off”.

▼ **Default Settings**

Select “Yes” to use the menu screen to restore customized settings to the factory default settings. Select “No” to return to the previous screen without restoring to the factory default settings.

Multi-function display (color LCD)

WARNING

Always pay adequate attention to safe driving when operating the multi-function display while the vehicle is in motion. When operation of the multi-function display is disturbing your awareness and ability to concentrate on driving, stop the vehicle in a safe place before performing operations on the screen. Also, do not concentrate on the display while driving. Doing so may cause you to look away from the road and could result in an accident.

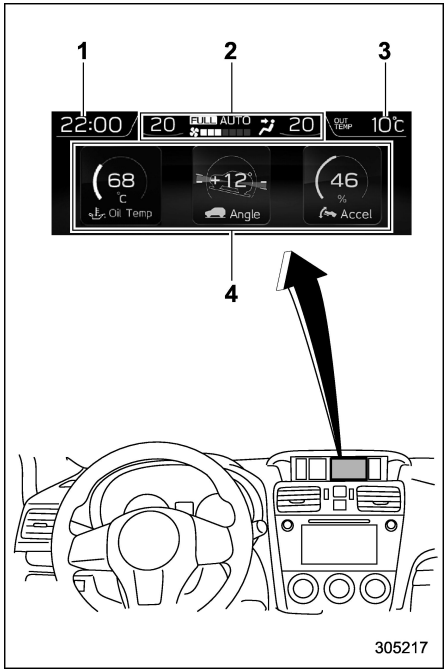
The multi-function display has the following functions.

Description	Page
Displays useful messages, such as warning information, etc.	3-47
Displays basic screens (e.g. fuel consumption screen, etc.)	3-48
Sets and adjusts maintenance notification	3-59
Registers driving history	3-60
Sets and customizes car operation	3-61

Also, use the multi-function display to set and initialize the multi-function display itself.

NOTE

- **When the vehicle is in motion, certain functions and selections may not be available.**
- **The images shown in this Owner's Manual are sample images. The actual images may vary depending on the market and vehicle specifications.**



Multi-function display

1) Clock
2) Climate control (displayed only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position)
3) Outside temperature
4) Information screen

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

The outside temperature indicator shows the temperature around the sensor. Therefore, the temperature indication may differ from the actual outside air temperature.

■ Welcome screen

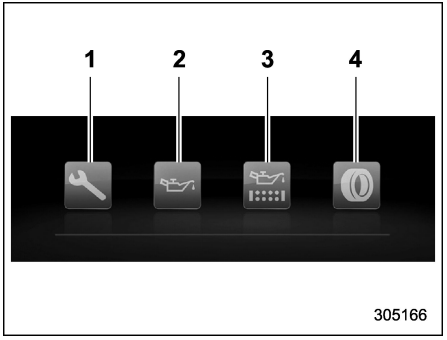
When the driver's door is closed, the welcome screen will appear for a short time.

NOTE

- **The welcome screen will disappear when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position while the welcome screen is displayed.**
- **You can set the welcome screen to on or off. For details, refer to "Bypass screen setting" ☞3-58.**
- **For a certain period of time after the welcome screen has once appeared, it may not appear again even when the driver's door is closed again. This does not indicate a malfunction.**

■ Self-check screen

When the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, the vehicle self-check will be performed. The screens corresponding to the following items will appear one after another for several seconds each.



1) Inspection and maintenance: Checks the interval of inspection and maintenance.
2) Engine oil: Checks the interval of engine oil replacement.
3) Oil filter: Checks the interval of oil filter replacement.
4) Tires: Checks the interval of tire rotation.

When the checks are performed, the color of the icon corresponding to the checked item will turn as follows:

- If the checked item has no notifications: turns green
- If the checked item has any maintenance notifications: turns yellow

If there is a notification, the message will be displayed. Take the appropriate actions based on the message indicated.

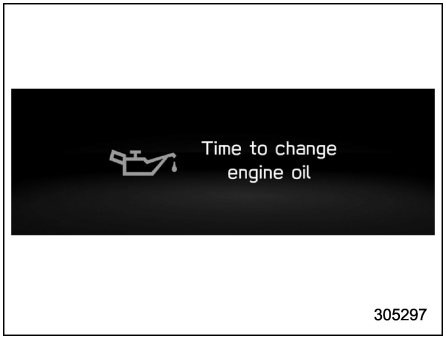
NOTE

- **You can set the self-check screen to on or off. The default setting is off. For details, refer to "On/Off setting" ☞3-59.**
- **After performing the maintenance, change the setting of the corresponding maintenance item. For details, refer to "Maintenance settings" ☞3-59.**
- **The maintenance notification screen will be displayed under either of the following conditions.**
  - **– The period of time remaining until the registered notification date is 15 days or less.**
  - **– The total driving distance remaining until the registered notification distance is approximately 500 km (311 miles) or less.**
- **The maintenance notification screen will be displayed until either of the following conditions is satisfied.**
  - **– The period of time passed after the registered notification date is 15 days or more.**

– The total distance driven after the registered notification distance is approximately 500 km (311 miles) or more.

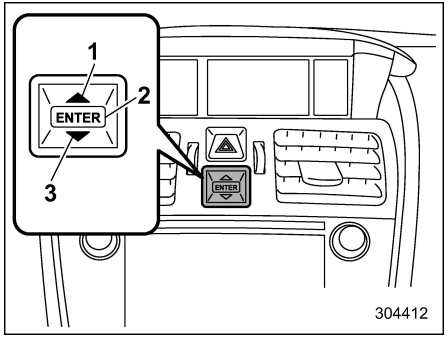
■ Interruption screen

Useful messages, such as reminder information, vehicle information, warning information, etc. may interrupt the current screen and appear on the display accompanied by a beep. Take proper action according to the message.

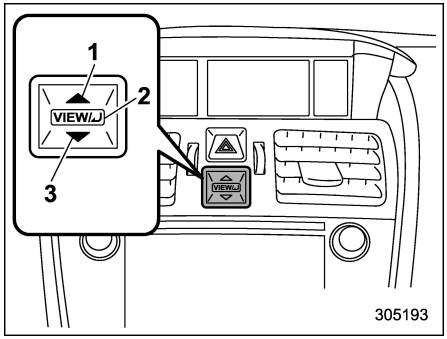


The warning screen will return to the original screen after a few seconds.

■ Basic operation



Control switch (type A)



Control switch (type B)

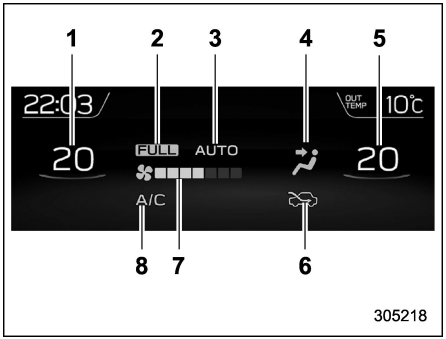
1) Up (select)
2) ENTER (push)
3) Down (select)

By operating "▲" or "▼" of the control switch, the screens and selection items can be switched. When the ENTER button is pushed, the item can be selected and set.

– CONTINUED –

■ Basic screens

▼ Climate control screen



Climate control screen

1) Set temperature indicator (left-hand side)
2) FULL AUTO indicator
3) AUTO indicator
4) Airflow mode indicator
5) Set temperature indicator (right-hand side)
6) Air inlet selection indicator
7) Fan speed indicator
8) Air conditioner ON indicator

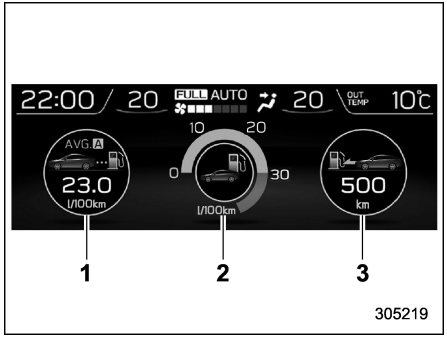
When operating the climate control system, the basic screen will change to the climate control screen. For details about the climate control system, refer to “Climate control” ☞4-1.

▼ Information screen

Operate the “▲” or “▼” of the control switch to select the screen that is always displayed on.

Content	Description	Page
Fuel consumption screen	Displays fuel consumption screen.	3-49
Triple meter screen	Displays up to 3 optional items.	3-50
Prevention safety screen	Displays the status of your vehicle.	3-50
Boost pressure screen	Displays the boost pressure, etc.	3-51
Guidance screen	Enters the setting screen	3-51
Clock/calendar screen	Displays the clock/calendar.	3-52

▽ Fuel consumption screen



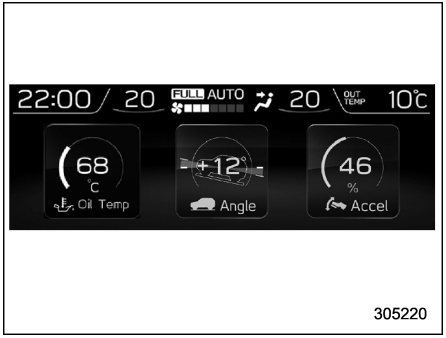
1) Average fuel consumption corresponding to the driving distance of each trip meter
2) Current fuel consumption
3) Driving range on remaining fuel

NOTE

The driving range on remaining fuel is only a guide. The indicated value may differ from the actual driving range on remaining fuel, so you must immediately fill the tank when the low fuel warning light illuminates.

– CONTINUED –

▽ Triple meter screen

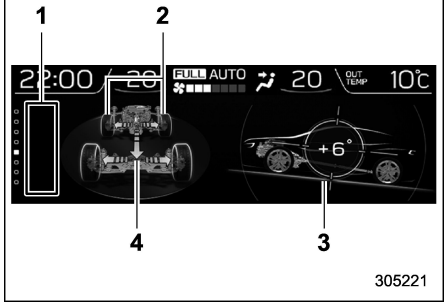


Triple meter screen (screen example)

From the following pieces of information, you can select up to three items to be displayed.

Item	Details
	Engine oil temperature (except STI)
	Average vehicle speed
	Accelerator opening ratio
	Vehicle posture
	Average fuel consumption corresponding to the driving distance of the odometer
	Boost pressure
	Journey distance (the distance that has been driven since the ignition switch was turned to the “ON” position)
	Average fuel consumption for the entire driving distance from when the ignition switch was turned to the “ON” position

▽ Prevention safety screen



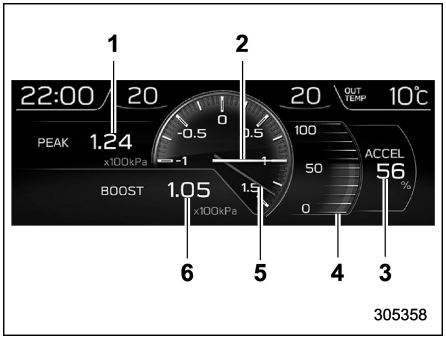
1) Telltale screen
2) Steering angle
3) Vehicle posture
4) Running condition

For functions that are operating, the corresponding indicator will illuminate or flash.

NOTE

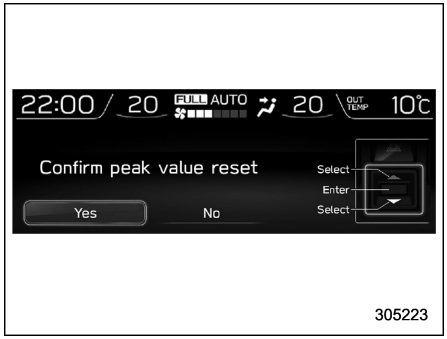
The vehicle posture indication may differ from the actual vehicle posture.

▽ **Boost pressure screen**



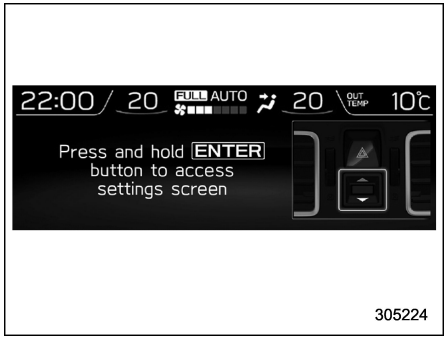
1) The peak value of the boost pressure (digital display)
2) Boost pressure (analog display)
3) Accelerator opening ratio (digital display)
4) Accelerator opening ratio (analog display)
5) The peak value of the boost pressure (analog display)
6) Boost pressure (digital display)

You can reset the peak value of the boost pressure. Press the ENTER button to enter the reset screen.



Select “Yes” to reset the peak value. Select “No” to keep the current peak value.

▽ **Guidance screen**

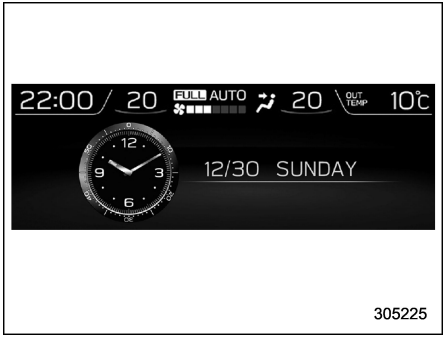


Guidance screen (screen example)

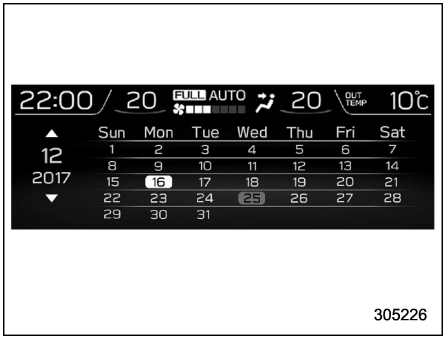
Press and hold the ENTER button to enter the setting screen. For details, refer to “Setting screen” ☞3-53.

– CONTINUED –

▽ **Clock/calendar screen**



Clock



Calendar

You can select the clock or calendar to be displayed. You can also turn the screen off. For the setting procedure, refer to “Clock setting” ☞3-57.

■ Setting screen

When the ENTER button is pushed and held, the setting screen for each menu can be displayed. Select the preferred menu by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch.

Top menu	Menu option	Description		Page
Time/Date	Date	Set and adjust the date. 12h or 24h format can be selected.		3-55
	Birthday	Set a birthday. (max. 5)		3-55
	Anniversary	Set an anniversary day. (max. 5)		3-55
	Daylight Saving Time	Turn the daylight saving time on or off		3-56
	Delivery Date (Australia models)	Set a delivery date		3-56
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		—
Display	Contrast	Adjust the contrast.	+5 ↔ −5	3-56
	Screen Off	Turn the screen on or off.	On or Off	3-56
	Beep	Adjust the beep sound volume.	High, Low or Off	3-57
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		—
Screen Setting	Triple Meter	Set and customize the triple meter.		3-57
	Clock	Select the clock format.	Analog Clock, Calendar or Off	3-57
	Bypass Screen	Set the bypass screen for each item.	On or Off	3-58
	Languages	Select the display language.	The default language settings vary depending on individual countries.	3-58
	Camera Shift Link	Set the Front View Monitor/Side View Monitor.	On or Off	3-58
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		—

– CONTINUED –

Top menu	Menu option	Description		Page
Maintenance	Maintenance Schedule	Set and adjust the vehicle maintenance notification date.		3-59
	Engine Oil	Set and adjust the oil maintenance notification date.		3-59
	Oil Filter	Set and adjust the oil filter maintenance notification date.		3-59
	Tires	Set and adjust the tire maintenance notification date.		3-59
	On/Off	Turn on or off the self-check screen that is activated when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position.	On or Off	3-59
	Clear All Settings	Clear all items to the factory default settings.	Yes or No	3-60
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		—
Driving History	Set	Register and overwrite the driving record.		3-60
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		—
Car Setting	Hazard Warning Flasher	Set the hazard warning flasher.	On or Off	3-61
	Security Relocking*1	Set and customize the automatic locking operation period.	20, 30, 40, 50, 60 seconds or off	3-61
	Defogger	Set and customize the operation of the defogger.	15 minutes or Continuous	3-61
	Interior Light	Set and customize the interior light off delay timer.	10, 20, 30 seconds or Off	3-61
	Go Back	Return to top menu.		—
Initialize	Reset to Defaults	Reset all settings to the default settings.	Yes or No	3-62
	Lifetime Fuel Cons Reset	Clear logged lifetime fuel consumption data.	Yes or No	3-62
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		—
Go Back	—	Return to the top menu.		—

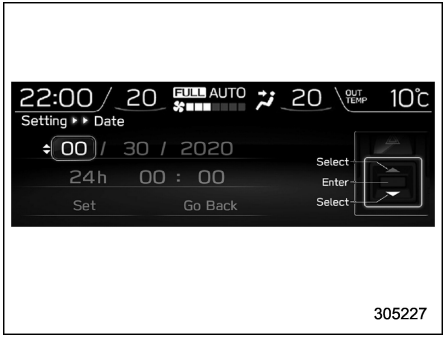
*1: If equipped

▼ Date and time settings

If a birthday or anniversary is approaching, a message will be displayed when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position. This function can be set to on or off. For details, refer to "Bypass screen setting" ☞3-58.

▽ Current date and time setting

1. Select "**Date**" from the 2nd menu in the setting screen. Refer to "Setting screen" ☞3-53.



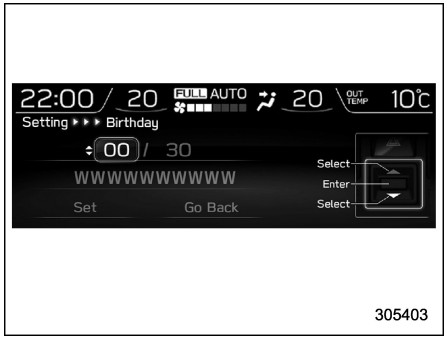
2. Enter the date by using the control switches.
3. Select 12h or 24h format settings.
4. Enter the time by using the control switches.
5. Select "**Set**" to exit settings. Select "**Go Back**" to return to the previous screen.

▽ Birthday setting

1. Select "**Birthday**" from the 2nd menu in the setting screen. Refer to "Setting screen" ☞3-53.



2. Select from the list the number that you want to register.



3. Enter the date and the text by using the control switches.
4. Select "**Set**" to exit settings. Select "**Go Back**" to return to the previous screen without applying the setting changes.

NOTE

You can store a maximum of 5 birthdays.

▽ Anniversary setting

The setting procedure is the same as "Birthday setting" ☞3-55, but select the "**Anniversary**" item in step 1.

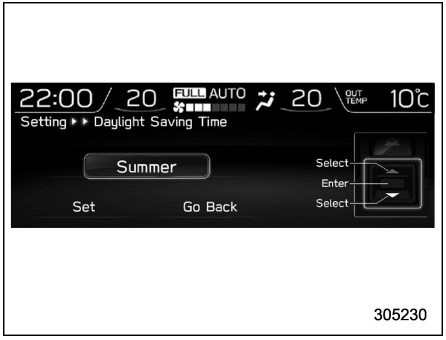
NOTE

You can store a maximum of 5 anniversaries.

– CONTINUED –

▽ Daylight saving time setting

1. Select "**Daylight Saving Time**" from the 2nd menu in the setting screen. Refer to "Setting screen" ☞3-53.



2. Select "**Summer**" or "**Winter**" (or "**On**" or "**Off**") by using the control switches.
3. Select "**Set**" to exit settings. Select "**Go Back**" to return to the previous screen.

▽ Delivery date setting (Australia models)

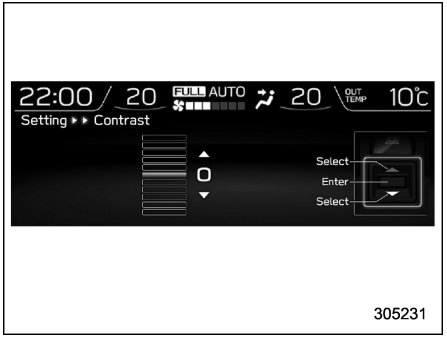
The setting procedure is the same as "Birthday setting" ☞3-55, but select the "**Delivery Date**" item in step 1.

▼ Display/Beep settings

You can set the display settings and volume settings.

▽ Contrast setting

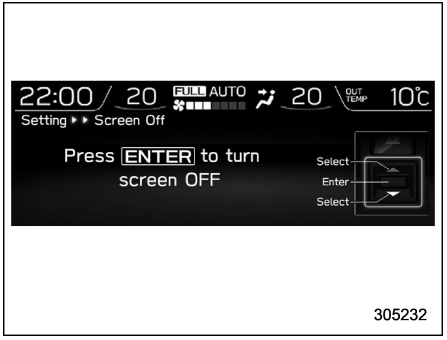
1. Select "**Contrast**" from the 2nd menu in the setting screen. Refer to "Setting screen" ☞3-53.



2. Select the contrast level by using the control switches.
3. Press the ENTER button to confirm the setting.

▽ Screen OFF setting

1. Select "**Screen Off**" from the 2nd menu in setting screen. Refer to "Setting screen" ☞3-53.



2. Press the ENTER button to turn off the screen.

Restoring the screen

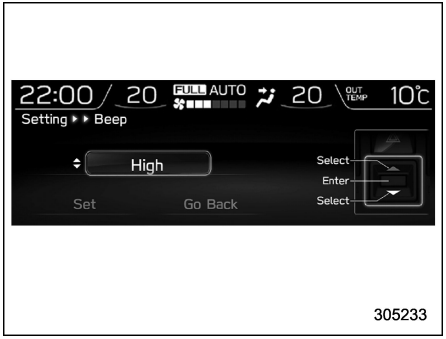
When operating the control switches with the ignition switch in the "ON" or "ACC" position, the screen will be restored. The screen will be restored with the basic screen that was displayed when the screen was turned off.

NOTE

While the screen is off, the screen switches to the climate control screen only when the air conditioner is operating.

▽ **Beep setting**

1. Select "**Beep**" from the 2nd menu in the setting screen. Refer to "Setting screen" ☞3-53.

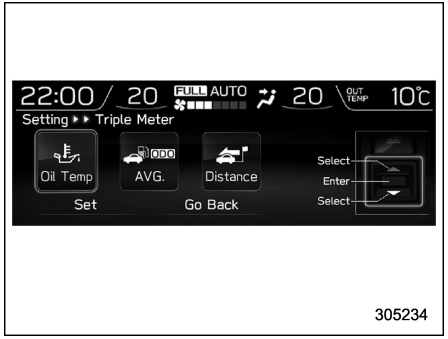


2. Set the beep volume by using the control switches.
3. Select "**Set**" to exit settings. Select "**Go Back**" to return to the previous screen without applying the setting changes.

▼ **Screen settings**

▽ **Triple meter setting**

1. Select the "**Triple Meter**" from the 2nd menu in setting screen. Refer to "Setting screen" ☞3-53.



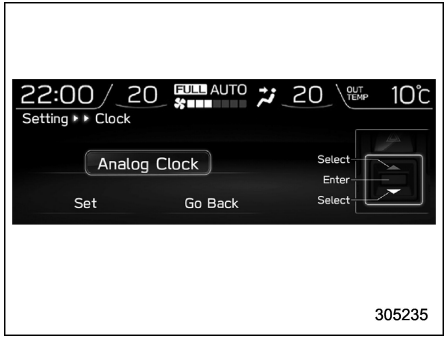
2. Set the desired items by using the control switches. For details about items, refer to "Triple meter screen" ☞3-50.
3. Select "**Set**" to exit settings. Select "**Go Back**" to return to the previous screen without applying the setting changes.

NOTE

- **You can display a maximum of the 3 items.**
- **The same item cannot be selected for the left, center or right location.**

▽ **Clock setting**

1. Select "**Clock**" from the 2nd menu in the setting screen. Refer to "Setting screen" ☞3-53.

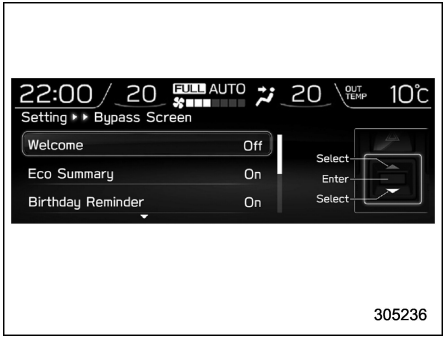


2. Select "**Analog Clock**", "**Calendar**" or "**Off**" by using the control switches.
3. Select "**Set**" to exit settings. Select "**Go Back**" to return to the previous screen.

– CONTINUED –

▽ Bypass screen setting

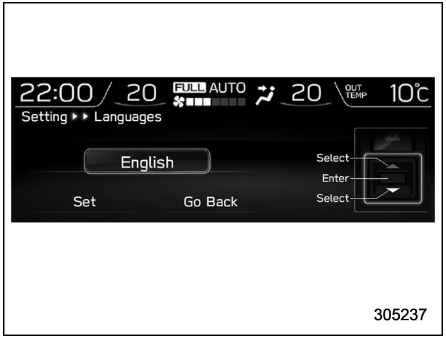
1. Select "**Bypass Screen**" from the 2nd menu in the setting screen. Refer to "Setting screen" ☞3-53.



2. Select "**On**" or "**Off**" to turn the display of items on or off by using the control switches.
3. Select "**Set**" to exit settings. Select "**Go Back**" to return to the previous screen without applying the setting changes.

▽ Language setting

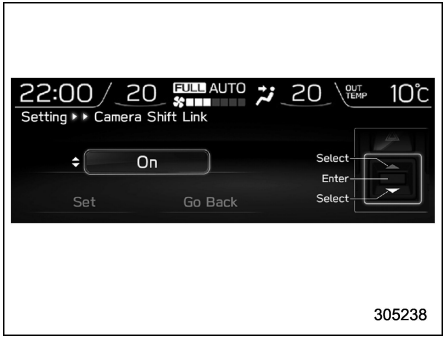
1. Select "**Languages**" from the 2nd menu in the setting screen. Refer to "Setting screen" ☞3-53.



2. Select the preferred language by using the control switches.
3. Select "**Set**" to exit settings. Select "**Go Back**" to return to the previous screen.

▽ Camera shift link setting

1. Select "**Camera Shift Link**" from the 2nd menu in the setting screen. Refer to "Setting screen" ☞3-53.



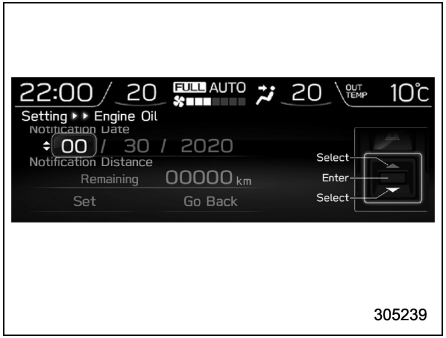
2. Select "**On**" or "**Off**" by using the control switches.
3. Select "**Set**" to exit settings. Select "**Go Back**" to return to the previous screen.

▼ Maintenance settings

You can set maintenance reminders.

▽ Engine oil setting

1. Select "**Engine Oil**" from the 2nd menu in the setting screen. Refer to "Setting screen" ☞3-53.



2. Set the date and distance of the reminder by using the control switches.
3. Select "**Set**" to exit settings. Select "**Update**" to change the notification distance to the default value. Select "**Go Back**" to return to the previous screen without applying the setting changes.

NOTE

- **The reminder will be displayed by either date or distance in accordance with the setting.**
- **Even when either "Day" or "Distance" are displayed as "_ _" a pop-up screen will appear.**
- **The reminder will be displayed until either of the following conditions is satisfied.**
  - **– The period of time passed after the registered notification date is 15 days or more.**
  - **– The total distance driven after the registered notification distance is approximately 500 km (311 miles) or more.**

▽ Oil filter setting

The setting procedure is the same as "Engine oil setting" ☞3-59, but select the "**Oil Filter**" item in step 1.

▽ Tires setting

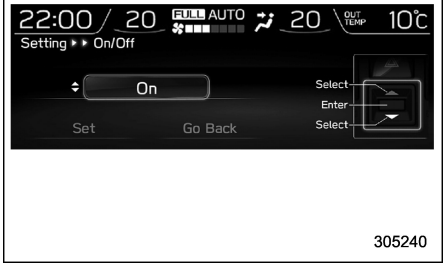
The setting procedure is the same as "Engine oil setting" ☞3-59, but select the "**Tires**" item in step 1.

▽ Maintenance schedule setting

The setting procedure is the same as "Engine oil setting" ☞3-59, but select the "**Maintenance Schedule**" item in step 1.

▽ On/Off setting

1. Select "**On/Off**" from the 2nd menu on the setting screen. Refer to "Setting screen" ☞3-53.

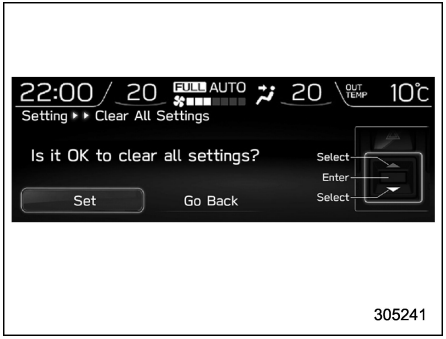


2. Select "**On**" or "**Off**" to turn the opening screen on or off by using the control switches.
3. Select "**Set**" to exit settings. Select "**Go Back**" to return to the previous screen without applying the setting changes.

– CONTINUED –

▽ Clear setting

1. Select “**Clear All Settings**” from the 2nd menu on the setting screen. Refer to “Setting screen” ☞3-53.

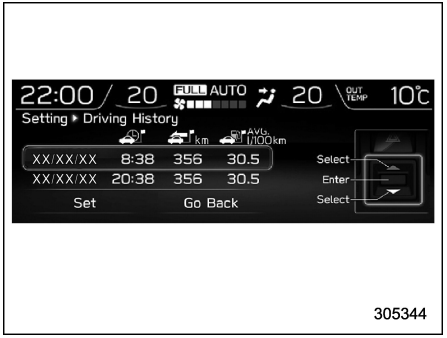


2. Select “**Set**” to clear the settings. Select “**Go Back**” to return to the previous screen without clearing the settings.

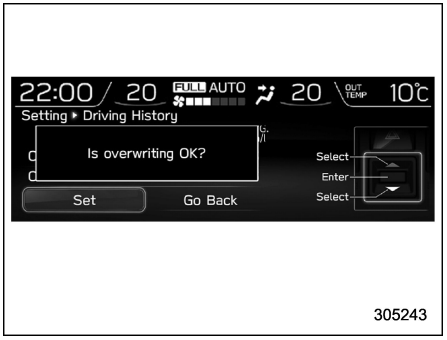
▼ Driving history setting

You can register the items in the driving history.

1. Select “**Driving History**” from the top menu in the setting screen. Refer to “Setting screen” ☞3-53.



2. Select one of the registration lines by using the control switches.



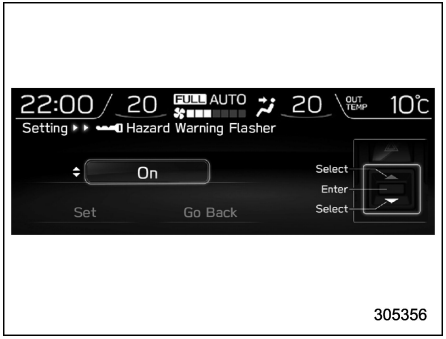
3. Select “**Set**” to overwrite the previous registration. Select “**Go Back**” to return to the previous screen.

▼ Car setting

You can set the vehicle setting.

▽ Hazard warning flasher setting

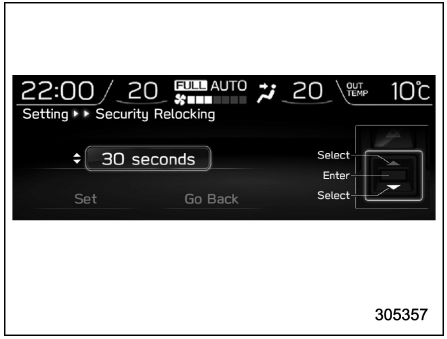
1. Select "**Hazard Warning Flasher**" from the 2nd menu in the setting screen. Refer to "Setting screen" ☞3-53.



2. Select "**On**" or "**Off**" by using the control switches.
3. Select "**Set**" to exit settings. Select "**Go Back**" to return to the previous screen without applying the setting changes.

▽ Security relocking setting

1. Select "**Security Relocking**" from the 2nd menu in the setting screen. Refer to "Setting screen" ☞3-53.



2. Select the preferred setting by using the control switches.
3. Select "**Set**" to exit settings. Select "**Go Back**" to return to the previous screen.

▽ Defogger setting

The setting procedure is the same as "Security relocking setting" ☞3-61, but select the "**Defogger**" item in step 1.

▽ Interior light setting

The setting procedure is the same as "Security relocking setting" ☞3-61, but select the "**Interior Light**" item in step 1.

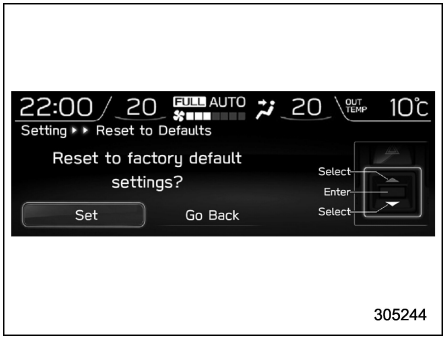
– CONTINUED –

▼ Initialize

You can initialize the items that have been set to your preference.

▽ Reset to factory default settings

1. Select "**Reset to Defaults**" from the 2nd menu in the setting screen. Refer to "Setting screen" ☞3-53.



2. Select "**Set**" to exit settings. Select "**Go Back**" to return to the previous screen.

▽ Lifetime fuel consumption resetting

1. Select "**Lifetime Fuel Cons Reset**" from the 2nd menu in the setting screen. Refer to "Setting screen" ☞3-53.



2. Select "**Set**" to exit settings. Select "**Go Back**" to return to the previous screen.

■ How to get the source code using the open source

Free/Open Source Software Information

This product contains Free/Open Source Software (FOSS).
The license information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.

http://www.globaldenso.com/en/open-source/ivi/subaru/

Light control switch

CAUTION

- **Use of any lights for a long period of time while the engine is not running can cause the battery to discharge.**
- **Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the lights are turned off. If the vehicle is left unattended for a long time with the lights illuminated, the battery may be discharged.**

Models with "keyless access with push-button start system":

The light control switch operates when the push-button ignition switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

Regardless of the position of the light control switch, the illuminated lights are turned off when the push-button ignition switch is turned off.

Models without "keyless access with push-button start system":

The light control switch operates when the key is inserted in the ignition switch.

Regardless of the position of the light control switch, the illuminated lights are turned off when the key is removed from the ignition switch.

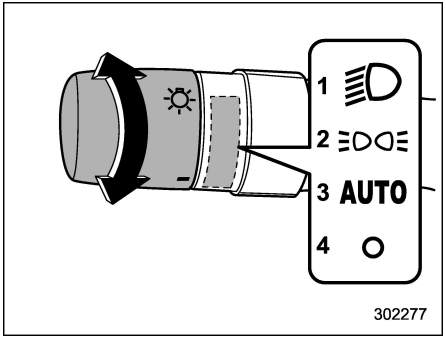
NOTE

You can operate the light control switch (except auto on/off headlights), even under the following conditions.

- **when the push-button ignition switch is turned off (models with "keyless access with push-button start system")**
- **when the key is not inserted into the ignition switch (models without "keyless access with push-button start system")**

If you open the driver's door while the headlights are illuminated under such conditions, the chirp sound will inform the driver that the lights are illuminated.

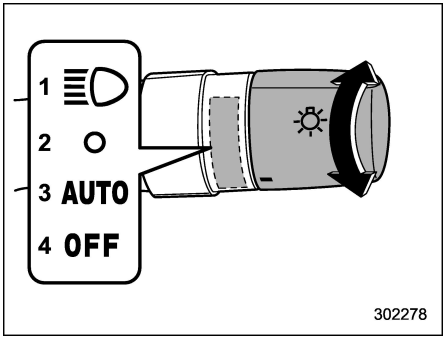
■ Headlights



Except Australia models

1) Second position
2) First position
3) Auto position
4) Off position

– CONTINUED –



Australia models
1) Second position
2) First position
3) Auto position
4) Off position

To turn on the headlights, turn the knob on the end of the turn signal lever.

Second position:
Headlights, front position lights, tail lights and license plate lights are on.

First position:
Front position lights, tail lights and license plate lights are on.

Auto position:
When the ignition switch is in the “ON” position, the headlights, front position lights, tail lights and license plate lights are **automatically on or off** depending on the level of the ambient light.

Off position:
The headlights are all off.

NOTE

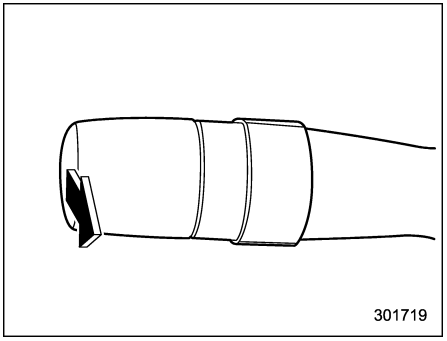
The sensitivity of the auto on/off headlights can be changed by your SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details.

▼ Headlight off delay setting

The headlight off delay function turns on the headlights, etc. for smooth exiting from the vehicle at night or in a dark place.

NOTE

The factory setting (default setting) of the operation duration of the headlights and the exterior lights is 30 seconds. This setting can be changed to OFF (no operation), 30 seconds, 60 seconds, or 90 seconds at SUBARU dealers. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.



When you pull the turn signal lever under both of the following conditions, the headlight off delay function will be activated.

- The ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” position.

● The light control switch is in the auto position or the off position.

When the headlight off delay function is activated, the headlight low beams and some exterior lights will illuminate as follows.

● Illuminates for 30 seconds after the driver's door is closed.

● Illuminates until you press the lock button on the access key fob/transmitter two times successively.

● Illuminates until you touch the door lock sensor on the door handle two times successively (models with "keyless access with push-button start system").

NOTE

● While the headlight off delay function is operating, if you perform any of the following operations, the headlights and exterior lights will turn off.

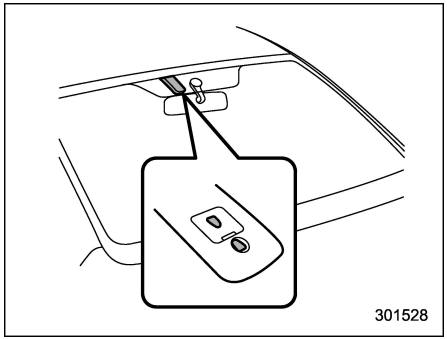
– Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.

– Pull the turn signal lever toward you.

– Set the light control switch to a position other than the "AUTO" or "OFF" position.

● If you do not open and close the driver's door, these lights will turn off in 3 minutes.

▼ Sensor for the auto on/off headlights (rain light sensor)

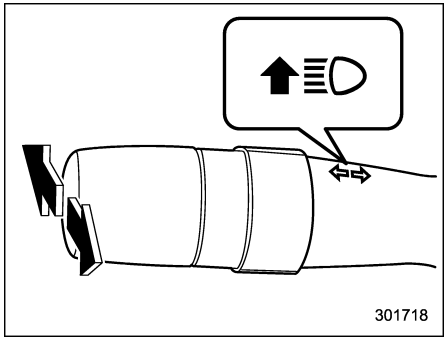


The sensor is on the windshield glass as shown in the illustration.

⚠ CAUTION

If any object is attached on or near the sensor, the sensor may not detect the level of ambient light correctly and the auto on/off headlights may not operate properly.

■ High/low beam change (dimmer)



To change from low beam to high beam, push the turn signal lever forward. When the headlights are on high beam, the high beam indicator light "≣D" on the combination meter is also on.

To switch back to low beam, pull the lever back to the center position.

■ High Beam Assist function (if equipped)

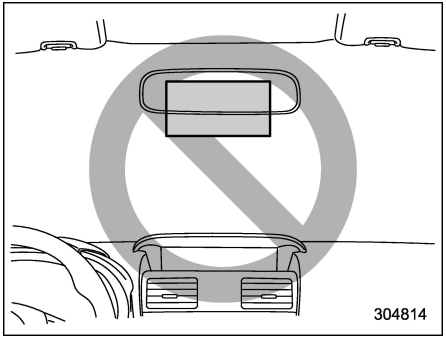
NOTE

● Do not overestimate the capacity of the High Beam Assist function. The driver always has the responsibility to understand the surrounding situation, to drive safely, and to change the

– CONTINUED –

headlight mode manually if necessary.

● Observe the following points in order to operate the High Beam Assist function properly.



– Do not attach labels or stickers to the windshield glass near the camera.

– Do not attach any accessories near the inside mirror and camera.

– Do not place any objects over the dashboard.

– Do not touch the lens of the camera.

– Do not touch the camera.

– Do not apply any strong impact to the camera or the inside mirror.

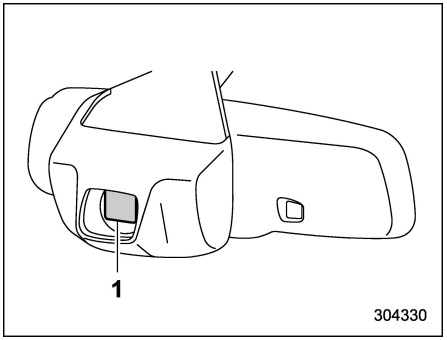
– Do not disassemble the camera and inside mirror.

– Do not spill liquid on the inside mirror and camera.

– Do not carry excessive luggage.

– Do not modify the vehicle.

– When replacing the windshield glass, use the genuine SUBARU parts (or equivalent products).



1) Camera for High Beam Assist function

The high beam assist function automatically changes the headlight from high beam to low beam (or vice versa). When all of the following conditions are met, the headlight will change to high beam.

- When the vehicle speed increases to or above the preset level.
- There is no preceding vehicle.
- The forward area of the vehicle is dark.

When any of the following conditions is met, the headlight will change to low beam.

- When the vehicle speed decreases to or below the preset level.
- When the forward area of the vehicle is bright.
- When there is a preceding or oncoming vehicle.

NOTE

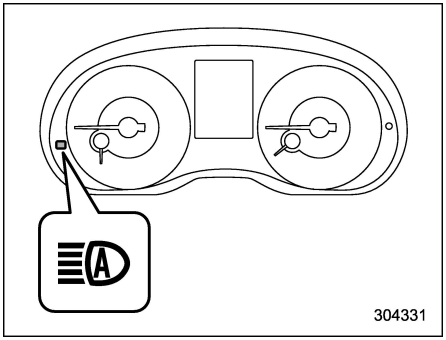
● The preset vehicle speed varies depending on the models.

● The factory setting (default setting) for this function is set as "operational". This setting can be changed to OFF (non-operation) at SUBARU dealers. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.

▼ How to use the High Beam Assist function

The High Beam Assist function will be activated when all the following conditions are met.

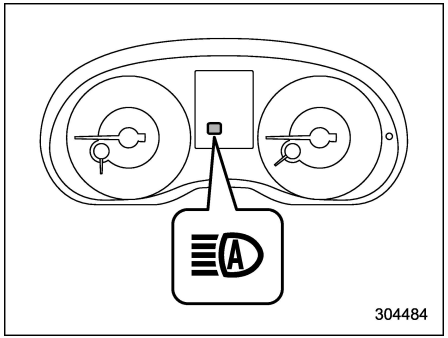
- The light control switch is in the “AUTO” position and the low beam headlights are on automatically.
- The turn signal lever is pushed forward.



High Beam Assist indicator light (green)

When the High Beam Assist function is activated, the High Beam Assist indicator light (green) on the combination meter will illuminate.

Malfunction of the High Beam Assist function:



High Beam Assist warning indicator (yellow)

When the High Beam Assist function malfunctions, the High Beam Assist warning indicator (yellow) on the combination meter will appear. In this case, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by your SUBARU dealer.

Temporary stop of High Beam Assist function:

If the High Beam Assist function stops temporarily due to poor visibility or abnormal temperature, the message appears on the combination meter. When the condition is canceled, the system will be restored. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer if the High Beam Assist function stops temporarily for a long time.

NOTE

Even when the operation conditions of the High Beam Assist function are met, there may be a case in which the High Beam Assist indicator does not illuminate and an abnormal condition warning is given. In this case, turn the ignition switch to “OFF” position and then “ON” position again. Check if the High Beam Assist indicator illuminates. If the indicator does not illuminate, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer.

▼ How to change the headlight mode manually

Change to the low beam:

Return the turn signal lever to the center position to turn off the high beam assist function. At this time, the high beam assist function will turn off and the high beam assist indicator light will turn off.

Change to the high beam:

Turn the light control switch to the first position to change the headlight mode to the high beam. At this time, the High Beam Assist function will turn off, the High Beam Assist indicator light will turn off and the high beam indicator light will turn on.

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

After manually changing the headlight mode to the high beam, if you turn on the High Beam Assist function, return the light control switch to the "AUTO" position.

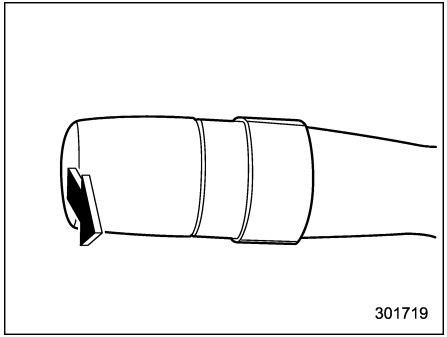
▼ Tips for the High Beam Assist system

- The High Beam Assist function recognizes the condition surrounding the vehicle based on the brightness of illumination ahead of your vehicle, etc. Therefore, the headlight mode may switch in some situations that do not match to the driver's sense.
- A bicycle or cargo cycle may not be detected.
- Under the following situations, the brightness of ambient illumination may not be detected correctly and the High Beam Assist function may not work properly. As a result, the glare of the high beam may disturb the driving of an oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead. Also, the low beam mode may continue although there are no oncoming vehicles and vehicles ahead. In the such cases, change the headlight mode manually.
  - In bad weather (fog, snow, sand storm, heavy rain, etc.)
  - When the windshield glass is dirty or fogged
  - When the windshield is cracked or damaged
  - When the inside mirror or the camera is deformed or dirty
  - If there are lights similar to the headlights or the tail lights in the surrounding area
  - When an oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead is driven without its headlights and tail lights on
  - If the headlights of an oncoming vehicle or the tail lights of a vehicle ahead are dirty or discolored, or if the light beams are not aimed correctly
  - When a rapid change of brightness continues while driving
  - When driving on a road with many ups and downs or uneven surfaces
  - When driving on a road with many curves
  - When there are some objects that reflect light strongly, such as a road sign or a mirror in vehicle ahead
  - When the rear part of the vehicle ahead, such as a container, reflects light strongly
  - When the headlights of your vehicle are damaged or dirty
  - When your vehicle is tilted, such as in case the vehicle has a flat tire or is being towed
- In the following conditions, the headlight mode will not be automatically changed from the high beam to the low beam.
  - When your vehicle passes an oncoming vehicle suddenly in a blind curve
  - When another vehicle passes in front of your vehicle
  - When an oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead comes in and out of view because of continuous curves, median strips, roadside trees, etc.
- If the camera detects the light of the front fog lights of an oncoming vehicle, the headlight mode may change from the high beam to the low beam automatically.
- The headlight mode may change from the high beam to the low beam, or the low beam mode may continue, when affected by a street light, traffic signal, illumination of an advertisement board, or a reflective object such as a road sign and signboard.
- The timing of the change of headlight mode may differ due to the following factors.
  - Color or brightness of the headlights of an oncoming vehicle or the tail lights of a vehicle ahead
  - Movement and direction of an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle ahead
  - When the headlights of an oncoming vehicle or the tail lights of a vehicle

ahead illuminate on only one side
– When the oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead is a motorcycle
– Conditions of a road (slope, curve, road surface, etc.)
– Number of passengers and weight of loaded cargo

- The range recognizable for the camera is ±15 degrees in both directions (30 degrees in total) from the vehicle front. The recognizable distance differs depending on the situation in the surrounding area.
- This function can be disabled at SUBARU dealers. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.

■ Headlight flasher



⚠ CAUTION

Do not hold the lever in the flashing position for more than just a few seconds.

To flash the headlights, pull the lever toward you and then release it. The high beam will stay on for as long as you hold the lever. The headlight flasher works even though the lighting switch is in the off position.

When the headlights are on high beam, the high beam indicator light "≣D" on the combination meter is also on.

■ Daytime running light system (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

The light switch must always be turned to the "≣D" position when it is dark outside.

The daytime running light will automatically illuminate at reduced brightness when the following conditions are fulfilled.

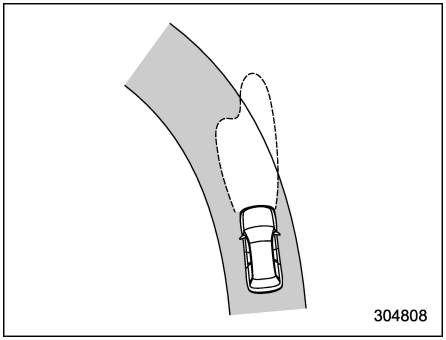
- The engine is running.
- The light control switch is in the "AUTO" or off position.

NOTE

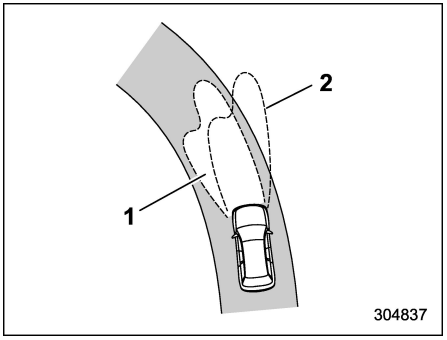
- **After starting the engine with the parking brake applied, the daytime running light will illuminate when the parking brake is released.**
- **The daytime running light system is deactivated while the front position lights are on (e.g., the light control switch is in the first position).**

Steering Responsive Headlight (SRH) (if equipped)

SRH is a function that automatically moves the headlight beam to the left or right in accordance with the steering angle and vehicle speed. This function helps to improve the visibility at night by illuminating the road ahead at corners and intersections.



Models without SRH



Models with SRH

1) The target area of illumination when SRH is activated
2) The target area of illumination when SRH is not activated

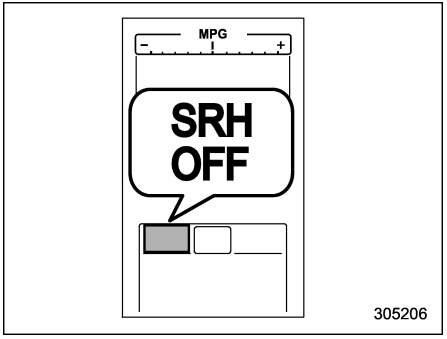
SRH changes the direction of the headlights in accordance with the steering angle and the vehicle speed, providing enhanced visibility in the direction of travel.

NOTE

• SRH only activates when the vehicle is traveling forward at the speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) and over.
• For MT models, SRH may not activate when the shift lever is in the 1st gear position.

■ To turn on/off the SRH

Operate the combination meter display (color LCD) to turn on/off the SRH. For details, refer to “SRH” ☞3-44.



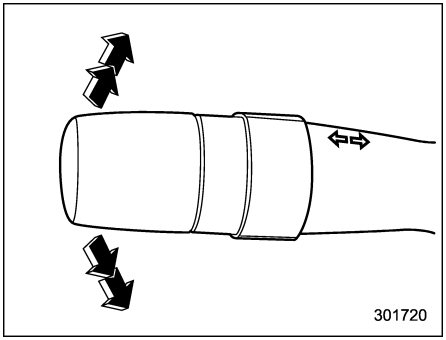
SRH OFF indicator

The SRH OFF indicator on the combination meter turns off when SRH is turned on.

The SRH OFF indicator on the combination meter illuminates when SRH is turned off.

If SRH is malfunctioning, a message appears on the warning screen when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position. It indicates that SRH has been deactivated. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer for an inspection.

Turn signal lever



To activate the right turn signal, push the turn signal lever up. To activate the left turn signal, push the turn signal lever down. When the turn is finished, the lever will return automatically. If the lever does not return after cornering, return the lever to the neutral position by hand.

To signal a lane change, push the turn signal lever up or down slightly and hold it during the lane change. The turn signal indicator lights will flash in the direction of the turn or lane change. The lever will return automatically to the neutral position when you release it.

NOTE

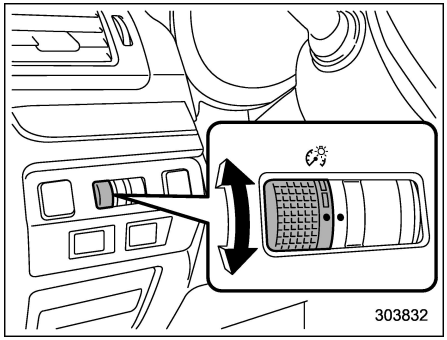
For models with a turn signal lever on the right side of the steering wheel, the pushing direction of the turn signal lever is the opposite of that described here.

■ One-touch lane changer

To flash the turn signal and turn signal indicator light three times, push the turn signal lever up or down slightly and immediately release it.

The operational/non-operational setting of the one-touch lane changer's can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact the nearest SUBARU dealer for details.

Illumination brightness control



You can adjust the illumination brightness of the combination meter, multi-function display, the climate control panel, etc. by turning the control dial.

- To brighten, turn the control dial upward.
- To darken, turn the control dial downward.

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

• When you turn the control dial fully upward, the illumination brightness becomes the maximum and the automatic dimming function does not work at all.

• The brightness setting is not canceled even when the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.

Headlight beam leveler

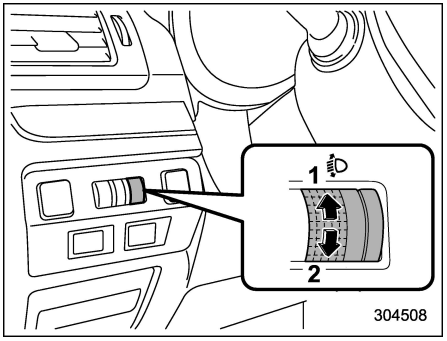
■ Automatic headlight beam leveler (models with LED headlights)

The LED headlights generate more light than conventional halogen headlights.

Therefore a driver of an oncoming vehicle may experience too much glare when your headlight beam height adjustment is high when the vehicle is carrying a heavy load.

The automatic headlight beam leveler adjusts the headlight beam height automatically and optimally according to the load being carried by the vehicle.

■ Manual headlight beam leveler (models without LED headlights)



1) Raises the level of the headlight beam
2) Lowers the level of the headlight beam

Adjust the headlight beam level with the following dial positions according to the number of passengers and load condition.

Dial position	Number of front seat occupants	Number of rear seat occupants	Load in the luggage compartment area
0	1 or 2	0	No load
1	2	3	No load
2	2	3	Full load*
	1	0	Full load*
3, 4 and 5	Use in special case	Use in special case	Use in special case

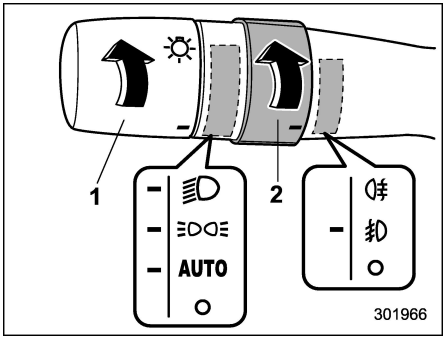
*: Up to the maximum permissible weight

NOTE

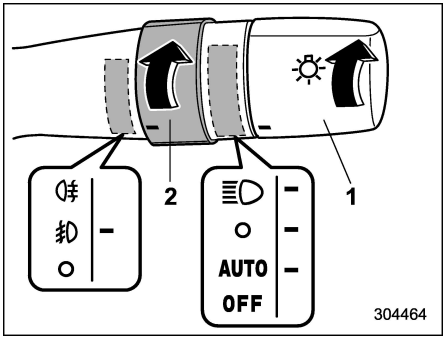
- **Please use the appropriate dial position according to the above table. Otherwise, your vehicle may not light the road in front of your vehicle sufficiently or the surrounding area may experience too much glare.**
- **The "Use in special case" position should only be used in cases such as when driving on a sloped road and the headlights of your vehicle are lighting the mirror of vehicles in front of you or the windshield of oncoming vehicles.**

Fog light switch

■ Front fog light switch (if equipped)



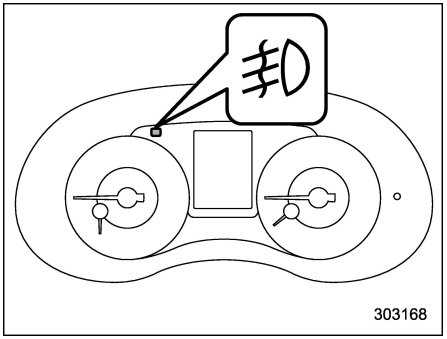
Front fog light operating condition (except Australia models)
1) Headlight switch
2) Fog light switch



Front fog light operating condition (Australia models)
1) Headlight switch
2) Fog light switch

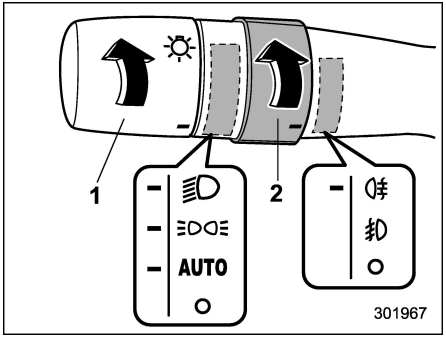
The front fog lights will turn on when the fog light switch is placed in the "⇕" position while the front position lights are on (e.g., the light control switch is in the first position.)

To turn off the front fog lights, turn the switch back down to the "O" position.

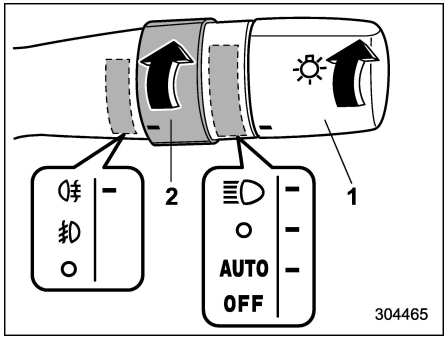


The indicator light on the combination meter will illuminate when the front fog lights are illuminated.

■ Rear fog light switch



Rear fog light operating condition (except Australia models)
1) Headlight switch
2) Fog light switch



Rear fog light operating condition (Australia models)
1) Headlight switch
2) Fog light switch

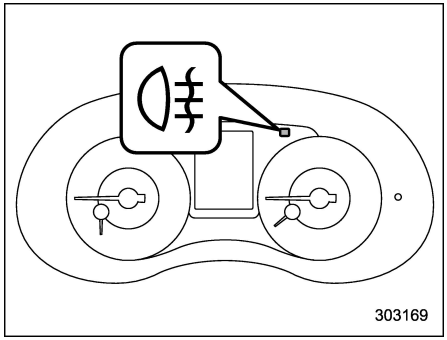
The rear fog light will turn on when the fog light switch is turned to the "⫶D" position while the front position lights are on (e.g., the light control switch is in the first position.)

The switch will return to the following position when released.

- "≢D" position (models with front fog lights)
- "O" position (models without front fog lights)

To turn off the rear fog light, perform either of the following procedures.

- Turn the fog light switch upward back to the "⫶D" position again (all models)
- Turn the fog light switch downward to the "O" position (models with front fog lights)



The indicator light on the combination meter will illuminate when the rear fog light is illuminated.

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

To prevent switching off the rear fog light from being forgotten, the rear fog light circuit is designed so that it turns off whenever one of the following operations is performed.

- **The headlight switch is set to either the "≡D◇≡" or "O" position.**
- **The headlight switch is set to the "AUTO" position and the headlights turn off.**
- **The key is removed from the ignition switch (models without the "keyless access with push-button start system").**
- **The push-button ignition switch is turned off (models with the "keyless access with push-button start system").**

However, this does not mean that the rear fog light illuminates when the headlight switch is set to "≡D" position or the ignition switch is turned to "ON" position again. So, if you want to reilluminate the rear fog light, turn the fog light switch to the "◇≡" position.

Wiper and washer

■ General precautions

⚠ WARNING

In freezing weather, do not use the windshield washer until the windshield is sufficiently warmed by the defroster.

Otherwise the washer fluid can freeze on the windshield, blocking your view.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not operate the washer continuously for more than 10 seconds, or when the washer fluid tank is empty. This may cause overheating of the washer motor. Check the washer fluid level frequently, such as at fuel stops.**
- **Do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry. This may scratch the glass, damage the blade rubbers and cause the wiper motor to burn out. Before operating the wiper on a dry windshield always use the windshield washer.**
- **In freezing weather, be sure that the blade rubbers are not frozen to the windshield before switching on the wipers. Attempting to operate the wiper with the blade rubbers frozen to the window glass could cause not only the blade rubbers to be damaged but also the wiper motor to burn out. If the blade rubbers are frozen to the window glass, be sure to operate the defroster or windshield wiper deicer (if equipped) before turning on the wiper.**
- **If the wipers stop during operation because of ice or some other obstruction on the window, the wiper motor could burn out even if the wiper is turned off. If this occurs, promptly stop the vehicle in a safe place, turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and clean the window glass to allow proper wiper operation.**
- **Use clean water if windshield washer fluid is unavailable. In areas where water freezes in winter, use SUBARU Windshield Washer Fluid or the equivalent. Refer to "Windshield washer fluid" ☞11-42.**

Also, when driving the vehicle when there are freezing temperatures, use non-freezing type wiper blades.

- **Do not clean the blade rubbers with fuel or a solvent, such as paint thinner or benzine. This will cause deterioration of the blade rubbers.**

▼ Precautions for automatic rain sensing windshield wipers

⚠ CAUTION

- **When the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position, do not touch the windshield near the rain light sensor and do not place a wet cloth on the windshield near the rain light sensor. Doing so may result in unexpected wiper operation and cause injury.**
- **When washing the vehicle, make sure to turn off the wipers. Otherwise, the wipers may operate unexpectedly and cause injury.**
- **When having your vehicle washed in an automatic car wash, make sure that the wiper is turned off. Otherwise, the wipers may be damaged because they may operate unexpectedly and car wash brushes could become tangled around them.**

■ General tips

- The windshield wiper motor is protected against overloads by a circuit breaker. If the motor operates continuously under an unusually heavy load, the circuit breaker may trip to stop the motor temporarily. If this happens, park your vehicle in a safe place, turn off the wiper switch, and wait for approximately 10 minutes. The circuit breaker will reset itself, and the wipers will again operate normally.
- Clean your wiper blades and window glass periodically with a washer solution to prevent streaking, and to remove accumulations of road salt or road film. Operate the windshield washer for at least 1 second so that washer solution will be sprinkled all over the windshield.
- Grease, wax, insects or other material on the windshield or the wiper blade results in jerky wiper operation and streaking on the glass. If you cannot remove those streaks after operating the washer or if the wiper operation is jerky, clean the outer surface of the windshield and the wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth with a neutral detergent or mild-abrasive cleaner. After cleaning, rinse the window glass and wiper blades with clean water. The glass is clean if no beads form on the glass when you rinse with water.
- If you cannot eliminate the streaking even after following this procedure, replace the wiper blades with new ones. For replacement instructions, refer to "Replacement of wiper blades" ☞11-43.

▼ Tips for automatic rain sensing windshield wipers

- When you turn the wiper switch to the "AUTO" position with the ignition switch in the "ON" position, the wipers will operate once. This indicates that the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position.
- When the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position, the following situations may occur.
  - – The wipers may operate if the rain light sensor or the windshield is vibrated or objects such as, insects, dirt, mud, etc. are covering them. Turn off the wiper unless it is raining or snowing.
  - – The wipers do not operate if the rain light sensor does not detect rain or snow. If necessary, push the wiper control lever down to the low speed

– CONTINUED –

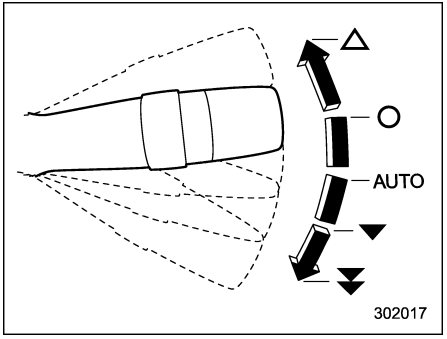
position or high speed position.
– The wipers may not operate properly if the rain light sensor does not detect the amount of raindrops because of the water-repellent coating on the windshield, or dirt or ice on the upper half of the windshield.
– The rain light sensor may be malfunctioning if the wiper intermittent operation does not vary depending on the amount of rainfall. If necessary, turn the wiper switch to any position except for the “AUTO” position. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected as soon as possible.
– The wipers stop operation if the ambient temperature decreases to −15°C (5°F) or lower. The wipers resume operation when the ambient temperature increases to −10°C (14°F) or higher. If you need to operate the wipers under −15°C (5°F), push the wiper control lever down to the low speed position or high speed position.
– The wipers may not operate if the temperature around the rain light sensor is more than 80°C (176°F) because the system cannot detect the amount of raindrops under these temperatures.

- This system is also equipped with the vehicle speed interlocking intermittent wiper function. When the vehicle stops, the wiper operation interval will become longer compared with that while driving.
- This system may malfunction in a location with strong radio waves or noise.

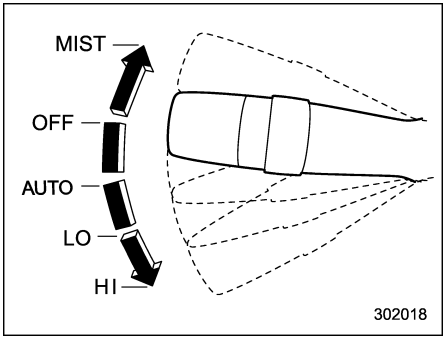
■ Windshield wiper and washer switches

The wiper operates only when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

▼ Windshield wipers



Except Australia models



Australia models
△ / MIST: Mist (for a single wipe)
○ / OFF: Off
AUTO / AUTO: Automatic operation
▼ / LO: Low speed
▼▼ / HI: High speed

To turn the wipers on, push the wiper control lever down. With the wiper switch in the “AUTO” position, the wipers operate automatically when the rain light sensor detects falling rain. The wiper timing is automatically adjusted depending on the amount of rain.

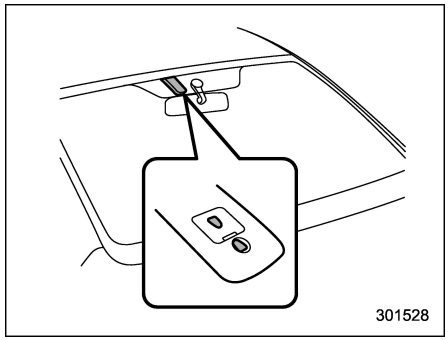
To turn the wipers off, return the lever to the “OFF”/“○” position.

For a single wipe of the wipers, push the lever up. The wipers operate until you release the lever.

NOTE

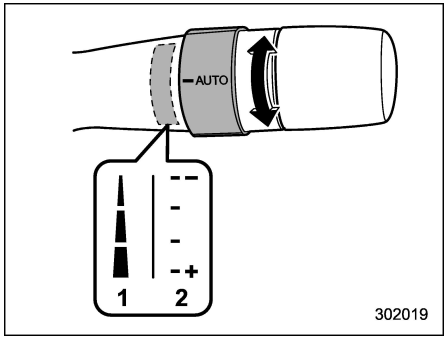
The automatic adjusting mode of the wiper timing can be changed from the rain-sensing mode to the vehicle speed interlocking mode. The setting can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.

▽ **Rain light sensor**



The rain light sensor is on the windshield glass.

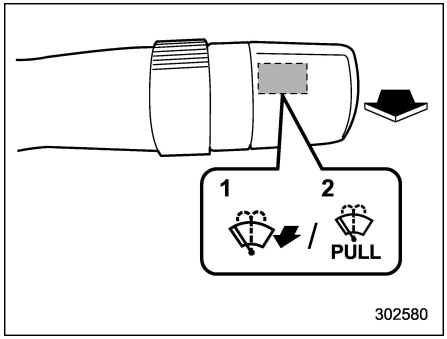
▽ **Sensor sensitivity control**



1) Except Australia models
2) Australia models

Turn the dial to adjust the sensitivity of the rain light sensor for wiper control. Turn the dial downward to increase the sensitivity. Turn the dial upward to decrease the sensitivity.

▼ **Windshield washer**

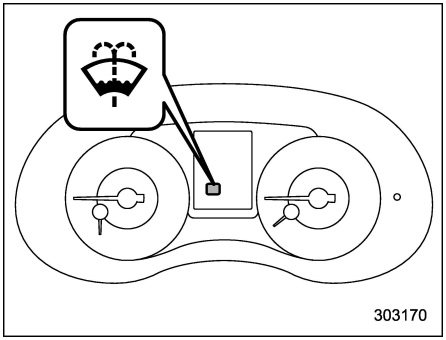


1) Except Australia models
2) Australia models

To wash the windshield, pull the wiper control lever toward you. The washer fluid sprays until you release the lever. The wipers operate while you pull the lever.

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

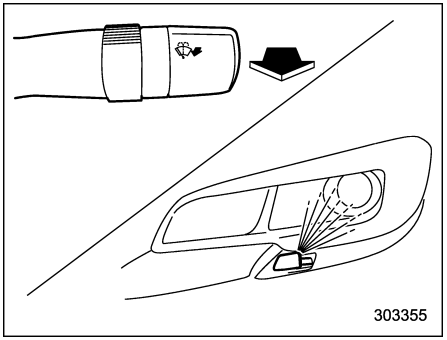


The windshield washer fluid warning indicator appears when the washer fluid level in the tank has dropped to the lower limit. If the warning indicator appears, refill the tank with fluid. For the refilling procedure, refer to "Windshield washer fluid" ☞11-42.

NOTE

Since your vehicle is equipped with a headlight washer, pulling the wiper control lever for more than 1 second also causes the headlight washer to operate when the headlight switch is in the "≡D" position. For further details, refer to "Headlight washer" ☞3-80.

Headlight washer



If you pull the wiper control lever toward you and hold it for more than 1 second under both of the following conditions, the headlight washer operates together with the windshield washer.

- The ignition switch is in the "ON" position.
- The headlights are on (e.g., the light control switch is in the second position.)

The windshield washer stops spraying washer fluid as soon as you release the wiper control lever. The headlight washer sprays the washer fluid for approximately 1 second and then stops automatically.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the washer if the washer fluid tank is empty. This may cause overheating of the washer motor. Check washer fluid level frequently, such as at fuel stops.

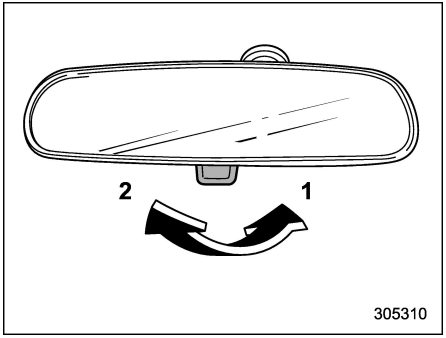
NOTE

When the area around the nozzle cover of the headlight washer is frozen, remove the ice before using.

Mirrors

Always check that the inside and outside mirrors are properly adjusted before you start driving.

■ Inside mirror



1) Normal position
2) Anti-glare position

Push the tab on the mirror for normal use. To reduce glare from the headlights of the vehicle behind you, pull the tab to the antiglare position.

■ Auto-dimming mirror (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

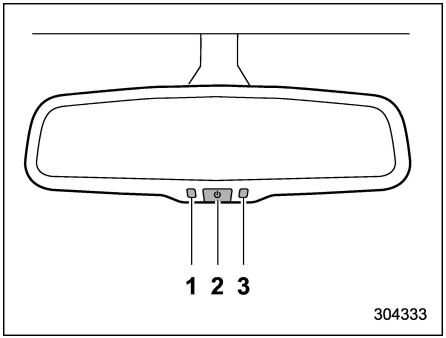
To ensure safety, always adjust the mirrors and operate the switch before driving the vehicle. Perform the automatic dimming on/off operation only when necessary. Otherwise, an unexpected accident may occur.

⚠ CAUTION

- **When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror because that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing and damage the mirror.**
- **Sensors detecting brightness are located in front of and behind the mirror. Do not attach any object such as a sticker on the sensor areas or put any object over the mirror.**

– CONTINUED –

▼ How to use the auto-dimming mirror



1) LED indicator
2) Automatic dimming on/off switch
3) Sensor

1. Move the main body of the auto-dimming mirror and adjust the position so that you can view the rearward direction sufficiently.
2. By pressing the automatic dimming on/off switch, the automatic dimming function is turned on or off. When the automatic dimming function is on, the LED indicator will illuminate.

NOTE

• Sensors are located in front of and behind the mirror.
• Even with the mirror in the automatic dimming mode, the mirror surface turns bright if the shift lever (MT models) or select lever (CVT models) is shifted into the "R" position. This is to ensure good rearward visibility during reversing.

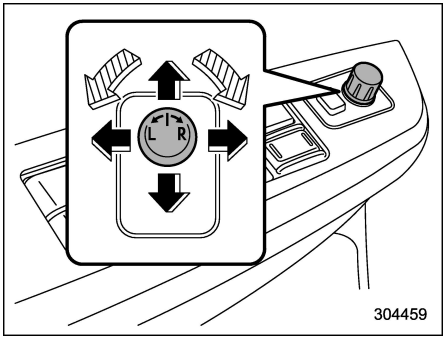
■ Outside mirrors

▼ Convex mirror (passenger side)

⚠ WARNING

Objects look smaller in a convex mirror and farther away than when viewed in a flat mirror. Do not use the convex mirror to judge the distance of vehicles behind you when changing lanes. Use the inside mirror (or glance backwards) to determine the actual size and distance of objects that you view in convex mirror.

▼ Remote control mirror switch



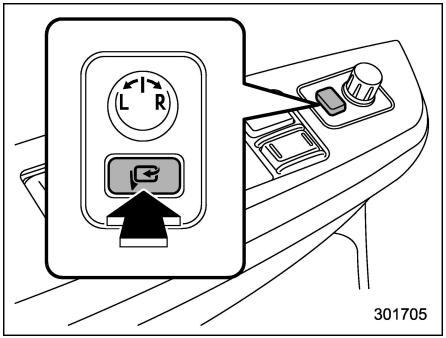
: Select side to adjust
: Direction control

The remote control mirrors operate only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" or "ACC" position.

1. Turn the control switch to the side that you want to adjust. "L" is for the left mirror, "R" is for the right mirror.
2. Move the control switch in the direction you want to move the mirror.
3. Return the control switch to the neutral position to prevent unintentional operation.

You can also adjust the mirrors manually.

▼ **Power folding mirror switch**



The power folding mirror switch operates only when the ignition switch is in the “ON” or “ACC” position.

To fold the outside mirrors, press the power folding mirror switch. To unfold the mirrors, press the switch again.

NOTE

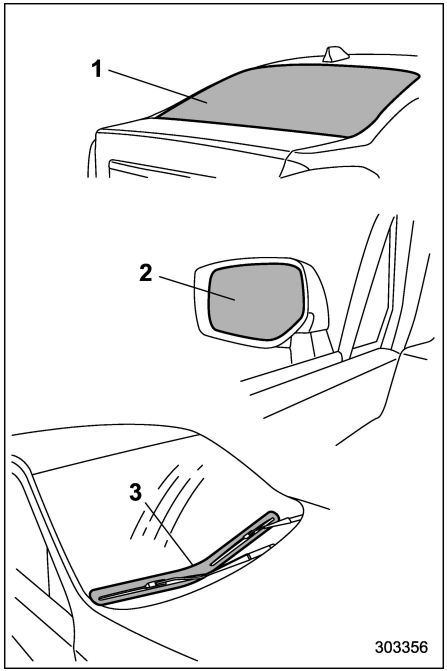
● When the temperature is low, the outside mirrors may stop during switch operation. If that occurs, push the switch again. When the outside mirrors do not work by switch operation, move them several times manually. This makes it possible to operate them by switch operation.

● When you operate the power folding mirror switch continuously, it may not work. This is not a malfunction. Operate the switch again after waiting for a short period of time.

● When you unfold the outside mirrors manually, the mirrors may become wobbly. Be sure to unfold the mirrors by switch operation. If the outside mirrors are still wobbly, fold the mirrors again and then unfold them by switch operation.

● When you fold the outside mirrors manually, the mirrors may not unfold when the switch is pressed, even though the motor operating sound is heard. When this happens, operate the power folding mirror switch again.

Defogger and deicer

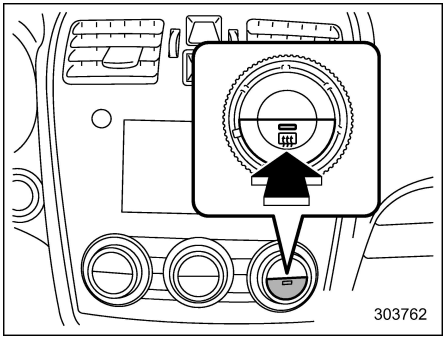


1) Rear window defogger
2) Outside mirror defogger
3) Windshield wiper deicer (if equipped)

The defogger and deicer system is acti-

– CONTINUED –

vated only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.



To activate the defogger and deicer system, press the control switch that is located on the climate control panel. The rear window defogger, outside mirror defogger and windshield wiper deicer are activated simultaneously. The indicator light on the control switch illuminates while the defogger and deicer system is activated.

To turn them off, press the control switch again. They also turn off when the ignition switch is turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK"/ "OFF" position.

The defogger and deicer system will automatically shut off after approximately 15 minutes. If the rear window and the outside mirrors have been cleared and the windshield wiper blade rubbers have been deiced completely before that time, press the control switch to turn them off. If defrosting, defogging or deicing is not complete, you have to press the control switch to turn them on again.

It is possible for the defogger and deicer system to be set to continuous operation mode by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for details. Also, it is possible to set the defogger and deicer system for the continuous operation mode. For details, refer to "Defogger setting" ☞3-61.

If the battery voltage drops below the permissible level, continuous operation of the defogger and deicer system is canceled and the system stops operating.

⚠ CAUTION

- **To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not operate the defogger and deicer system continuously for any longer than necessary.**
- **Do not use sharp instruments or window cleaner containing abrasives to clean the inner surface of the rear window. They may damage the conductors printed on the window.**

NOTE

• Turn on the defogger and deicer system if the wipers are frozen to the windshield.

• If the windshield is covered with snow, remove the snow so that the windshield wiper deicer works effectively.

• While the defogger and deicer system is in the continuous operation mode:

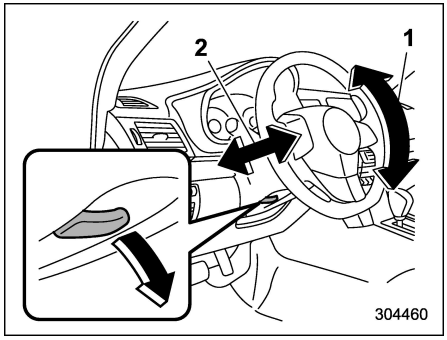
– If the vehicle speed remains at 15 km/h (9 mph) or lower for 15 minutes, the windshield wiper deicer stops operating. However, the rear window defogger and outside mirror defogger maintain continuous operation.

– If the battery voltage drops below the permissible level, the defogger and deicer system stops operating.

Tilt/telescopic steering wheel

⚠ WARNING

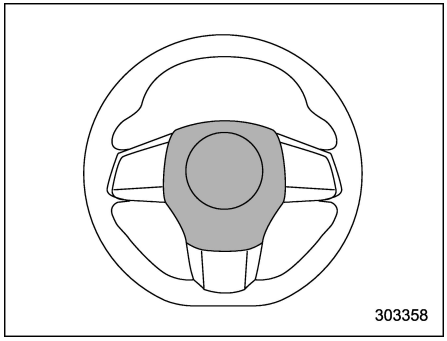
- **Do not adjust the steering wheel tilt/telescopic position while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control and result in personal injury.**
- **If the lever cannot be raised to the fixed position, adjust the steering wheel again. It is dangerous to drive without locking the steering wheel. This may cause loss of vehicle control and result in personal injury.**



1) Tilt adjustment
2) Telescopic adjustment

1. Adjust the seat position. Refer to “Front seats” ☞1-2.
2. Pull the tilt/telescopic lock lever down.
3. Move the steering wheel to the desired level.
4. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.
5. Make sure that the steering wheel is securely locked by moving it up and down, and forward and backward.

Horn

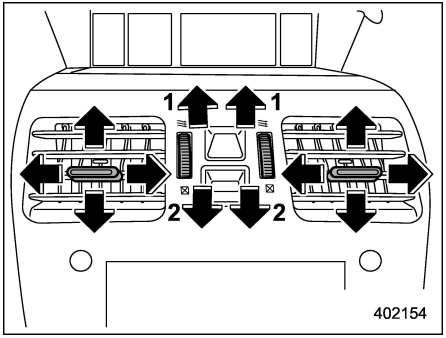


To sound the horn, push the horn pad.

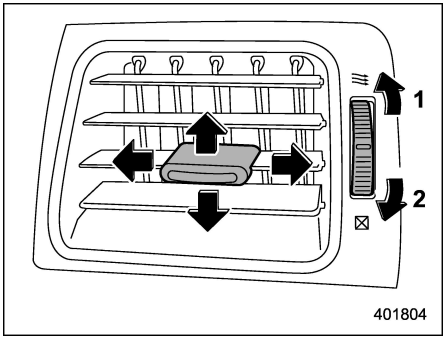
Ventilator control 4-2
Center and side ventilators 4-2
Climate control panel 4-3
Type A 4-3
Type B 4-4
Automatic climate control operation 4-5
Sensors 4-6
Manual climate control operation 4-6
Airflow mode selection 4-6
Temperature control 4-8
Fan speed control 4-9
Air conditioner control 4-9
Air inlet selection 4-9
Defrosting 4-10
Type A 4-10
Type B 4-10
Operating tips for heater and air conditioner 4-10
Cleaning ventilation grille 4-10
Efficient cooling after parking in direct sunlight 4-11
Lubrication oil circulation in the refrigerant circuit 4-11
Checking air conditioning system before summer season 4-11
Cooling and dehumidifying in high humidity and low temperature weather conditions 4-11
Air conditioner compressor shut-off when engine is heavily loaded 4-11
Refrigerant for your climate control system 4-11
Air filtration system 4-12
Replacing a cabin air filter 4-12

Ventilator control

■ Center and side ventilators



Center ventilators
1) Open
2) Close



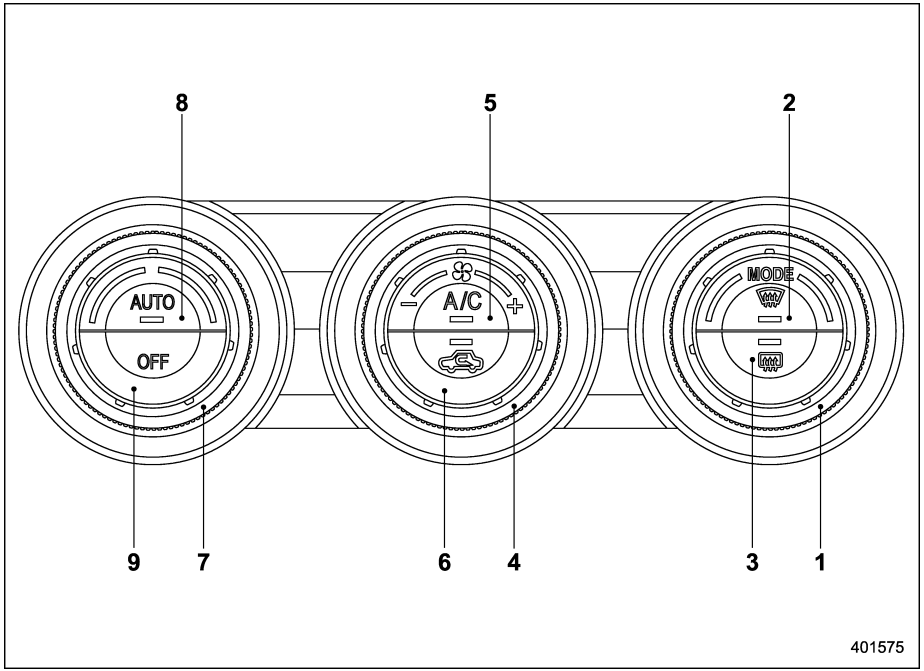
Side ventilators
1) Open
2) Close

To adjust the flow direction, move the tab.

To open or close the ventilator, turn the thumb-wheel up or down.

Climate control panel

■ Type A



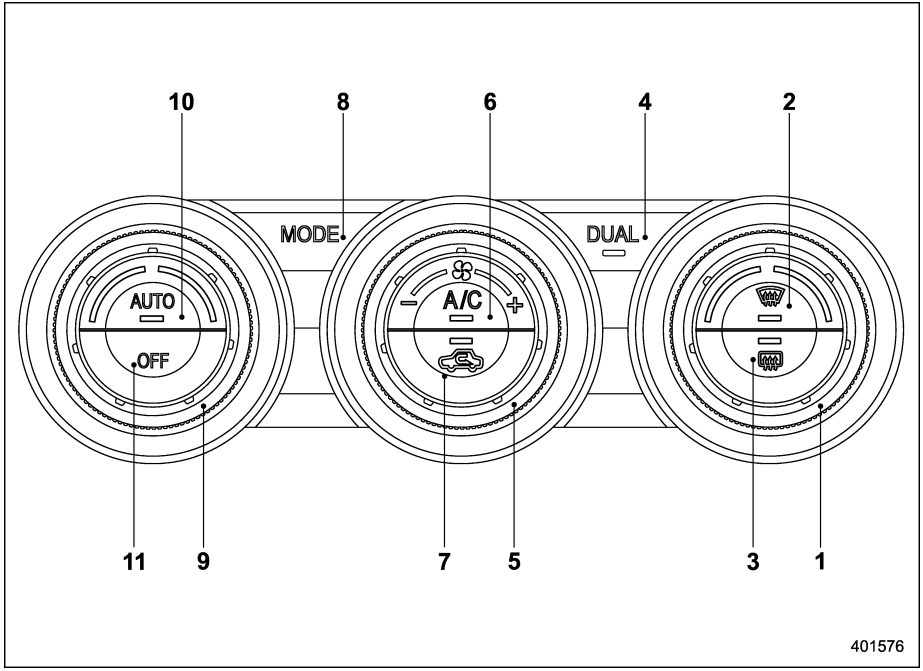
1) Airflow mode selection dial (Refer to “Airflow mode selection” ☞4-6.)
2) Defroster button (Refer to “Airflow mode selection” ☞4-6.)
3) Rear window defogger button (Refer to “Defogger and deicer” ☞3-83.)
4) Fan speed control dial (Refer to “Fan speed control” ☞4-9.)
5) Air conditioner button (Refer to “Air conditioner control” ☞4-9.)
6) Air inlet selection button (Refer to “Air inlet selection” ☞4-9.)
7) Temperature control dial (Refer to “Automatic climate control operation” ☞4-5 and/or “Temperature control” ☞4-8.)
8) AUTO button (Refer to “Automatic climate control operation” ☞4-5.)
9) OFF button (Refer to “Automatic climate control operation” ☞4-5.)

▼ For regional specification

The illustration on the left is a typical example for left-hand drive models. For right-hand drive models, the locations of some buttons/dials are different to that shown in the illustration.

– CONTINUED –

■ Type B



1) Temperature control dial (Refer to “Automatic climate control operation” ☞4-5 and/or “Temperature control” ☞4-8.)
2) Defroster button (Refer to “Airflow mode selection” ☞4-6.)
3) Rear window defogger button (Refer to “Defogger and deicer” ☞3-83.)
4) DUAL mode button (Refer to ““DUAL” mode (type B)” ☞4-8.)
5) Fan speed control dial (Refer to “Fan speed control” ☞4-9.)
6) Air conditioner button (Refer to “Air conditioner control” ☞4-9.)
7) Air inlet selection button (Refer to “Air inlet selection” ☞4-9.)
8) Airflow mode selection button (Refer to “Airflow mode selection” ☞4-6.)
9) Temperature control dial (Refer to “Automatic climate control operation” ☞4-5 and/or “Temperature control” ☞4-8.)
10) AUTO button (Refer to “Automatic climate control operation” ☞4-5.)
11) OFF button (Refer to “Automatic climate control operation” ☞4-5.)

▼ For regional specification

The illustration on the left is a typical example for left-hand drive models. For right-hand drive models, the locations of some buttons/dials are different to that shown in the illustration.

Automatic climate control operation

When this mode is selected, the fan speed, airflow distribution, air-inlet control, and air conditioner compressor operation are automatically controlled. To activate this mode, perform the following.

NOTE

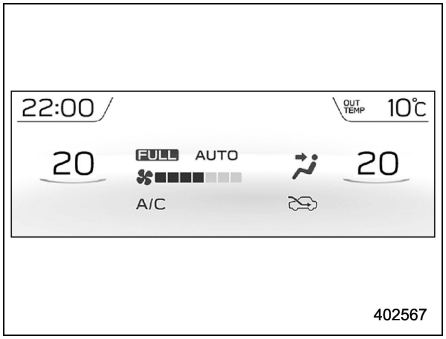
● Even when cooling is not necessary, the air conditioner compressor will automatically turn on if the temperature is set much lower than the current outlet air temperature. In this case, the "A/C" indicator light on the control panel will illuminate.

● The air conditioner may not operate in the following cases:

– when the cabin temperature is low

– when the ambient temperature decreases close to 0°C (32°F)

● The controllable temperature range may vary depending on the regional specifications of the vehicle.



1. Press the "AUTO" button. The indicator "FULL AUTO" on the display illuminates.
2. Set the preferred temperature using the temperature control dial.

NOTE

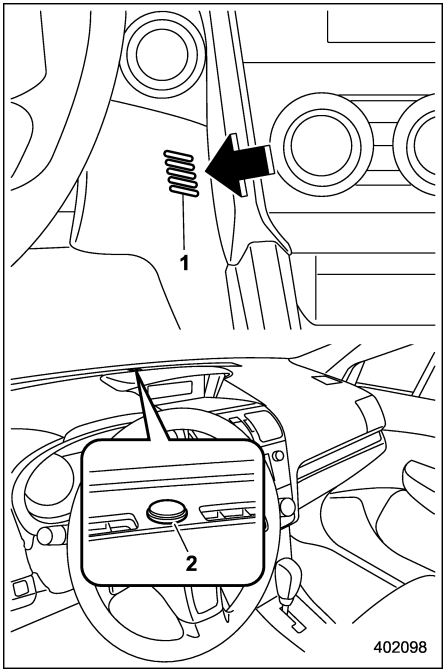
● If you operate any of the buttons on the control panel other than the "OFF" button, rear window defogger button and temperature control dial(s) during FULL AUTO mode operation, the "FULL" indicator on the control panel will turn off and the "AUTO" indicator will remain illuminated. You can then manually control the system as desired using the button you operated. To change the system back to the FULL AUTO mode, press the "AUTO" button.

● When the climate control system turns off, the air inlet is fixed to the outside air mode.

To turn off the climate control system, press the "OFF" button.

– CONTINUED –

■ Sensors



1) Interior air temperature sensor
2) Solar sensor

The automatic climate control system employs several sensors.

The sensors are located as follows.

– Solar sensor: beside the windshield defroster grille

– Interior air temperature sensor: next to the steering column

– Outside temperature sensor: near the front bumper opening

These sensors are delicate. If they are not treated properly and become damaged, the system may not be able to control the interior temperature correctly. To avoid damaging the sensors, observe the following precautions.

– Do not subject the sensors to impact.

– Keep water away from the sensors.

– Do not cover the sensors.

Manual climate control operation

■ Airflow mode selection

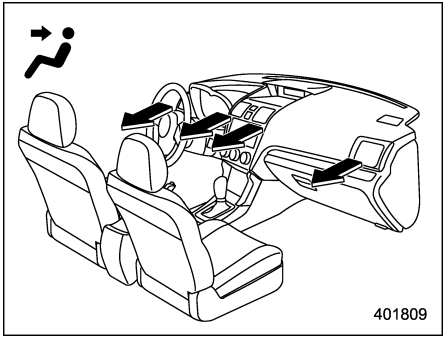
To select the airflow mode:

- **Type A:** Turn the airflow mode selection dial.
- **Type B:** Press the airflow mode selection button.

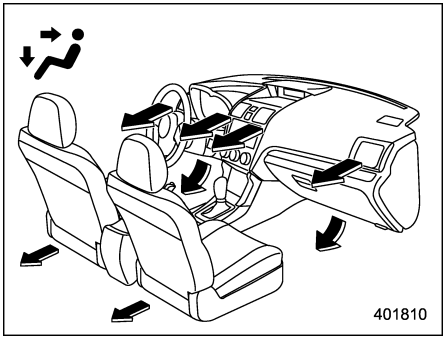
To select the defrost mode:

Press the defroster button.

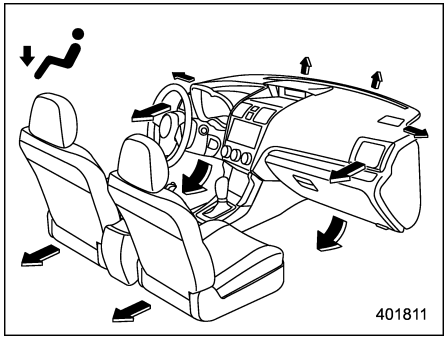
Airflow modes are as follows.



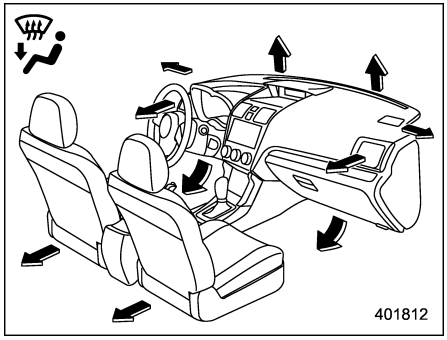
(Ventilation): Instrument panel outlets



(Bi-level): Instrument panel outlets and foot outlets

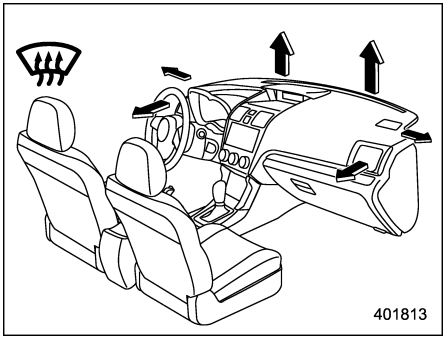


(Heat): Foot outlets, both side outlets of the instrument panel and some through windshield defroster outlets (A small amount of air flows to the windshield and both side windows to prevent fogging.)



(Heat-def): Windshield defroster outlets, foot outlets and both side outlets of the instrument panel (Refer to “Defrosting” ☞4-10.)

– CONTINUED –



(Defrost): Windshield defroster outlets and both side outlets of the instrument panel (Refer to "Defrosting" ☞4-10.)

NOTE

When the "" mode or "" mode is selected, the air conditioner compressor automatically operates to more quickly defog the windshield. At the same time, the air inlet selection is automatically set to the outside air mode.

■ Temperature control

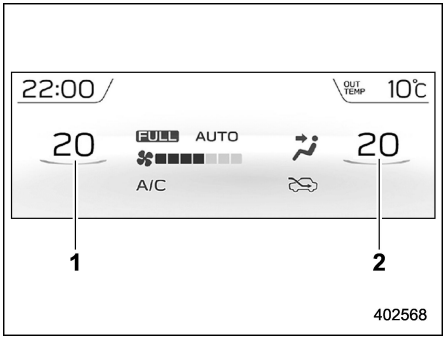
NOTE

The controllable temperature range may vary depending on the regional specifications of the vehicle.

Turn the temperature control dial to set the preferred interior temperature. With the dial set to your preferred temperature, the system automatically adjusts the temperature of air supplied from the outlets so that the preferred temperature is achieved and maintained.

If the dial is turned fully counterclockwise, the system provides maximum cooling performance. If the dial is turned fully clockwise, the system provides maximum heating performance.

▼ "DUAL" mode (type B)



1) Temperature for the left-hand side
2) Temperature for the right-hand side

You can change the setting of the driver's side and front passenger's side temperature independently by selecting the "DUAL" mode.

You can select the "DUAL" mode by performing either of the following procedures.

- Press the "DUAL" button
- Turn the passenger's side temperature control dial

You can cancel the "DUAL" mode by pressing the "DUAL" button.

When the "DUAL" mode is selected:
Turn the driver's side dial to set the driver's side temperature. Turn the front passenger's side dial to set the front passenger's side temperature.

When the "DUAL" mode is canceled:
Set the desired temperature by turning the driver's side dial.
When the "DUAL" mode is canceled, only the driver's side temperature is displayed.

■ Fan speed control

The fan operates only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position. Select the preferred fan speed by turning the fan speed control dial.

■ Air conditioner control

The air conditioner operates only when the engine is running.
Press the air conditioner button while the fan is in operation to turn on the air conditioner. When the air conditioner is on, the "A/C" indicator light illuminates.
To turn off the air conditioner, press the button again.

NOTE

For efficient defogging or dehumidifying in cold weather, turn on the air conditioner. However, if the ambient temperature decreases to approximately 0°C (32°F), the air conditioner compressor will stop operating.

■ Air inlet selection

Select the air inlet by pressing the air inlet selection button.

ON position (recirculation): Interior air is recirculated inside the vehicle. Press the air inlet selection button to the ON position for fast cooling with the air conditioner or when driving on a dusty road.

OFF position (outside air): Outside air is drawn into the passenger compartment. Press the air inlet selection button to the OFF position when the interior has cooled to a comfortable temperature and the road is no longer dusty.

⚠ WARNING

Continued operation in the ON position may fog up the windows. Switch to the OFF position as soon as the outside conditions are no longer dusty.

NOTE

When the battery is disconnected or the battery voltage drops, the air inlet selection operation indicator light may blink. This does not indicate a malfunction. However, if the indicator light blinks every time you start the engine, a malfunction may occur in the electrical circuit. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected at the nearest SUBARU dealer.

Defrosting

NOTE

When the "" or "" mode is selected, the air conditioner compressor automatically operates to more quickly defrost the windshield. At the same time, the air inlet selection is automatically set to the outside air mode.

■ Type A

Select the "" mode by pressing the defroster button, or select the "" mode by turning the airflow mode selection dial to defroster or to dehumidify the windshield and front door windows.

If the defroster button is pressed while the "" mode is selected, it will return to the previous mode before selecting the "" mode.

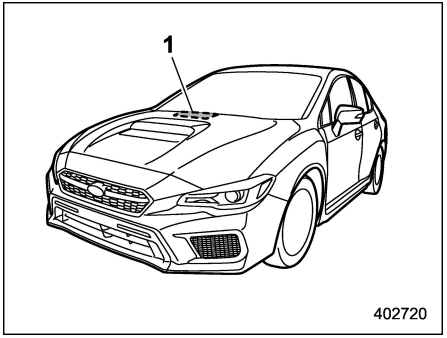
■ Type B

Select the "" mode by pressing the defroster button, or select the "" mode by pressing the airflow mode selection button to defroster or to dehumidify the windshield and front door windows.

If the defroster button is pressed while the "" mode is selected, it will return to the previous mode before selecting the "" mode.

Operating tips for heater and air conditioner

■ Cleaning ventilation grille



1) Front ventilation inlet grille

Always keep the front ventilation inlet grille free of snow, leaves, or other obstructions to ensure efficient heating and defrosting. Since the condenser is located in front of the radiator, this area should be kept clean because cooling performance is impaired by any accumulation of insects and leaves on the condenser.

■ Efficient cooling after parking in direct sunlight

After parking in direct sunlight, drive with the windows open for a few minutes to allow outside air to circulate into the heated interior. This results in quicker cooling by the air conditioner. Keep the windows closed during the operation of the air conditioner for maximum cooling efficiency.

■ Lubrication oil circulation in the refrigerant circuit

Operate the air conditioner compressor at a low engine speed (at idle or low driving speeds) a few minutes each month during the off-season to circulate its oil.

■ Checking air conditioning system before summer season

Check the air conditioner unit for refrigerant leaks, hose conditions, and proper operation each spring. We recommend that you have your SUBARU dealer perform this check.

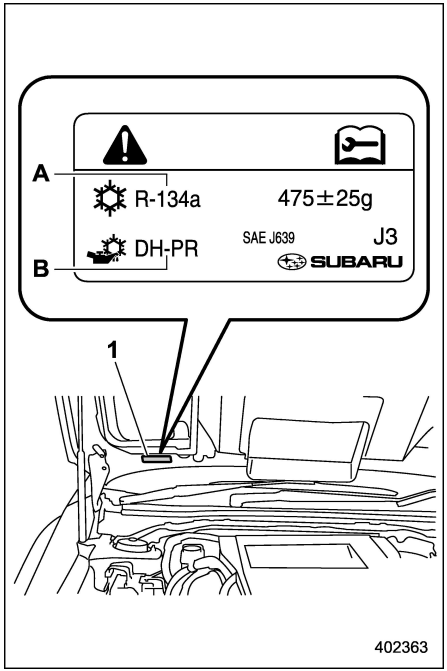
■ Cooling and dehumidifying in high humidity and low temperature weather conditions

Under certain weather conditions (high relative humidity, low temperatures, etc.) a small amount of water vapor emission from the air outlets may be noticed. This condition is normal and does not indicate any problem with the air conditioning system.

■ Air conditioner compressor shut-off when engine is heavily loaded

To improve acceleration and fuel consumption, the air conditioner compressor is designed to temporarily shut off during air conditioner operation whenever the accelerator pedal is fully depressed such as during rapid acceleration or when driving up a steep incline.

■ Refrigerant for your climate control system



Example of air conditioner label

1) Air conditioner label
A) Name of refrigerant
B) Name of compressor oil

– CONTINUED –

Your air conditioner uses ozone friendly refrigerant HFO-1234yf or HFC134a. Therefore, the method for adding, changing or checking the refrigerant is different from the method for CFC12 (freon). Also, the methods for adding, changing or checking HFO-1234yf and HFC134a refrigerant are different. Before adding, changing or checking the refrigerant, check the air conditioner label in the location shown in the illustration to confirm which type of refrigerant is used in your vehicle. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for service. Repairs needed as a result of using the wrong refrigerant are not covered under the warranty.

Air filtration system

Replace the filter element according to the maintenance schedule. Refer to “Maintenance schedule” ☞11-3. The schedule should be followed to maintain the filter’s dust collection ability. Under extremely dusty conditions, the filter should be replaced more frequently. It is recommended that you have your filter checked or replaced by your SUBARU dealer. For replacement, we recommend that you use only a genuine SUBARU air filter kit.

⚠ CAUTION

We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer if the following occurs, even if it is not yet time to change the filter:

- **Reduction of the airflow through the vents.**
- **Windshield gets easily fogged or misted.**

NOTE

The filter can influence the air conditioning, heating and defroster performance if not properly maintained.

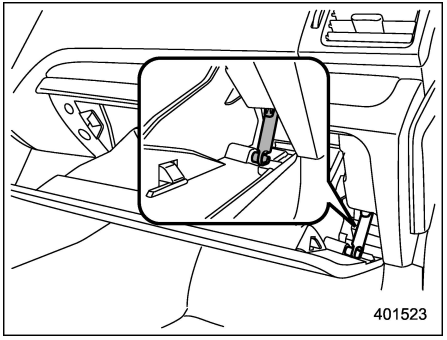
■ Replacing a cabin air filter

1. Remove the glove box.

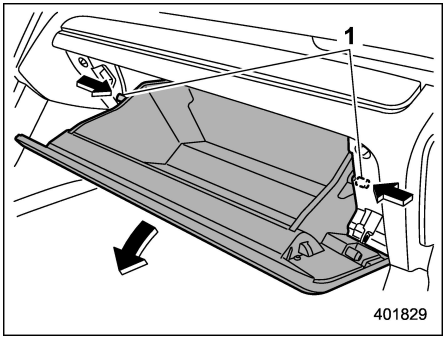
NOTE

We recommend that you take measures to protect the center console with masking tape first, so that you avoid scratching the center console with the glove box.

(1) Open the glove box.

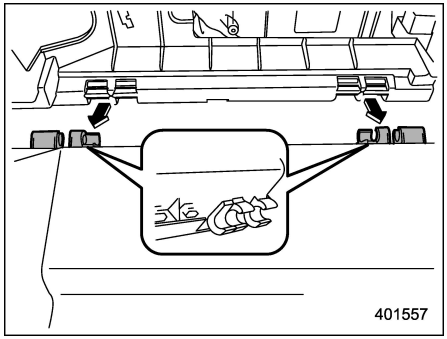


(2) Remove the damper shaft from the glove box.

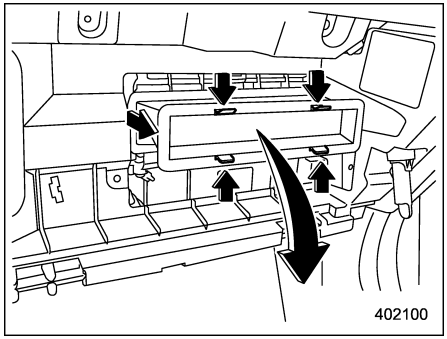


1) Stopper

(3) Push both sides of the glove box inside to unlock the stoppers and then pull down the glove box as far as it will go.



(4) Pull out the glove box horizontally and remove the hinge portion. When doing this, be careful not to damage the hinge.

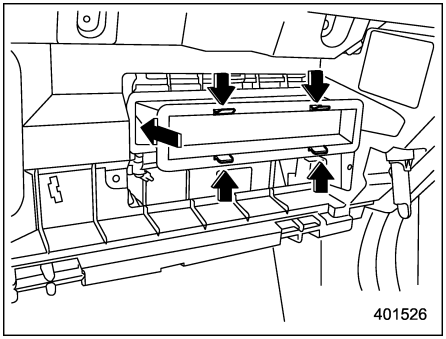


2. Remove the cabin air filter according to the following procedure in order to prevent dust on the air cleaner from falling to the inside of its housing.

(1) Push in the four stoppers to unlock, and then slowly pull out the filter 10 cm (4 in) from the housing.

(2) Completely pull out the filter by gently tilting the front side of the filter downward.

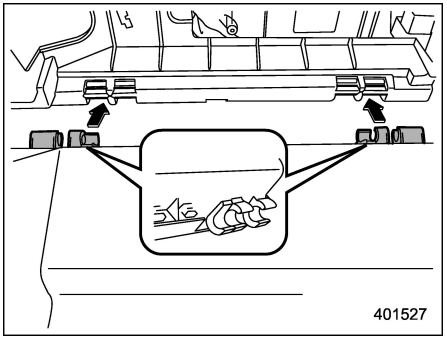
– CONTINUED –



3. Replace the cabin air filter with a new one.

⚠ CAUTION

The arrow mark on the filter must point UP.

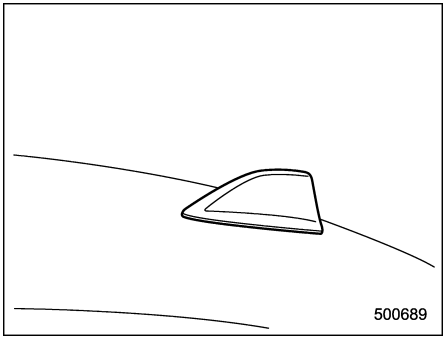


4. Reinstall the glove box, and connect the damper shaft.
5. Close the glove box.

Antenna 5-2
Roof antenna 5-2
Audio set 5-2
Base display audio set (for Europe)..... 5-3
Base display audio set (except for Europe) 5-5
Tips for operating the audio/visual system 5-6
Basic information before use 5-12
Basic operation..... 5-15
Unit settings 5-17
SUBARU STARLINK (for Europe)..... 5-24
AM/FM radio 5-26
CD 5-30
USB memory 5-32
iPod..... 5-33
Bluetooth audio 5-36
AUX..... 5-39
Steering switches for audio 5-41
Bluetooth® settings..... 5-44
Regulatory information..... 5-44
Registering/connecting Bluetooth® device..... 5-44
Setting Bluetooth details..... 5-47
Hands-free phone system..... 5-49
Control screen..... 5-50
Registering/connecting a Bluetooth phone..... 5-51
Using the phone switch/microphone 5-51
How to change the hands-free phone system..... 5-52
Making a call 5-52
Receiving a call 5-55
Talking on the phone 5-56
Phone settings 5-57
What to do if... 5-60
Troubleshooting 5-60
Voice command system 5-64
Using the voice command system 5-64
Voice command system operation..... 5-65
Command list 5-66
Appendix 5-69
Certification..... 5-69
Certification for UAE models..... 5-69
Certification for Paraguay models 5-70
Certification for MAROC models 5-70
Certification for Russia and Kazakhstan models.... 5-70
Certification for Europe models for Declaration of Conformity 5-70

Antenna

■ Roof antenna



The roof antenna is installed in the center at the rear of the roof.

Audio set

Your vehicle may be equipped with one of the following audio sets. Refer to the pages indicated in this section for operating details.

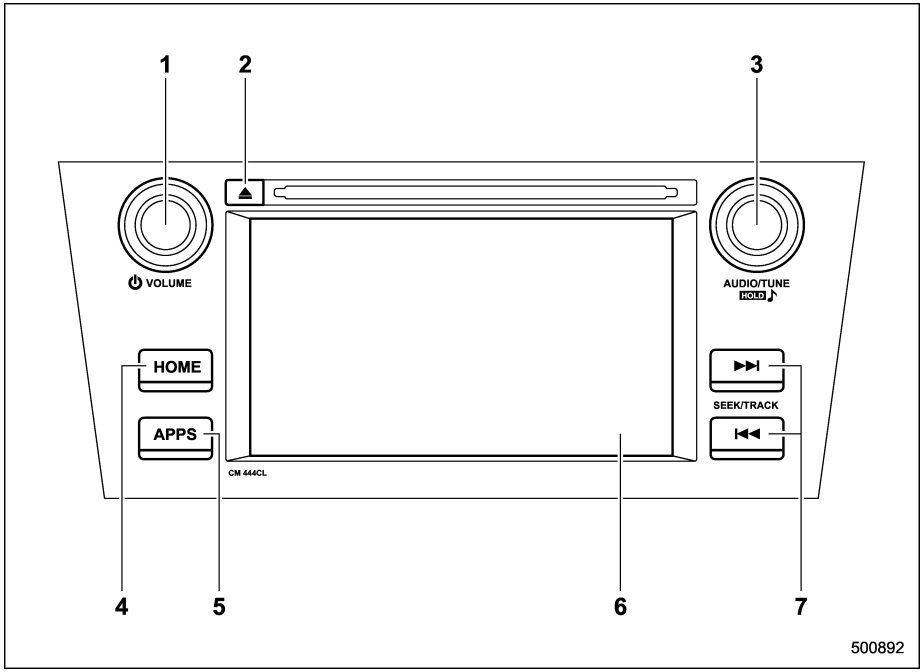
⚠ CAUTION

- **We recommend that you always consult your SUBARU dealer before installing a citizen band radio or other transmitting device in your vehicle. Such devices may cause the electronic control system to malfunction if they are incorrectly installed or if they are not suited for the vehicle.**
- **To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the audio/visual system on when the engine is not running.**

NOTE

- **If a cell phone is placed near the audio set, it may cause the audio set to emit noise when the phone receives calls. This noise does not indicate an audio set malfunction. Note that a cell phone should be placed as far as possible from the audio set.**
- **Some functions may not be available depending on the market and specifications of your vehicle.**
- **The images shown in this Owner's Manual are sample images. The actual images may vary depending on the market and specifications of your vehicle.**

■ Base display audio set (for Europe)



1) Power/VOLUME knob
2) Eject button
3) AUDIO/TUNE knob
4) HOME button
5) APPS button
6) Display
7) SEEK/TRACK buttons

The audio set will operate only when the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

- Power and audio controls: refer to “Basic operation” ☞5-15.
- SUBARU STARLINK: refer to “SUBARU STARLINK (for Europe)” ☞5-24.
- Radio operation: refer to “AM/FM radio” ☞5-26.
- CD (compact disc) player operation: refer to “CD” ☞5-30.
- USB storage device: refer to “USB memory” ☞5-32.
- iPod operation: refer to “iPod” ☞5-33.
- Bluetooth® audio: refer to “Bluetooth audio” ☞5-36.
- Auxiliary input jack: refer to “AUX” ☞5-39.
- Hands-free system: refer to “Hands-free phone system” ☞5-49.

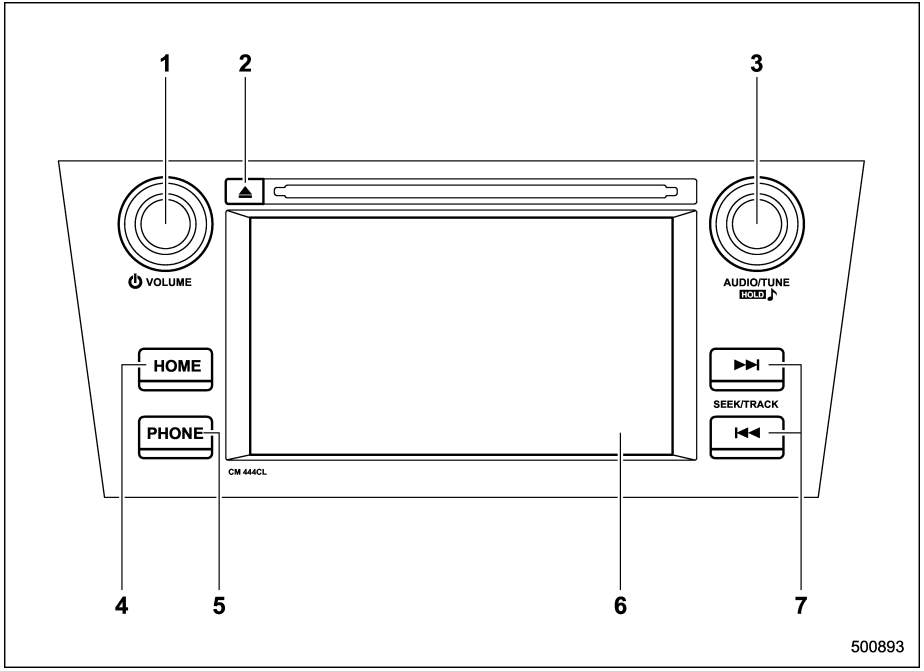
NOTE

- **The illustration on the left is a typical example for left-hand drive models. For right-hand drive models, some of the switch locations are the opposite of those shown in the illustration.**

– CONTINUED –

- **If your vehicle is equipped with an audio set other than the type shown in the illustration, refer to the separate Navigation Owner's Manual or Display Owner's Manual for details.**

■ Base display audio set (except for Europe)



1) Power/VOLUME knob
2) Eject button
3) AUDIO/TUNE knob
4) HOME button
5) PHONE button
6) Display
7) SEEK/TRACK buttons

The audio set will operate only when the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

- Power and audio controls: refer to “Basic operation” ☞5-15.
- Radio operation: refer to “AM/FM radio” ☞5-26.
- CD (compact disc) player operation: refer to “CD” ☞5-30.
- USB storage device: refer to “USB memory” ☞5-32.
- iPod operation: refer to “iPod” ☞5-33.
- Bluetooth® audio: refer to “Bluetooth audio” ☞5-36.
- Auxiliary input jack: refer to “AUX” ☞5-39.
- Hands-free system: refer to “Hands-free phone system” ☞5-49.

NOTE

- **The illustration on the left is a typical example for left-hand drive models. For right-hand drive models, some of the switch locations are the opposite of those shown in the illustration.**

– CONTINUED –

• If your vehicle is equipped with an audio set other than the types shown in the illustration, refer to the separate Navigation Owner's Manual or Display Owner's Manual for details.

■ Tips for operating the audio/visual system

⚠ CAUTION

- **To avoid damage to the audio/visual system:**
  - **– Be careful not to spill beverages over the audio/visual system.**
  - **– Do not put anything other than an appropriate disc into the disc slot.**

NOTE

The use of a cell phone inside or near the vehicle may cause a noise from the speakers of the audio/visual system which you are listening to. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

▼ Radio

Usually, a problem with radio reception does not mean there is a problem with the radio — it is just the normal result of conditions outside the vehicle.

For example, nearby buildings and terrain can interfere with FM reception. Power lines or phone wires can interfere with AM signals. And of course, radio signals have a limited range. The farther the vehicle is from a station, the weaker its signal will be. In addition, reception conditions change constantly as the vehicle moves.

Here, some common reception problems that probably do not indicate a problem with the radio are described.

▽ FM

Fading and drifting stations: Generally, the effective range of FM is about 40 km (25 miles). Once outside this range, you may notice fading and drifting, which increase with the distance from the radio transmitter. They are often accompanied by distortion.

Static and fluttering: These occur when signals are blocked by buildings, trees or other large objects. Increasing the bass level may reduce static and fluttering.

Station swapping: If the FM signal being listened to is interrupted or weakened, and there is another strong station nearby on the FM band, the radio may tune in the second station until the original signal can be picked up again.

▽ AM

Fading: AM broadcasts are reflected by the upper atmosphere — especially at night. These reflected signals can interfere with those received directly from the radio station, causing the radio station to sound alternately strong and weak.

Station interference: When a reflected signal and a signal received directly from a radio station are very nearly the same frequency, they can interfere with each other, making it difficult to hear the broadcast.

Static: AM is easily affected by external sources of electrical noise, such as high tension power lines, lightening or electrical motors. This results in static.

▼ CD player and disc

- This CD player is intended for use with 12 cm (4.7 in.) discs only.
- Extremely high temperatures can keep the CD player from working. On hot days, use the air conditioning system to cool the inside of the vehicle before using the player.
- Bumpy roads or other vibrations may make the CD player skip.
- If moisture gets into the CD player, the discs may not be able to be played. Remove the discs from the player and wait until it dries.

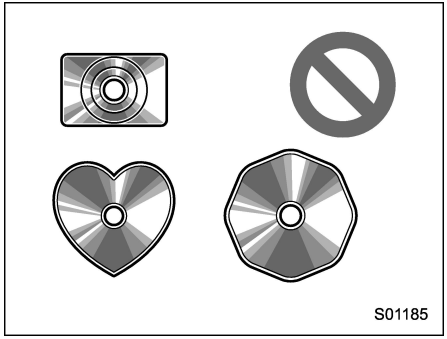
⚠ WARNING

CD players use an invisible laser beam which could cause hazardous radiation exposure if directed outside the unit. Be sure to operate the player correctly.

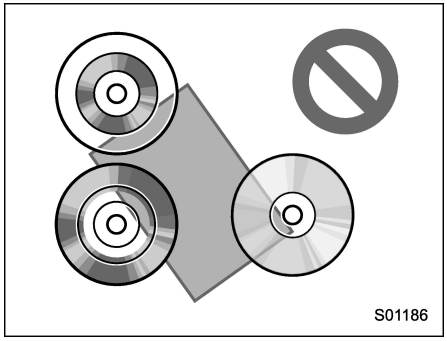
Audio CDs	COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO	COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO TEXT
	COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO Recordable	COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO ReWritable

- Use only discs marked as shown above. The following products may not be playable on your player:
  - SACD
  - dts CD
  - Copy-protected CD
  - Video CD

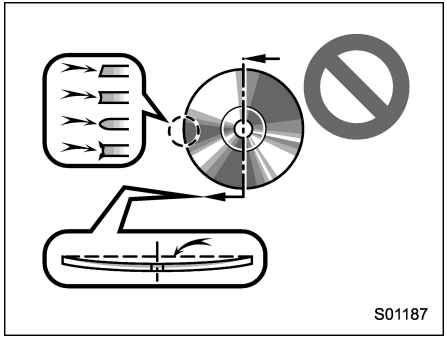
Special shaped discs



Transparent/translucent discs

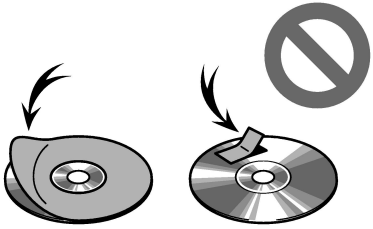


Low quality discs



– CONTINUED –

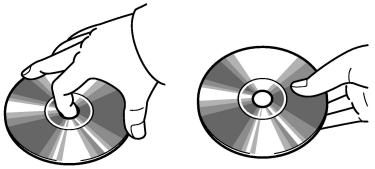
Labeled discs



S01188

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not use special shaped, transparent/translucent, low quality or labeled discs such as those shown in the illustrations. The use of such discs may damage the player, or it may be impossible to eject the disc.**
- **This system is not designed for use of Dual Discs. Do not use Dual Discs because they may cause damage to the player.**
- **Do not use discs with a protection ring. The use of such discs may damage the player, or it may be impossible to eject the disc.**
- **Do not use printable discs. The use of such discs may damage the player, or it may be impossible to eject the disc.**



500804

1) Correct
2) Wrong

- Handle discs carefully, especially when inserting them. Hold them on the edge and do not bend them. Avoid getting fingerprints on them, particularly on the shiny side.
- Dirt, scratches, warping, pin holes or other disc damage could cause the player to skip or to repeat a section of a track. (To see a pin hole, hold the disc up to the light.)
- Remove discs from the players when not in use. Store them in their plastic cases away from moisture, heat and direct sunlight.



S01190

To clean a disc: Wipe it with a soft, lint-free cloth that has been dampened with water. Wipe in a straight line from the center to the edge of the disc (not in circles). Dry it with another soft, lint-free cloth. Do not use a conventional record cleaner or anti-static device.

▽ CD-R/RW discs

- CD-R/CD-RW discs that have not been subject to the “finalizing process” (a process that allows discs to be played on a conventional CD player) cannot be played.

- It may not be possible to play CD-R/CD-RW discs recorded on a music CD recorder or a personal computer because of disc characteristics, scratches or dirt on the disc, or dirt, condensation, etc. on the lens of the unit.
- It may not be possible to play discs recorded on a personal computer depending on the application settings and the environment. Record with the correct format. (For details, contact the appropriate application manufacturers of the applications.)
- CD-R/CD-RW discs may be damaged by direct exposure to sunlight, high temperatures or other storage conditions. The unit may be unable to play some damaged discs.
- If you insert a CD-RW disc into the player, playback will begin more slowly than with a conventional CD or CD-R disc.
- Recordings on CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played using the DDCD (Double Density CD) system.

▼ USB memory device

- USB communication formats: USB 1.1/2.0 HS (480 Mbps) and FS (12 Mbps)
- File formats: FAT 16/32
- Correspondence class: Mass storage class

▼ iPod

The following iPod, iPod nano, iPod classic, iPod touch and iPhone devices can be used with this system.
Made for

- iPod touch (5th generation)*
- iPod touch (4th generation)
- iPod touch (3rd generation)
- iPod touch (2nd generation)
- iPod touch (1st generation)
- iPod classic
- iPod nano (7th generation)*
- iPod nano (6th generation)*
- iPod nano (5th generation)
- iPod nano (4th generation)
- iPod nano (3rd generation)
- iPod nano (2nd generation)*
- iPod nano (1st generation)*
- iPhone 5s*
- iPhone 5c*
- iPhone 5*
- iPhone 4s
- iPhone 4
- iPhone 3GS
- iPhone 3G
- iPhone

*: iPod video not supported

Depending on differences between models or software versions etc., some models might be incompatible with this system.

▼ File information

Compatible compressed files (Audio)

Item	USB	DISC
Compatible file format	MP3/WMA/AAC	
Folders in the device	Maximum 512	Maximum 255
Files in the device	Maximum 8000	Maximum 512
Files per folder	Maximum 255	—

Corresponding sampling frequency (Audio)

File type	Frequency (kHz)
MP3 files: MPEG 1 LAYER 3	32/44.1/48
MP3 files: MPEG 2 LSF LAYER 3	16/22.05/24
WMA files: Ver. 7, 8, 9 (9.1/9.2)	32/48/64/80/96/128/160/192
AAC files: MPEG4/AAC-LC	48/44.1/32/24/22.05/16/12/11.025/8

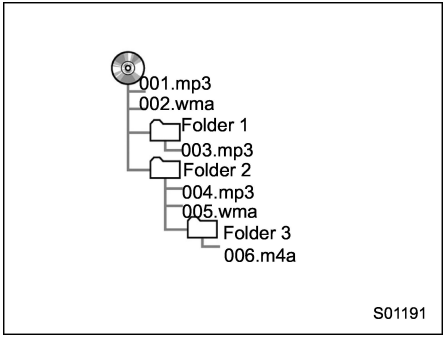
– CONTINUED –

Corresponding bit rates (Audio)

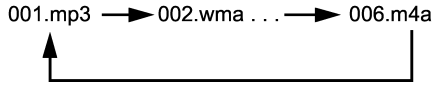
File type	Bit rate (kbps)
MP3 files: MPEG 1 LAYER 3	32 - 320
MP3 files: MPEG 2 LSF LAYER 3	8 - 160
WMA files: Ver. 7, 8	CBR 48 - 192
WMA files: Ver. 9 (9.1/9.2)	CBR 32 - 192
AAC files: MPEG4/AAC-LC	16 - 320

(Variable Bit Rate (VBR) compatible)

- MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer 3), WMA (Windows Media Audio) and AAC (Advanced Audio Coding) are audio compression standards.
- This system can play MP3/WMA/AAC files on CD-R, CD-RW discs, USB memory, and Bluetooth device.
- This system can play disc recordings compatible with ISO 9660 level 1 and level 2 and with the Romeo and Joliet file system.
- When naming an MP3/WMA/AAC file, add an appropriate file extension (.mp3/.wma/.m4a).
- This system plays back files with .mp3/.wma/.m4a file extensions as MP3/WMA/AAC files respectively. To prevent noise and playback errors, use the appropriate file extension.
- This system can play only the first session when using multi-session compatible CDs.
- MP3 files are compatible with the ID3 Tag Ver. 1.0, Ver. 1.1, Ver. 2.2 and Ver. 2.3 formats. This system cannot display disc title, track title and artist name in other formats.
- WMA/AAC files can contain a WMA/AAC tag that is used in the same way as an ID3 tag. WMA/AAC tags carry information such as track title and artist name.
- The emphasis function is available only when playing MP3/WMA files recorded at 32, 44.1 and 48 kHz.
- This system can play back AAC files encoded by iTunes.
- The sound quality of MP3/WMA files generally improves with higher bit rates. In order to achieve a reasonable level of sound quality, discs recorded with a bit rate of at least 128 kbps are recommended.
- The MP3/WMA player does not play back MP3/WMA files from discs recorded using packet write data transfer (UDF format). Discs should be recorded using “pre-mastering” software rather than packetwrite software.
- M3u playlists are not compatible with the audio device.
- MP3i (MP3 interactive) and MP3PRO formats are not compatible with the audio device.
- The player is compatible with VBR (Variable Bit Rate).
- When playing back files recorded as VBR (Variable Bit Rate) files, the play time will not be correctly displayed if the fast forward or reverse operations are used.
- It is not possible to check folders that do not include MP3/WMA/AAC files.
- MP3/WMA/AAC files in folders up to 8 levels deep can be played. However, the start of playback may be delayed when using discs containing numerous levels of folders. For this reason, we recommend creating discs with no more than 2 levels of folders.



● The play order of the compact disc with the structure shown above is as follows:



● The order changes depending on the personal computer and MP3/WMA/AAC encoding software you use.

▼ Terms

▽ Packet write

● This is a general term that describes the process of writing data on-demand to CD-R, etc., in the same way that data is written to floppy or hard discs.

▽ ID3 tag

● This is a method of embedding track-related information in an MP3 file. This embedded information can include the track number, track title, the artist's name, the album title, the music genre, the year of production, comments, cover art and other data. The contents can be freely edited using software with ID3 tag editing functions. Although the tags are restricted to a number of characters, the information can be viewed when the track is played back.

▽ WMA tag

● WMA files can contain a WMA tag that is used in the same way as an ID3 tag. WMA tags carry information such as track title and artist name.

▽ ISO 9660 format

● This is the international standard for the formatting of CD-ROM folders and files. For the ISO 9660 format, there are 2 levels of regulations.

● Level 1: The file name is in 8.3 format (8 character file names, with a 3 character file extension. File names must be composed of one-byte capital letters and numbers. The "_" symbol may also be included.)

● Level 2: The file name can have up to 31 characters (including the separation mark "." and file extension). Each folder must contain fewer than 8 hierarchies.

▽ MP3

● MP3 is an audio compression standard determined by a working group (MPEG) of the ISO (International Standard Organization). MP3 compresses audio data to about 1/10 the size of that on conventional discs.

▽ WMA

● WMA (Windows Media Audio) is an audio compression format developed by Microsoft®. It compresses files into a size smaller than that of MP3 files. The decoding formats for WMA files are Ver. 7, 8 and 9.

● This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation and third parties. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft or an authorized Microsoft subsidiary and third parties.

▽ AAC

● AAC is short for Advanced Audio Coding and refers to an audio compression technology standard used with MPEG2 and MPEG4.

– CONTINUED –

▼ Error messages

Mode	Message	Explanation
CD	"Disc read error."	● This indicates that no MP3/WMA/AAC files are included in the disc. ● This indicates that the disc is dirty, damaged, or it was inserted upside down. Clean the disc or insert it correctly. It indicates a disc which is not playable is inserted.
	"Please eject disc."	There is a trouble inside the system. Eject the disc.
USB	"Media not connected. Press AUDIO/TUNE knob to exit."	This indicates a problem in the USB memory or its connection. Refer to "Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device" ☞5-15.
	"No audio file."	This indicates that no MP3/WMA/AAC files are included in the USB memory.
	"Unplayable file"	This indicates that the accessed file cannot play back.
iPod	"Media not connected. Press AUDIO/TUNE knob to exit."	This indicates that a USB device/iPod is not connected to the system.
	"No audio file"	This indicates that there is no audio file in the connected iPod.
	"Unplayable file"	This indicates that the accessed file cannot play back.

NOTE

If the malfunction is not rectified: We recommend that you take your vehicle to your SUBARU dealer.

■ Basic information before use

⚠ WARNING

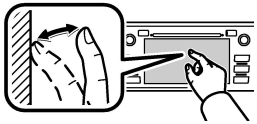
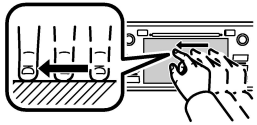
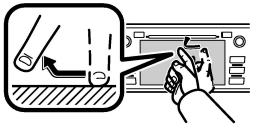
When the vehicle is stopped with the engine running, always apply the parking brake for safety. Failure to do so may result in loss of control of your vehicle and cause an accident or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

- **To prevent damaging the screen, touch the screen keys with your finger lightly.**
- **Wipe off fingerprints using a glass cleaning cloth. Do not use chemical cleaners to clean the screen, as they may damage the touch screen.**

▼ Touch screen gestures

Operations are performed by touching the touch screen directly with your finger.

Operation method	Outline	Main use
	**Touch** Quickly touch and release once.	Changing and selecting various settings
	**Drag*** Touch the screen with your finger, and move the screen to the desired position.	Scrolling the lists
	**Flick*** Quickly move the screen by flicking with your finger.	Scrolling the main screen page

*: The above operations may not be performed on all screens.

NOTE

There may be a delayed response to flick operation that are performed at high altitudes.

▼ Touch screen operation

This system is operated mainly by the keys on the screen.

When a screen key is touched, a beep sounds. You can set the beep sound. Refer to “Unit settings” ☞5-17.

NOTE

• If the system does not respond to touching a screen key, move your finger away from the screen and touch it again.

• Grayed-out screen keys cannot be operated.

• The displayed image may become darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the screen is cold.

• In extremely cold conditions, the screen may not be displayed correctly. Also, the screen keys may be less responsive than usual when pressed.

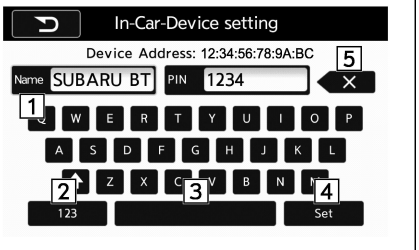
• When you look at the screen through polarized material such as polarized sunglasses, the screen may be dark and hard to see. If so, look at the screen from different angles, adjust the screen settings or take off your sunglasses. Refer to “Unit settings” ☞5-17.

– CONTINUED –

▼ Entering letters and numbers/list screen operation

▽ Entering letters and numbers

When entering the Bluetooth device name or PIN-code, or the phone number, letters and numbers can be entered via the screen.



Enter letters (example: In-Car-Device setting)

No.	Function
1	Enter the desired characters (alphabet key mode).
2	Switch to the screen for characters.
3	Enter a space.
4	Set the characters/numbers entered into the window.
5	Delete a character/number entered into the window.

▽ List screen



Multimedia playlists (example: iPod playlist)

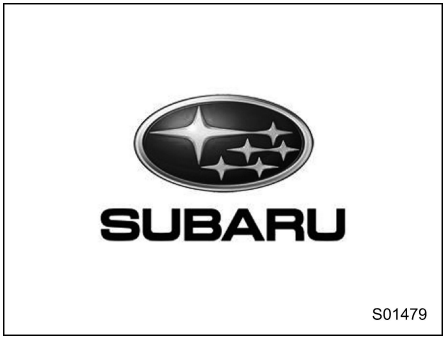
No.	Function
1	Select a category that wants to play back.
2	Select to return to the playback display of each mode.
3	Select to skip to the next or previous page.

▼ Initial screen

1. When the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position, the initial screen will be displayed and the system will begin operating.



For Europe



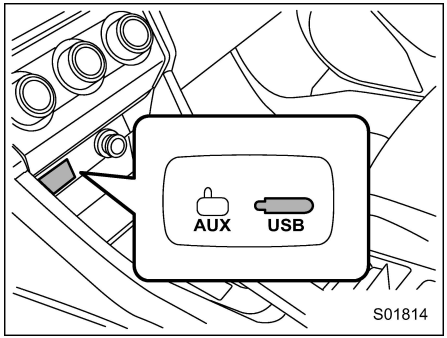
Except for Europe

- For Europe: When using the SUBARU STARLINK function, the display screen may be different from the screen above.
- After a few seconds, the caution screen will be displayed.
- After about 5 seconds, the caution screen automatically switches to the next screen.



▼ Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device

The USB port and the AUX jack are located as shown in the following illustration.



NOTE

- **This unit does not support commercially available USB hubs.**
- **Turn on the power of the device when it is not turned on.**
- **This device has a USB port for USB memory/portable device.**
- **For compatible USB memory devices, refer to "USB memory device" ☞5-9.**
- **For compatible iPod models, refer to "iPod" ☞5-9.**
- **If a USB hub is plugged in, only the most recently connected USB device will be recognized.**

■ Basic operation

This section describes some of the basic features of the audio/visual system. Some information may not pertain to your system.

Your audio/visual system works when the ignition switch is turned to the "ACC" or "ON" position.

⚠ CAUTION

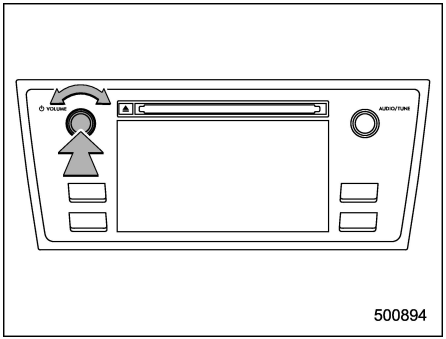
To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the audio/visual system on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

Some functions can also be operated by using the voice command system. For details, refer to "Voice command system" ☞5-64.

▼ Turning the system on and off

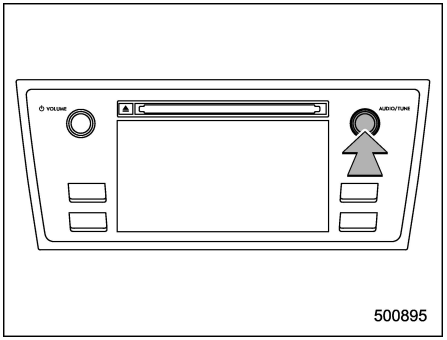


Press the power/VOLUME knob to turn the audio/visual system on and off. When the system turns on, the mode that was in use the last time the system was turned off will be displayed. Press and hold the knob to turn the display to off.

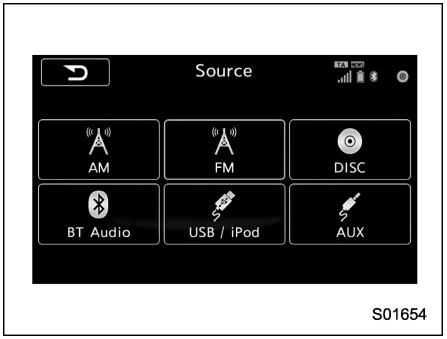
Turn this knob to adjust the volume.

▼ Selecting an audio source

1. Press the AUDIO/TUNE knob.



2. Select the desired source.

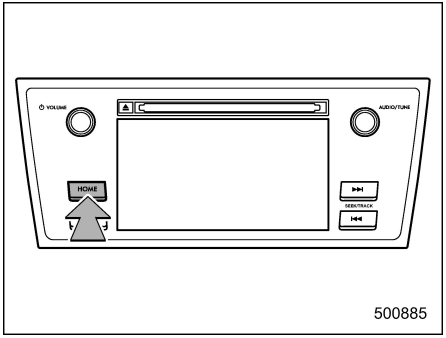


NOTE

- **If the audio control screen appears, select the "Source" key on the audio screen or press the AUDIO/TUNE knob again.**
- **When you push the AUDIO/TUNE knob while any screen other than the audio control screen is displayed, the display will return to the audio control screen.**
- **When the AUDIO/TUNE knob is pushed and held, the graphic equalizer screen will be displayed. Refer to "Graphic Equaliser" ☞5-21.**

▼ Selecting a function menu

Press the HOME button to display home screen.



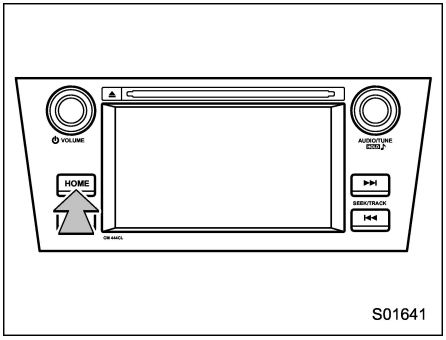
500885

Item	Function
AUDIO	Select to display the main screen of the audio source that was selected previously.
PHONE	Select to display the hands-free function using your cell phone. Refer to “Hands-free phone system” ☞5-49.
APPS (if equipped)	Select to display the functions linked with a smartphone. Refer to “SUBARU STARLINK (for Europe)” ☞5-24.
SETTINGS	Select to display the functions for performing various settings. Refer to “Unit settings” ☞5-17.

■ Unit settings

Sound quality adjustment, screen adjustment, and information of the audio unit are displayed.

1. Press the HOME button.



S01641

2. Touch the “SETTINGS” key.
3. Select the items to be set.

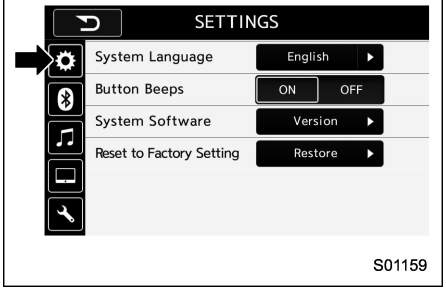
Available setting:

- General settings: Select the tab to check the system software update information. Refer to “General settings” ☞5-18.
- Bluetooth settings: Select the tab to set the Bluetooth settings. Refer to “Bluetooth settings” ☞5-18.
- Sound settings: Select the tab to set the sound quality settings. Refer to “Sound settings” ☞5-18.
- Display settings: Select the tab to set the screen settings. Refer to “Display settings” ☞5-23.
- SUBARU STARLINK settings (if equipped): Select the tab to set the SUBARU STARLINK settings. Refer to “SUBARU STARLINK settings (for Europe)” ☞5-24.

– CONTINUED –

▼ General settings

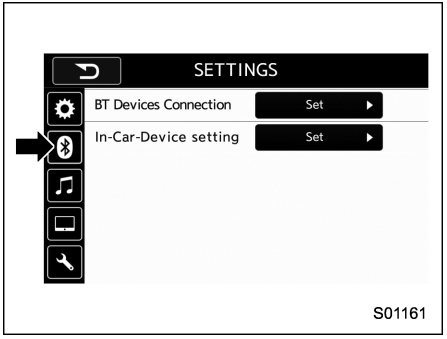
Touch the tab for the audio unit basic settings.



Item	Function
System Language (if equipped)	Select to change the language.
Button Beeps/Button sounds	Select to set the sound beeps on/off.
System Software	Select to update software versions. This menu is not used in usual operation.
Reset to Factory Setting	Select to reset the device to factory settings. This menu is not used in usual operation. When reset to factory setting, turn ignition off and on again.

▼ Bluetooth settings

Touch the tab to set Bluetooth.

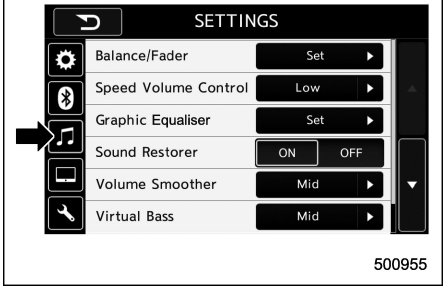


Item	Function
BT Devices Connection	Select to pair/connect the Bluetooth devices.
In-Car-Device setting	Select to enter the Bluetooth device name or PIN-code.

For details, refer to “Bluetooth® settings” ☞5-44.

▼ Sound settings

Touch the tab to set the sound quality.



Item	Function
Balance/Fader	Select to adjust speaker volume balance (right/left and front/rear).
Speed Volume Control	Select to adjust speaker volume coupled to vehicle speed.
Graphic Equaliser	Select to adjust sound quality in each frequency band.
Sound Restorer	Select to add high-pitched tone to the compressed audio file.
Volume Smoother	Select to adjust volume difference between audio sources.
Virtual Bass	Select to add harmonic tone so that low-pitched tone is strengthened.

Item	Function
Vocal Image Control	Select to pick-up vocal sound signal from the sound data, and adjust it to right/left or front/rear.

Refer to the following table for the adjustment range of each audio setting item and default value.

Item			Step	Default
Balance/Fader	Volume Balance Control	Balance	L9-R9	0 (Center)
		Fader	F9-R9	0 (Center)
	Vocal Image Control	Balance	L9-R9	Except for Australia: – LHD: R3 – RHD: L3 For Australia: R3
		Fader	F9-R9	0 (Center)
Speed Volume Control			OFF, Low, High	Low
Graphic Equaliser			−6-+6	0 (Flat)
Sound Restorer			ON, OFF	ON
Volume Smoother			OFF, Low, Mid, High	Mid
Virtual Bass			OFF, Low, Mid, High	Mid

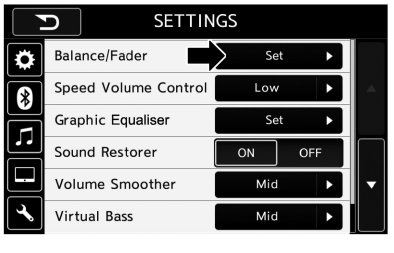
– CONTINUED –

▽ Balance/Fader

A good balance of the left and right stereo channels and of the front and rear sound levels is important for good quality audio program listening.

Keep in mind that when listening to a stereo recording or broadcast, changing the right/left balance will increase the volume of 1 group of sounds while decreasing the volume of another.

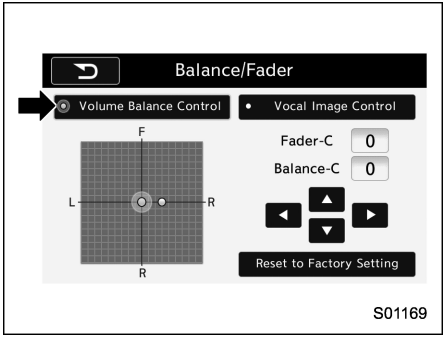
Touch the “Set” key of the “Balance/Fader” key. The “Balance/Fader” screen will appear.



Example

- Volume Balance setting

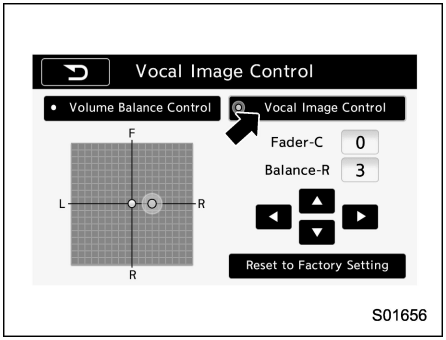
1. Select the “Volume Balance Control” key.



2. Adjust the balance by pressing “◀” or “▶” key.
3. Adjust the fader by pressing “▲” or “▼” key.

- Vocal image setting

1. Select the “Vocal Image Control” key.

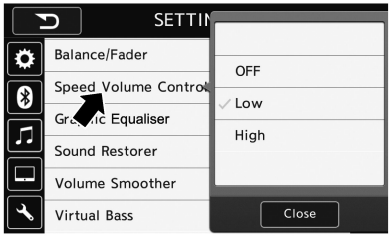


2. Adjust the balance by pressing “◀” or “▶” key.
3. Adjust the fader by pressing “▲” or “▼” key.

▽ "Speed Volume Control"

The system adjusts to the optimum volume and tone quality according to vehicle speed to compensate for increased vehicle noise.

1. Touch the right side key of the "Speed Volume Control" key.
2. Select the desired item. The "High" key comes to have a bigger effect. When the "OFF" key is selected, the speed volume control function is cancelled.

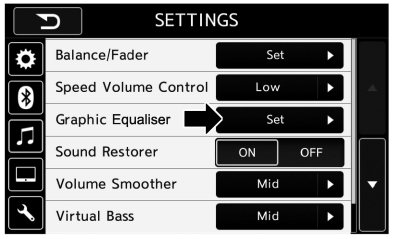


500957

▽ Graphic Equaliser

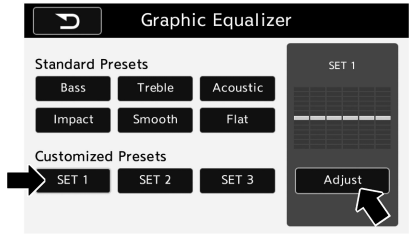
You can adjust the sound quality by increasing/decreasing the gain for each frequency range.

1. Touch the "Set" key of the "Graphic Equaliser" key.



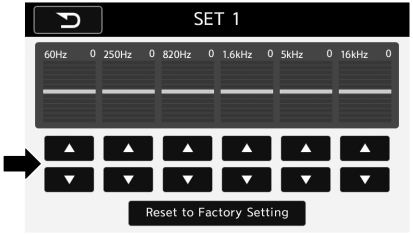
500958

2. In this mode, 6 preset equalizer patterns (the "Bass", "Treble", "Acoustic", "Impact", "Smooth" and "Flat" key) and 3 customized patterns ("SET 1" - "SET 3" key) are available.
3. When customizing the equalizer pattern, touch among "SET 1", "SET 2" or "SET 3" and then touch the "Adjust" key.



S01173

4. Adjust the level of each frequency band by pressing " ▲ " or " ▼ " key.



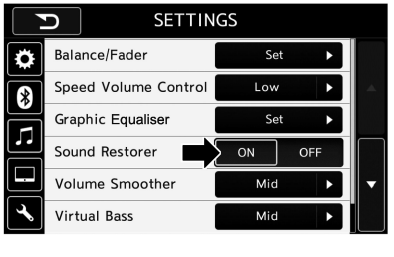
S01176

– CONTINUED –

▽ "Sound Restorer"

You can play compressed audio data with a sound quality that is close to the original sound.

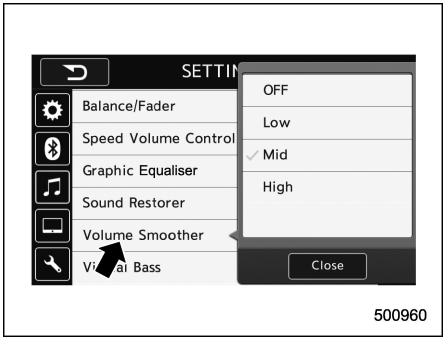
Select the "ON" or "OFF" key by the right side key of the "Sound Restorer" key.



▽ "Volume Smoother"

This function reduces the difference in volume among the sound sources to be played.

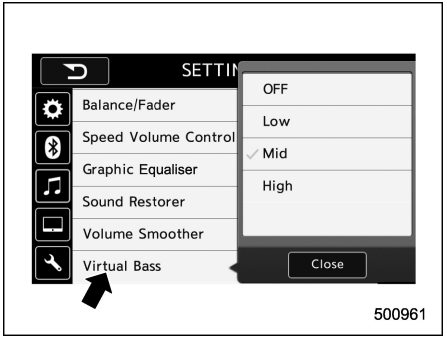
1. Touch the right side key of the "Volume Smoother" key.
2. Select the "OFF", "Low", "Mid" or "High" key. The "High" key comes to have a bigger effect. When the "OFF" key is selected, the volume smoother function is cancelled.



▽ "Virtual Bass"

This function enables you to adjust the bass tone.

1. Touch the right side key of the "Virtual Bass" key.
2. Select the "OFF", "Low", "Mid" or "High" key. The "High" key comes to have a bigger effect. When the "OFF" key is selected, the virtual bass function is cancelled.



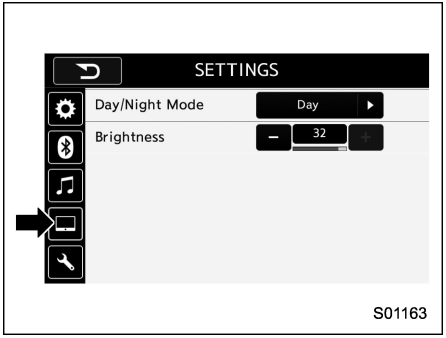
Example

▽ "Vocal Image Control"

Refer to "Balance/Fader" ☞5-20.

▼ Display settings

Touch the tab to set display.



Item	Function
Day/Night Mode	The “Auto”, “Day”, or “Night” key can be selected on the pop-up screen. When the “Auto” key is selected, the screen changes to day or night mode depending on the position of the headlight switch.
Brightness	Touch the “+” or “−” key to adjust the brightness.

NOTE

● When the screen is viewed through polarized sunglasses, a rainbow pattern may appear on the screen due to optical characteristics of the screen. If this is disruptive, please operate the screen without polarized sunglasses.

● If the screen is set to “Day” mode with the headlight switch turned on, this condition is memorized even with the engine turned off.

▽ How to adjust the rear view image

In Camera display (if equipped), the brightness, tint, colour, and black level of the screen can be adjusted.

1. Depress the brake pedal fully and stop the vehicle.
2. While the vehicle is stopped, set the shift lever (MT models) or select lever (CVT models) in the “R” position, and then touch the display.
3. Touch the “Display Adjustment” key.
4. Touch the items to adjust the rear camera screen.



Camera display

⚠ WARNING

When adjusting the camera display screen, make sure to depress the brake pedal fully to avoid the vehicle from moving. Failure to do so may lead to a serious accident.

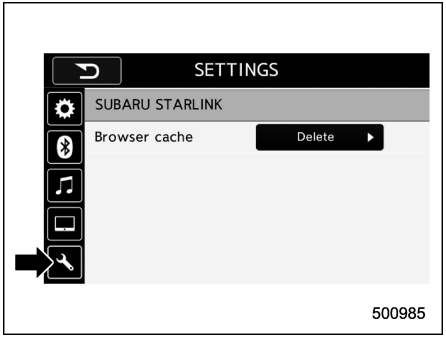
NOTE

The Camera display can be accessed when the rear camera monitor is displayed.

– CONTINUED –

▼ SUBARU STARLINK settings (for Europe)

Touch the tab to change the SUBARU STARLINK settings.



Item	Function
Browser cache	Select to initialize cache files that the browser stores. If the confirmation screen appears and the "OK" key is selected, the cache files will be deleted.

■ SUBARU STARLINK (for Europe)

The SUBARU STARLINK function allows the system to link with a smartphone using Bluetooth.

▼ How to use SUBARU STARLINK

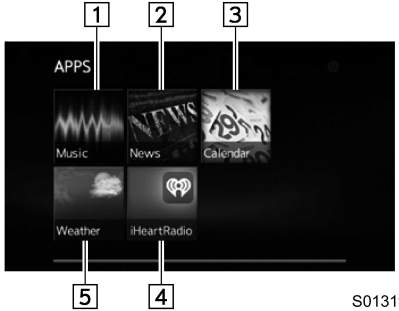
1. Connect to the audio system. Use a USB port for an iPhone or iPod touch and Bluetooth for Android devices.
   - For details about connecting an iPhone/iPod touch: Refer to "Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device" ☞5-15.
   - For details about registering or connecting an Android device: Refer to "Registering/connecting Bluetooth® device" ☞5-44.
2. Press the HOME button, and then touch the "APPS" key on the home screen, or press the APPS button. The APPS screen is displayed.
3. Touch "SUBARU STARLINK" on the APPS screen, the disclaimer screen or the error screen is displayed.
4. Touch the "Check" key on the disclaimer screen and then the APPS main screen will appear. If you touch the "Cancel" key, the disclaimer screen disappears and the previous screen will be displayed again.

NOTE

The SUBARU STARLINK connection error screen will be displayed due to one of the following possible reasons.

- **Your smartphone and the system has not been connected via USB (for iPhone) or Bluetooth (for Android).**
- **SUBARU STARLINK APPS has not been activated.**

▼ **APPS main screen**



No.	Function
1	Select to go to the Music APPS screen.
2	Select to go to the News APPS screen.
3	Select to go to the Calendar APPS screen.
4	Select to go to the iHeartRadio APPS screen.
5	Select to go to the Weather APPS screen.

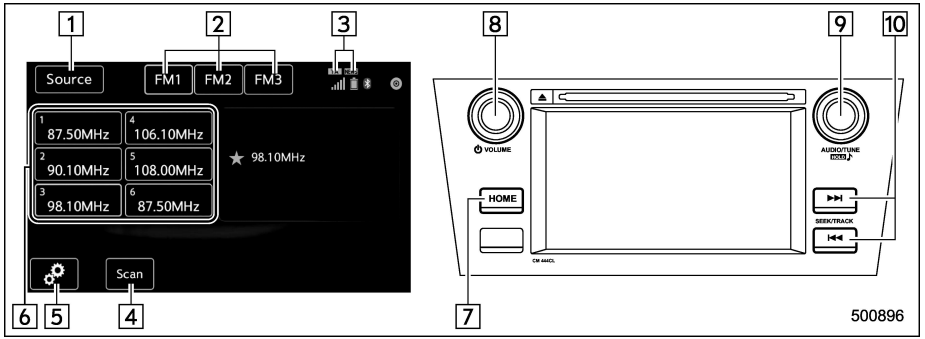
NOTE

- **The error screen will be displayed while using SUBARU STARLINK due to one of the following possible reasons.**
  - **– When your smartphone has no service or the Bluetooth communication is not possible.**
  - **– When your smartphone is turned off.**
  - **– When the SUBARU STARLINK APPS is quit.**
  - **– When connection to the SUBARU STARLINK server is not possible.**
  - **– When a problem occurs other than a server error.**
- **When using the SUBARU STARLINK function, a disclaimer screen will be displayed. Be sure to fully read the contents before using the function.**
- **Supported devices**
  - **– iPhone: iPhone 4/iPhone 4s/ iPhone 5 (iOS Ver. 5.1 or later)/ iPhone 5c/iPhone 5s**
  - **– Android: (OS Ver. 4.0 or later)**

– CONTINUED –

■ AM/FM radio

▼ Control screen and panel



No.	Function
1	Select to display the audio source selection screen.
2	Select to change the FM band.

No.	Function
3	For Europe and Australia: ● TA icon: It is displayed when turning the TA setting ON on the FM Options screen. It is not displayed when turning the TA setting OFF. ● NEWS icon: It is displayed when turning the News setting ON on the FM Options screen. It is not displayed when turning the News setting OFF.

No.	Function
4	For Europe and Australia: Select to search for stations stored in the preset channels in the direction of a higher frequency. When a receivable station is found, the system tunes in to the frequency for 10 seconds. The preset scan ends once all the preset channels have been scanned. Except for Europe and Australia: Select to scan radio channels. This function enables searching for receivable stations automatically, and tunes in to a frequency for 5 seconds if a station is found. When the 5-second period has elapsed, the system searches for the next receivable station again, and tunes in to the frequency for 5 seconds.
5	Select to open the Option screen.
6	If you touch a key, the system tunes to the stored frequency. If you touch and hold a key, the system stores the frequency to the selected preset channel. Refer to “Presetting a station” ☞5-27.
7	Select to display the sound setting screen. Refer to “Unit settings” ☞5-17.
8	Turn to adjust volume. Press to turn the audio system on/off.
9	Turn to step up/down frequencies. Press to select an audio source. Refer to “Selecting an audio source” ☞5-16.
10	Press to seek for a station/channel. Press and hold for continuous seek.

NOTE

- **Although FM is normally static free, reception can be affected by the surrounding area, atmospheric conditions, station strength and transmitter distance. Buildings or other obstructions may cause momentary static, flutter or station interference. If reception continues to be unsatisfactory, switch to a stronger station.**
- **The radio automatically changes to stereo reception when a stereo broadcast is received.**

▼ How to change the source

Select the “AM” or “FM” key on the source select screen. Refer to “Selecting an audio source” ☞5-16.

▼ Presetting a station

The radio mode has a preset function.

In total 18 stations can be set for the FM band (6 each for FM1, FM2 and FM3) and 12 stations can be set for the AM band (6 each for AM1 and AM2).

When a station name has been acquired, the station name will be displayed instead of the frequency.

1. Tune in the desired station.
2. If you touch and hold a key, the system stores the frequency to the selected preset channel.



S01670

▼ Radio data system (for Europe and Australia)

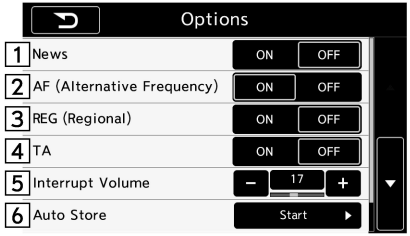
RDS (Radio Data System) is an FM multiplex broadcasting system, and it transmits digital information as subcarrier signals on FM radio. RDS broadcasts program information and text information, etc.

The transmitted data of RDS contains the control data so that the system can continue to receive the same radio program when driving across several locations.

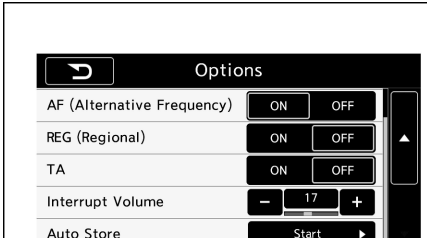
– CONTINUED –

▽ Selecting a desired options screen

1. Select the ⚙ tab. The “Options” screen will be displayed.



Example: Options screen (FM radio for Europe)

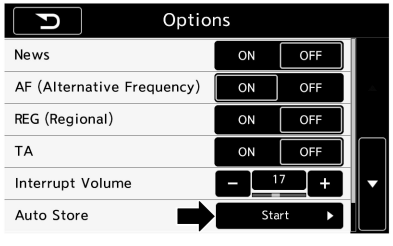


No.	Function
1	For FM radio: Select to turn the news interrupt function ON and OFF. If the setting is ON, when the current station broadcasts a news program, the system will automatically switch the audio source to the radio (News).
2	For FM radio: Select to turn the AF (Alternative Frequency) setting ON and OFF.
3	For FM radio: Select to turn the REG (Regional) setting ON and OFF. If the setting is ON, the system will automatically search the station of which the PI code matches completely. If the AF setting is OFF, the button is disabled and turning ON/OFF is not possible.
4	For FM radio: Select to turn the TA (Traffic Announcement) interrupt function ON and OFF. If the setting is ON, when the current station broadcasts TA, the system will automatically switch the audio source to the radio (TA).
5	Select to adjust the volume when interrupting (Alarm/TA/News) between 0 and 40.
6	Select to start the Auto Store function. Refer to “Selecting a desired auto store” ☞5-29.
7	For Europe: Select to switch the sensitivity setting between LO and DX during the seek function (Default setting: DX). The set value is applied both to FM and AM. If you change the setting from DX to LO for FM (Options screen), the setting for AM (Options screen) will be also changed to LO.

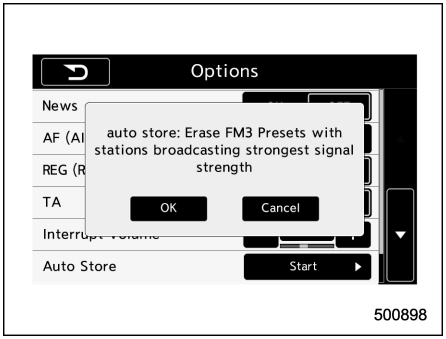
▼ Selecting a desired auto store

Select to detect radio stations automatically and to store them in the order of radio wave strength.

1. Touch the ⚙ tab.
2. Touch the right side key of the “Auto Store” key.



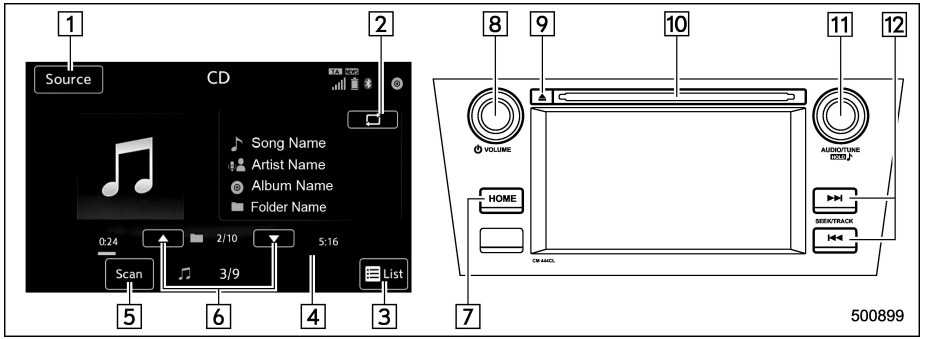
3. If you select the “OK” key, the Auto Store screen will be displayed. If you select the “Cancel” key, the screen will go back to the Options screen.



– CONTINUED –

■ CD

▼ Control screen and panel



No.	Function
1	Select to display the audio source selection screen.
2	Select to display the play mode currently selected. Refer to “Select play mode” ☞5-31.
3	Audio CD: Select to display a track list. MP3/WMA/AAC disc: Select to display a folder list.
4	Shows progress.
5	The tracks in the disc are played back for 10 seconds each from the beginning of the track.

No.	Function
6	MP3/WMA/AAC disc: Select to choose a folder.
7	Select to display the sound setting screen. Refer to “Unit settings” ☞5-17.
8	Turn to adjust volume. Press to turn the audio system on/off.
9	Press to eject a disc.
10	Disc slot
11	Turn to select a track/file. Press to select an audio source. Refer to “Selecting an audio source” ☞5-16.
12	Press to select a track/file. Press and hold to fast forward/rewind.

NOTE

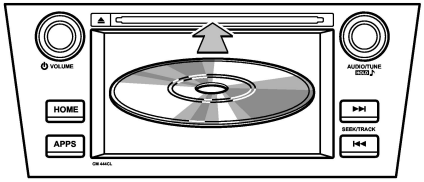
● Depending on the compression data format of the inserted CD, some keys may not be displayed on the screen.
● If a disc contains CD-DA files and MP3/WMA/AAC files, only the CD-DA files can be played back.
● If a CD-TEXT disc is inserted, the title of the disc and track will be displayed. Up to 32 characters can be displayed.
● If the disc contains no CD-TEXT, only the track number would be displayed on the screen.

▼ Loading a disc

CAUTION

Never try to disassemble the audio kit or lubricate any part of the CD player. Do not insert anything other than a disc into the slot.

Insert a disc into the disc slot. After insertion, the disc is automatically loaded.



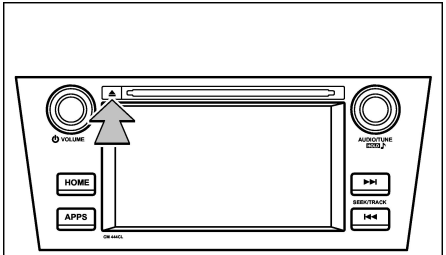
S01638

NOTE

When inserting a disc, gently insert it with the label facing up.

▼ Unloading a disc

Press the eject button and remove the disc.



S01639

▼ How to change the source

The CD operation screen can be reached by the following methods:

- Insert a disc. Refer to “Loading a disc” ☞5-31.
- Select the “DISC” key on the source select screen. Refer to “Selecting an audio source” ☞5-16.

▼ Select play mode

The play mode settings display will appear when play mode key is touched. Select the preferred play mode from the following items.

Icon	Function
	Touch to start 1 track repeat.
	Touch to start repeat all.
	Touch to start folder repeat.
	Touch to start shuffle all.
	Touch to start shuffle folder.
	Return to the control screen.

NOTE

Depending on the compression data formant of the inserted CD, the displayed play mode may differ from the illustration shown here.

– CONTINUED –

■ USB memory

Audio files on the USB memory can be played back.

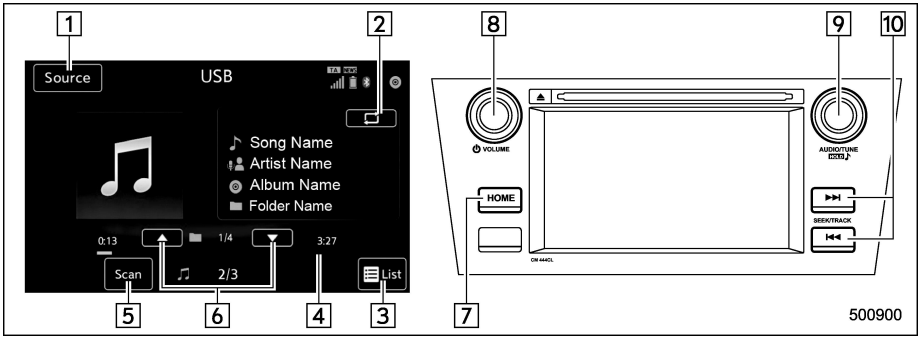
⚠ WARNING

Do not operate the player's controls or connect the USB memory while driving. Doing so may result in losing control of your vehicle and cause an accident or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not leave your USB memory in the car. In particular, high temperatures inside the vehicle may damage the USB memory.**
- **Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the USB memory while it is connected as this may damage the USB memory or its terminal.**
- **Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the USB memory or its terminal.**

▼ Control screen and panel



No.	Function
1	Select to display the audio source selection screen.
2	Select to display the play mode currently selected. Refer to "Select play mode" ☞5-33.
3	Select to display Folders List.
4	Shows progress.
5	The tracks in the disc are played back 10 seconds each from the beginning of the track.
6	Select to choose a folder.
7	Select to display the sound setting screen. Refer to "Unit settings" ☞5-17.

No.	Function
8	Turn to adjust volume. Press to turn the audio system on/off.
9	Turn to select a file/track. Press to select an audio source. Refer to "Selecting an audio source" ☞5-16.
10	Press to select a file/track. Press and hold to fast forward/rewind.

NOTE

If you press the mute switch on the steering wheel during playback, the audio will be muted. If you press the mute switch once again, the volume will return.

▼ Connecting a USB device

You can connect a USB device to the vehicle USB port. Refer to “Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device” ☞5-15.

▼ How to change the source

The USB Audio playback screen can be reached by the following methods:

- Connect a USB memory. Refer to “Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device” ☞5-15.
- Select the “USB/iPod” key on the source select screen. Refer to “Selecting an audio source” ☞5-16.

▼ Select play mode

The play mode settings display will appear when play mode key is touched. Select the preferred play mode from the following items.

Icon	Function
	Touch to start 1 track repeat.
	Touch to start repeat all.
	Touch to start folder repeat.
	Touch to start shuffle all.
	Touch to start shuffle folder.
	Return to the control screen.

■ iPod

Audio files on the iPod can be played.

⚠ WARNING

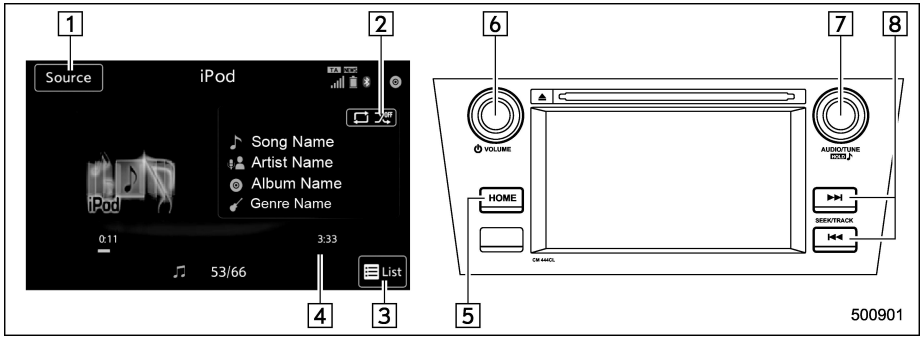
Do not operate the player’s controls or connect the iPod while driving. Doing so may result in losing control of your vehicle and cause an accident or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not leave your portable player in the car. In particular, high temperatures inside the vehicle may damage the portable player.**
- **Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the portable player while it is connected as this may damage the portable player or its terminal.**
- **Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the portable player or its terminal.**

– CONTINUED –

▼ Control screen and panel



No.	Function
1	Select to display the audio source selection screen.
2	Select to display the play mode currently selected. Refer to “Select play mode” ☞5-35.
3	Select to display iPod List. Refer to “iPod settings” ☞5-35.
4	Shows progress.
5	Select to display the sound setting screen. Refer to “Unit settings” ☞5-17.
6	Turn to adjust volume. Press to turn the audio system on/off.
7	Turn to select a track/file. Press to select an audio source. Refer to “Selecting an audio source” ☞5-16.
8	Press to select a track/file. Press and hold to fast forward/rewind.

NOTE

- **When an iPod is connected using a genuine iPod cable, the iPod starts charging its battery.**
- **When an iPod is connected and the audio source is changed to iPod mode, the iPod will resume playing from the same point it was last used.**
- **Depending on the iPod that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available.**
- **Files/tracks selected by operating a connected iPod may not be recognized or displayed properly.**

▼ Connecting the iPod

You can connect an iPod to the vehicle USB port using the USB cable. Refer to “Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device” ☞5-15.

▼ How to change the source

The iPod operation screen can be reached by the following methods:

- Connect an iPod. Refer to “Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device” ☞5-15.
- Select the “USB/iPod” key on the source select screen. Refer to “Selecting an audio source” ☞5-16.

▼ Select play mode

The play mode settings display will appear when play mode key is touched. Select the preferred play mode from the following items.

Icon	Function
	Touch to start 1 track repeat.
	Touch to start repeat all.
	Touch to start shuffle all.
	Touch to turn off shuffle.
	Touch to start shuffle album.
	Return to the control screen.

▼ iPod settings

You can choose the following items from the list screen after touching the List tab on the screen.

Icon	Function
	Select to display the play list.
	Select to display tracks list.
	Select to display artists list.
	Select to display albums list.
	Select to open other list (“Genres”, “Composers”, “Audiobooks” and “Podcast”).
	Select to open “Genres” list.
	Select to open “Composers” list.
	Select to open “Audiobooks” list.
	Select to open “Podcasts” list.

– CONTINUED –

■ Bluetooth audio

The Bluetooth audio system enables users to enjoy listening to music that is played on a portable player on the vehicle speakers via wireless communication.

This audio system supports Bluetooth, a wireless data system capable of playing portable audio music without cables. If your device does not support Bluetooth, the Bluetooth audio system will not function.

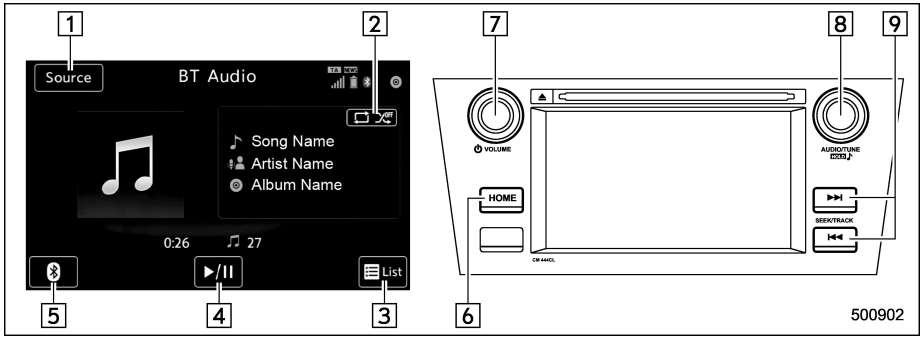
⚠ WARNING

- **Do not operate the player's controls or connect to the Bluetooth audio system while driving. Doing so may result in loss of control of your vehicle and cause an accident or serious injury.**
- **Your audio unit is fitted with Bluetooth antennas. People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the Bluetooth antennas. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.**
- **Before using Bluetooth devices, users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not leave your portable player in the vehicle. In particular, high temperatures inside the vehicle may damage the portable player.

▼ **Control screen and panel**



No.	Function
1	Select to display the audio source selection screen.
2	Select to display the play mode currently selected. Refer to “Select play mode” ☞5-38.
3	Select to display as a list (for the models with AVRCP Ver. 1.4 or higher).
4	Select to play back or pause a track. The track pauses when pressed during playback and plays back when pressed during pause.
5	Select to open Bluetooth Settings. Refer to “Setting Bluetooth details” ☞5-47.
6	Select to display the sound setting screen. Refer to “Unit settings” ☞5-17.

No.	Function
7	Turn to adjust volume. Press to turn the audio system on/off.
8	Turn to select a track. Press to select an audio source. Refer to “Selecting an audio source” ☞5-16.
9	Press to select a track. Press and hold to fast forward/rewind.

NOTE

- **Depending on the Bluetooth device that is connected to the system, the music may start playing when selecting ▶/II while it is paused. Conversely, the music may pause when selecting ▶/II while it is playing.**
- **In the following conditions, the system may not function:**
  - **– The Bluetooth device is turned off.**
  - **– The Bluetooth device is not connected.**
  - **– The Bluetooth device has a low battery.**
- **It may take time to connect the phone when Bluetooth audio is being played.**
- **For operating the portable player, see the instruction manual that comes with it.**
- **If the Bluetooth device is disconnected due to poor reception from the Bluetooth network when the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position, the system will automatically reconnect to the portable player.**
- **If the Bluetooth device is disconnected on purpose, such as it was turned off, this does not happen. Reconnect the portable player manually.**

– CONTINUED –

• Bluetooth device information is registered when the Bluetooth device is connected to the Bluetooth audio system. When selling or disposing of the vehicle, remove the Bluetooth audio information from the system. Refer to "Bluetooth® settings" ☞5-44.

▼ Connecting a Bluetooth device

To use the Bluetooth audio system, it is necessary to register a Bluetooth device with the system.

- Registering an additional device

1. Select the "Add" key on the BT Devices Connection screen.
2. For more information: Refer to "Registering/connecting Bluetooth® device" ☞5-44.

- Selecting a registered device

1. Select the "Select" key on the BT Devices Connection screen.
2. For more information: Refer to "BT Devices Connection screen" ☞5-47.

▼ How to change the source

Select the "BT Audio" key on the source select screen. Refer to "Selecting an audio source" ☞5-16.

NOTE

Depending on the type of portable player connected, some functions may not be available and/or the screen may look differently than shown in this manual.

▼ Select play mode

The play mode settings display will appear when play mode key is touched. Select the preferred play mode from the following items.

Icon	Function
	Touch to start 1 track repeat.
	Touch to start repeat all.
	Touch to repeat the tracks in the group.
	Touch to start shuffle all.
	Touch to play tracks in the order in which they are registered in the audio device.
	Touch to start shuffle group.
	Return to the control screen.

NOTE

If the connected device does not support the group repeat mode, the group functions are not available.

■ AUX

⚠ WARNING

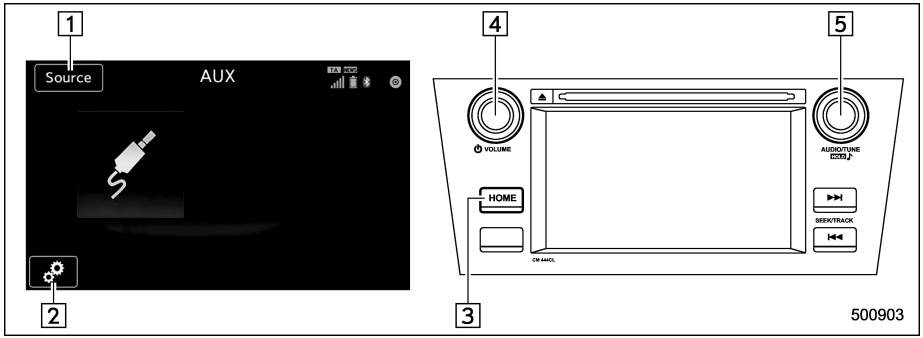
Do not operate the player's controls or connect the portable audio device while driving. Doing so may result in loss of control of your vehicle and cause an accident or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not leave portable audio device in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the player.**
- **Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the portable audio device while it is connected as this may damage the portable audio device or its terminal.**
- **Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the portable audio device or its terminal.**

– CONTINUED –

▼ Control screen and panel



No.	Function
1	Select to display the audio source selection screen.
2	Select to open the Options screen. Refer to “Audio level settings” ☞5-40.
3	Press to display the sound setting screen. Refer to “Unit settings” ☞5-17.
4	Turn to adjust volume. Press to turn the audio system on/off.
5	Press to select an audio source. Refer to “Selecting an audio source” ☞5-16.

▼ Connecting a portable audio device

You can connect a portable audio device to the vehicle’s AUX jack. Refer to “Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device” ☞5-15.

▼ How to change the source

The AUX operation screen can be reached by the following methods:

- Connect a portable audio device. Refer to “Connecting and disconnecting a USB memory/portable device” ☞5-15.
- Select the “AUX” key on the source select screen. Refer to “Selecting an audio source” ☞5-16.

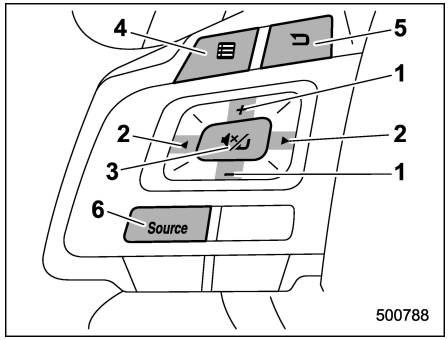
▼ Audio level settings

You can set the audio gain level.

1. Select the ⚙ tab on the screen, and then touch the right side key of the “Audio Level” key.
2. Select the audio level from the following items.
   - Low
   - Mid
   - High

Steering switches for audio

Some parts of the audio/visual system can be adjusted using the switches on the steering wheel.



1) +/− switch
2) ◀/▶ switch
3) Mute/Enter switch
4) List switch
5) Back switch
6) Source switch

– CONTINUED –

- +/− switch

Mode	Operation	Function
Except list screen	Press	Volume up/down
	Press and hold	Volume up/down continuously
List screen	Press	Move cursor up/down

- ◀/▶ switch

Mode	Operation	Function
AM/FM Radio	Press	Preset channel up/down
	Press and hold	Seek up/down continuously while the switch is being pressed
Audio CD, MP3/WMA/AAC disc, USB, iPod, BT audio	Press	Select a track/file
	Press and hold	Fast forward/rewind
List screen	Press	Move cursor left/right

- Mute/Enter switch

Mode	Operation	Function
List screen	Press	Select cursor entry
CD, USB, iPod, BT audio	Press	Pause or play back
AM/FM radio, AUX	Press	Mute or cancel mute

- Back switch

Mode	Operation	Function
All (except for SUBARU STARLINK)	Press	Return to the previous screen
All	Press and hold	Return to the HOME screen

- List switch

Mode	Operation	Function
All (except for SUBARU STARLINK)	Press	Show list screen

- Source switch

Mode	Operation	Function
All	Press	Change audio modes

NOTE

For Europe: In the SUBARU STARLINK mode, some operation may be done on the screen depend on the selected APPS.

Bluetooth® settings

⚠ WARNING

Be sure to park the vehicle in a safe location before connecting or operating a Bluetooth phone or audio device. Failure to do so may result in loss of control of your vehicle and cause an accident or serious injury.

NOTE

The images shown in this Owner's Manual are sample images. The actual images may vary depending on the market and specifications of your vehicle.

■ Regulatory information

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ Registering/connecting Bluetooth® device

You can register up to five devices, regardless of whether they are Bluetooth phones or audio devices.

NOTE

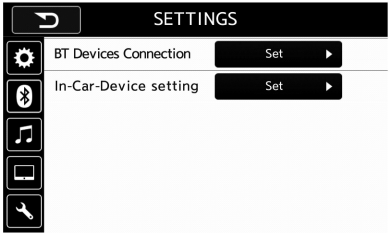
- **Once the phone has been registered, it is possible to use the hands-free system or Bluetooth audio.**
- **This operation cannot be performed while driving.**

▼ Registering a Bluetooth phone for the first time

To use the hands-free system, it is necessary to register a Bluetooth phone with the system.

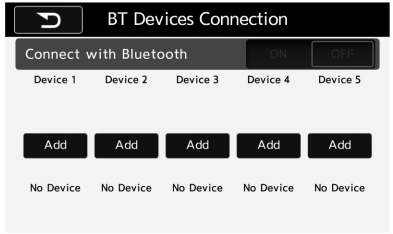
For details about registering a Bluetooth device: Refer to "Registering a Bluetooth Audio device for the first time" ☞5-45.

1. Turn the Bluetooth connection setting of your cell phone on.
   - This function is not available when Bluetooth connection setting of your cell phone is set to off.
2. Press the HOME button and select the "SETTINGS" key.
3. Touch the tab and then the "SETTINGS" screen will appear.



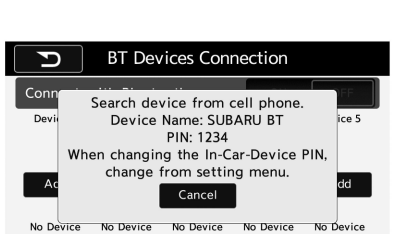
Settings (When the tab is selected)

4. To register a device, touch the "Set" key on the "BT Devices Connection" key.



"BT Devices Connection" screen (At the initial startup and when no device is registered)

5. Touch the "Add" key.



When the "Add" key is selected (Waiting for the connection request from a device)

- For details about operating the Bluetooth device, see the manual that comes with it.
- To cancel the registration, select the "Cancel" key.

6. Register the Bluetooth device using your Bluetooth device.
   - A PIN-code is not required for SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) compatible Bluetooth devices. Depending on the type of Bluetooth device being connected, a message confirming registration may be displayed on the Bluetooth device's screen. Respond and operate the Bluetooth device according to the confirmation message.
7. Check that the screen is displayed when registration is complete.
   - The system waits for connection requests coming from the registered device.
   - At this stage, the Bluetooth functions are not yet available.

▼ Registering a Bluetooth Audio device for the first time

To use the Bluetooth Audio, it is necessary to register an audio device with the system.

The device registration procedure is the same for both the hands-free system and Bluetooth audio.

1. Display the "BT Devices Connection" screen. Refer to "Registering a Bluetooth phone for the first time" ☞5-44.
2. Select the "Add" key.

The "Add" key is not displayed when five devices are already registered.

To add another device, you need to delete one of the registered devices.

Press and hold the 🗑 key for the device to be deleted, and then select the "OK" key.

3. Register the Bluetooth device using your Bluetooth device.
   - A PIN-code is not required for SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) compatible Bluetooth devices. Depending on the type of Bluetooth device being connected, a message confirming registration may be displayed on the Bluetooth device's screen. Respond and operate the Bluetooth device according to the confirmation message.
4. Check that the screen is displayed when registration is complete.
   - The system waits for connection requests coming from the registered device.
   - At this stage, the Bluetooth functions are not yet available.

– CONTINUED –

▼ Profiles

This system supports the following services.

Bluetooth Device	Spec.	Function	Requirements	Recommendations
Bluetooth Phone/Bluetooth Audio Device	Bluetooth Specification	Registering a Bluetooth device	Ver. 1.1	Ver. 2.1 + EDR

Bluetooth Device	Profile	Function	Requirements	Recommendations
Bluetooth Phone	HFP (Hands-Free Profile)	Hands-free system	Ver. 1.0	Ver. 1.5
	OPP (Object Push Profile)	Transferring the contacts	Ver. 1.1	Ver. 1.1
	PBAP (Phone Book Access profile)		Ver. 1.0	Ver. 1.0
	MAP (Message Access Profile)	Bluetooth phone message	—	Ver. 1.0
	SPP (Serial Port Profile)	Connecting a Bluetooth phone	—	Ver. 1.1
Bluetooth Audio Device	A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile)	Bluetooth audio system	Ver. 1.0	Ver. 1.2
	AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile)		Ver. 1.0	Ver. 1.4

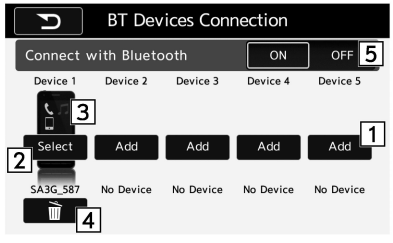
NOTE

- **If your cell phone does not support HFP, registering the Bluetooth phone or using OPP, PBAP, MAP or SPP profiles individually will not be possible.**
- **If the connected Bluetooth device version is older than recommended or incompatible, the Bluetooth device function may not work properly.**
- **Contact your local dealer to arrange a demonstration in order to confirm whether or not the device can be paired with the vehicle.**

■ Setting Bluetooth details

▼ BT Devices Connection screen

1. Press the HOME button on the audio panel.
2. Touch the “SETTINGS” key, and then touch tab.
3. Select the desired device to register.



“BT Devices Connection” screen (One device is registered.)

No.	Function
1	Register the device. Refer to “Registering/connecting Bluetooth® device” ☞5-44.
2	Make the connection to the registered device.
3	Show the status of the device connection profile. (The icon illuminates while connected.)
4	Delete the registered device. Refer to “Deleting a Bluetooth device” ☞5-48.
5	Switch to connect/disconnect the Bluetooth communication. Refer to “Bluetooth ON/OFF” ☞5-47.

▽ Connecting a Bluetooth device

Up to 5 Bluetooth devices (Phones and audio devices) can be registered.

If more than 1 Bluetooth device has been registered, select which device to connect to.

1. Display the “BT Devices Connection” screen. Refer to “BT Devices Connection screen” ☞5-47.
2. Select the device to be connected.
   - Supported profile icons will be displayed.
   – : Phone
   – : Audio device
   – : Smartphone Application (for Europe)
   - Supported profile icons for currently connected devices will illuminate.
   - The audio icon illuminates only when in the Bluetooth audio mode.
   - All icons are dimmed when Bluetooth is set to off or when the connection cannot be made with the device.

NOTE

- It may take time if the device connection is carried out during Bluetooth audio playback.
- Depending on the type of Bluetooth device being connected, it may be necessary to perform additional steps on the device.
- It is not possible to establish a Bluetooth connection with iOS devices currently connected with a USB cable.
- Supported profile icons of the unselected devices are not displayed if several Bluetooth devices have been registered.

▽ Bluetooth ON/OFF

1. Display the “BT Devices Connection” screen. Refer to “BT Devices Connection screen” ☞5-47.
2. Select the “ON” or “OFF” key by the right side of the “Connect with Bluetooth” key. The “ON” key establishes a connection, and the “OFF” key disconnects the connection.

NOTE

The setting is fixed as “OFF” when no device is registered.

– CONTINUED –

▽ **Deleting a Bluetooth device**

1. Display the “BT Devices Connection” screen. Refer to “BT Devices Connection screen” ☞5-47.
2. Select the desired device.
3. Touch the 🗑 key for the device to be deleted, and then select the “OK” key.

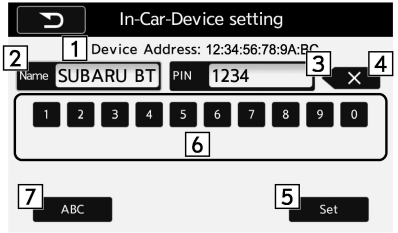
NOTE

When deleting a Bluetooth phone, the contact data will be deleted at the same time.

▼ **“In-Car-Device setting” screen**

The Bluetooth settings can be confirmed and changed.

1. Display the “SETTINGS” screen. Refer to “BT Devices Connection screen” ☞5-47.
2. On the “SETTINGS” screen for In-Car-Device setting, select the “Set” key.



500886

No.	Function
1	Display the Bluetooth device address of the in-vehicle equipment.
2	Display the Bluetooth device name of the in-vehicle equipment. The default name is “SUBARU BT”, which can be changed by selecting it and entering alphanumeric characters.
3	Display the PIN code of the in-vehicle equipment. The default code is “1234”, which can be changed by selecting it and entering numbers.
4	Delete one character from the currently selected item (BT device name or the PIN code).
5	Save the current BT device name and PIN code.
6	Numeric input keys.
7	Switch the screen to input characters.

▽ **Editing the Bluetooth device name**

The device name can be set or changed.

1. Touch the “Name” key.
2. Enter a name and then select the “Set” key.

▽ **Editing the PIN-Code**

The PIN-code can be set/changed.

1. Select the “PIN” key.
2. Enter a PIN-code and then select the “Set” key.

NOTE

If the “PIN” key is already selected, the “ABC” key is cross-hatched and disabled.

Hands-free phone system

The hands-free system enables calls to be made and received without having to take your hands off the steering wheel.

This system supports Bluetooth. Bluetooth is a wireless data system that enables cell phones to be used without being connected by a cable or placed in a cradle.

The operating procedure of the phone is explained here.

⚠ WARNING

- **While driving, do not use a cell phone or connect the Bluetooth phone.**
- **Your audio unit is fitted with Bluetooth antennas. People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the Bluetooth antennas. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.**
- **Before using Bluetooth devices, users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not leave your cell phone in the vehicle. The temperature inside may rise to a level that could damage the phone.

NOTE

- **If your cell phone does not support Bluetooth, this system cannot function.**
- **In the following conditions, the system may not function:**
  - **– The cell phone is turned off.**
  - **– The current position is outside the communication area.**
  - **– The cell phone is not connected.**
  - **– The cell phone has a low battery.**
- **When using the hands free function and other Bluetooth functions at the same time, the following problems may occur:**
  - **– The Bluetooth connection may be cut.**
  - **– Noise may be heard when playing back voice with the Bluetooth function.**
- **The other party's voice will be heard from the front speakers. The audio/visual system will be muted during phone calls or when hands-free voice commands are used.**
- **Talk alternately with the other party on the phone. If both parties speak at the same time, the other party may not hear what has been said. (This is not a malfunction.)**
- **Keep call volume down. Otherwise, the other party's voice may be audible outside the vehicle and voice echo may increase. When talking on the phone, speak clearly towards the microphone.**
- **The other party may not hear you clearly when:**
  - **– Driving on an unpaved road. (Making excessive traffic noise.)**
  - **– Driving at high speeds.**
  - **– The roof or windows are open.**
  - **– The air conditioning vents are pointed towards the microphone.**

– CONTINUED –

– The sound of the air conditioning fan is loud.

– There is a negative effect on sound quality due to the phone and/or network being used.

- **When another phone is connected, the following registered data cannot be read:**
  - **– Contact data**
  - **– Call history data**
  - **– All phone settings**
- **When selling or disposing of the vehicle, initialize the data. Refer to "Unit settings" ☞5-17.**
- **Once initialized, the data and settings will be erased. Take extra caution when initializing the data.**
- **The voice command system supports phone commands, so dialing a phone number using your voice is possible. Refer to "Voice command system" ☞5-64.**
- **The images shown in this Owner's Manual are sample images. The actual images and displayed messages may vary depending on the market and specifications of your vehicle.**

■ Control screen



Phone (menu) screen



Phone (dialpad) screen

No.	Function
1	Open the Incoming Calls screen. Refer to "By incoming calls" ☞5-52.
2	Open the Outgoing Calls screen. Refer to "By outgoing calls" ☞5-53.
3	Open the Contacts screen. Refer to "By contacts list" ☞5-53.
4	Changes the screen from the Menu screen to the dialpad screen. Refer to "By dialpad" ☞5-54.
5	Open the phone volume setting screen. Refer to "Phone volume settings" ☞5-57.
6	Use to make a phone call. You cannot press this key until you open the dialpad screen and enter a phone number.
7	Open the BT Devices Connection screen. Refer to "Setting Bluetooth details" ☞5-47.
8	Enter the phone number that you want to call.
9	Switch the screen to the Phone (Menu) screen.

NOTE

When the cell phone is not registered and the Bluetooth setting is off, a message is displayed instead of menu items.

■ Registering/connecting a Bluetooth phone

To use the hands-free system for cell phones, it is necessary to register a cell phone with the system. Refer to “Registering/connecting Bluetooth® device” ☞5-44.

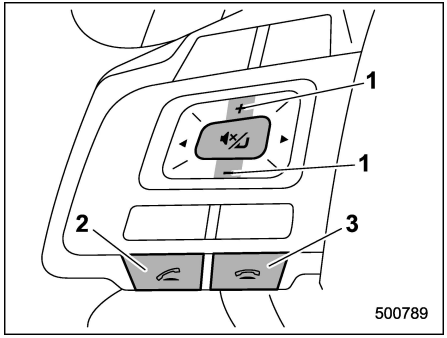
▼ Bluetooth phone condition display

The condition of the Bluetooth phone appears on the upper right side of the screen.

■ Using the phone switch/microphone

- Steering switch

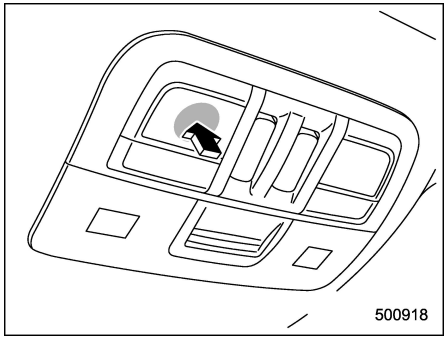
By pressing the phone switch, a call can be received or ended without taking your hands off the steering wheel.



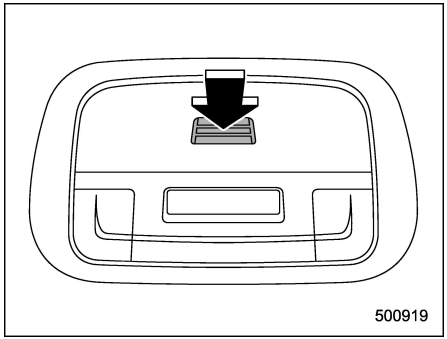
1) Volume control switch
2) Off hook switch
3) On hook switch

- Microphone

The microphone is used when talking on the phone.



Type A



Type B

– CONTINUED –

■ How to change the hands-free phone system

The phone (menu) screen can be used to make a phone call. To display the hands-free operation screen, press the HOME button and then select the “PHONE” key, or press the off hook switch on the steering wheel.

■ Making a call

There are several methods by which a call can be made, as described below.

1. Press the HOME button on the audio panel.
2. Touch the “PHONE” key.
3. Select the desired key to make a call from the following list.



500887

Item	Function
Incoming Calls	Display the history of incoming calls. Refer to “By incoming calls” ☞5-52.
Outgoing Calls	Display the history of outgoing calls. Refer to “By outgoing calls” ☞5-53.
Contacts	Display the phonebook. Refer to “By contacts list” ☞5-53.
Dialpad/ Keypad	Dial a phone number. Refer to “By dialpad” ☞5-54.

NOTE

You can also make a call by using the following functions.

- **Make a call using the off hook switch on the steering wheel. Refer to “By off hook switch” ☞5-55.**
- **Make a call using voice operation. Refer to “Voice command system” ☞5-64.**

▼ By incoming calls

On the PHONE screen, select “Incoming Calls” to open the Incoming Calls screen.

You can make a call by selecting an item in the incoming call history list.

If there is no incoming call history, a message appears to indicate that there is no incoming call history data.



S01242

Incoming Calls screen

No.	Function
1	Opens the “Outgoing Calls” screen.
2	Opens the “Contacts” screen.
3	Deletes all incoming call history data. The “Delete All” key is disabled when there is no incoming call history.

When you select an item in the history list on the “Incoming Calls” screen, the outgoing call screen opens.

NOTE

- **Up to 10 items in the incoming call history are listed. Scroll the screen to see items that are not on the screen.**
- **When making a call to the same**

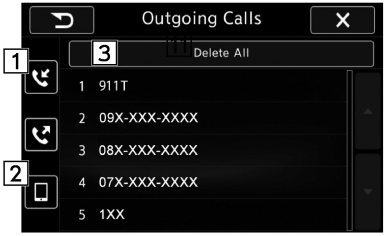
number continuously, only the most recent call is listed in call history.
• When a phone number registered in the contact list is received, the name is displayed.
• Number-withheld calls are also memorized in the system.
• International phone calls may not be made depending on the type of cell phone you have.
• The list should group together consecutive entries with the same phone number and same call type.

▼ By outgoing calls

On the phone (menu) screen, select the "Outgoing Calls" key to open the "Outgoing Calls" screen.

You can make a call by selecting an item in the outgoing call history list.

If there is no outgoing call history, a message appears to indicate that there is no outgoing call history data.



Outgoing Calls screen

No.	Function
1	Open the "Incoming Calls" screen.
2	Open the "Contacts" screen.
3	Delete all outgoing call history data. The "Delete All" key is disabled when there is no outgoing call history.

When you select an item in the history list on the "Outgoing Calls" screen, the outgoing call screen opens.

NOTE

• Up to 10 items in the outgoing call history are listed. Scroll the screen to see items that are not on the screen.
• When making a call to the same number continuously, only the most recent call is listed in call history.
• When a phone number registered in the contact list is received, the name is displayed.
• Number-withheld calls are also memorized in the system.
• International phone calls may not be made depending on the type of cell phone you have.
• The list should group together consecutive entries with the same phone number and same call type.

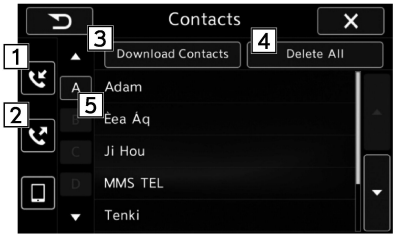
▼ By contacts list

On the phone (menu) screen, select the "Contacts" key to open the phone number list screen.

You can make a call by selecting an item in the phone number list (up to five phone numbers are listed).

If there is no contact data, a message is displayed to indicate that there is no contact data.

– CONTINUED –



Contacts screen

No.	Function
1	Open the “Incoming Calls” screen.
2	Open the “Outgoing Calls” screen.
3	Open a pop-up screen for starting the download of contact data. Refer to “Update contacts from phone” ☞5-58.
4	Delete all contact data. The “Delete All” key is disabled when there is no contact data. Refer to “Deleting the contact data” ☞5-59.
5	Open a list of contacts that starts with the selected character. This key is cross-hatched and cannot be selected if there is no contact data that starts with the selected character,

Select the up/down arrow key to scroll the list of contacts.

When you select a phone number on the screen, the outgoing call screen opens.

NOTE

Up to 1000 items in the contact data are listed. Scroll the screen to see items that are not on the screen.

▽ When the contact is empty

For PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible Bluetooth phones

On the “Contacts” screen, select the “Download Contacts” key. A screen where you can select how to download contacts opens.

You can select to download all items or download one item. For details, refer to “Update contacts from phone” ☞5-58.

▽ Delete contacts

When the “Delete All” key is selected, all contact data downloaded into the in-vehicle equipment will be deleted. Refer to “Deleting the contact data” ☞5-59.

▼ By dialpad

Input the phone number manually using the keypad displayed on the screen.



Phone (dialpad) screen

No.	Function
1	Allow you to enter numbers from 0 to 9 and *, #, and +. To enter “+”, press and hold the “0” key.
2	Delete one character from the entered characters.
3	Switch the screen to the phone (menu) screen.
4	Open the Outgoing Calls screen and dials the entered phone number. This is the same as pressing the off hook switch on the steering wheel. This key is cross-hatched and cannot be selected until the phone number is entered.

No.	Function
5	Open the Options screen. Refer to “Phone volume settings” ☞5-57.
6	Open the BT Devices Connection screen. Refer to “Setting Bluetooth details” ☞5-47.

When you enter a phone number on the screen and select the key, the “Outgoing Call” screen opens.

▼ By off hook switch

Calls can be made using the latest call history item.

1. Press the off hook switch on the steering wheel to display the phone top screen.
2. Check that the call screen is displayed.

▼ Outgoing screen



Outgoing call screen

No.	Function
1	Open the “Options” screen. Refer to “Phone volume settings” ☞5-57.
2	Abort the call. The screen returns to the phone (menu) screen. This is the same as pressing the on hook switch on the steering wheel.

NOTE

• Depending on the type of Bluetooth phone being connected, it may be necessary to perform additional steps on the phone.

• When you are on the outgoing call screen, the screen changes to the call screen when the other party answers the call.

• The , , and keys are disabled on the outgoing call screen.

■ Receiving a call

▼ Incoming calls

When a call is received, the incoming call screen is displayed with a sound.

When you receive a phone call while the cell phone is connected, the screen changes to the incoming call screen.



Incoming call screen

– CONTINUED –

No.	Function
1	Open the “Options” screen. Refer to “Phone volume settings” ☞5-57.
2	Put the incoming call on hold. This function may not work on some cell phone models. This function is the same as pressing the on hook switch on the steering wheel for a short period of time.
3	Open the call screen. This function is the same as pressing the off hook switch on the steering wheel.
4	Reject the incoming call. This function is the same as pressing and holding the on hook switch on the steering wheel.

NOTE

● During international phone calls, the other party’s name or number may not be displayed correctly depending on the type of cell phone you have.

● Depending on the type of Bluetooth phone, both the system and Bluetooth phone may sound simultaneously when there is an incoming call. Refer to “Phone volume settings” ☞5-57.

▼ By off/on hook switch

When you receive a call, you can also answer it by pressing the off hook switch on the steering wheel. To end a call, press the on hook switch.

■ Talking on the phone

The call screen opens when you perform the following operations.

● When you accept a call on the incoming call screen (by selecting the key), the call screen opens.

● When you are on the outgoing call screen, the screen changes to the call screen when the other party answers the call.

While talking on the phone, this screen is displayed. The operations outlined below can be performed on this screen.

● When the incoming call screen is displayed and you accept the call, the screen changes to the call screen. The screen stays on the incoming call screen if you reject the call.

● The and keys are disabled on the incoming call screen.



Call screen



Call (Dialpad) screen (DTMF)

No.	Function
1	Open the “Options” screen. Refer to “Phone volume settings” ☞5-57.
2	Mute your voice to the other party. Touch the key again to deactivate the Mute mode. This key is disabled in the private mode.
3	Change the mode to private mode. The other party’s voice emits from the cell phone. Touch the key again to deactivate the private mode.
4	End the call. You return to the phone (menu) screen when ending outgoing calls and the previous screen when ending incoming calls. This function is the same as pressing and holding the on hook switch on the steering wheel.
5	Open the call (dialpad) screen. Refer to “By dialpad” ☞5-54.
6	Switch the screen to the phone (menu) screen.
7	Allow you to make DTMF (Dual Tone Multi Frequency) calls. The numbers you enter are sent as tone signals.

NOTE

● When cell phone call is changed to hands-free call, the hands-free screen will be displayed and its functions can be operated on the screen.

● Changing between cell phone call and hands-free call can be performed by operating the cell phone directly.

● Transferring methods and operations will be different depending on the type of cell phone you have.

● For the operation of the cell phone, see the manual that comes with it.

● The sound quality of the voice heard from the other party’s speaker may be negatively impacted.

■ Phone settings

You can transfer the phonebook information and adjust the volume of your phone using the Bluetooth phone system.

NOTE

● The ringer volume for outgoing and incoming calls, as well as the volume while on hold or during a call are controlled independently from the volume of the audio source. The volume setting in the phone setting is applied.

● When making a call, receiving a call or while talking on the phone, you can adjust the volume by using the power/Volume knob on the audio panel or the volume control switch on the steering wheel.

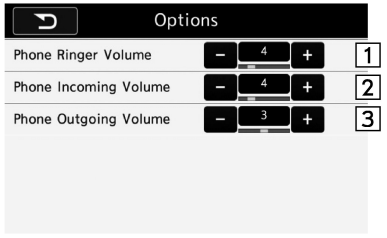
▼ Phone volume settings

The call and ringtone volume can be adjusted. A ringtone can be selected.

1. Display the “PHONE” screen. Refer to “How to change the hands-free phone system” ☞5-52.
2. Touch key.
3. Select the desired item to be set.

● On the “PHONE” screen, the screen changes to the “Options” screen when you select the key.

– CONTINUED –



Options (volume settings) screen

No.	Function
1	Adjust the ringtone volume. The "-" key lowers the volume, and the "+" key increases the volume. (Default volume: 4 out of a total of 16 volume levels)
2	Adjust the receive volume. The "-" key lowers the volume, and the "+" key increases the volume. (Default volume: 4 out of a total of 16 volume levels)
3	Adjust the transmit volume. The "-" key lowers the volume, and the "+" key increases the volume. (Default volume: 3 out of a total of 5 volume levels)

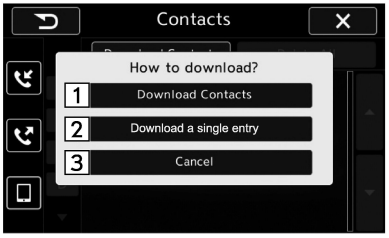
NOTE

● Depending on the type of phone, certain functions may not be available.
● Contact data is managed independently for every registered phone. When one phone is connected, another phone's registered data cannot be read.

▼ Update contacts from phone

Operation methods differ between PBAP (Phone Book Access Profile) compatible and PBAP incompatible but OPP (Object Push Profile) compatible Bluetooth phones.

1. Display the "PHONE" screen. Refer to "How to change the hands-free phone system" ☞5-52.
2. Touch the "Contacts" key, and then select the "Download Contacts" key.



Contacts screen (Download selection)

No.	Function
1	Open the download confirmation screen. Confirm whether or not to download. If the downloaded contact(s) already exist(s), confirm whether or not to overwrite the existing data.
2	Download one set of contact data. To download the data, you need to operate from the connected device.
3	Cancel the download. The screen returns to the "Contacts" screen.

NOTE

● If your cell phone is neither PBAP nor OPP compatible, the contacts cannot be transferred.
● If you transfer the contacts data, you

have to operate a cell phone depending on the type of cell phone.

● Depending on the type of cell phone, there is a function that may not be supported.

▽ For PBAP compatible Bluetooth phones

1. Select the “Download Contacts” or “Download a single entry” key. Contacts are transferred automatically.
2. Check that a confirmation screen is displayed when the operation is complete.
   - This operation may be unnecessary depending on the type of cell phone.
   - If another Bluetooth device is connected when transferring contact data, depending on the phone, the connected Bluetooth device may need to be disconnected.

▽ For PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible Bluetooth phones

This operation cannot be performed while driving.

1. Select the “Download a single entry” key.
2. Transfer the contact data to the system using a Bluetooth phone.
   - This operation may be unnecessary depending on the type of cell phone.
   - To cancel this function, select the “Cancel” key.
3. Check that a confirmation screen is displayed when the operation is complete.

NOTE

To download all items, you may need to change the settings in your cell phone beforehand.

▼ Deleting the contact data

You can delete the phonebook data stored in the audio set.

1. Display the “PHONE” screen. Refer to “How to change the hands-free phone system” ☞5-52.
2. Touch the “Contacts” key, and then select the “Delete All” key.
3. Select the “OK” key when the confirmation screen appears.

NOTE

● Manual transfer operation cannot be performed while driving.

● If your cell phone is neither PBAP nor OPP compatible, the contacts cannot be transferred.

● Depending on the type of Bluetooth phone:

– It may be necessary to perform additional steps on the phone when transferring contact data.

What to do if...

■ Troubleshooting

If there is a problem with the hands-free system or a Bluetooth device, first check the table below.

When using the hands-free system with a Bluetooth device

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution	Page	
			Cell phone	This system
The hands-free system or Bluetooth device does not work.	The connected device may not be a compatible Bluetooth cell phone.	Contact your local dealer to arrange a demonstration in order to confirm whether or not the device can be paired with the vehicle.	*	—
	The Bluetooth version of the connected cell phone may be older than the specified version.	Use a cell phone with Bluetooth version 1.1 or higher (recommended: Ver. 2.1 + EDR or higher).	*	5-46

*: For details, refer to the owner's manual that came with the cell phone.

When registering/connecting a cell phone

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution	Page	
			Cell phone	This system
A cell phone cannot be registered.	An incorrect passcode was entered on the cell phone.	Enter the correct passcode on the cell phone.	*	—
	The registration operation has not been completed on the cell phone side.	Complete the registration operation on the cell phone (approve registration on the phone).	*	—
	Old registration information remains on either this system or the cell phone.	Delete the existing registration information from both this system and the cell phone, then register the cell phone you wish to connect to this system.	*	5-47
A Bluetooth connection cannot be made.	Another Bluetooth device is already connected.	Manually connect the cell phone you wish to use to this system.	—	5-47
	Bluetooth function is not enabled on the cell phone.	Enable the Bluetooth function on the cell phone.	*	—
	Automatic Bluetooth connection on this system is set to off.	Set automatic Bluetooth connection on this system to on when the ignition switch is turned to the “ACC” or “ON” position.	—	5-47
“Unable to dial. Please check your phone. (Unable to dial. Please check your phone.)”	Bluetooth function is not enabled on the cell phone.	Enable the Bluetooth function on the cell phone.	*	—
	Old registration information remains on either this system or the cell phone.	Delete the existing registration information from both this system and the cell phone, then register the cell phone you wish to connect to this system.	*	5-47

*: For details, refer to the owner’s manual that came with the cell phone.

– CONTINUED –

When making/receiving a call

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution	Page	
			Cell phone	This system
A call cannot be made/received.	Your vehicle is in a “No Service (No Service)” area.	Move to where “No Service (No Service)” no longer appears on the display.	—	—

When using the phonebook

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution	Page	
			Cell phone	This system
Phonebook data cannot be transferred manually.	The profile version of the connected cell phone may not be compatible with transferring phonebook data.	Contact your local dealer to arrange a demonstration in order to confirm whether or not the device can be paired with the vehicle.	*	—
	Transfer operation on the cell phone has not completed.	Complete transfer operation on the cell phone (approve transfer operation on the phone).	*	—
Phonebook data cannot be edited.	Editing function is not available on this system.	—	—	5-59

*: For details, refer to the owner’s manual that came with the cell phone.

In other situations

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution	Page	
			Cell phone	This system
Even though all conceivable measures have been taken, the symptom status does not change.	The cell phone is not close enough to this system.	Bring the cell phone closer to this system.	—	—
	The cell phone is the most likely cause of the symptom.	Turn the cell phone off, remove and reinstall the battery pack, and then restart the cell phone.	*	—
		Enable the cell phone's Bluetooth connection.	*	—
		Stop the cell phone's security software and close all applications.	*	—
		Before using an application installed on the cell phone, carefully check its source and how its operation might affect this system.	*	—

*: For details, refer to the owner's manual that came with the cell phone.

Voice command system

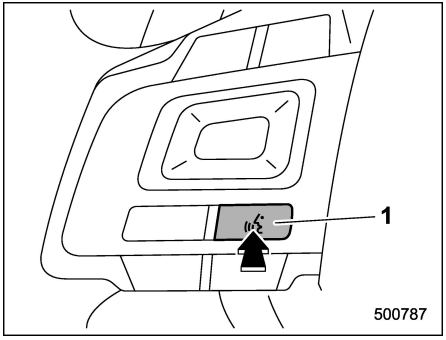
The voice command system enables the audio, hands-free systems, etc. to be operated using voice commands.

Refer to the “Command list” ☞5-66 for samples of voice commands.

The voice command system supports a number of languages. For details about setting language, refer to “General settings” ☞5-18.

■ Using the voice command system

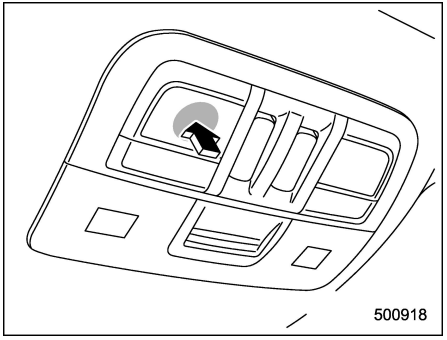
▼ Steering switch



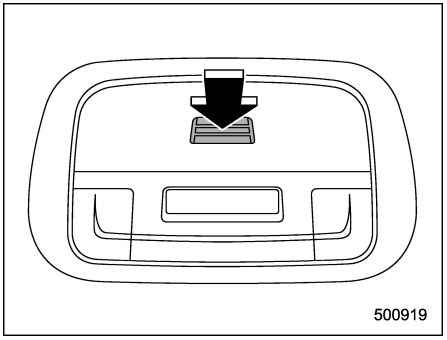
1) Talk switch

Action	Function
Press	Start the voice command system.
Press and hold	Cancel voice recognition.

▼ Microphone



Type A



Type B

It is unnecessary to speak directly into the microphone when giving a command.

NOTE

- **Wait for the confirmation beep before speaking a command.**
- **Voice commands may not be recognized if:**
  - **– Spoken too quickly.**
  - **– Spoken at a low or high volume.**
  - **– The roof or windows are open.**
  - **– Passengers are talking while voice commands are spoken.**
  - **– The air conditioning speed is set high.**
  - **– The air conditioning vents are turned towards the microphone.**

• In the following conditions, the system may not recognize the command properly and using voice commands may not be possible:

– The command is incorrect or unclear. Note that certain words, accents or speech patterns may be difficult for the system to recognize.

– There is excessive background noise, such as wind noise.

■ Voice command system operation

1. Press the talk switch on the steering wheel.

After the voice command top screen has been displayed, speech guidance will commence.

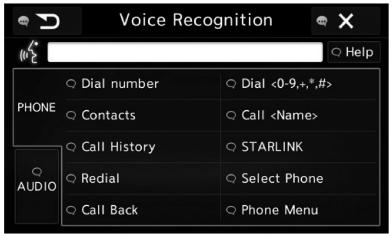


S01273

NOTE

When the voice command mode is audio mode, voice guidance for the voice command system can be skipped by pressing the talk switch.

2. Say the command.



S01274

Example (Say "Help" and "Phone")

NOTE

• Commands related with each function are displayed on the screen of the each function tab. Some commonly used commands are displayed on the screen of the main tab. Even if any tab is selected, all commands can be operated.

• Saying *"Help"* prompts guidance to offer examples of commands and operation methods.

• To cancel voice recognition, select "×", or press and hold the talk switch.

• If the system does not respond or the confirmation screen does not disappear, press the talk switch and try again.

▼ Voice command example: Call name

1. Press the talk switch.
2. Say ***"Call <contacts>"***.
   • A confirmation screen will be displayed showing the recognition results. If multiple matching items are found, a selection screen will be displayed. Say ***"<number>"*** or select the number.

NOTE

• In the same manner as it is displayed on the screen, "Call <contacts>" (Call <contacts>), after saying *"Call a contact"* say the name of a contact. For example: *"Call a contact"*, *"John Smith"* or *"Call a contact"*, *"Mary Davis"*

• Short or abbreviated names in the contacts list may not be recognized. Change names in the contacts list to full names.

• Sometimes a voice recognition result confirmation screen will be displayed. After confirming the result, say *"Yes"* or *"No"*.

– CONTINUED –

• When the system recognizes multiple names from the contacts list, a name candidate list will be displayed on the screen. If the desired name is not displayed on the top of the screen, say or select the number of the name from the candidate list (number 1, number 2, etc.) to select a name from the candidate list.
• When a contact has multiple phone numbers registered in the contacts list, a candidate list will be displayed. If the desired phone number is not displayed on the top of the screen, say or select the number of the desired phone number from the candidate list (number 1, number 2, etc.) to select a phone number from the candidate list.

▼ Voice command example: Dial number

1. Press the talk switch.
2. Say ***"Dial number"***.
3. Say ***"Dial <number>"***.

For example, if the phone number is 2345678:

Say ***"two three four five six seven eight"***

Do not say ***"twenty three forty five sixty seven eight"***

4. Say ***"Dial"*** or press the off hook switch on the steering wheel.

NOTE

• When the system recognizes multiple phone numbers, a phone number candidate list will be displayed on the screen. Pressing the off hook switch on the steering wheel makes a call to the top entry on the list. If the desired phone number is not displayed on the top of the screen, say the number of the desired phone number from the candidate list to select a phone number from the candidate list.
• As the system cannot recognize additional numbers, say the complete number without stopping.

▼ Casual speech recognization

Due to natural language speech recognition technology, this system enables recognition of a command when spoken naturally. However, the system cannot recognize every variation of each command. In some situations, it is possible to omit the command for the procedure and directly state the desired operation. Not all voice commands are displayed in the function menu.

NOTE

If the command cannot be recognized completely, the command input screen will be displayed. (Search results will be shown based on the part of the command that was recognized.)

▽ Expression examples for each function

Command	Expression examples
"Dial <phone number>"	*Phone <phone number>.*

■ Command list

Recognizable voice commands and their actions are shown below.

NOTE

• Some voice commands may not be available depending on the vehicle specifications or the device connection status.
• Frequently used commands are listed in the following tables.
• For devices that are not installed in the vehicle, the related commands will not be displayed in the screen. Also, according to conditions, other commands may not be displayed on the screen.
• The functions available may vary according to the system installed.
• Voice recognition language can be changed. Refer to "Unit settings" ☞5-17.

• The notations used in the commands are as follows.

– <OOO>: Numbers, titles, or names to be spoken

– (OOO): There is no need to speak the command, the voice command system will recognize the content.

▼ Basic command

Voice command	Function
Back	Go back one hierarchy or cancel the voice recognition (voice command top screen)
Help	Ask for help with the current task
Cancel, Close	Cancel the current task
Yes	
No	
Display OFF	Turns the display off
Audio ON	Turns the audio system on
Audio OFF	Turns the audio system off
STARLINK	Switch to APPS mode (if equipped)

▼ Commands for changing the audio mode

Voice command	Function
Change to AM	Switch to AM mode
Change to AM1	Switch to AM mode band 1
Change to AM2	Switch to AM mode band 2
Change to FM	Switch to FM mode
Change to FM1	Switch to FM mode band 1
Change to FM2	Switch to FM mode band 2
Change to FM3	Switch to FM mode band 3
Change to BT Audio	Switch to Bluetooth Audio mode
Change to CD	Switch to CD mode
Change to USB	Switch to USB mode
Change to iPod	Switch to iPod mode
Change to AUX	Switch to AUX mode

▼ Commands for Hands Free

Voice command	Function
Dial Number → <0-9, +, *, #> → Change number, Dial	Places a call to the said phone number
Dial <0-9, +, *, #> → Change number, Dial	
Contacts, Phonebook → <Name> → <1-5> → Dial	Make a call by using the phonebook
Call <Name> → <1-5> → Dial	
Call History → Incoming call, Outgoing call → Next (page), Previous (page) → <1-5> → Dial	Make a call by using the call history
Incoming Calls	Display the call history screen
Outgoing Calls	Display the call history screen
Redial	Places a call to the phone number of the latest outgoing call
Callback	Places a call to the phone number of the latest incoming call
Select Phone → <1-5>	Display the phone select screen
Phone Menu	Display the hands free top screen

– CONTINUED –

▼ Commands for AM/FM control

Voice command	Function
Seek Up	Tunes in the higher frequency direction
Seek Down	Tunes in the lower frequency direction
Scan	Switch to the scan mode
Tune to <Frequency>	Designate the frequency to switch to a specific radio station
Preset <preset number>	Designate the preset channel to switch to specific radio station

▼ Commands for CD control

Voice command	Function
Track Up	Select the next track
Track Down	Select the current track
Scan	Switch to the scan mode
Repeat → 1 Track Repeat, Repeat All	Select a repeat mode
1 Track Repeat	Repeat single track
Repeat All	Repeat all tracks
Shuffle	Plays randomly

▼ Commands for MP3/WMA/AAC, USB control

Voice command	Function
Track Up	Select the next track
Track Down	Select the current track
Folder Up	Plays from the start of the next folder
Folder Down	Plays from the start of the previous folder
Scan	Switch to the scan mode
Repeat → 1 Track Repeat, Repeat Folder, Repeat All	Select a repeat mode
1 Track Repeat	Repeat single track
Repeat Folder	Repeat of the folder
Repeat All	Repeat all tracks
Shuffle → Shuffle Folder, Shuffle All	Select a random play mode
Shuffle Folder	Plays randomly of the folder
Shuffle All	Plays randomly

▼ Commands for iPod Control

Voice command	Function
Track Up	Select the next track
Track Down	Select the current track
Repeat → Repeat One, Repeat All	Select a repeat mode
Repeat One	Repeat single track
Repeat All	Repeat all tracks
Shuffle → Shuffle Track, Shuffle Album, Shuffle OFF	Select a random play mode
Shuffle Track	Shuffle all tracks
Shuffle Album	Shuffle all tracks
Shuffle OFF	Turn off shuffle

▼ **Commands for Bluetooth audio control**

Voice command	Function
Pause	Pause play
Track Up	Select the next track
Track Down	Select the current track
Repeat → 1 track Repeat, Repeat All, Group Repeat	Select a repeat mode
1 Track Repeat	Repeat single track
Repeat All	Repeat all tracks
Group Repeat	Repeat tracks on group
Shuffle → Shuffle All, Group Shuffle, Shuffle OFF	Select a random play mode
Shuffle All	Shuffle all tracks
Group Shuffle	Shuffle tracks on group
Shuffle OFF	Turn off shuffle

Appendix

■ Certification

- **Bluetooth**

The Bluetooth word mark and logo are registered trademarks of Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Clarion Co., Ltd. is under license.

- **iPod**

“Made for iPod” and “Made for iPhone” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance.

iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod touch, and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

- **How to get the source code using the open source**

This system implements software using the open source. For customers who would like to get the source code of the software, it is available by downloading it from the web site of Clarion Co., Ltd.

For details, refer to the following web site.

For Europe:

http://www.clarion.com/xe/en/open-source/index.html

For Australia:

http://www.clarion.com/au/en/open-source/index.html

For South America:

http://www.clarion.com/xl/en/open-source/index.html

For Asia:

http://www.clarion.com/my/en/open-source/index.html

■ Certification for UAE models

PF-3738
TRA
REGISTERED No: ER0133354/14
DEALER No: DA0054309/10

– CONTINUED –

■ Certification for Paraguay models

Record Number: 2014-08-I-000219

Manufacturer: Clarion Co., Ltd.

Paraguay Distributor:

Tokyo Motors S.A.

Avda. Eusebio Ayala 4649 kg 5 1/2 Asuncion, Paraguay

■ Certification for MAROC models

PF-3680

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément: MR 9314 ANRT 2014

Date d'agrément: 28/05/2014

■ Certification for Russia and Kazakhstan models

"Uniservis" Ltd.

1st Vladimirovskaya street, building 20A, 1st floor, premises 1, room 17, Moscow 111123, Russia. OGRN 5107746076873.

ООО «Юнисервис»

Россия, 111123, г. Москва, ул. 1-ая Владимировска, д. 20А, этаж 1 пом. 1, комн. 17, ОГРН 5107746076873.

■ Certification for Europe models for Declaration of Conformity

Refer to "Bluetooth® module" ☞13-18.

CE

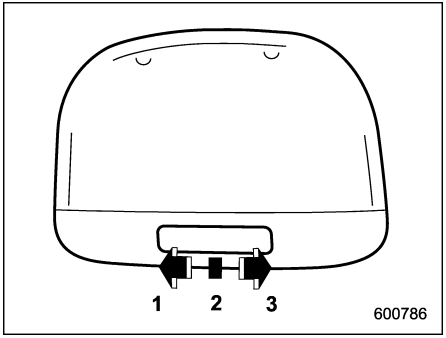
Interior light 6-2
Dome light 6-2
Map lights 6-2
OFF delay timer 6-3
Sun visors 6-3
Vanity mirror with light 6-3
Storage compartment 6-4
Glove box 6-4
Center console 6-4
Cup holders 6-5
Front passenger's cup holder 6-5
Rear passenger's cup holder 6-6
Bottle holders 6-7
Accessory power outlets 6-7
Cigarette lighter (if equipped) 6-8
USB power supply 6-9
Ashtray (if equipped) 6-10
Floor mat (if equipped) 6-11
Coat hook 6-11
Under-floor storage compartment 6-12
Rear view camera (if equipped) 6-13
How to use the rear view camera 6-14
Viewing range on the screen 6-14
Help line 6-15
Front View Monitor (if equipped)/Side View Monitor (if equipped) 6-17
How to bring up the Front View Monitor/Side View Monitor 6-19
How to cancel the Front View Monitor (models without Side View Monitor) 6-19
How to cancel the Front View Monitor and Side View Monitor (models with Front View Monitor and Side View Monitor) 6-20
Range of image on screen 6-20
Guiding lines 6-22
Handling of camera 6-22

Interior light

⚠ CAUTION

When leaving your vehicle, make sure the lights are turned off to avoid battery discharge.

■ Dome light



1) ON
2) DOOR
3) OFF

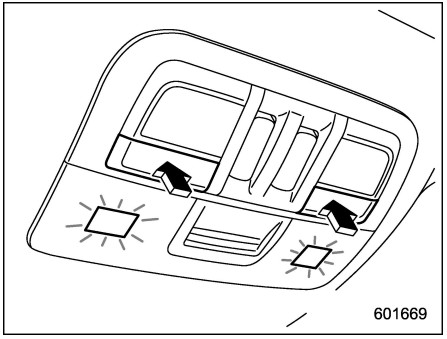
The dome light switch has the following positions.

ON: The light remains on continuously.
OFF: The light remains off.

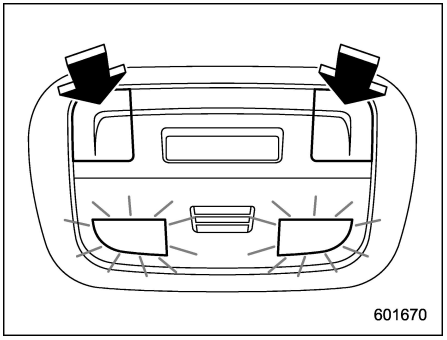
DOOR: The dome light illuminates automatically after any of the following operations.

- Opening any of the doors.
- Unlocking the doors using the keyless access function (if equipped). Refer to "Locking and unlocking by holding the access key fob" ☞2-12.
- Unlocking the doors using the remote keyless entry system. Refer to "Remote keyless entry system" ☞2-19.
- Turning the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.

■ Map lights



Type A



Type B

To turn on the map light, push the switch.
To turn it off, push the switch again.

▼ Automatic illumination (type A map lights)

The map lights illuminate automatically after any of the following operations.

- Opening any of the doors.
- Unlocking the doors using the keyless access function (if equipped). Refer to "Locking and unlocking by holding the access key fob" ☞2-12.
- Unlocking the doors using the remote keyless entry system. Refer to "Remote keyless entry system" ☞2-19.
- Turning the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.

■ OFF delay timer

The following lights have an automatic illumination function.

- dome light (when the dome light switch is in the “DOOR” position)
- map light (type A)

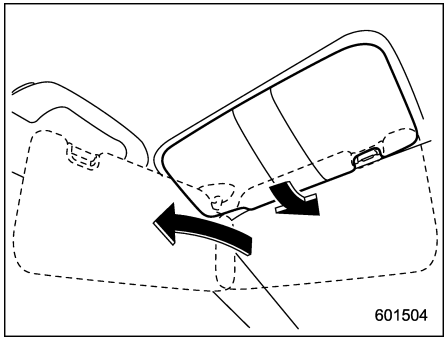
After being illuminated automatically, these lights remain on for several seconds and then gradually turn off after closing all the doors.

While the lights are illuminated, the lights turn off immediately after any of the following operation.

- Turning the ignition switch from the “LOCK”/“OFF” position to the “ACC” or “ON” position.
- Locking all doors using the keyless access function (if equipped).
- Locking all doors using the remote keyless entry system.

The setting for the period of time in which the lights remain on (OFF delay timer) can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details. Also, you can change the setting by operating the multi-function display. For details, refer to “Interior light setting” ☞3-61.

Sun visors



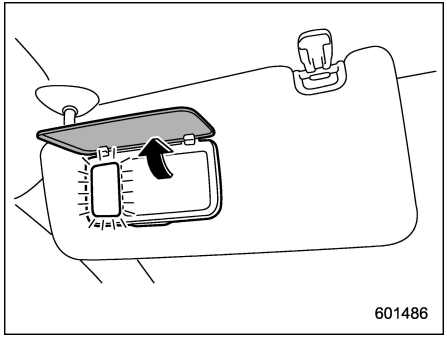
To block out glare, swing down the visors.

To use the sun visor at a side window, swing it down and move it sideways.

■ Vanity mirror with light

⚠ CAUTION

Keep the vanity mirror cover closed while the vehicle is being driven to avoid being blinded by glare.



To use the vanity mirror, swing down the sun visor and open the vanity mirror cover.

The light beside the vanity mirror illuminates when the mirror cover is opened.

NOTE

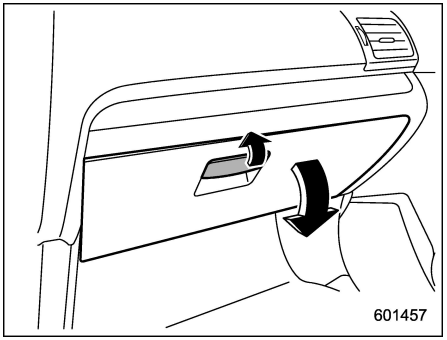
Do not use the vanity mirror light for a long period of time while the engine is not running. Doing so can cause battery discharge.

Storage compartment

⚠ CAUTION

- **Always keep the storage compartment closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden stops or an accident.**
- **Do not store spray cans, containers with flammable or corrosive liquids or any other dangerous items in the storage compartment.**

■ Glove box



To open the glove box, pull the handle. To close it, push the lid firmly upward.

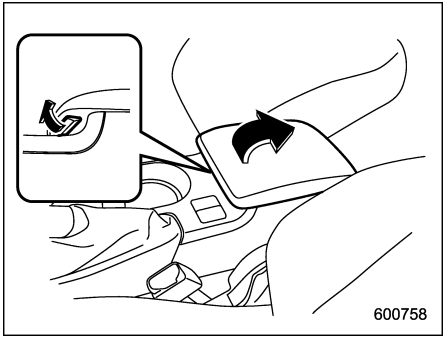
Models with key cylinder on the glove box handle:

To lock the glove box, insert the key and turn it clockwise. To unlock the glove box, insert the key and turn it counterclockwise.

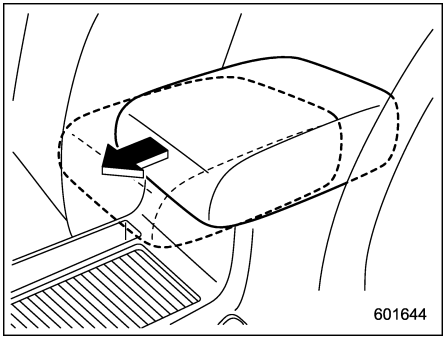
NOTE

- **For models with the "keyless access with push-button start system", use the emergency key to lock or unlock the glove box.**
- **The emergency key is directional. If the key cannot be inserted, change the direction that the grooved side is facing and insert it again.**

■ Center console



To open the lid, pull up the lock release.



For models with the EyeSight system, the armrest is adjustable. Slide the armrest to the desired position.

Cup holders

⚠ CAUTION

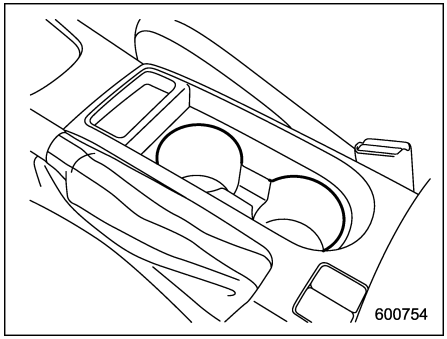
Take care to avoid spills. Beverages, if hot, might burn you and/or your passengers. Spilled beverages may also damage upholstery, carpets or audio equipment.

■ Front passenger's cup holder

⚠ CAUTION

Do not pick up a cup from the cup holder or put a cup in the holder while driving. Doing so may distract you and lead to an accident.

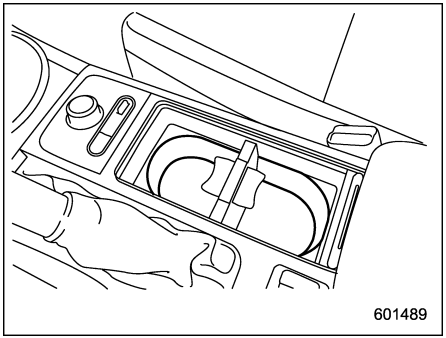
▼ Type A



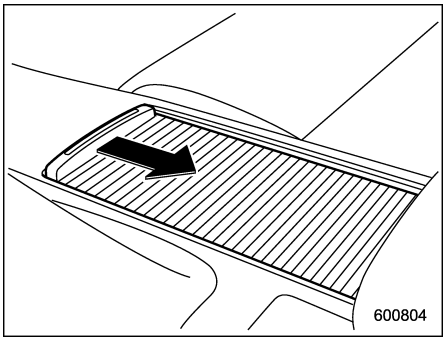
Two cup holders are built into the center console, beside the parking brake lever.

– CONTINUED –

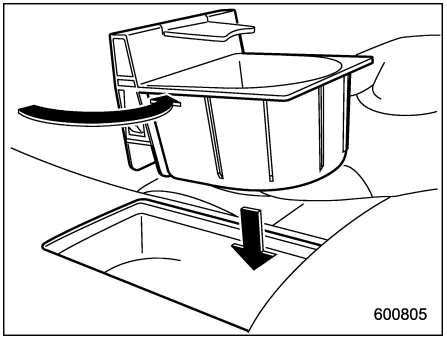
▼ **Type B**



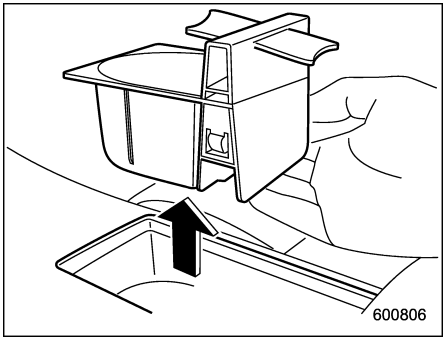
The dual cup holder is built into the center console.



To access the cup holder, pull the lid toward the rear.



You can pull out the divider in the cup holder and insert it in a different position (further toward the front or rear) to enable cups of different sizes to be held.



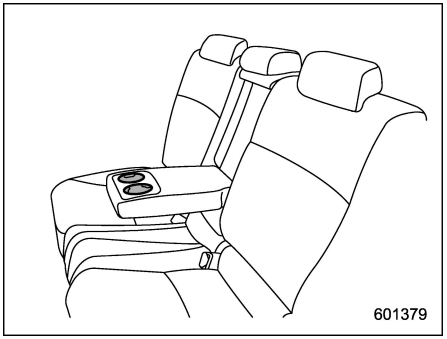
NOTE

With the divider taken out, you can use the cup holder as a storage box.

■ Rear passenger's cup holder

⚠ CAUTION

When a cup in the rear passenger's cup holder contains a beverage, do not fold down the rear seatback. Otherwise, the beverage could spill and, if the beverage is hot, it could burn you and/or your passengers.

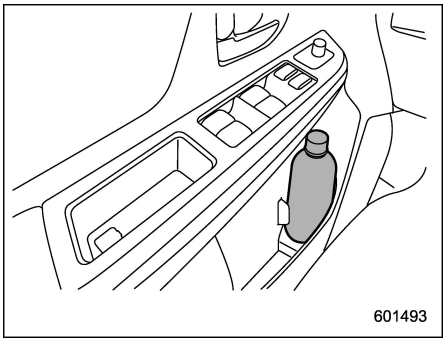


A dual cup holder is built into the armrest.

Bottle holders

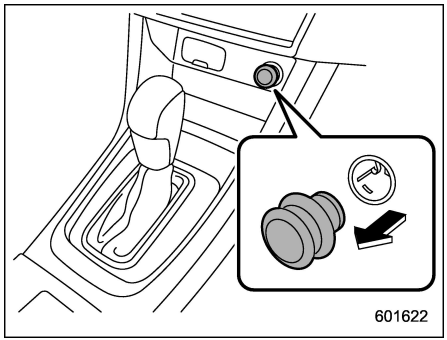
CAUTION

- **Do not pick up a bottle from the bottle holder or put a bottle in the holder while driving. Doing so can distract you and lead to an accident.**
- **When placing a beverage in a bottle holder, make sure it is capped. Otherwise, the beverage could spill when opening/closing the door or while driving and, if the beverage is hot, it could burn you and/or your passengers.**

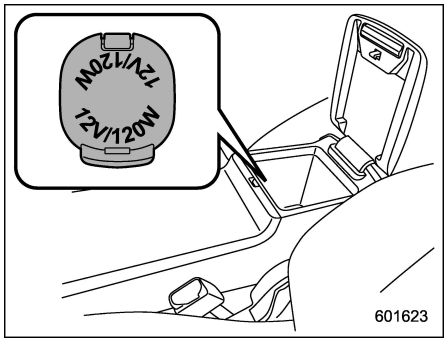


The bottle holder is equipped on each door trim. Use the bottle holders to hold beverage bottles and other items.

Accessory power outlets



Power outlet below the climate control dials



Power outlet in the center console

Accessory power outlets are provided

– CONTINUED –

below the climate control dials and in the center console. Electrical power (12V DC) from the battery is available at any of the outlets when the ignition switch is in either the “ACC” or “ON” position.

You can use an in-vehicle electrical appliance by connecting it to an outlet.

The maximum power rating of an appliance that can be connected is **120W**. Do not use an appliance which exceeds the indicated wattage for each outlet.

When using appliances connected to two outlets simultaneously, the total power consumed by them must not exceed 120W.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not attempt to use a cigarette lighter in the accessory power outlets.**
- **Do not place any foreign objects, especially metal ones such as coins or aluminum foil, into the accessory power outlet. That could cause a short circuit. Always put the cap on the accessory power outlet when it is not in use.**
- **Use only electrical appliances which are designed for 12V DC.**

  The maximum power rating of an appliance that can be connected is 120W. Do not use an appliance which exceeds the indicated wattage for each outlet.

  When using appliances connected to two outlets simultaneously, the total power consumed by them must not exceed 120W. Overloading the accessory power outlet can cause a short circuit. Do not use double adapters or more than one electrical appliance.
- **If the plug on your electric appliance is either too loose or too tight for the accessory power outlet, this can result in poor contact or cause the plug to get stuck. Only use plugs that fit properly.**
- **Use of an electric appliance in the accessory power outlet for a long period of time while the engine is not running can cause battery discharge.**
- **Before driving your vehicle, make sure that the plug and the cord on your electrical appliance will not interfere with your shifting gears and operating the accelerator and brake pedals. If they do, do not use the electrical appliance while driving.**

■ Cigarette lighter (if equipped)

A cigarette lighter may be installed in place of an accessory power outlet. The cigarette lighter assembly is available from your SUBARU dealer.

The cigarette lighter operates only when the ignition switch is in the “ON” or “ACC” position.

To use the cigarette lighter, push in the knob and wait a few moments. It will automatically spring up when ready for use.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid being burned, never grasp the lighter by the end with the heating element. Doing so could result in injury and could also damage the heating element.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not hold the lighter pushed in, because it will overheat.**
- **Do not use non-genuine cigarette lighter plugs in the socket. Doing so may cause a short-circuit and overheating, resulting in a fire.**
- **If the socket is ever used for a plug-in accessory such as a cell phone, that may damage the portion of the socket's internal mechanism that causes a cigarette lighter plug to "pop out" after its lighter element is heated. Therefore, do not place a cigarette lighter plug in a socket that has been used, even once, to power a plug-in accessory. Doing so may cause the plug to stick and overheat, creating a potential fire hazard.**

USB power supply

⚠ CAUTION

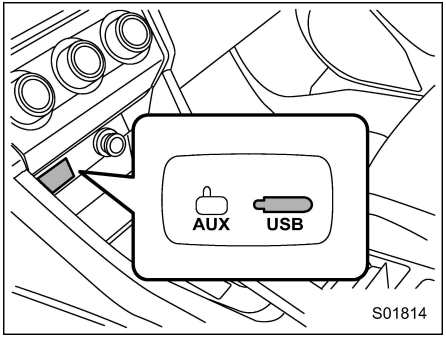
- **The specification of a USB terminal that can be used is the A-type. If a different specification of terminal is connected, power supply or charging may not be possible, or the device may malfunction.**
- **There is no guarantee even when a connected device malfunctions or data is damaged. The connection of a device shall be performed at your responsibility.**
- **To avoid an electric shock or a malfunction, observe the following precautions.**
  - **– Do not connect a USB hub.**
  - **– Do not insert any metal or other foreign object into the USB terminal.**
  - **– Do not spill water or other liquid on the USB terminal.**
- **When you have connected a cable, pay attention not to pull on the connected cable with your legs. Otherwise, it may result in injury to you by falling over, or a malfunction of the connected device.**
- **If a device is connected for a long time when the engine is not running, doing so may cause the risk of a discharged battery. Even when the engine is running, we recommend that you do not connect a device for an unnecessarily long time.**
- **Do not connect a malfunctioning device. Doing so may cause the risk of smoke and fire.**

NOTE

• The USB power supply is designed to supply a maximum rated power of 5.25V/1A. Before connecting a device, be sure to read the instruction manual of the device and check whether or not this specification of the output is supported by the device. If a device that requires power exceeding the maximum rating is connected, power supply or charging may not be possible. Even if charging could be completed, the time required for charging may be longer than when the genuine charger for that device is used.

– CONTINUED –

• Depending on the device, charging may be possible only when a special cable is used. In this case, be sure to connect the device using the special cable.
• When a device that communicates with a PC is connected, power supply or charging may not be possible.
• When connect a device for charging, disconnect the device promptly after charging is completed.



Front seat USB power supply (You can connect and use an audio device)

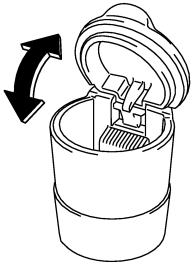
When the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position and a USB electronic device is connected to the USB terminal, 5V DC power can be supplied to the device. Use the USB terminal to use or charge an electronic device.

Ashtray (if equipped)

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions. Failure to observe these precautions could result in a fire.

- **Always extinguish matches and cigarettes before putting them into the ashtray, and then close the ashtray securely.**
- **Do not put flammable material in the ashtray.**
- **Do not leave a lighted cigarette in the ashtray.**
- **Do not leave a lot of cigarette butts in the ashtray.**



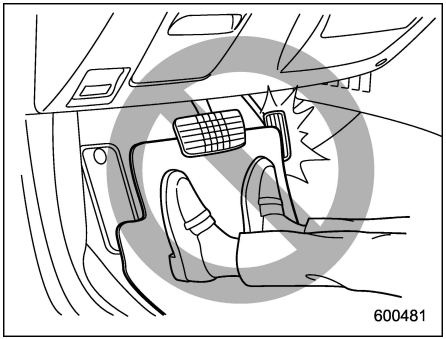
You can install the portable ashtray in each cup holder or bottle holder. For the locations of the cup holders, refer to “Cup holders” ☞6-5. For the locations of the bottle holders, refer to “Bottle holders” ☞6-7.

When using the ashtray, open the lid of the ashtray. Fully close the lid after using the ashtray to help reduce residual smoke.

NOTE

Particles of ash and tobacco will accumulate around the hinges of the ashtray’s inner lid. Clean them off using a toothbrush or another narrow-ended implement.

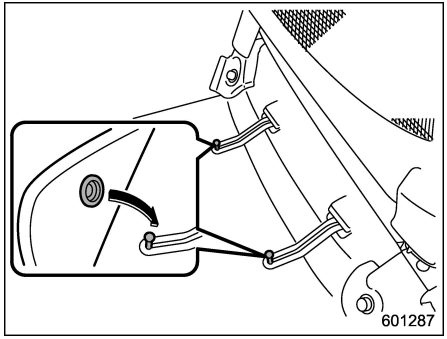
Floor mat (if equipped)



⚠ CAUTION

If the floor mat slips forward and interferes with the movement of the pedals while driving, it could cause an accident. Observe the following precautions to prevent the floor mat from slipping forward.

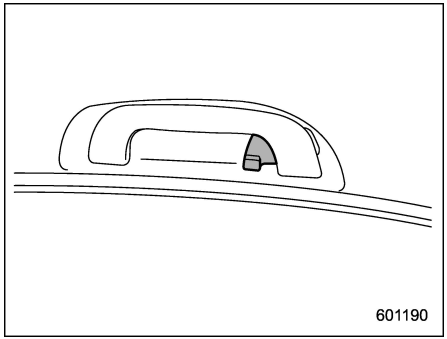
- **Be sure to use a genuine SUBARU floor mat or an equivalent designed with grommets in the correct locations.**
- **Make sure that the driver's floor mat is placed in its proper location and is correctly secured on its retaining pins.**
- **Do not use more than one floor mat.**



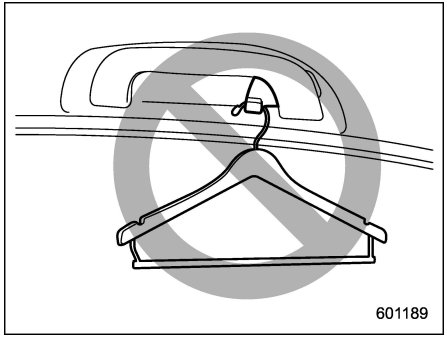
Retaining pins are located on the driver's side floor.

Properly secure the driver's floor mat using the built-in grommets, by placing the grommets over the pins and pushing them downward.

Coat hook



A coat hook is attached to the rear passenger's hand grip.



– CONTINUED –

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following instructions.

- **Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or pointed objects on the coat hooks. Hang clothing directly on the coat hooks without using hangers.**
- **Before hanging clothing on the coat hooks, make sure there are no pointed objects in the pockets.**

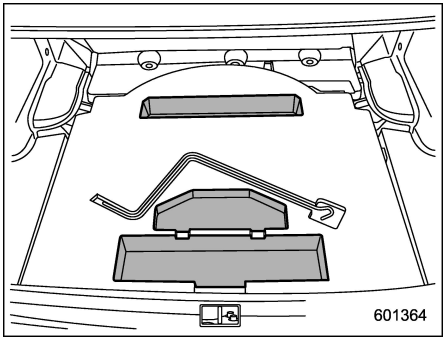
If these instructions are ignored, the following may occur in sudden stops or in a collision, causing serious injuries.

- **Items may be thrown through the cabin.**
- **SRS curtain airbags may be prevented from deploying properly.**

⚠ CAUTION

Never hang anything on the coat hook that might obstruct the driver's view or that could cause injury in sudden stops or in a collision. Also, do not hang items on the coat hook that weigh 5 kg (11 lbs) or more.

Under-floor storage compartment



The storage compartment is located under the floor of the trunk and can be used to store small items. Pull the strap to open the trunk floor lid, and then remove the lid.

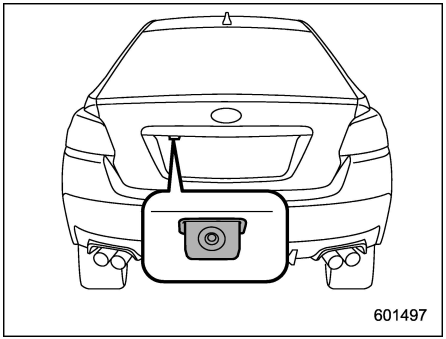
NOTE

- **The shape of the storage compartment may be different depending on the model.**
- **When storing a flat tire, put the storage tray in the trunk.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **Always keep the lid of the storage compartment closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden stop or an accident.**
- **Do not store spray cans, containers with flammable or corrosive liquids or any other dangerous items in the storage compartment.**

Rear view camera (if equipped)



A rear view camera is attached to the trunk lid. When the ignition switch is “ON” and the shift lever (MT models) or select lever (CVT models) is set to “R”, the rear view camera automatically displays the rear view image behind the vehicle on the monitor of the navigation system or the audio display.

⚠ WARNING

- **Since the rear view camera uses a wide-angle lens, the image on the monitor is different from the actual view in terms of distance.**
- **Since the range of the image on the monitor is limited, you should always check the rear view and the surrounding area with your eyes and mirrors, and move backward at a slow speed. Moving backward only by checking the rear view image from the camera could cause an accident.**
- **Do not disassemble or modify the camera, switch or wiring. If smoke comes out or you smell a strange odor, stop using the rear view camera immediately. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection. Continued use may result in accident, fire or electric shock.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **If your vehicle is washed with a high-pressure washer, do not allow water to contact the camera directly. Entry of water into the camera lens may result in condensation, malfunction, fire or electric shock.**
- **Since the camera is a precision device, do not subject it to strong impacts. Otherwise, malfunction, fire or electric shock may occur.**
- **If mud or snow sticks to or is frozen on the camera, you must be very careful when removing it. Otherwise, damage to the camera may cause a fire or electric shock. Pour water or lukewarm water over the camera to remove mud and ice, and wipe it with a soft, dry cloth.**
- **Do not put a flame close to the camera or wiring. Otherwise, damage or fire may occur.**
- **When replacing the fuse, be sure to use a fuse with the specified rating. Use of a fuse with a different rating may result in a malfunction.**
- **If the rear view camera is used for a long time while the engine is not operated, the battery may become completely discharged.**

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

• Do not wipe the camera with alcohol, benzine or paint thinner. Otherwise, discoloration may occur. To remove contamination, wipe the camera with a cloth moistened with a diluted neutral detergent and then wipe it with a soft, dry cloth.

• When waxing the vehicle, be careful not to apply the wax to the camera. If it comes in contact with the camera, moisten a clean cloth with a diluted neutral detergent to remove the wax.

• The camera lens has hard coating to help prevent scratches. However, when washing the vehicle or cleaning the camera lens, be careful not to scratch the camera lens. Do not use a washing brush directly on the camera lens. The image quality of the rear view camera may deteriorate.

• Strong light shined on the camera lens may develop vertical lines around the light source. This is not a malfunction.

• Under the fluorescent light, the display may flicker. However, this is not a malfunction.

• The image of the rear view camera may be slightly different from the actual color of the objects.

■ How to use the rear view camera

When the shift lever (MT models) or select lever (CVT models) is set to “R”, the rear view camera automatically displays the rear view image from the vehicle. When the lever is set to other positions, the image before setting to “R” is displayed.

1. Set the ignition switch to “ON”.
2. Set the shift lever (MT models) or select lever (CVT models) to “R”.

NOTE

• For models with the genuine SUBARU navigation system or audio system, the image of the rear view camera has priority over other screen displays. However, while the navigation system is activated, the image of the rear view camera is not displayed.

• The image of the rear view camera is horizontally reversed as is the case with the vehicle rear view mirror or the side view mirror.

• It may be difficult to see the image of the rear view camera in the following cases. This is not a malfunction of the camera.

– The vehicle is in a dark place (at night, in a tunnel, etc.).

– The vehicle is in an extremely hot or cold place.

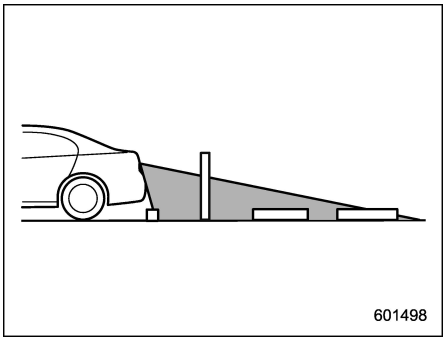
– An object (such as raindrops, snow, dirt, etc.) that disturbs the view of the rear view camera sticks to the lens of the camera.

– Strong light shined directly on the camera lens (occasionally, there are vertical lines on the screen).

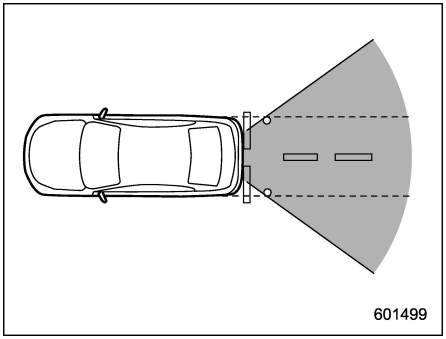
■ Viewing range on the screen

⚠ CAUTION

The range that can be viewed with the rear view camera is limited. Always be sure to check with your eyes when moving backward and proceed slowly.



Range of view



Range of view

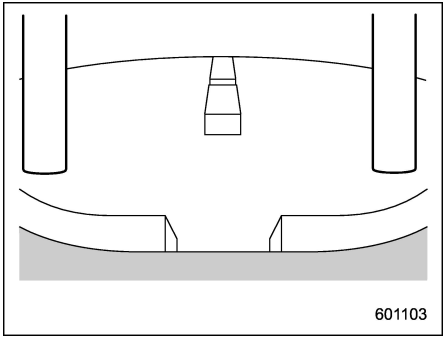
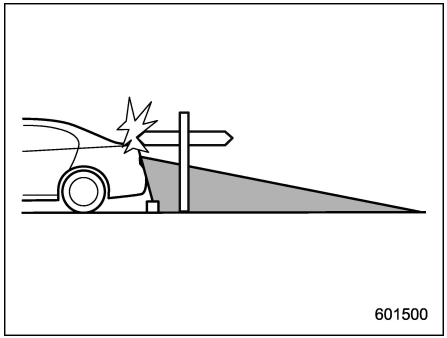


Image from camera

The area from the rear end of the bumper can be viewed. Areas at both ends of the bumper and areas just under the bumper cannot be viewed.

Also, the image from the rear view camera looks shorter than the actual distance.



Range of view

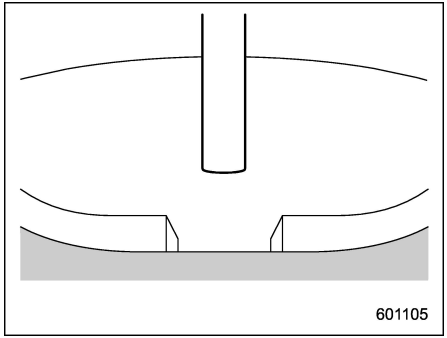
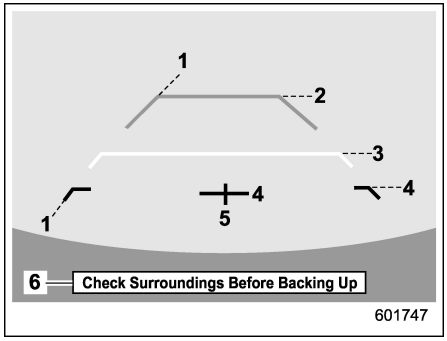


Image from camera

The area above the camera cannot be viewed. If there is an object that has a wide projection on its upper part such as a sign pole behind the vehicle, the projection cannot be seen on the screen.

■ Help line

The help line (distance marker and vehicle width line) is a guide to help you realize the actual distance from the screen image.



1) Vehicle width line (oblique vertical line)
2) Approx. 3 m (10 feet) from the bumper (green horizontal line)
3) Approx. 1 m (3 feet) from the bumper (yellow horizontal line)
4) Approx. 0.5 m (1.5 feet) from the bumper (red horizontal line)
5) Vehicle centerline
6) Warning message

– CONTINUED –

When the shift lever (MT models) or select lever (CVT models) is set to position “R”, the monitor screen displays the help lines together with the rear view image.

⚠ CAUTION

- **When moving backward, always check the back with your eyes without relying on the help lines.**
- **The actual position may be different from the indication of the help lines.**
- **Differences may occur due to number of passengers or loaded cargo.**
- **When the vehicle is on a slope or when the vehicle is inclined against the road, the indication is different from the actual position.**
- **Be sure to observe the displayed warning message.**

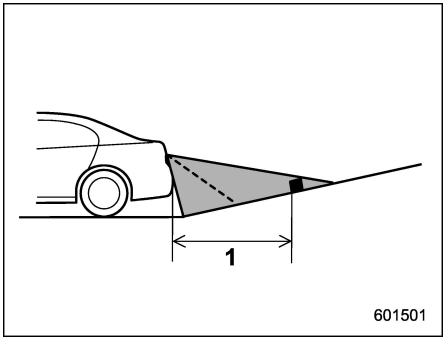
NOTE

If you shift to the “R” range within several seconds after turning on the ignition switch, the warning message may not be displayed. Wait for several seconds after turning on the ignition switch before shifting to the “R” range. The warning message will then be displayed.

▼ Difference between screen image and actual road

The distance markers show the distance for a level road when the vehicle is not loaded. It may be different from the actual distance depending on the loading conditions or road conditions.

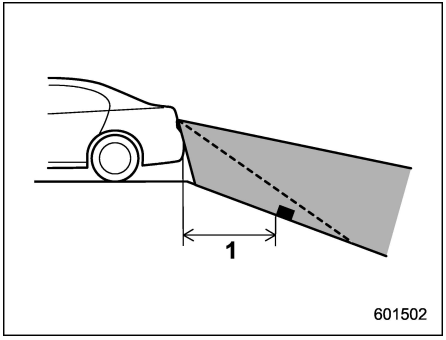
▽ When there is an upward slope at the back



1) 1 m (3 feet)

The distance on the screen looks farther than the actual distance.

▽ **When there is a downward slope at the back**



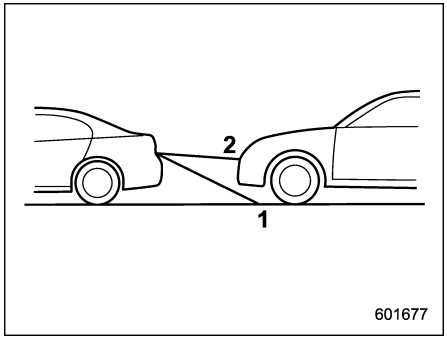
1) 1 m (3 feet)

The distance on the screen looks nearer than the actual distance.

NOTE

When cargo is loaded, the rear view distance on the screen looks farther than the actual distance as in an upward slope.

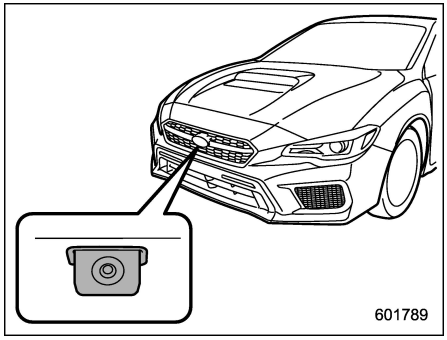
▼ **Feature of distance marker**



1) 1 m (3 feet) line
2) 3 m (10 feet) line

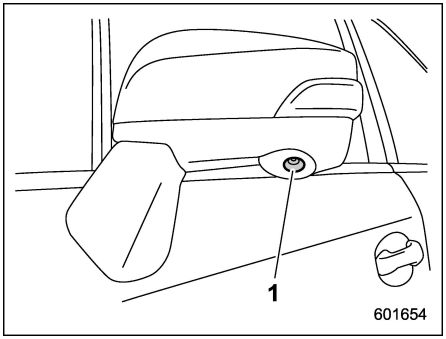
The distance marker shows the distance on the road. If there is a car or other object close behind, distance cannot be correctly displayed.

Front View Monitor (if equipped)/Side View Monitor (if equipped)



Front View Monitor camera

– CONTINUED –



Side View Monitor camera
1) Camera

The image of the camera mounted on the following locations is/are displayed in the multi-function display.

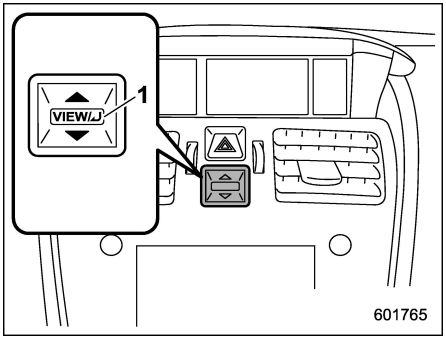
- Inside the front grille (Front View Monitor - if equipped)
- The bottom of the left outside mirror (Side View Monitor - if equipped)

This eliminates blind spots and allows the driver to check the forward direction of both sides (Front View Monitor)/front passenger's side (Side View Monitor).

⚠ WARNING

- **Always check the safety in the forward and right/left directions with your eyes while driving the vehicle.**
- **Due to the characteristic of the camera lens, the image of a person or object on the screen is different from the actual view in terms of position and distance.**
- **Do not place too much confidence in the Front View Monitor/ Side View Monitor system. Drive the vehicle carefully and as you would do with a vehicle without the Front View Monitor/Side View Monitor.**
- **Never rely on only the Front View Monitor/Side View Monitor when driving the vehicle. The image on the monitor screen may be different from the actual situation. If you drive the vehicle by viewing only the monitor image, a collision or an unexpected accident may occur. When driving the vehicle, always check the safety around the vehicle directly with your eyes and the mirrors.**
- **Do not use the Front View Monitor in the following situations.**
  - **– You are driving on a dirt road or a road covered in snow.**
  - **– The camera malfunctions (e.g. the lens or bracket is broken).**
- **Do not use the Side View Monitor in the following situations.**
  - **– The outside mirrors are retracted.**
  - **– The passenger side door is not fully closed.**
- **If the outside temperature is low, the monitor screen may become dark or the image may become dim. In particular, the image of a moving object may be distorted or disappear from the screen. You must always check the safety around the vehicle directly with your eyes when driving it.**

■ How to bring up the Front View Monitor/Side View Monitor



1) VIEW switch

When the ignition switch is in the “ON” position, perform the following operations to change over to the camera screen.

Models with Front View Monitor only:

- Press the VIEW switch.*1
- Shift the shift lever (MT models)/select lever (CVT models) to the “R” position, and then shift into the other position (for CVT models, except the “P” position) when the reverse interlock function is on.*2

*1: When the multi-function display shows screens other than the basic screen, it does not switch to the camera image.

*2: The reverse interlock function can be switched on or off. Refer to “Camera shift link setting” ☞3-58.

Models with both Front View Monitor and Side View Monitor:

- **When pressing the VIEW switch:**

One of the following 2 types of screen will be displayed that was shown last time when you turned off the ignition switch.

– The Front View Monitor only

– A split screen of both the Front View Monitor and the Side View Monitor

- **When shifting the select lever to the “R” position:**

The Side View Monitor screen will be displayed. Perform either of the following operations to display both the Front View Monitor and Side View Monitor.

– Press the VIEW switch.

– Shift the select lever to the “D” position.

■ How to cancel the Front View Monitor (models without Side View Monitor)

▼ Manual cancellation

Press the VIEW switch again.

▼ Automatic cancellation

If any of the following conditions are met, the Front View Monitor is canceled automatically.

After accessing the Front View Monitor by pressing the VIEW switch:

- The VIEW switch is pressed.
- Approximately 3 minutes have passed since the last operation.
- The vehicle speed becomes 20 km/h (12.5 mph) or more*.
- The select lever (CVT models) is shifted to the “P” position.
- The parking brake is applied.

*: The Front View Monitor can be activated when pressing the VIEW switch, regardless of the vehicle speed.

After accessing the Front View Monitor by using the shift lever/select lever:

- The select lever is shifted into the “P” position (CVT models)
- The Vehicle speed becomes 8 km/h (5 mph) or more*.

– CONTINUED –

- Approximately 9 seconds have passed since the last operation.
- The parking brake is applied.

*: When the Front View Monitor is activated at speeds of more than 20 km/h (12.5 mph), to cancel the Front View Monitor, the vehicle speed needs to be decreased to less than 20 km/h (12.5 mph) and then increased to more than 20 km/h (12.5 mph).

■ How to cancel the Front View Monitor and Side View Monitor (models with Front View Monitor and Side View Monitor)

▼ Manual cancellation

Press the VIEW switch.

▼ Automatic cancellation

If any of the following conditions are met, the Front View Monitor and the Side View Monitor will be canceled automatically.

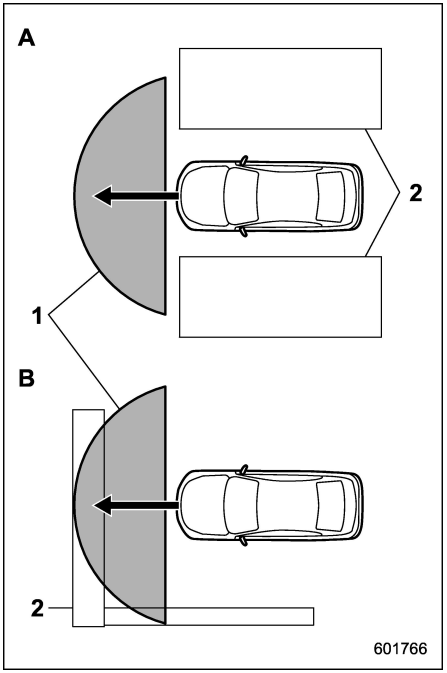
After accessing the Front View Monitor/ Side View Monitor by pressing the VIEW switch:

- The VIEW switch is pressed once or twice.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The select lever is shifted into the “P” position.
- The vehicle speed becomes 20 km/h (12.5 mph) or more.
- Approximately 3 minutes have passed since the last operation.

After accessing the Front View Monitor/ Side View Monitor by using the shift lever/select lever:

- The parking brake is applied.
- The select lever is shifted into the “P” position (CVT models)
- The vehicle speed becomes 8 km/h (5 mph) or more*.
- Approximately 9 seconds have passed since the last operation.

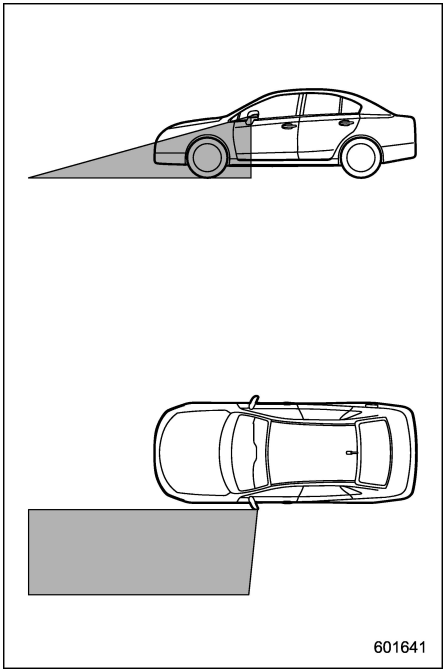
■ Range of image on screen



Range of displayed image (Front View Monitor)

A) Traffic intersection with a poor visibility view
B) Parking facing a wall
1) Range of displayed image

2) Obstacles (e.g., buildings, fences or other vehicles)



Range of displayed image (Side View Monitor)

⚠ WARNING

Because the range of the image captured by the camera is limited, always check the safety around the vehicle directly with your eyes when driving the vehicle.

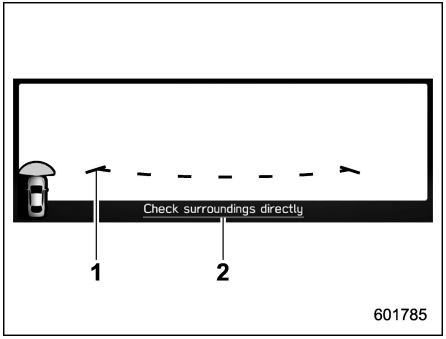
NOTE

- **The range of the displayed image may differ depending on the vehicle status or the road surface status.**
- **Because the Front View Monitor/ Side View Monitor system uses a specially designed lens, the sense of distance in the displayed image is different from the actual distance.**
- **The camera image may be difficult to view in the following situations. This is not a malfunction.**
  - **– Dark place (at night)**
  - **– High or low temperature around the lens**
  - **– Water contacts lens or in high humidity (rainy weather)**
  - **– There is foreign materials (such as mud) around the camera**
  - **– Sunlight or headlight beam directly shines towards the camera lens**
- **Under an artificial light such as a fluorescent lamp, sodium-vapor lamp or mercury lamp, the lighted portion may look like it is flickering (flicker phenomenon).**
- **While the display has cooled down, the image may leave traces or become darker than usual, causing a difficulty in viewing the screen. Always check the safety around the vehicle directly with your eyes while driving the vehicle.**
- **The following incidents should not be deemed a malfunction.**
  - **– The camera lens may become foggy when the humidity is high on a rainy day.**
  - **– The light from a vehicle or building located ahead may be reflected towards the camera image while driving at night.**
  - **– In a dark place or while driving at night, the camera image may be adjusted to make noises less visible. Therefore, the image may look like a monochromatic image or the image colors may differ from the actual colors. The camera image may be deteriorated in regard to sharpness at the center and four corners of the screen. This is not a malfunction.**

– CONTINUED –

■ Guiding lines

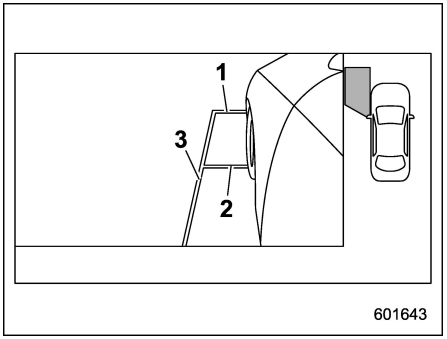
▼ Front View Monitor (if equipped)



1) Guiding line
2) Warning message

The guiding line that indicates the width and the front end of your vehicle is displayed on the display.

▼ Side View Monitor (if equipped)



1) The front-of-vehicle line
2) The center-of-front-tire line
3) The side-of-vehicle line

Guiding lines that indicate the width and the front end of the vehicle are displayed on the monitor.

- The front-of-vehicle line:

The line shows the front part of the vehicle.

- The center-of-front-tire line:

The line indicates the center of the front tire.

- The side-of-vehicle line:

The line shows the vehicle width including the outside mirrors.

NOTE

The turn signal light may overlap with the side-of-vehicle line. This is not a malfunction.

■ Handling of camera

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following instructions. Otherwise, the system may malfunction.

- **Do not apply any strong impact to the camera such as banging it or hitting it with an object. The mounting angle may change.**
- **The camera unit is a waterproof structure. Do not attempt to remove, disassemble or modify the unit.**
- **Do not rub strongly or polish the camera lens with a hard brush or abrasive compounds. The lens may be scratched resulting in an adverse effect to the camera image.**

- The camera lens is made of glass or plastic. Do not allow any organic solvent, body wax, oil film remover or glass coating agent to become attached on the lens surface. If any becomes attached, remove it immediately.
- Do not expose the camera lens to any sudden temperature change, for example, spraying hot water on it in cold weather.
- Do not apply the water jet of a high pressure washer to the camera or the surrounding area when cleaning the vehicle. The impact by the strong water pressure may cause the camera to come off. Also, water may enter inside the camera and cause a malfunction.
- If the camera is exposed to any impact, it may lead to malfunction of the camera. We recommend that you have the camera inspected by your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.
- Do not use a steam cleaner under any circumstances. Some types of steam cleaners inject hot steam.
- The camera surface may be damaged by a flying stone.

NOTE

If the camera lens is contaminated, no sharp image is available. When the camera is contaminated with water drops, snow or mud, wash it with water and wipe away any moisture with a soft cloth. If it heavily gets dirty, wash it with a neutral detergent.

Fuel 7-3
Fuel requirements 7-3
Fuel filler lid and cap 7-3
Preparing to drive 7-6
Starting and stopping engine 7-7
General precautions when starting/stopping engine 7-7
Models without push-button start system 7-7
Models with push-button start system 7-9
Manual transmission 7-12
Shifting speeds 7-13
Driving tips 7-14
Driver's Control Center Differential (C.DIFF/DCCD) (STI) 7-15
To change mode of driver's control center differential 7-16
Auto mode 7-16
Manual mode 7-17
Temporary release 7-19
Continuously variable transmission 7-19
Select lever 7-20
Selection of manual mode 7-22
Shift lock function 7-24
Driving tips 7-25
SI-DRIVE (if equipped) 7-26
Intelligent (I) mode 7-26
Sport (S) mode 7-26
Sport Sharp (S#) mode 7-27
SI-DRIVE switch 7-27
Limited slip differential (LSD) (if equipped) 7-28
Power steering 7-29
STI 7-29
Except STI 7-29
Braking 7-30
Braking tips 7-30
Brake system 7-30
Disc brake pad wear warning indicators 7-32
High performance brake system (STI) 7-32
Red caliper with sports brake pad (if equipped) 7-32
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 7-33
ABS system self-check 7-33
ABS warning light 7-33
Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system 7-34
Steps to take if EBD system fails 7-34
Vehicle Dynamics Control system 7-35
Vehicle Dynamics Control system monitor 7-37
Vehicle Dynamics Control mode switch 7-37
Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (if equipped) 7-39
TPMS mode setting 7-40
Parking your vehicle 7-41
Parking brake (models without electronic parking brake system) 7-42
Electronic parking brake (if equipped) 7-42
Parking tips 7-48
Hill start assist system (models without electronic parking brake system) 7-48
To activate/deactivate the Hill start assist system 7-50

Hill start assist warning light/Hill start assist OFF indicator light 7-52
Cruise control 7-52
To set cruise control 7-52
To temporarily cancel the cruise control 7-53
To turn off the cruise control 7-54
To change the cruising speed 7-54
Cruise control indicator 7-55
Cruise control set indicator 7-55
Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD) (if equipped) 7-55
System features 7-56
System operation 7-58
SRVD approach indicator light/warning buzzer 7-60
SRVD warning indicator 7-61
SRVD OFF switch 7-62
Handling of radar sensors 7-63

Fuel

■ Fuel requirements

⚠ CAUTION

- **Use of a fuel which is low in quality or use of an inappropriate fuel additive may cause damage to the engine and/or fuel system.**
- **Do not let fuel spill on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Because fuel may damage the paint, be sure to wipe off any spilled fuel quickly. Paint damage caused by spilled fuel is not covered under the SUBARU Limited Warranty.**
- **The neck of the fuel filler pipe is designed to accept only an unleaded petrol filler nozzle. Under no circumstances should leaded petrol be used because it will damage the emission control system and may impair driveability and fuel economy. Also, this can increase maintenance costs.**

▼ Fuel types

Unleaded petrol only

▼ Required Research Octane Number (RON)

▽ STI

Your engine is designed to provide satisfactory performance by using **98 or higher**.

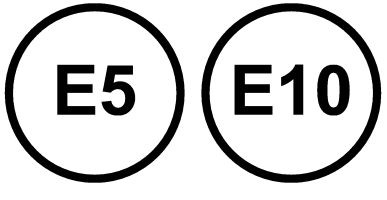
Use of petrol lower than 98 will detract from engine performance and driveability.

▽ Except STI

95 or higher

▼ Use of ethanol blended petrol

▽ For Europe



When you find these types of fuel labels at the petrol station, use only the fuel with one of the above labels.

SUBARU allows the use of ethanol blended petrol if the ethanol content is up to 10%.

Make sure that the ethanol blended petrol to be used has a Research Octane Number that is adequate.

▽ For others

SUBARU allows the use of ethanol blended petrol if the ethanol content is up to 10%.

Make sure that the ethanol blended petrol to be used has a Research Octane Number that is adequate.

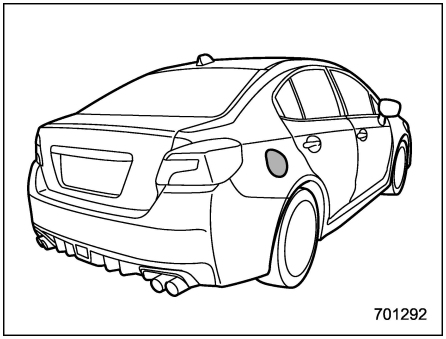
■ Fuel filler lid and cap

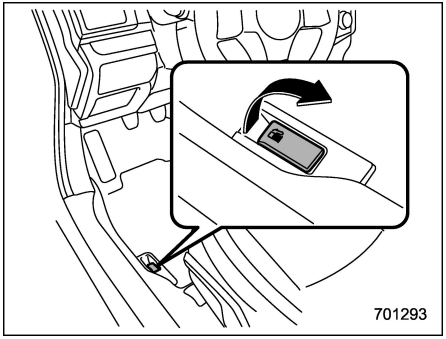
▼ Refueling

Only one person should be involved in refueling. Do not allow others to approach the area of the vehicle near the fuel filler pipe while refueling is in progress.

Be sure to observe any other precautions that are posted at the service station.

– CONTINUED –



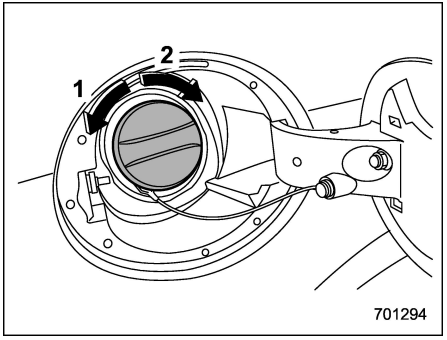


Fuel lid release lever

1. To open the fuel filler lid, pull the lid release lever up. The lever is on the floor of the driver's seat.

⚠ WARNING

Before opening the fuel filler cap, first touch the vehicle body or a metal portion of the fuel pump or similar object to discharge any static electricity that may be present on your body. If your body is carrying an electrostatic charge, there is a possibility that an electric spark could ignite the fuel, which could burn you. To avoid acquiring a new static electric charge, do not get back into the vehicle while refueling is in progress.

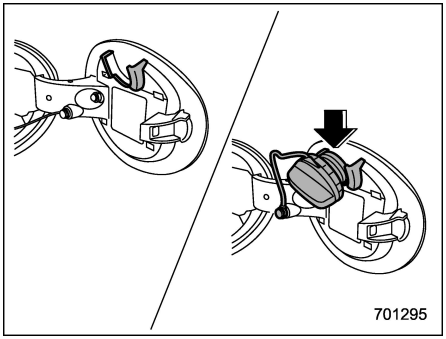


1) Open
2) Close

2. Remove the fuel filler cap by turning it slowly counterclockwise.

⚠ WARNING

- **Fuel vapor is highly flammable. Before refueling, always first stop the engine and close all vehicle doors and windows. Make sure that there are no lighted cigarettes, open flames or electrical sparks in the adjacent area. Only handle fuel outdoors. Quickly wipe up any spilled fuel.**
- **When opening the cap, grasp it firmly and turn it slowly counterclockwise. Do not remove the cap quickly. Fuel may be under pressure and spray out of the fuel filler neck, especially in hot weather. If you hear a hissing sound while you are removing the cap, wait for the sound to stop and then slowly open the cap to prevent fuel from spraying out and creating a fire hazard.**



3. Set the fuel filler cap on the cap holder inside the fuel filler lid.

⚠ WARNING

- **When refueling, insert the fuel nozzle securely into the fuel filler pipe. If the nozzle is lifted or not fully inserted, its automatic stopping mechanism may not function, causing fuel to overflow the tank and creating a fire hazard.**
- **Stop refueling when the automatic stop mechanism on the fuel nozzle activates. If you continue to add fuel, temperature changes or other conditions may cause fuel to overflow from the tank and create a fire hazard.**

4. Stop filling the tank after the fuel filler pump automatically stops. Do not add any more fuel.
5. Put the cap back on, turn it clockwise until you hear a clicking noise. Be certain not to catch the tether under the cap while tightening.

⚠ CAUTION

Make sure that the cap is tightened until it clicks to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.

6. Close the fuel filler lid completely.

⚠ CAUTION

If you spill any fuel on the painted surface, rinse it off immediately. Otherwise, the painted surface could be damaged.

NOTE

You will see the "⛽▶" sign in the fuel gauge. This indicates that the fuel filler door (lid) is located on the right side of the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Never add any cleaning agents to the fuel tank. The addition of a cleaning agent may cause damage to the fuel system.**
- **After refueling, turn the cap clockwise until it clicks to ensure that it is fully tightened. If the cap is not securely tightened, fuel may leak out while the vehicle is being driven or fuel spillage could occur in the event of an accident, creating a fire hazard.**
- **Do not let fuel spill on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Because fuel may damage the paint, be sure to wipe off any spilled fuel quickly. Paint damage caused by spilled fuel is not covered under the SUBARU Limited Warranty.**

– CONTINUED –

- **We recommend that you always use a genuine SUBARU fuel filler cap. If you use the wrong cap, it may not fit or have proper venting and your fuel tank and emission control system may be damaged. It could also lead to fuel spillage and a fire.**
- **Immediately put fuel in the tank whenever the low fuel warning light illuminates. Engine misfires as a result of an empty tank could cause damage to the engine. Continuing to operate your vehicle at an extremely low fuel level may result in a reduction of engine performance.**

Preparing to drive

You should perform the following checks and adjustments every day before you start driving.

1. Check that all windows, mirrors, and lights are clean and unobstructed.
2. Check the appearance and condition of the tires. Also check tires for proper inflation.
3. Look under the vehicle for any sign of leaks and check that no small animal is under the vehicle.
4. Check that no small animal enters the engine compartment.
5. Check that the hood and trunk lid are fully closed.
6. Check the adjustment of the seat.
7. Check the adjustment of the inside and outside mirrors.
8. Fasten your seatbelt. Check that your passengers have fastened their seatbelts.
9. Check the operation of the warning and indicator lights when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position.
10. Check the gauges, indicator and warning lights after starting the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

Trapping small animals in the cooling fan and belts of the engine may result in a malfunction. Check that no small animal enters the engine compartment and under the vehicle before starting the engine.

NOTE

Engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, washer fluid and other fluid levels should be checked daily, weekly or at fuel stops.

Starting and stopping engine

■ General precautions when starting/stopping engine

⚠ WARNING

- Never start the engine from outside the vehicle. It may result in an accident.
- Do not start the engine near dry foliage, paper, or other flammable substances. The exhaust pipe and exhaust emissions can create a fire hazard at high temperatures.
- Do not leave the engine running in locations with poor ventilation, such as a garage and indoors. The exhaust gas may enter the vehicle or indoors, and it may result in carbon monoxide poisoning.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not stop the engine while driving. Otherwise, the catalyst may overheat and burn.
- When starting the engine, be sure to sit in the driver's seat.

NOTE

- Avoid rapid racing and rapid acceleration immediately after the engine has started.
- Until the engine is warmed up sufficiently, the engine speed is maintained high. The engine speed will gradually drop as the engine warms up.
- On rare occasions, it may be difficult to start the engine depending on the fuel used and the driving condition (repeated short trips when the engine is not warmed up sufficiently). In such cases, it is recommended to switch to a different brand of fuel.
- On rare occasions, transient knocking may be heard from the engine when the accelerator is operated rapidly such as a rapid start-up and a rapid acceleration. This is not a malfunction.
- The engine starts more easily when the headlights, air conditioner and rear window defogger are turned off.
- It may be difficult to start the engine when the vehicle battery has been disconnected and reconnected (for maintenance or other purposes). This difficulty is caused by the electronically controlled throttle's self-diagnosis function. To overcome it, keep the ignition switch in the "ON" position for approximately 10 seconds before starting the engine.

■ Models without push-button start system

▼ Starting engine

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the starter motor continuously for more than 10 seconds. If the engine fails to start after operating the starter for 5 to 10 seconds, wait for 10 seconds or more before trying again.

NOTE

Do not shift the select lever (CVT models) or shift lever (MT models) while the starter is cranking.

– CONTINUED –

▽ **MT models**

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.
3. Depress the clutch pedal to the floor and shift the shift lever into neutral. Hold the clutch pedal to the floor while starting the engine.

The starter motor will only operate when the clutch pedal is depressed fully to the floor.

4. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position and check the operation of the warning and indicator lights. Refer to "Warning and indicator lights" ☞3-13.
5. Turn the ignition switch to the "START" position **without** depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the key immediately after the engine has started.

If the engine does not start, perform the procedure described in "If the engine does not start" ☞7-8.

6. Confirm that all warning and indicator lights have turned off after the engine has started.

▽ **CVT models**

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.
3. Shift the select lever to the "P" or "N" position (preferably "P" position).
4. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position and check the operation of the warning and indicator lights. Refer to "Warning and indicator lights" ☞3-13.
5. Turn the ignition switch to the "START" position **without** depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the key immediately after the engine has started.

If the engine does not start, perform the procedure described in "If the engine does not start" ☞7-8.

6. Confirm that all warning and indicator lights have turned off after the engine has started.

While the engine is warming up, make sure that the select lever is at the "P" or "N" position and that the parking brake is applied.

⚠ CAUTION

If you restart the engine while the vehicle is moving, shift the select lever into the "N" position. Do not attempt to place the select lever of a moving vehicle into the "P" position.

▽ **If the engine does not start**

⚠ CAUTION

For safety, release the accelerator pedal as soon as the engine starts.

Try the following procedure.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK" position and wait for at least 10 seconds.
2. After checking that the parking brake is firmly set, turn the ignition switch to the "START" position while depressing the accelerator pedal slightly (approximately a quarter of the full stroke).
3. If this fails to start the engine, turn the ignition switch back to the "LOCK" position and wait for at least 10 seconds.
4. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and turn the ignition switch to the "START" position.

If this fails to start the engine, try the following procedure.

1. Turn the ignition switch again to the "LOCK" position.
2. After waiting for 10 seconds or longer, turn the ignition switch to the "START" position without depressing the accelerator pedal.

If the engine still does not start, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer for assistance.

▼ **Stopping engine**

The ignition switch should be turned off only when the vehicle is stopped and the engine is idling.

⚠ WARNING

Do not stop the engine when the vehicle is moving. This will cause loss of power to the power steering and the brake booster, making steering and braking more difficult. It could also result in accidental activation of the "LOCK" position on the ignition switch, causing the steering wheel to lock.

■ Models with push-button start system

Once you enter the vehicle carrying the access key fob, the power can be switched and the engine can be started.

▼ **Safety precautions**

Refer to "Safety precautions" ☞2-9.

▼ **Operating range for push-button start system**

Refer to "Operating range" ☞3-6.

▼ **Starting engine**

⚠ WARNING

If the indicator on the push-button ignition switch flashes in green after the engine has started, never drive the vehicle. The steering wheel is still locked, and it may result in an accident. In this case, press the push-button ignition switch with the brake pedal depressed and with the steering wheel turned to the right and left.

⚠ CAUTION

- **When the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch is flashing in orange, there may be a malfunction with the vehicle. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.**
- **Do not continue pushing the push-button ignition switch for more than 10 seconds. Doing so could cause a malfunction. If the engine does not start, stop pushing the push-button ignition switch. Instead, press the push-button ignition switch without depressing the brake pedal to switch the power status to "OFF". Wait 10 seconds, and then push the push-button ignition switch to start the engine.**

NOTE

- **When pressing the push-button ignition switch with the clutch pedal (MT models) or brake pedal (CVT models) depressed:**
  - **The engine starter operates for a maximum of 10 seconds and after starting the engine, the starter stops automatically.**

– CONTINUED –

– The engine can be started regardless of the status of the push-button ignition switch.

● If the engine does not start, check the immobilizer indicator light. Then press the push-button ignition switch without depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or brake pedal (CVT models) to switch the power to "OFF".

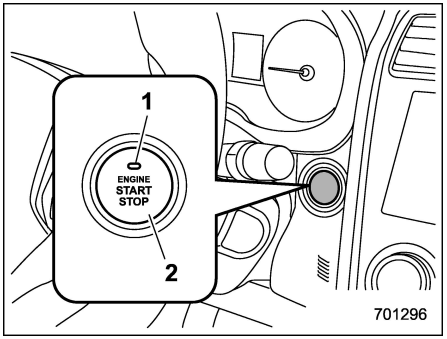
– If the light had illuminated, try to start the engine again.

– If the light had been off, press the push-button ignition switch while depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or brake pedal (CVT models) more forcefully.

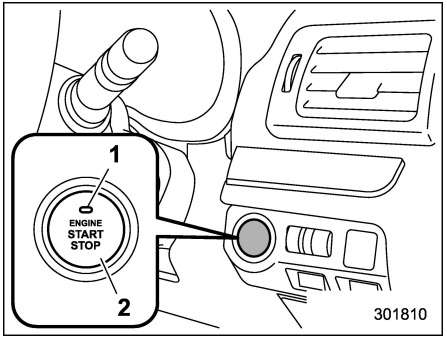
● The engine start procedures may not function depending on the radio wave conditions around the vehicle. In such a case, refer to "Starting engine" ☞9-18.

● If the vehicle battery is discharged, the steering cannot be unlocked. Charge the battery.

● Do not shift the select lever (CVT models) or shift lever (MT models) while the starter is cranking.



Left-hand drive models



Right-hand drive models

1) Operation indicator
2) Push-button ignition switch

When you press the push-button ignition switch with the clutch pedal (MT models)/brake pedal (CVT models) depressed, the engine will start. The start procedure of the engine is as follows.

▽ MT models

1. Carry the access key fob, and sit in the driver's seat.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shift the shift lever in neutral.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Depress the clutch pedal until the indicator on the push-button ignition switch turns green.
6. While depressing the clutch pedal, press the push-button ignition switch.

▽ CVT models

1. Carry the access key fob, and sit in the driver's seat.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shift the select lever in the "P" position. The engine can also start when the select lever is in the "N" position, however, for safety reasons, start in the "P" position.
4. Depress the brake pedal until the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch turns green. When starting with the select lever in the "N" position, the indicator does not turn green.
5. While depressing the brake pedal, press the push-button ignition switch.

NOTE

● While pressing the select lever button in, the indicator on the push-button ignition switch will not turn green even when the select lever is in the "P" position.

● When the engine is not started, the brake pedal may feel stiff. In such a case, depress the brake pedal more forcefully than usual. Check that the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch turns green, and press the push-button ignition switch to start the engine.

▽ In case of the engine does not start by the normal engine start procedure

1. Move the shift lever to the neutral position (MT models), or move the select lever to the "P" position (CVT models).
2. Switch the power status to "ACC".
3. Press and hold the push-button ignition switch for at least 15 seconds with the clutch pedal (MT models)/brake pedal (CVT models) depressed.

Although the engine may start, only use this procedure in the case of an emergency. If the engine still does not start, refer to "Starting engine" ☞9-18.

▼ Stopping engine

1. Stop the vehicle completely.
2. Move the select lever to the "P" position (CVT models).
3. Press the push-button ignition switch. The engine will stop, and the power will be switched to "OFF".

⚠ WARNING

● Do not touch the push-button ignition switch while driving.

When you operate the push-button ignition switch as follows, the engine will stop.

– Pressing and holding the switch for 3 seconds or longer

– Pressing the switch briefly 3 times or more in succession

When the engine stops, the brake booster will not function. A greater foot pressure will be required on the brake pedal.

The power steering system will not operate either. A greater force will be required to steer, and it may result in an accident.

● If the engine stops while driving, do not operate the push-button ignition switch or open any of the doors until the vehicle is stopped in a safe location. It is dangerous because the steering may be locked. Stop the vehicle in a safe location, and we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.

– CONTINUED –

⚠ CAUTION

For CVT models:

- **Do not stop the engine while the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position.**
- **If the engine is stopped while the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position, the power will be in "ACC". If the vehicle is left in this condition, the battery may be discharged.**

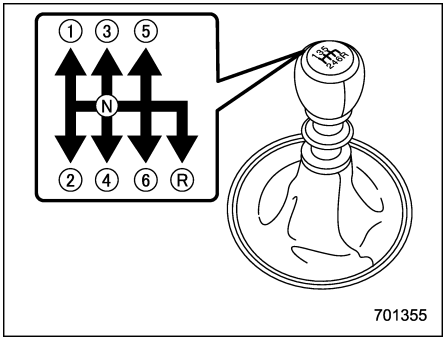
NOTE

Although you can stop the engine by operating the push-button ignition switch, do not stop the engine while driving except in an emergency.

▼ When access key fob does not operate properly

Refer to "Access key fob – if access key fob does not operate properly" ☞9-17.

Manual transmission

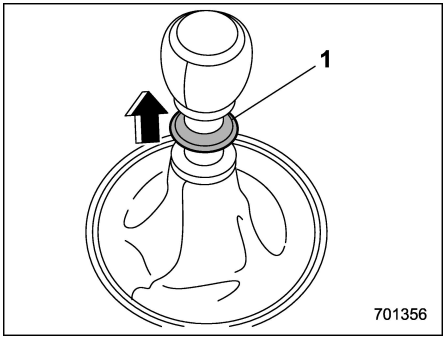


This manual transmission is a completely synchromesh, 6-forward-speed and 1-reverse-speed transmission.

The shift pattern is shown on the shift lever knob.

To change the shift lever position:

1. Depress the clutch pedal.
2. To shift into all positions other than "R", move the shift lever accordingly.



1) Slider

3. To shift into the "R" position, hold up the slider , move the lever to the "R" position, then release the slider.
4. Gradually release the clutch pedal.

If it is difficult to shift into gear, put the transmission in neutral, release the clutch pedal momentarily, and then try again.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not drive the vehicle with the clutch disengaged (i.e., when the clutch pedal is depressed) or with the shift lever in the neutral position. Engine braking has no effect in either of these conditions and the risk of an accident is consequently increased.**
- **Do not engage the clutch (i.e., release the clutch pedal) suddenly when starting the vehicle. By doing so the vehicle might unexpectedly accelerate or the transmission could malfunction.**

⚠ CAUTION

Shift into reverse ONLY when the vehicle has completely stopped. It may cause damage to the transmission to try shifting into reverse when the vehicle is moving.

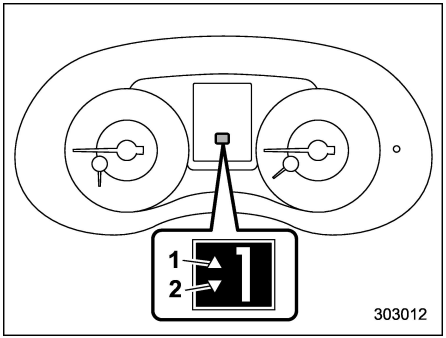
■ Shifting speeds

▼ Recommended shifting speeds

The best compromise between fuel economy and vehicle performance during normal driving is ensured by shifting up at the speeds listed in the following table.

Shift up	km/h (mph)
1st to 2nd	24 (15)
2nd to 3rd	40 (25)
3rd to 4th	64 (40)
4th to 5th	72 (45)
5th to 6th	80 (50)

▼ Gear shift indicator (if equipped)



1) Upshift indicator
2) Downshift indicator

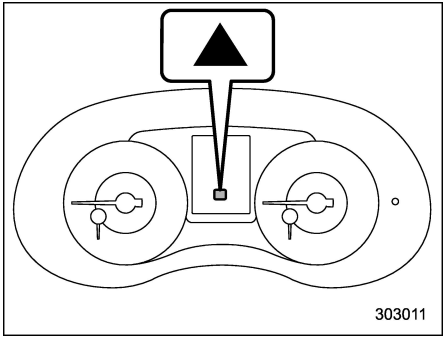
When shifting up is recommended for good fuel economy, the upshift indicator blinks. When shifting down is recommended, the downshift indicator blinks.

NOTE

The gear shift indicator cannot be deactivated.

– CONTINUED –

▼ **Shift-up indicator (STI without gear shift indicator models)**



The shift-up indicator illuminates to inform the driver about the upshift timing.

The shift-up indicator can be activated or deactivated. For details, refer to "Shift-up indicator (STI without gear shift indicator models)" ☞3-35.

▼ **Maximum allowable speeds**

The following table shows the maximum speeds that are possible with each different gear. The tachometer's needle will enter the red area if these speeds are exceeded.

With the exception of cases where sudden acceleration is required, the vehicle should not be driven with the tachometer's needle inside the red area. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to excessive engine wear and poor fuel economy.

Gear	STI km/h (mph)	Except STI km/h (mph)
1st	50 (31)	47 (29)
2nd	82 (51)	83 (51)
3rd	116 (72)	119 (73)
4th	163 (101)	158 (98)
5th	208 (129)	197 (122)
6th	262 (162)	244 (151)

NOTE

Never exceed posted speed limits.

⚠ WARNING

When shifting down a gear, ensure that the vehicle is not travelling at a speed exceeding the Maximum Allowable Speed for the gear which is about to be selected. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to engine over-revving and this in turn can result in engine damage. In addition, sudden application of engine brakes when the vehicle is travelling on a slippery surface can lead to wheel locking; as a consequence, control of the vehicle may be lost and the risk of an accident increased.

■ Driving tips

NOTE

If the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed at the same time, driving torque may be restrained. This is not a malfunction.

Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal and do not use the clutch to hold your vehicle at a standstill on an upgrade. Either of those actions may cause clutch damage.

Do not drive with your hand resting on the shift lever. This may cause wear on the transmission components.

When it is necessary to reduce vehicle speed due to slow traffic, turning corners, or driving up steep hills, downshift to a lower gear before the engine starts to labor.

On steep downgrades, downshift the transmission to 5th, 4th, 3rd or 2nd gear as necessary; this helps to maintain a safe speed and to extend brake pad life.

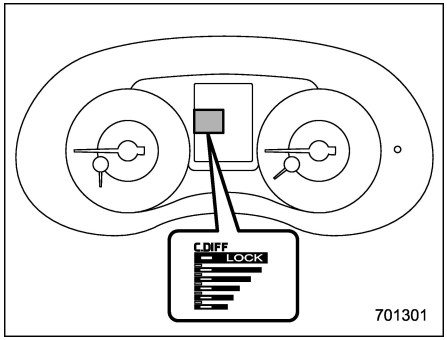
In this way, the engine provides a braking effect. Remember, if you "ride" (over use) the brakes while descending a hill, they may overheat and not work properly.

The engine may, on rare occasions, knock when the vehicle rapidly accelerates or rapidly pulls away from a standstill. This phenomenon does not indicate a problem.

Driver's Control Center Differential (C.DIFF/DCCD) (STI)

⚠ WARNING

Always use the utmost care when driving. Being overconfident because you are driving a vehicle with a driver's control center differential could easily lead to a serious accident.



⚠ CAUTION

- **All the indicators will flash in the event that the driver's control center differential has a malfunction. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by your SUBARU dealer.**
- **If a malfunction occurs in the vehicle (for example, when the rear differential oil temperature warning light illuminates), all of the indicators may disappear and the setting value for the initial limited slip differential (LSD) torque of the driver's control center differential (DCCD) may be canceled. However, it does not indicate a malfunction of the DCCD itself.**

The driver's control center differential allows you to freely change the degree of limitation of the differential action (limited slip differential (LSD) torque) of your vehicle's center differential.

By using the center differential control switch, you can set an initial LSD torque to match the road surface conditions, driving conditions and your driving style.

– CONTINUED –

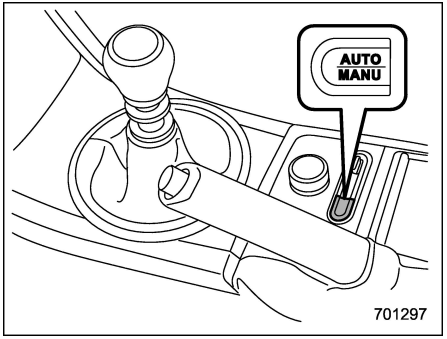
The driver's control center differential has the following modes.

- Auto mode: the system automatically adjusts the initial LSD torque.
- Manual mode: you can change to the desired mode manually by using the center differential control switch.

NOTE

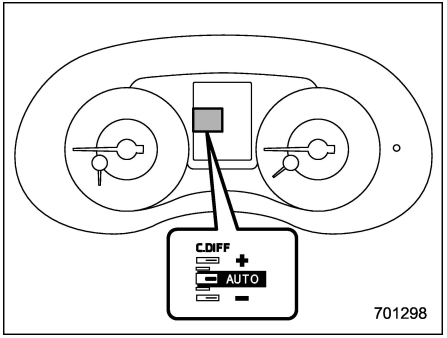
If you rapidly depress and release the accelerator pedal while driving at low speed, you may hear a knocking sound from the vicinity of the center differential and rear differential. This sound occurs because of the structure of the center differential. It does not indicate a problem.

■ To change mode of driver's control center differential



Press the "AUTO-MANU" switch on the center console to switch from auto mode to manual mode or vice versa. When you select the auto mode, the "AUTO" indicator appears. When you select the manual mode, the "AUTO" indicator disappears.

■ Auto mode



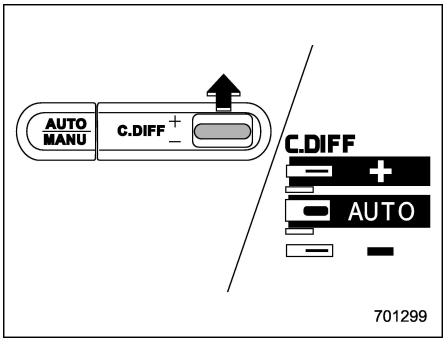
In the auto mode, the system estimates the driving and road conditions using signals from the wheel speed sensor, throttle position sensor, steering angle sensor and brake switch, etc. According to the result, it electronically and automatically controls the degree of limitation of the differential action (LSD torque) to optimize the differential action of the center differential. When you turn the ignition switch ON, the "AUTO" indicator on the combination meter appears.

The auto mode has 3 modes as follows.

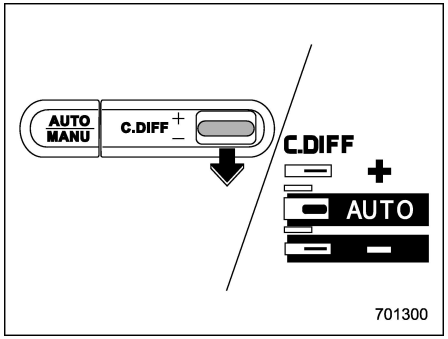
Mode	Operation
AUTO [+]	This mode emphasizes traction control and strengthens the limitation of differential action that is suitable for driving on slippery roads for vehicle stability.
AUTO	This mode is suitable for most driving situations.
AUTO [−]	This mode is suitable when you seek quick response from the steering wheel and smooth driving.

▼ Mode setting method

In most situations, it is recommended that the "AUTO" mode is selected.



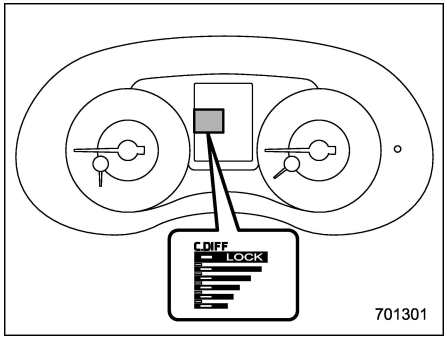
Push the control switch forward to select the "AUTO [+]" mode. After setting the mode, "AUTO [+]" appears.



Pull the control switch rearward to select the "AUTO [−]" mode. After setting the mode, "AUTO [−]" appears.

When the "AUTO [+]" mode is selected, pull the control switch rearward to change to the "AUTO" mode. When the "AUTO [−]" mode is set, push the control switch forward to change to the "AUTO" mode.

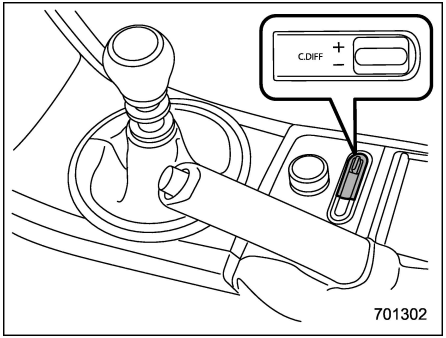
■ Manual mode



In the manual mode, you can use the center differential control switch to adjust the initial LSD torque as desired. When this mode is selected, the "AUTO" indicator disappears.

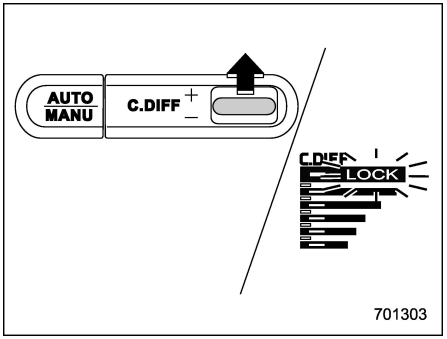
– CONTINUED –

▼ Center differential control switch and indicator

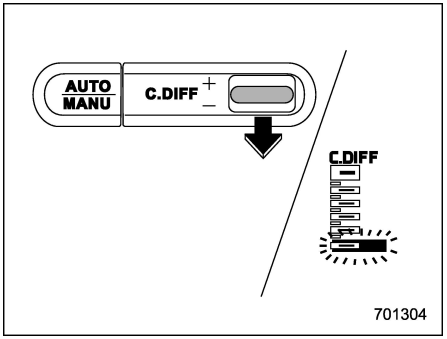


The control switch is located beside the parking brake lever. By pushing the control switch forward or pulling it rearward, it is possible to change the initial LSD torque.

The center differential indicator on the combination meter gives six levels of indication. The indicator and control switch are linked; when you push or pull the switch to change the initial LSD torque, the indicator changes accordingly.



Push the switch forward to increase the initial LSD torque; when the "LOCK" indicator appears, the initial LSD torque setting is maximum. The center differential will then be almost completely locked.



Pull the switch rearward to reduce the initial LSD torque. When the lowest position of the driver's control center differential indicator is displayed, the initial LSD torque will be minimum.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not operate the control switch when a wheel slippage occurs. Wait until the wheelspin has been brought under control.**
- **Under any of the following conditions after setting to the manual mode, pull the center differential control switch to minimize the initial LSD torque:**
  - **– When a temporary spare tire is installed**

– When your vehicle is towed
– When the vehicle is stopped with the manual mode selected

NOTE

• A higher initial LSD torque setting gives the vehicle greater traction when driving straight ahead but makes cornering more difficult. Remember this when adjusting the initial LSD torque. In general, higher initial LSD torque settings assist driving on slippery roads and lower settings for non-slippery roads. When the vehicle is stuck in snow or mud, setting the initial LSD torque to the maximum will help to free the vehicle.

• The setting of the initial LSD torque will remain even when the auto mode is selected or the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position. However, the initial LSD torque will be minimized when the battery is disconnected and reconnected.

• During cornering or when making turns (especially when going into the garage), the rotational difference between the front and rear wheels may cause a braking effect accompanied by vibration and noise. This does not indicate a problem. The phenomenon will disappear when setting the initial LSD torque to the minimum.

In the auto mode, it controls the initial LSD torque automatically. While in the auto mode, this phenomenon sometimes occurs depending on the driving condition, however, it does not indicate a problem.

• Use the center differential indicator only as a rough indication of the initial LSD torque.

• If you operate the center differential control switch while quickly accelerating or turning a tight corner, you may feel slight shocks. This is due to differential action by the center differential and does not indicate a problem.

■ Temporary release

When the driver stops the vehicle and pulls the parking brake lever after manually setting the initial LSD torque, the LSD torque is temporarily minimized. However the indicator on the combination meter continues to show the driver's selected initial LSD torque. When the driver releases the parking brake lever, the initial LSD torque set by the driver is restored.

Continuously variable transmission

The continuously variable transmission is electronically controlled and provides an infinite number of forward speeds and 1 reverse speed. It also has a manual mode.

⚠ WARNING

Do not shift from the "P" or "N" position into the "D" or "R" position while depressing the accelerator pedal. This may cause the vehicle to lurch forward or backward.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Observe the following precautions. Otherwise, the transmission could be damaged.**
  - **Shift into the "P" or "R" position only after the vehicle has completely stopped.**
  - **Do not shift from the "D" position into the "R" position or vice versa until the vehicle has completely stopped.**

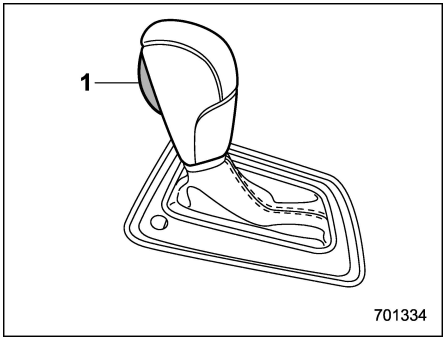
– CONTINUED –

- **Do not race the engine for more than 5 seconds in any position except the "N" or "P" position when the brake is applied or when chocks are used in the wheels. This may cause the transmission fluid to overheat.**
- **Never move the vehicle as follows. Doing so may result in an unexpected accident or malfunction.**
  - **Moving rearward by inertia with the select lever set in a forward driving position.**
  - **Moving forward by inertia with the select lever set in the "R" position.**
- **When parking the vehicle, first securely apply the parking brake and then place the select lever in the "P" position. Avoid parking for a long time with the select lever in any other position as doing so could result in a dead battery.**

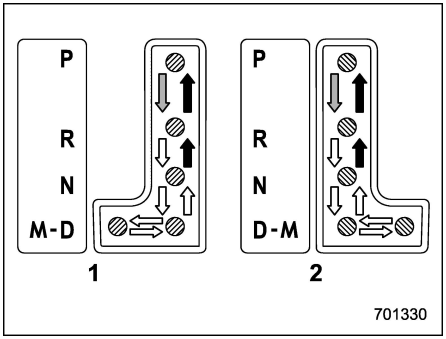
NOTE

- **When the engine coolant temperature is still low, the transmission will upshift or downshift at higher engine speeds than when the coolant temperature is sufficiently high in order to shorten the warm-up time and improve driveability. The gearshift timing will automatically shift to the normal timing after the engine has warmed up.**
- **Immediately after transmission fluid is replaced, you may feel that the transmission operation is somewhat unusual. This results from invalidation of data which the on-board computer has collected and stored in the memory to allow the transmission to shift at the most appropriate times for the current condition of your vehicle. Optimized shifting will be restored as the vehicle continues to be driven for a while.**
- **When driving under continuous heavy load conditions such as climbing a long or steep hill, the engine speed or the vehicle speed may automatically be reduced. This is not a malfunction. This phenomenon results from the engine control function maintaining the cooling performance of the vehicle. The engine and vehicle speed will return to a normal speed when the engine is able to maintain the optimum cooling performance after the heavy load decreases. Take care when driving under a heavy load.**
- **The continuously variable transmission is a chain type system that provides superior transmission efficiency for maximum fuel economy. At times, depending on varying driving conditions, a chain operating noise may be heard that is characteristic of this type of system.**

■ Select lever



1) Select lever button



1) Left-hand drive models
2) Right-hand drive models
⇨ : With the brake pedal depressed, shift while pressing the select lever button in.
➡ : Shift while pressing the select lever button in.
⇨ : Shift without pressing the select lever button.

The select lever has four positions, “P”, “R”, “N”, “D” and it also has an “M” gate.

NOTE

For some models, to protect the engine while the select lever is in the “P” or “N” position, the engine is controlled so that the engine speed may not become too high even if the accelerator pedal is depressed hard.

▼ P (Park)

This position is for parking the vehicle and starting the engine. In this position, the transmission is mechanically locked to prevent the vehicle from rolling freely.

When you park the vehicle, first apply the parking brake firmly, then shift into the “P” position. Do not hold the vehicle with only the mechanical friction of the transmission.

To shift the select lever from the “P” position to any other position, you should depress the brake pedal fully then move the select lever. This prevents the vehicle from lurching when it is started.

▼ R (Reverse)

This position is for backing the vehicle. To shift from the “N” to “R” position, stop the vehicle completely then move the lever to the “R” position while pressing the select lever button in.

Even when you have turned the ignition switch to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position, you can still move the select lever from the “N” to “R” position for a limited time period by depressing the brake pedal, and then it becomes impossible. For details, refer to “Shift lock function” ☞7-24.

▼ N (Neutral)

This position is for restarting a stalled engine. In this position, the transmission is neutral, meaning that the wheels and transmission are not locked. Therefore, the vehicle will roll freely, even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or foot brake is applied.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive the vehicle with the select lever in the “N” (neutral) position. Engine braking has no effect in this condition and the risk of an accident is consequently increased.

NOTE

If the select lever is in the “N” position when you stop the engine for parking, you may not subsequently be able to move it to the “R” and “P” positions. If this happens, turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position. You will then be able to move the select lever to the “P” position.

– CONTINUED –

▼ **D (Drive)**

This position is for normal driving. The transmission shifts automatically and continuously into a suitable gear according to the vehicle speed and the acceleration you require. Also, while driving up and down a hill, the transmission assists and controls the driving performance and engine braking while corresponding to the road grade.

When more acceleration is required in the "D" position, depress the accelerator pedal fully to the floor and hold that position. The transmission will automatically downshift. If the Intelligent (I) mode or the Sport (S) mode has been selected, the transmission will operate like a conventional automatic transmission. When you release the pedal, the transmission will return to the original gear position.

If you operate one of the shift paddles behind the steering wheel while driving in the "D" position, the transmission will temporarily switch to the manual mode. In this mode, you can shift into any gear position using the shift paddles. For details about the manual mode, refer to "Selection of manual mode" ☞7-22. Once the vehicle speed stabilizes, the transmission will switch from the manual mode back to the "D" position for normal driving.

■ Selection of manual mode

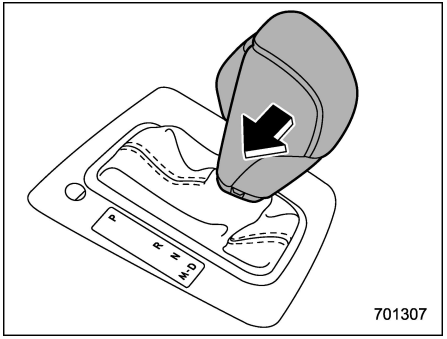
⚠ CAUTION

Do not place or hang anything on the shift paddles. Doing so may result in accidental gear shifting.

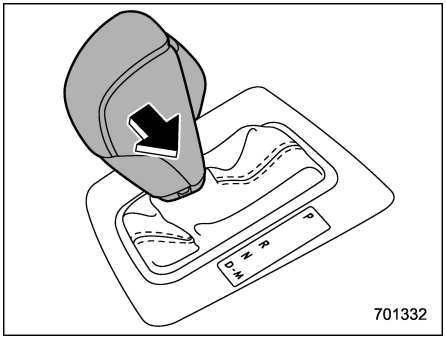
NOTE

Please read the following points carefully and bear them in mind when using the manual mode.

- **If you attempt to shift down when the engine speed is too high, i.e., when a downshift would push the tachometer needle beyond the red zone, beeps will be emitted to warn you that the downshift is not possible.**
- **If you attempt to shift up when the vehicle speed is too low, the transmission will not respond.**
- **You can perform a skip-shift (for example, from 4th to 2nd) by operating the shift paddle twice in rapid succession.**
- **The transmission automatically selects 1st gear when the vehicle stops moving.**
- **If the temperature of the transmission fluid becomes too high, the "AT OIL TEMP" warning light on the combination meter will illuminate. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe location and let the engine idle until the warning light turns off.**
- **By selecting Sport Sharp (S#) mode, upshifting will not occur automatically. According to the road conditions, shift change manually so that the tachometer needle does not enter the red zone. Also, if the engine revolutions reach the specified number, the fuel supply will be cut. In this case, perform shift up operation.**

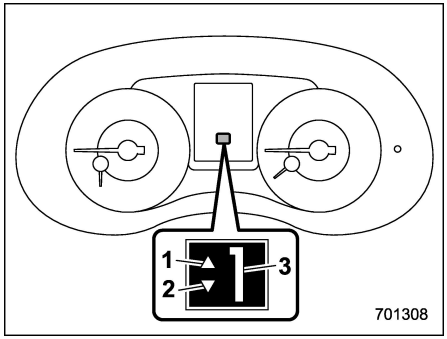


Left-hand drive models



Right-hand drive models

With the vehicle either moving or stationary, move the select lever from the “D” position to the “M” position to select the manual mode.



1) Upshift indicator
2) Downshift indicator
3) Gear position indicator

When the manual mode is selected, the gear position indicator and upshift indicator and/or downshift indicator on the combination meter illuminate.

The gear position indicator shows the currently selected gear in the following range.

- 1st-to-8th-gear range (when the Sport Sharp (S#) mode is selected (if equipped))
- 1st-to-6th-gear range (in other situations)

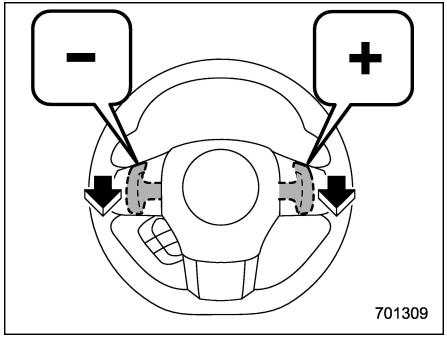
The upshift and downshift indicators show when a gear shift is possible. When the upshift indicator “▲” appears, upshifting is possible. When the downshift indicator “▼” appears, downshifting is possible. When both indicators appear, upshifting and downshifting are both possible. When the vehicle stops (for example, at traffic signals), the downshift indicator turns off.

▼ Gear shift indicator (if equipped)

When shifting up is recommended for good fuel economy, the upshift indicator blinks. When shifting down is recommended, the downshift indicator blinks.

▼ To upshift/downshift

Gearshifts can be performed using the shift paddle behind the steering wheel.



To upshift to the next higher gear position, pull the shift paddle that has “**+**” indicated on it. To downshift to the next lower gear position, pull the shift paddle that has “**−**” indicated on it.

– CONTINUED –

▼ **To deselect the manual mode**

To deselect the manual mode, return the select lever to the “D” position from the “M” position.

■ Shift lock function

The shift lock function helps prevent the improper operation of the select lever.

- You can move the select lever with the ignition switch in the “ON” position and the brake pedal depressed.
- You cannot move the select lever from the “P” position to any other position unless the brake pedal is depressed. Depress the brake pedal first, and then operate the select lever.
- Only the “P” position allows you to turn the ignition switch from the “ACC” position to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position and remove the key from the ignition switch.
- If you turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position with the select lever in the “N” position, the select lever may not be moved to the “P” position after a period of time. Therefore, move the select lever to the “P” position with the brake pedal depressed soon after turning the ignition switch to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position.

▼ **Shift lock release**

If you cannot move the select lever, turn the ignition switch back to the “ON” position then move the select lever to the “P” position with the select lever button pressed and brake pedal depressed.

If the select lever does not move after performing the above procedure, perform the following steps.

- **When you cannot shift the select lever from “P” to “N”:**

Refer to “Shift lock release using the shift lock release button” ☞7-24.

- **When you cannot shift the select lever from “N” to “R”, “P”:**

Within 60 seconds after placing the ignition switch in the “ACC” position, move the select lever to the “P” position with the select lever button pressed and brake pedal depressed.

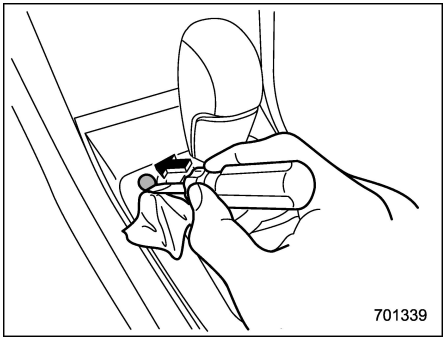
If you must perform the above procedure, the shift lock system (or the vehicle control system) may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer for an inspection as soon as possible.

If the select lever does not move after performing the above procedure, refer to “Shift lock release using the shift lock release button” ☞7-24.

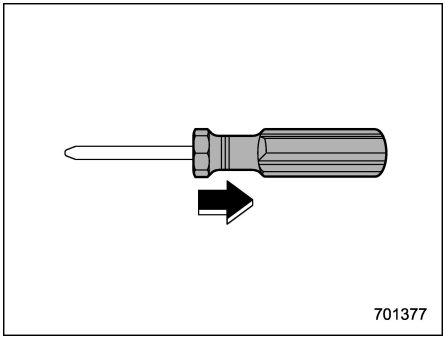
▼ **Shift lock release using the shift lock release button**

Perform the following procedure to release the shift lock.

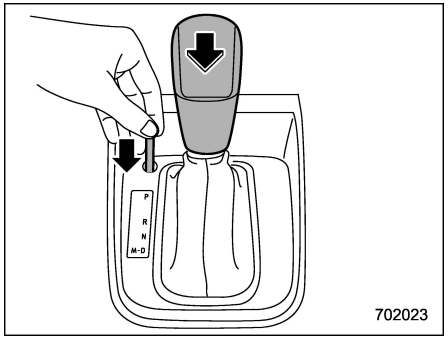
1. Apply the parking brake and stop the engine.



2. Wrap the tip of a flat-head screwdriver with vinyl tape or a cloth and use it to remove the shift lock cover. The shift lock release button is located under the shift lock cover.



3. Remove the grip portion of the screwdriver.



4. While depressing the brake pedal, insert a screwdriver into the hole, press the shift lock release button using a screwdriver, and then move the select lever.

If the select lever does not move after performing the above procedure, the shift lock system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer for an inspection as soon as possible.

■ Driving tips

NOTE

If the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed at the same time, driving torque may be restrained. This is not a malfunction.

- Always apply the foot or parking brake when the vehicle is stopped in the “D” or “R” position.
- Make sure to apply the parking brake when parking your vehicle. Do not hold the vehicle with only the mechanical friction of the transmission.
- Do not keep the vehicle in a stationary position on an uphill grade by using the “D” position. Use the brake instead.
- The engine may, on rare occasions, knock when the vehicle rapidly accelerates or rapidly pulls away from a standstill. This phenomenon does not indicate a malfunction.

SI-DRIVE (if equipped)

SI-DRIVE (SUBARU Intelligent Drive) works to maximize engine performance, control and efficiency.

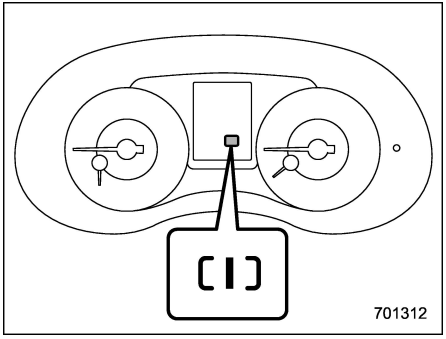
This system consists of three modes:

- Intelligent (I) mode
- Sport (S) mode
- Sport Sharp (S#) mode

Use the SI-DRIVE switch to change the character of the power unit.

■ Intelligent (I) mode

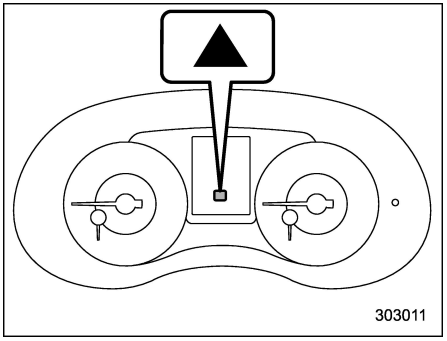
▼ For smooth, efficient performance driving



The Intelligent (I) mode provides well-balanced performance with greater fuel efficiency and smooth driveability without stress. Power delivery is moderate during acceleration for maximum fuel efficiency.

This is ideal for around-town driving and situations that do not require full power output. It provides better control in difficult driving conditions, such as slippery roads or loose surfaces, due to gentler throttle response.

STI:



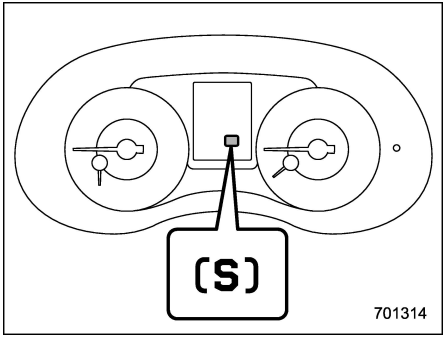
When the Intelligent (I) mode is selected, a shift-up indicator "▲" on the combination meter will blink to signal the best time to shift gears for maximum fuel efficiency.

Except STI:

The linear acceleration characteristic of the Intelligent (I) mode is ideal for normal driving.

■ Sport (S) mode

▼ For all-around performance driving



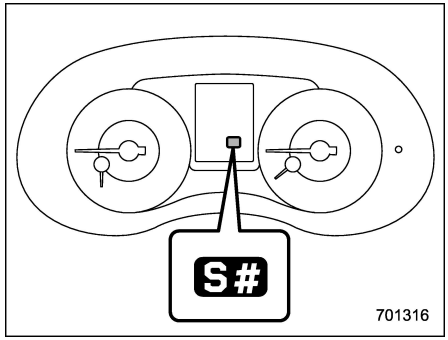
The Sport (S) mode provides the engine power desired by those who want to make the driving experience their own personal adventure.

STI:

The linear acceleration characteristic of the Sport (S) mode is ideal for normal driving.

■ Sport Sharp (S#) mode

▼ For maximum performance driving



For sports-minded drivers, the Sport Sharp (S#) mode offers an exhilarating level of engine performance and control. The throttle becomes more responsive regardless of the engine speed. Delivering maximum driving enjoyment, this mode is ideal for tackling twisting roads and for merging or overtaking other vehicles on the freeway with confidence.

▽ Except STI

When you select the Sport Sharp (S#) mode with the select lever in the "D" position, the transmission gear ratio will shift from variable speed to eight-speed. The select lever/gear position indicator display will change from "D" to the gear position.

When selecting Sport Sharp (S#) mode, the following controls will be applied.

- **Uphill control**

Prevents unnecessary shift-up/shift-down during ascent.

- **Cornering control**

While turning, if there is a large centrifugal force, shift-up will not occur: during re-acceleration.

- **Braking control**

At the beginning of corners etc., heavy application of the brake pedal will cause automatic downshift and gently re-accelerate.

- **Sudden acceleration return control**

During acceleration, if acceleration pedal is returned suddenly (for example, at corners etc.), shift-up will not be applied.

■ SI-DRIVE switch

NOTE

• If the malfunction indicator light (CHECK ENGINE light) illuminates during engine operation, the SI-DRIVE mode changes to the Sport (S) mode. In this case, it is not possible to change to the Sport Sharp (S#) mode or Intelligent (I) mode.
• If the engine coolant temperature becomes so high that the engine could overheat, it is not possible to change to the Sport Sharp (S#) mode. While the vehicle is in the Sport Sharp (S#) mode, it changes to the Sport (S) mode when the engine coolant temperature increases.
• If any of the SI-DRIVE indicators blink, the SI-DRIVE system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

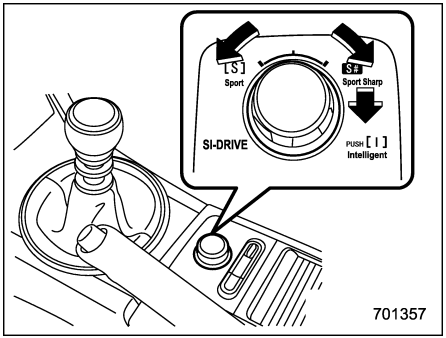
▼ STI

NOTE

The next time you turn the ignition switch to "ON", the following SI-DRIVE mode will be selected.
• Intelligent (I) mode if you have turned off the engine in the Intelligent (I) mode
• Sport (S) mode if you have turned off the engine in the Sport (S) mode or

– CONTINUED –

Sport Sharp (S#) mode



SI-DRIVE switch

To select the Intelligent (I) mode:
Push the SI-DRIVE switch.

To select the Sport (S) mode:
Rotate the SI- DRIVE switch to the left.

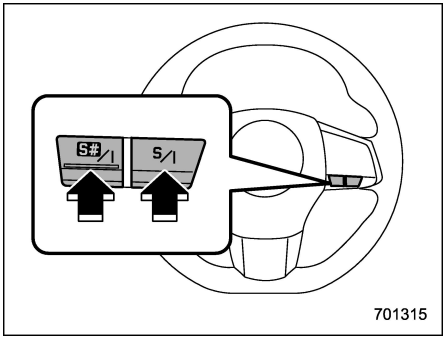
To select the Sport Sharp (S#) mode:
Rotate the SI-DRIVE switch to the right.

After operating the SI-DRIVE switch, the switch returns to its original location.

▼ **Except STI**

NOTE

The next time you turn the ignition switch to "ON", the Intelligent (I) mode will be selected.



SI-DRIVE switches

To select the Intelligent (I) mode:

- Press the "S/I" switch when the Sport (S) mode is selected
- Press the "S#/I" switch when the Sport Sharp (S#) mode is selected

To select the Sport (S) mode:
Press the "S/I" switch when any mode other than Sport (S) mode is selected.

To select the Sport Sharp (S#) mode:
Press the "S#/I" switch when any mode other than Sport Sharp (S#) mode is selected.

Limited slip differential (LSD) (if equipped)

The LSD provides optimum distribution of power according to the difference in revolutions between the right and left wheels that may be caused by certain driving conditions, thereby improving driving stability on snow-covered, muddy or other slippery roads or when high speed driving.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Never start the engine while a tire on one side is jacked up, as the vehicle may move.**
- **If one tire is spinning in mud, avoid continued spinning at high speed as this could adversely affect the LSD.**
- **If you use a temporary spare tire to replace a flat tire, be sure to use the original temporary spare tire stored in the vehicle. Using other sizes will adversely affect the LSD.**

Power steering

■ STI

The vehicle is equipped with a hydraulic power steering system. The power steering system operates only when the engine is running. If you lose power steering assist because the engine stops or the system fails to function, you can steer but it will take much more effort.

⚠ CAUTION

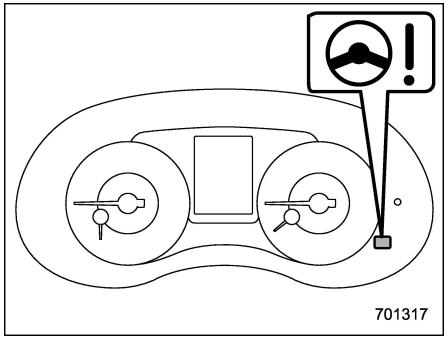
Do not hold the steering wheel at the fully locked position left or right for more than 5 seconds. This may damage the power steering pump.

NOTE

Right after the engine has been started and before it has warmed up, you may hear a noise coming from areas adjacent to the power steering pump which is located at the right-front area of the engine compartment. This noise is normal. It does not indicate power steering system trouble.

■ Except STI

This vehicle is equipped with an electric power steering system. The power steering system operates only while the engine is running.



Power steering warning light

When you turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position, the power steering warning light on the combination meter illuminates to inform the driver that the warning system is functioning properly. Then, if the engine started, the warning light turns off to inform the driver that the steering power assist is operational.

⚠ CAUTION

While the power steering warning light is illuminated, there may be more resistance when the steering wheel is operated. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the vehicle inspected immediately.

NOTE

If you operate the steering wheel in the following ways, the power steering control system may temporarily limit the power assist in order to prevent the system components, such as the control computer and drive motor, from overheating.

- **You operate the steering wheel frequently and turn it sharply while the vehicle is maneuvered at extremely low speeds, such as while frequently turning the steering wheel during parallel parking.**
- **You keep the steering wheel in the fully turned position for a long period of time.**

– CONTINUED –

At this time, there will be more resistance when steering. However this is not a malfunction. Normal steering force will be restored after the steering wheel is not operated for a while and the power steering control system has an opportunity to cool down. However, if the power steering is operated in a non-standard way which causes power assist limitation to occur too frequently, this may result in a malfunction of the power steering control system.

Braking

■ Braking tips

⚠ WARNING

Never rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving. This can cause dangerous overheating of the brakes and needless wear on the brake pads and linings.

▼ When the brakes get wet

When driving in rain or after washing the vehicle, the brakes may get wet. As a result, brake stopping distance will be longer. To dry the brakes, drive the vehicle at a safe speed while lightly depressing the brake pedal to heat up the brakes.

▼ Use of engine braking

Remember to make use of engine braking in addition to foot braking. When descending a grade, if only the foot brake is used, the brakes may start working improperly because of brake fluid overheating, caused by overheated brake pads. To help prevent this, shift into a lower gear to get stronger engine braking.

▼ Braking when a tire is punctured

Do not depress the brake pedal suddenly when a tire is punctured. This could cause a loss of control of the vehicle. Keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed. Then slowly pull off the road to a safe place.

■ Brake system

▼ Two separate circuits

Your vehicle has two separate circuit brake systems. Each circuit works diagonally across the vehicle. If one circuit of the brake system should fail, the other half of the system still works. If one circuit fails, the brake pedal will go down much closer to the floor than usual and you will need to press it down much harder. And a much longer distance will be needed to stop the vehicle.

▼ Brake booster

The brake booster uses engine manifold vacuum to assist braking force. Do not turn off the engine while driving because that will turn off the brake booster, resulting in poor braking power.

The brakes will continue to work even when the brake booster completely stops functioning. If this happens, however, you will have to depress the pedal much harder

than normal and the braking distance will increase.

▼ **Brake assist system**

⚠ WARNING

Do not be overconfident about the brake assist. It is not a system that brings more braking ability to the vehicle beyond its braking capability. Always use the utmost care when driving regarding vehicle speed and safe distance.

⚠ CAUTION

When you need to brake suddenly, continue depressing the brake pedal strongly to obtain the effect of the brake assist.

Brake assist is a driver assistance system. It assists the brake power when the driver cannot depress the brake pedal strongly and the brake power is insufficient.

Brake assist generates the brake power according to the speed at which the driver depresses the brake pedal.

NOTE

When you depress the brake pedal strongly or suddenly, the following phenomena occur. However, even though these occur, they do not indicate any malfunctions, and the brake assist system is operating properly.

- **You might feel that the brake pedal is applied by lighter force and generates a greater braking force.**
- **You might hear the sound of the ABS operating from the engine compartment.**

▼ **Emergency Stop Signal**

The Emergency Stop Signal is a function that automatically blinks the hazard warning flasher in short intervals when the brake pedal is depressed suddenly. The rapid flashing of the hazard warning flasher cautions the vehicles behind and reduces the possibility of a collision.

⚠ CAUTION

The Emergency Stop Signal is activated in priority over the turn signal.

▽ **Operating condition**

The Emergency Stop Signal activates when all of the following conditions are met.

- The hazard warning flasher is off.
- The vehicle speed is 60 km/h (37 mph) or more.
- The system judges that sudden braking has occurred based on the vehicle deceleration when the brake pedal is depressed.

▽ **Automatic cancel**

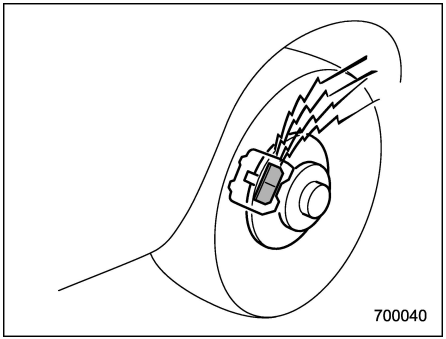
The Emergency Stop Signal is canceled in either of the following circumstances.

- The hazard warning flasher is turned on.
- The brake pedal is released.
- The system judges that sudden braking has ended, based on the vehicle deceleration.

The operational/non-operational setting of the Emergency Stop Signal can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. For details, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

– CONTINUED –

■ Disc brake pad wear warning indicators



The disc brake pad wear warning indicators on the disc brakes give a warning noise when the brake pads are worn.

If a squeaking or scraping noise is heard from the disc brakes while braking, we recommend that you immediately have your vehicle checked by your SUBARU dealer.

■ High performance brake system (STI)

Your vehicle is equipped with large, high performance brake pads that provide optimum braking force under various driving conditions. The brake pads have the following characteristics.

Brake noises

The brake pads are made of iron-based material. Therefore, unusual noise may be heard when depressing the brake pedal slightly before stopping completely. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

Discoloration

Frequent severe driving, such as repeated driving on sharp uphill or downhill grades, can cause discoloration of the paint on the brake calipers. The discoloration will not affect the braking performance.

Stuck brake pads

- If the vehicle is left parked for an extended period of time with the brake system wet, the iron in the brake pads may form rust and cause the brake pads and disc rotors to stick together. This may result in noise or vibration while driving. If this occurs, fully depress the brake pedal several times to free the brake pads.
- If the vehicle is left parked for an extended period of time in a cold temperature, the brake pads and disc rotors may be frozen and stuck together. In this case, it may be difficult to start the vehicle.

Brake dust

Due to the material used for the brake pads, the wheels may become covered in brake dust. This is not a malfunction, and will not affect the brake performance.

■ Red caliper with sports brake pad (if equipped)

Brake noises

The brake pads are made of iron-based material. Therefore, unusual noise may be heard when depressing the brake pedal slightly before stopping completely. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

Brake dust

Due to the material used for the brake pads, the wheels may become covered in brake dust. This is not a malfunction, and will not affect the brake performance.

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

The ABS system prevents the lock-up of wheels which may occur during sudden braking or braking on slippery road surfaces. This helps prevent the loss of steering control and directional stability caused by wheel lock-up.

When the ABS system is operating, you may hear a chattering noise or feel a slight vibration in the brake pedal. This is normal when the ABS operates.

The ABS system will not operate when the vehicle speed is below approximately 10 km/h (6 mph).

⚠ WARNING

Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving with an ABS equipped vehicle could easily lead to a serious accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- **The ABS system does not always decrease stopping distance. You should always maintain a safe following distance from other vehicles.**
- **When driving on badly surfaced roads, gravel roads, icy roads, or over deep newly fallen snow, stopping distances may be longer for a vehicle with the ABS system than one without. When driving under these conditions, therefore, reduce your speed and leave ample distance from other vehicles.**
- **When tire chains are installed, stopping distances may be longer for a vehicle with the ABS system than one without. Be sure to reduce your speed and maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front.**
- **When you feel the ABS system operating, you should maintain constant brake pedal pressure. Do not pump the brake pedal since doing so may defeat the operation of the ABS system.**

■ ABS system self-check

Just after the vehicle is started, you may feel on the brake pedal a vibration similar to when the ABS operates, and you may also hear the sound of the ABS working from the engine compartment. This is caused by an automatic functional test of the ABS system being carried out and does not indicate any abnormal condition.

■ ABS warning light

Refer to “ABS warning light” ☞3-22.

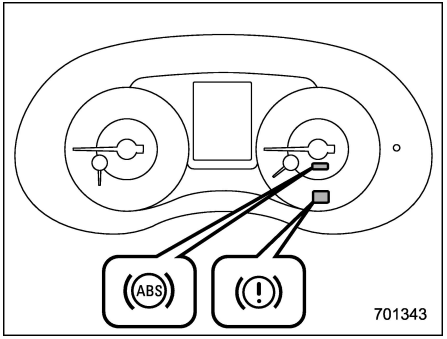
Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system

The EBD system maximizes the effectiveness of the brakes by allowing the rear brakes to supply a greater proportion of the braking force. It functions by adjusting the distribution of braking force to the rear wheels in accordance with the vehicle's loading condition and speed.

The EBD system is an integral part of the ABS system and uses some of the ABS system's components to perform its function of optimizing the distribution of braking force. If any of the ABS components used by the EBD system malfunction, the EBD system also stops working.

When the EBD system is operating, you may hear a chattering noise or feel a slight vibration in the brake pedal. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Steps to take if EBD system fails



If a malfunction occurs in the EBD system, the system stops working and the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously.

The EBD system may be malfunctioning if the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously while driving.

Even if the EBD system malfunctions, the conventional braking system will still function. However, the rear wheels will be more prone to locking when the brakes are applied harder than usual and the vehicle's motion may therefore become somewhat harder to control.

If the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously, take the following steps.

1. Stop the vehicle in the nearest safe, flat location.
2. Apply the parking brake and turn off the engine.
3. Restart the engine.
4. Release the parking brake.

Even if both warning lights turn off:

The EBD system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.

If both warning lights illuminate again and remain illuminated after restarting the engine:

1. Turn off the engine again.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Check the brake fluid level. For details about checking the brake fluid level, refer to "Checking the fluid level" ☞11-28.

- If the brake fluid level is not below the "MIN" mark, the EBD system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.
- If the brake fluid level is below the "MIN" mark, DO NOT drive the vehicle. Instead, we recommend that you have the vehicle

towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair.

⚠ WARNING

- **Driving with the brake system warning light illuminated is dangerous. This indicates your brake system may not be working properly. If the light remains illuminated, we recommend that you have the brakes inspected by a SUBARU dealer immediately.**
- **If at all in doubt about whether the brakes are operating properly, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have your vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair.**

Vehicle Dynamics Control system

⚠ WARNING

Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving a vehicle with the Vehicle Dynamics Control system could easily lead to a serious accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Even if your vehicle is equipped with Vehicle Dynamics Control, winter tires or snow chains should be used when driving on snow-covered or icy roads; in addition, vehicle speed should be reduced considerably. Simply having a Vehicle Dynamics Control system does not guarantee that the vehicle will be able to avoid accidents in any situation.**
- **When a vehicle is fitted with snow chains, the effectiveness of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is reduced and this should be taken into account when driving the vehicle in such a condition.**
- **Activation of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is an indication that the road being travelled on has a slippery surface; since having Vehicle Dynamics Control is no guarantee that full vehicle control will be maintained at all times and under all conditions, its activation should be seen as a sign that the speed of the vehicle should be reduced considerably.**
- **Whenever suspension components, steering components, or an axle are removed from a vehicle, we recommend that you have an inspection of that system performed by an authorized SUBARU dealer.**
- **Observe the following precautions in order to ensure that the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is operating properly:**
  - **Fit all four wheels with tires of the same size, type, and brand. Furthermore, the amount of wear should be the same for all four tires.**
  - **Keep the tire pressure at the proper level as shown on the**

– CONTINUED –

label attached to the vehicle's door pillar.

– Use only the special temporary spare tire to replace a flat tire. With a temporary spare tire, the effectiveness of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is reduced and this should be taken into account when driving the vehicle in such a condition.

- **If you use non-matching tires, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system may not operate correctly.**
- **The Vehicle Dynamics Control system helps prevent unstable vehicle motion such as skidding using control of the brakes and engine power. Do not turn off the Vehicle Dynamics Control system unless it is absolutely necessary. If you must turn off the Vehicle Dynamics Control system, drive very carefully according to the road surface condition.**

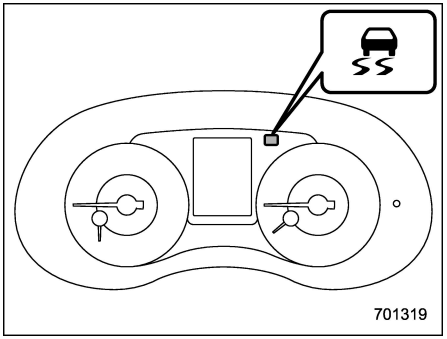
In the event of wheelspin and/or skidding on a slippery road surface and/or during cornering and/or an evasive maneuver, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system adjusts the engine's output and the wheels' respective braking forces to help maintain traction and directional control.

- **Traction Control Function**

The traction control function is designed to prevent spinning of the driving wheels on slippery road surfaces, thereby helping to maintain traction and directional control. Activation of this function is shown by flashing the Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light.

- **Skid Suppression Function**

The skid suppression function is designed to help maintain directional stability by suppressing the wheels' tendency to slide sideways during steering operations. Activation of this function is shown by flashing of the Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light.



Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light

NOTE

• The Vehicle Dynamics Control system may be considered normal when the following conditions occur.

– Slight twitching of the brake pedal is felt.

– The vehicle or steering wheel shakes to a small degree.

– An operating sound from the engine compartment is heard briefly when starting the engine and when driving off after starting the engine.

– The brake pedal seems to jolt when driving off after starting the engine.

• In the following circumstances, the vehicle may be less stable than it feels to the driver. The Vehicle Dynamics Control System may therefore operate. Such operation does not indicate a system malfunction.

– on gravel-covered or rutted roads

– on unfinished roads

– when the vehicle is fitted with snow tires or winter tires

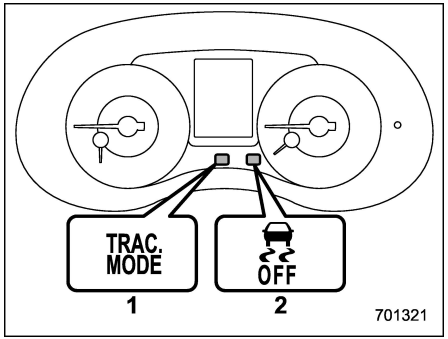
• Activation of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system will cause operation of the steering wheel to feel slightly different compared to that for normal conditions.

• It is always important to reduce speed when approaching a corner, even if your vehicle is equipped with the Vehicle Dynamics Control system.

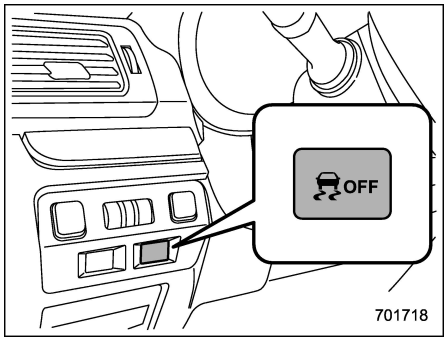
■ Vehicle Dynamics Control system monitor

Refer to “Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light” ☞3-22 and “Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light/ Traction mode indicator light /” ☞3-24.

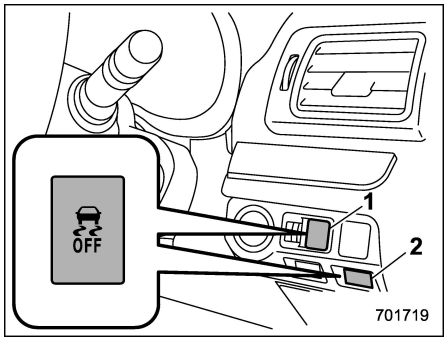
■ Vehicle Dynamics Control mode switch



1) Traction mode indicator light
2) Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light



Vehicle Dynamics Control mode switch (left-hand drive models)



Vehicle Dynamics Control mode switch (right-hand drive models)

1) Models with seat position memory switch
2) Models without seat position memory switch

– CONTINUED –

During engine operation, operate the Vehicle Dynamics Control mode switch to change the mode of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system.

▼ Vehicle Dynamics Control mode

When the ignition switch is on, this mode is selected first.

This mode enables all controls for ABS, the Traction Control System, and the Vehicle Dynamics Control system. Select this mode for most driving situations.
When this mode is selected, both indicator lights on the combination meter turn off.

▼ Traction mode

This mode restricts the functions of the Traction Control System and Vehicle Dynamics Control system and thus delays utilizing their functions as a reaction to vehicle behavior in comparison with the Vehicle Dynamics Control mode. Use this mode in driving situations where the vehicle dynamic performance will improve without decreasing engine torque control.

To select the traction mode:

Press the Vehicle Dynamics Control mode switch briefly during engine operation. Then the traction mode indicator light and the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light on the combination meter illuminate.

To reselect the Vehicle Dynamics Control mode:

Press the switch again. Then the traction mode indicator light and the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light turn off.

▼ Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF mode

This mode allows only the ABS control.

To select the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF mode:

Press and hold the Vehicle Dynamics Control mode switch for more than 2 seconds during engine operation. Then the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light on the combination meter illuminates.

To reselect the Vehicle Dynamics Control mode:

Press the switch again. Then the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light turns off.

Creating an adequate driving wheel slip by deactivating the Vehicle Dynamics Control system temporarily may help to escape from the following situations. Use the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF mode as necessary.

- a standing start on a steeply sloping road with a snowy, gravel-covered, or otherwise slippery surface
- extrication of the vehicle when its wheels are stuck in mud or deep snow

You should not deactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system except under the above-mentioned situations.

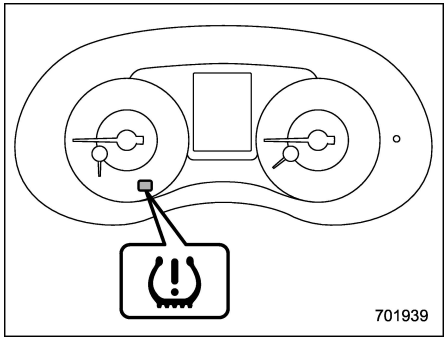
NOTE

- **When you have pressed the switch to deactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system automatically reactivates itself the next time the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and the engine is restarted.**
- **If you press and hold the switch for 30 seconds or longer, the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light turns off, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is activated, and the system ignores any further pressing of the switch. To make the switch usable again, turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and restart the engine.**
- **When the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF mode is selected, the vehicle's running performance is comparable with that of a vehicle that does not have a Vehicle Dynamics Control system. Do**

not deactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system except when absolutely necessary.

● Even when the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF mode is selected, components of the brake control system may still activate. When the brake control system is activated, the Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light illuminates.

Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (if equipped)



Low tire pressure warning light

The tire pressure monitoring system provides the driver with a warning message by sending a signal from a sensor that is installed in each wheel when the tire pressure is severely low relative to the selected TPMS mode.

The tire pressure monitoring system will activate only when the vehicle is driven at speeds above 40 km/h (25 mph). Also, this system may not react immediately to a sudden drop in tire pressure (for example, a blow-out caused by running over a sharp object).

⚠ WARNING

- **If the low tire pressure warning light illuminates while driving, never brake suddenly. Instead, perform the following procedure. Otherwise an accident involving serious vehicle damage and serious personal injury could occur.**
  - **(1) Keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed.**
  - **(2) Slowly pull off the road to a safe place.**
  - **(3) Check the pressure for all four tires and adjust the pressure to the most appropriate one of two (normal or loading) COLD tire pressure shown on the tire placard on the door pillar on the driver's side.**

  Even when the vehicle is driven a very short distance, the tires get warm and their pressures increase accordingly. Be sure to let the tires cool thoroughly before adjusting their pressures to the standard values shown on the tire placard. Refer to "Tires and wheels" ☞11-34. The tire pressure monitoring system does not

– CONTINUED –

function when the vehicle is stationary. After adjusting the tire pressures, increase the vehicle speed to at least 40 km/h (25 mph) to start the TPMS rechecking of the tire inflation pressures. If the tire pressures are now above the severe low pressure threshold, the low tire pressure warning light should turn off a few minutes later.

If this light still illuminates while driving after adjusting the tire pressure, a tire may have significant damage and a fast leak that causes the tire to lose air rapidly. If you have a flat tire, replace it with a spare tire as soon as possible.

- **When a spare tire is mounted or a wheel rim is replaced without the original pressure sensor/transmitter being transferred, the low tire pressure warning light will illuminate steadily after blinking for approximately one minute. This indicates the TPMS is unable to monitor all four road wheels. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible for tire and sensor replacement and/or system resetting.**
- **When a tire is repaired with liquid sealant, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. You may reuse the wheel if there is no damage to it and if the sealant residue is properly cleaned off. If the light illuminates steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you promptly contact a SUBARU dealer to have the system inspected.**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not place metal film or any metal parts in the trunk. This may cause poor reception of the signals from the tire pressure sensors, and the tire pressure monitoring system will not function properly.

■ TPMS mode setting

Before driving your vehicle, make sure that the TPMS mode is set to the most appropriate one based on the loading condition of the vehicle.

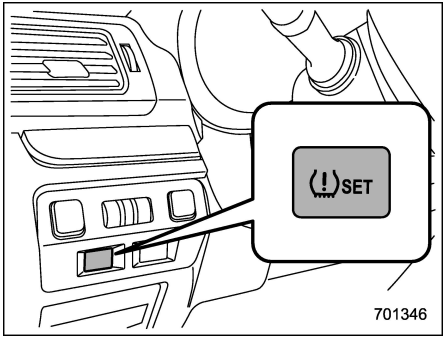
Set a mode under the following conditions.

- when the vehicle is stationary
- when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position

There are two types of TPMS mode settings.

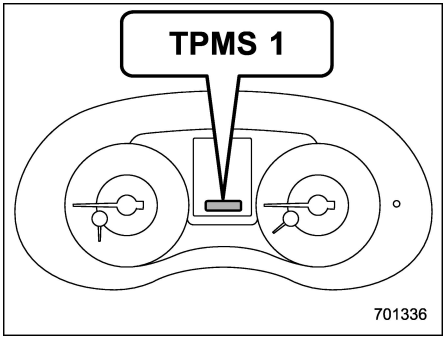
TPMS1:	Normal mode	
TPMS2:	Loading mode	

▼ TPMS mode selection



TPMS set switch

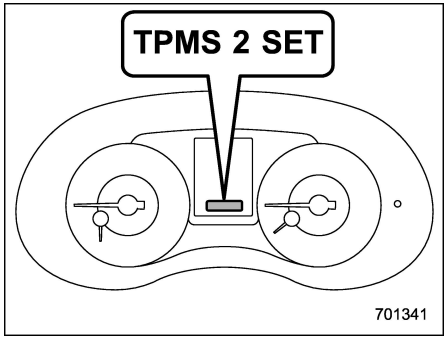
1. Press and hold the TPMS set switch (for approximately 3 seconds). The current TPMS mode will be displayed in the trip meter display, and the TPMS mode can be changed.



2. Briefly press the TPMS set switch to change the mode. The mode will change in the following sequence.

TPMS1 ⇄ TPMS2

3. When the desired mode is displayed, press and hold the switch (for approximately 3 seconds) to confirm the setting. Once the setting is complete, the confirmation message will be displayed (for example, if you select TPMS2, “TPMS2 SET” will be displayed).



After the TPMS mode is displayed, the trip meter will appear again.

NOTE

If no operations are performed while the TPMS mode selection is activated, the display will return to the trip meter after approximately 10 seconds.

Change the TPMS mode according to the specified pressure shown on the tire inflation pressure label.

Parking your vehicle

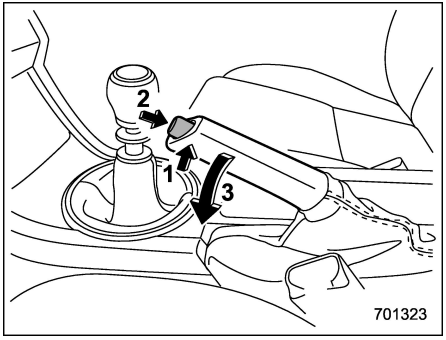
⚠ WARNING

- **Never leave unattended children or pets in the vehicle. They could accidentally injure themselves or others through inadvertent operation of the vehicle. Also, on hot or sunny days, the temperature in a closed vehicle could quickly become high enough to cause severe or possibly fatal injuries to them.**
- **Do not park the vehicle over flammable materials such as dry grass, waste paper or rags, as they may burn easily if they come near hot engine or exhaust system parts.**
- **Be sure to stop the engine if you take a nap in the vehicle. If engine exhaust gas enters the passenger compartment, occupants in the vehicle could die from carbon monoxide (CO) contained in the exhaust gas.**

– CONTINUED –

■ Parking brake (models without electronic parking brake system)

To set the parking brake, depress the brake pedal firmly and hold it down until the parking brake lever is fully pulled up.



To release the parking brake, perform the following procedure.

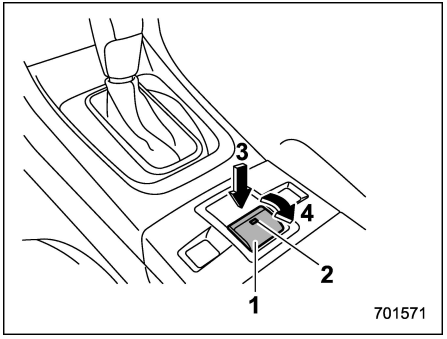
1. Pull the lever up slightly.
2. Press the release button.
3. Lower the lever while keeping the button pressed.

When the parking brake is set while the engine is running, the parking brake warning light illuminates. Be sure that the warning light is turned off before driving off. Refer to “Brake system warning light (red)” ☞3-25.

⚠ CAUTION

Never drive while the parking brake is set because this will cause unnecessary wear on the brake linings. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released before driving off.

■ Electronic parking brake (if equipped)



1) Parking brake switch
2) Indicator light
3) Release the electronic parking brake
4) Apply the electronic parking brake

⚠ WARNING

- **Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that you turn off the engine. Otherwise, the parking brake may be released and an accident may occur.**
- **If the electronic parking brake warning light illuminates, the electronic parking brake system may be malfunctioning. Immediately stop your vehicle in a safe location, use tire stops under the tires to prevent the vehicle from moving and we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **When the electronic parking brake system has a malfunction and the parking brake cannot be applied, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer immediately for an inspection. If you have to park your vehicle in such conditions, perform the following procedure.**
  - **– Stop your vehicle in a flat location.**

– Shift the select lever in the "P" position. When the select lever cannot be shifted into the "P" position, you must release shift lock. Refer to "Shift lock function" ☞7-24.

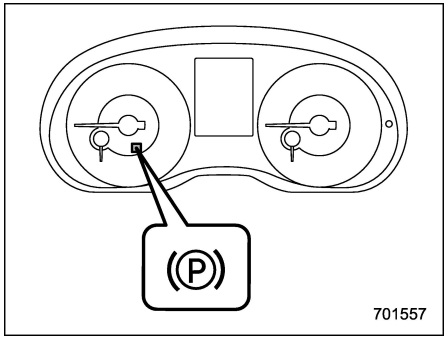
– Use tire stops under the tires to prevent the vehicle from moving.

- **Never drive with the parking brake applied. Doing so will cause unnecessary wear on the brake linings. Before driving off, always make sure that the parking brake has been released and the electronic parking brake indicator light has turned off.**

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic parking brake. You can apply/release the parking brake by operating the parking brake switch.

To apply: Pull up the parking brake switch.

To release: Press the parking brake switch firmly while the ignition switch is in the "ON" position and the brake pedal is depressed.



Electronic parking brake indicator light

When the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the "ON" position, the following indicator lights illuminate.

- the indicator light on the parking brake switch
- the electronic parking brake indicator light on the combination meter (for details, refer to "Electronic parking brake indicator light (models with electronic parking brake system)" ☞3-26.)

NOTE

- **If you press the parking brake switch under the following conditions, the parking brake will not be released.**
  - **– The ignition switch is in the "ACC" or "LOCK"/"OFF" position.**
  - **– You are not depressing the brake pedal.**
- **The electronic parking brake system uses motors to apply the parking brake. Therefore, operating sounds from the motors will be heard when applying or releasing the parking brake. Make sure that the motor sounds are heard when applying or releasing the parking brake. Additionally, the motor sounds will be heard when operating the select lever or depressing the brake pedal. This is not a malfunction. The sounds will occur when the electronic parking brake system automatically controls the motors.**
- **If you operate the parking brake switch under the following conditions, a chirp sound is heard and the electronic parking brake indicator light flashes.**
  - **– when the electronic parking brake system has a malfunction**
  - **– when the electronic parking brake operation is prohibited temporarily**
- **When the electronic parking brake is applied under any of the following conditions, the operating sound of the electronic parking brake may be heard several minutes after the electronic parking brake indicator light illuminates. However, this does not indicate**

– CONTINUED –

a malfunction.

– The parking brake overheats.

– The vehicle is parked on a steep slope.

– You operate the parking brake switch after the ignition switch has been turned off.

● If you use the electronic parking brake under the following conditions, the electronic parking brake indicator light may flash.

– The parking brake overheats.

– The vehicle is stopped on a steep slope.

Even in these cases, the electronic parking brake will operate. However, use tire stops because the vehicle may move.

▼ Automatic release function by accelerator pedal

The electronic parking brake system has an automatic release function. The parking brake will be automatically released by depressing the accelerator pedal. However, the automatic release function does not operate under the following conditions.

- Any door is open.
- The driver's seatbelt is not fastened.
- The select lever is in the "P" or "N" position.

If the parking brake is automatically released, the electronic parking brake indicator light and the indicator light on the parking brake switch turn off.

NOTE

While pulling up the parking brake switch, the parking brake will not be automatically released even when the accelerator pedal is depressed.

▼ Auto Vehicle Hold function

The Auto Vehicle Hold function will automatically keep the vehicle stopped even after releasing the brake pedal when the vehicle is at a complete stop, such as at traffic signals. The function will be canceled by either of the following operations.

- Depressing the accelerator pedal
- Depressing the brake pedal again

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not use the Auto Vehicle Hold function on a steep hill or slippery road. The vehicle may move even when using the Auto Vehicle Hold function, causing serious injury or accidents.**
- **Do not use the Auto Vehicle Hold function to park the vehicle. The vehicle may move unexpectedly, causing serious injury or accidents. Make sure to shift the select lever to the "P" position and apply the electronic parking brake in the following cases.**
  - **– When you are going to park your vehicle**
  - **– When passengers are getting in or out of the vehicle**
  - **– When you are loading or unloading**
- **When using the Auto Vehicle Hold function, do not release the brake pedal before the Auto Vehicle Hold operation indicator illuminates. The vehicle may move unexpectedly, causing serious injury or accidents.**
- **Deactivate the Auto Vehicle Hold function in the following cases. Otherwise, the vehicle may move unexpectedly, causing serious injury or accidents.**
  - **– When washing your vehicle in an automatic car wash**
  - **– When being towed**

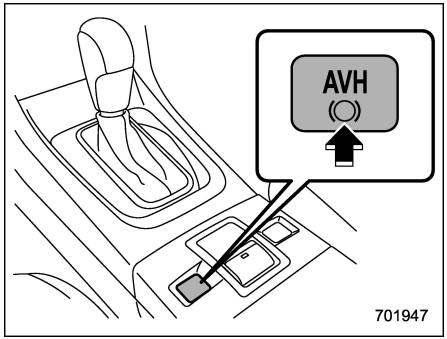
⚠ CAUTION

When stopping on a steep slope with the Auto Vehicle Hold function turned on, the electronic parking brake may be automatically applied. Then the electronic parking brake indicator light will flash. In such a case, depress and hold the brake pedal while stopping. Otherwise, the vehicle may move.

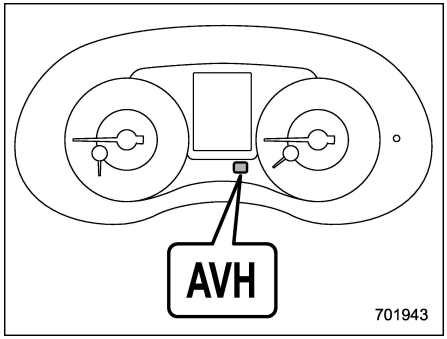
NOTE

We recommend turning on the Auto Vehicle Hold function when stopping on an incline. If the Auto Vehicle Hold function is turned off, the vehicle may roll backward when driving off.

▽ **To turn on/off the Auto Vehicle Hold function**



Auto Vehicle Hold switch



Auto Vehicle Hold ON indicator light

To turn on:

Press the Auto Vehicle Hold switch when the Auto Vehicle Hold ON indicator light is OFF. Then the Auto Vehicle Hold ON indicator light will illuminate.

Even after turning on the Auto Vehicle Hold function, it will automatically turn off once the ignition switch is turned to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position. The function will remain turned off when the ignition switch is turned back to the “ON” position.

To turn off:

Press the Auto Vehicle Hold switch when the Auto Vehicle Hold ON indicator light illuminates. Then the Auto Vehicle Hold ON indicator light will turn off.

NOTE

- **When the electronic parking brake system has a malfunction while the Auto Vehicle Hold function is turned on, a chirp will sound, the Auto Vehicle Hold ON indicator light will turn off and the brake system warning light will turn on.**
- **If you press and hold the Auto Vehicle Hold switch for more than 30 seconds, the Auto Vehicle Hold ON indicator light will turn off, and the system will ignore any further pressing of the switch. To activate the switch again, restart the engine.**

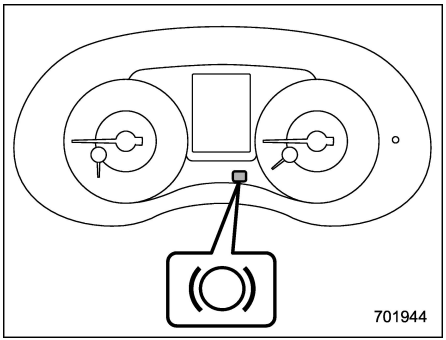
– CONTINUED –

• When the Auto Vehicle Hold function is deactivated while the Auto Vehicle Hold function has a malfunction, if you press the Auto Vehicle Hold switch, a chirp will sound.

▽ To operate the Auto Vehicle Hold function

Stop the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal when all of the following conditions are met. Then the Auto Vehicle Hold function will operate.

- All doors are closed.
- The driver's seatbelt is fastened.
- The select lever is in a position other than the "P" position.



Auto Vehicle Hold operation indicator light

While the vehicle is kept stopped by the Auto Vehicle Hold function, the Auto Vehicle Hold operation indicator light will illuminate.

▽ To release the Auto Vehicle Hold function

Perform any of the following operations to release the Auto Vehicle Hold function.

- Depress the accelerator pedal.
- Depress the brake pedal again.
- Apply the electronic parking brake.
- Shift the select lever to the "P" position with the brake pedal pressed.
- Press the Auto Vehicle Hold switch with the brake pedal pressed.

When the Auto Vehicle Hold function is released, the Auto Vehicle Hold operation indicator light will turn off.

Under any of the following conditions, the Auto Vehicle Hold function will be automatically released and the electronic parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The Auto Vehicle Hold function has been in operation for 10 minutes.
- The driver's seatbelt is unfastened.
- The driver's door is opened.
- The ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
- The vehicle is stopped on a steep slope.
- The Auto Vehicle Hold function is malfunctioning.

In such cases, the Auto Vehicle Hold operation indicator light will turn off and the electronic parking brake indicator light will illuminate.

▽ Tips

- When the electronic parking brake is automatically applied with the vehicle kept stopped by the Auto Vehicle Hold function, release the electronic parking brake by either of the following operations before starting off. Then make sure that the electronic parking brake indicator light is off.
  - – Depress the accelerator pedal with the driver's seatbelt fastened and with the doors closed.
  - – Press the electronic parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.
- Under certain conditions, including a malfunction of the Auto Vehicle Hold, a warning buzzer will sound and a warning message will appear on the combination meter display (color LCD). All warning messages should be strictly observed.
- On a steep slope, the vehicle cannot be kept stopped by the Auto Vehicle Hold function. In such a case, depress and hold

the brake pedal.

- When stopping on a steep slope with the Auto Vehicle Hold function activated, the electronic parking brake may automatically applied after stopping, then the electronic parking brake indicator light may flash. In such a case, depress and hold the brake pedal while stopped. Otherwise, the vehicle may move. When getting out of the vehicle, stop the vehicle on a flat surface, then apply the electronic parking brake.
- If the Auto Vehicle Hold ON indicator light does not illuminates even after pressing the Auto Vehicle Hold switch with the operating conditions met, the function may have a malfunction. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.
- You may hear a sound while the Auto Vehicle Hold function is keeping your vehicle stopped. This is normal, and does not represent a malfunction.
- While the vehicle is kept stopped by the Auto Vehicle Hold function, the brake pedal may feel stiff. However, this is not a malfunction.
- When using the Auto Vehicle Hold function, depress the brake pedal firmly. Otherwise, the Auto Vehicle Hold may not operate.
- When the Auto Vehicle Hold switch is pressed and held for more than 30 seconds, the Auto Vehicle Hold ON indicator light will turn off and further operation of the switch will be ignored. To make the switch usable again, turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position and then turn it to the “ON” position.

▼ Emergency brake

⚠ CAUTION

Use the emergency brake only in case of an emergency. If the emergency brake is excessively used, the brake parts will wear down faster or the brake may not work sufficiently due to rear wheel brake overheating.

NOTE

While using the emergency brake, the electronic parking brake indicator light and the indicator light on the parking brake switch illuminate and a chirp sounds.

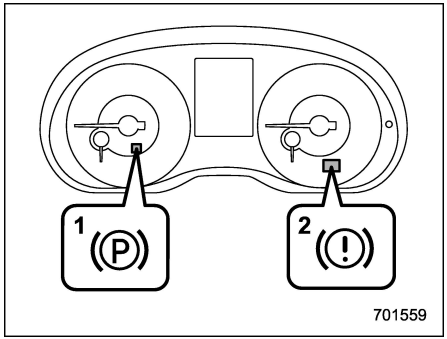
If the foot brake has a malfunction, you can stop the vehicle by pulling the parking brake switch continuously.

While applying the emergency brake, the electronic parking brake indicator light and the indicator on the parking brake switch illuminate and a chirp sounds.

▼ Electronic parking brake system warning

⚠ CAUTION

If the electronic parking brake indicator light flashes, the electronic parking brake system may be malfunctioning. Immediately stop your vehicle in the nearest safe location and we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.



1) Electronic parking brake indicator light
2) Electronic parking brake warning light

If a malfunction occurs in the electronic parking brake system, the electronic parking brake warning light illuminates and/or the electronic parking brake indicator light flashes. Refer to “Electronic parking brake

– CONTINUED –

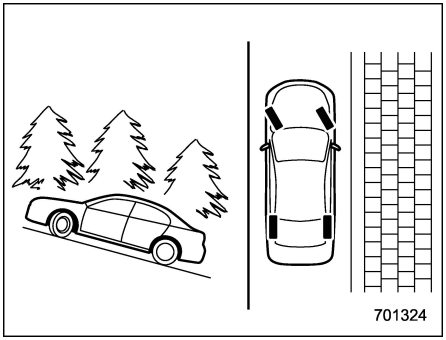
warning light (yellow) (models with electronic parking brake system)" ☞3-26 and "Electronic parking brake indicator light (models with electronic parking brake system)" ☞3-26.

■ Parking tips

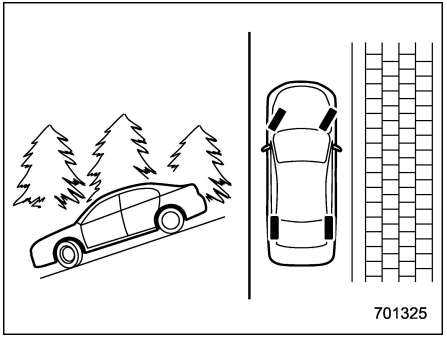
When parking your vehicle, always perform the following items.

- Apply the parking brake.
- For MT models, put the shift lever in the "1" (1st) for upgrade or "R" (Reverse) for a downgrade.
- For CVT models, put the select lever in the "P" (Park) position.

Never rely on the mechanical friction of the transmission alone to hold the vehicle.



When parking on a hill, always turn the steering wheel. When the vehicle is headed up the hill, turn the front wheels away from the curb.



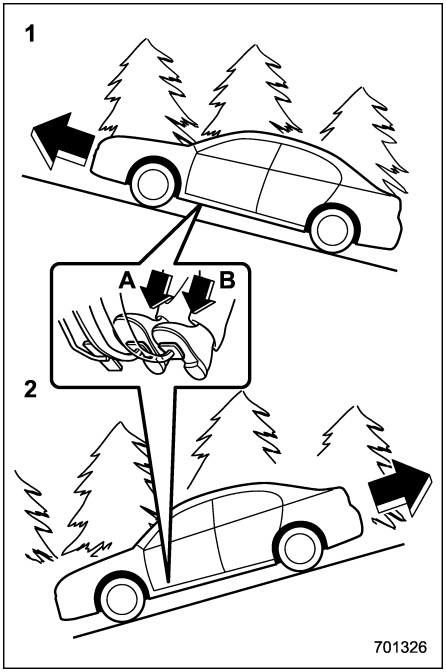
When facing downhill, turn the front wheels into the curb.

Hill start assist system (models without electronic parking brake system)

⚠ WARNING

- **The Hill start assist system is a device only for helping the driver to START the vehicle on an uphill grade. To prevent accidents when the vehicle is parked on a slope, be sure to firmly set the parking brake. When setting the parking brake, make sure that the vehicle remains stationary when the clutch pedal (MT models) and brake pedal (both MT and CVT models) is released.**
- **Do not turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position while the Hill start assist system is operating. The Hill start assist system will be deactivated, causing an accident.**

The Hill start assist system is a device to make the following vehicle operations easier.



1) Starting forward facing uphill
2) Starting backward facing downhill
A) Brake pedal (both MT models and CVT models)
B) Clutch pedal (MT models only)

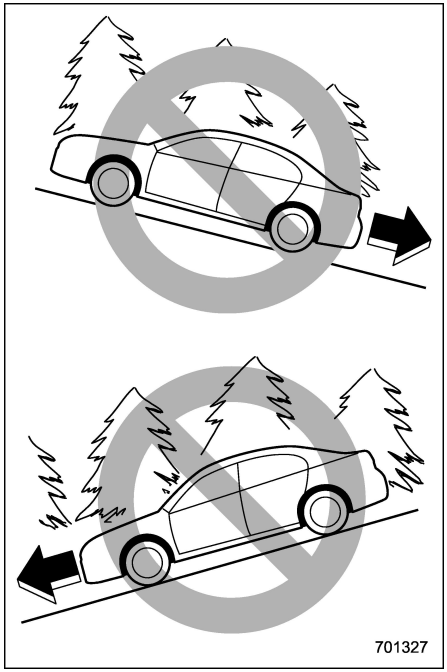
In both these cases, the Hill start assist system operates under the following conditions.

- when depressing both the clutch pedal and the brake pedal (MT models)
- when the vehicle has stopped with the brake pedal depressed (CVT models)

Braking power is maintained temporarily (for approximately 2 seconds) by the Hill start assist system after the brake pedal is released. The driver is therefore able to start the vehicle in the same way as on a level grade, just using the clutch pedal (MT models only) and accelerator pedal (all models).

If the braking power of the Hill start assist system is insufficient after the brake pedal is released, apply more braking power by depressing the brake pedal again.

The Hill start assist system may not operate on slight grades. Also, the Hill start assist system does not operate in the following cases.



- when starting backward facing uphill
- when starting forward facing downhill
- while the parking brake is applied
- while the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “LOCK”/“OFF” position
- while the Hill start assist warning light/

– CONTINUED –

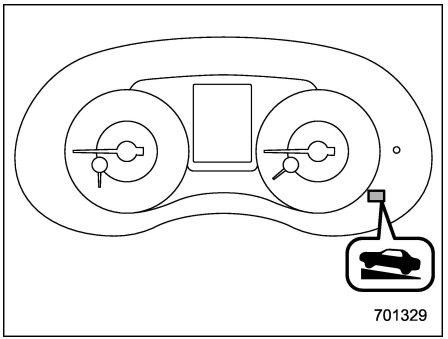
Hill start assist OFF indicator light is illuminated

When starting in reverse and using the Hill start assist system, a braking effect may be felt even after the brake pedal has been released. However, this braking effect should disappear once the clutch pedal is released.

NOTE

A slight jolt may be felt when the vehicle begins to move forward after being reversed.

■ To activate/deactivate the Hill start assist system



Hill start assist OFF indicator light

⚠ CAUTION

When starting on an uphill grade, make sure the Hill start assist OFF indicator light is off. If the Hill start assist OFF indicator light is on, make sure the parking brake is applied.

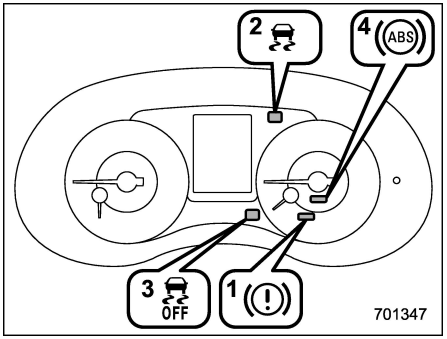
To activate and deactivate the Hill start assist system, perform the following steps.

NOTE

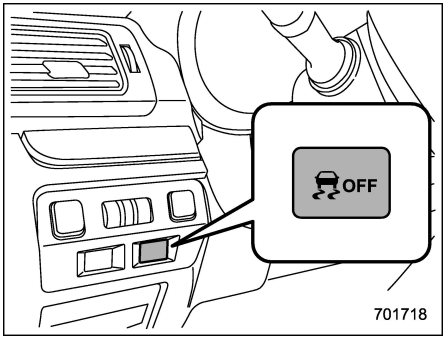
If you make an error when performing any steps in the following procedure, place the ignition switch in the "LOCK"/ "OFF" position once and then start over again.

▼ To deactivate

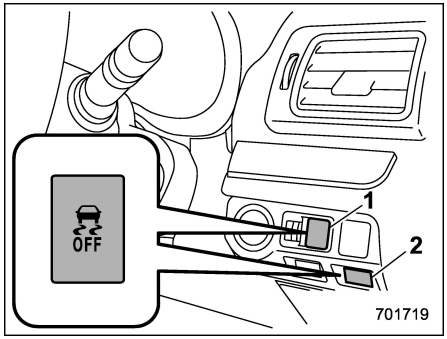
1. Park your vehicle in a flat and safe location and apply the parking brake.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/ "OFF" position.
3. Restart the engine.



4. Confirm the following items.
   (1) The Brake system warning light illuminates.
   (2) The Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light turns off.
   (3) The Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light turns off.
   (4) The ABS warning light turns off.



Vehicle Dynamics Control mode switch (left-hand drive models)

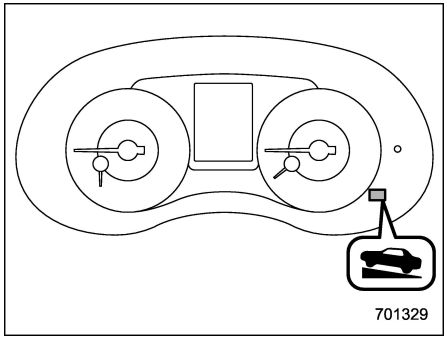


Vehicle Dynamics Control mode switch (right-hand drive models)

1) Models with seat position memory switch
2) Models without seat position memory switch

5. Press and hold the Vehicle Dynamics Control mode switch for 30 seconds until the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light "OFF" on the combination meter turns on and off.

6. Within 5 seconds, release the Vehicle Dynamics Control mode switch.



Hill start assist OFF indicator light

7. Within 2 seconds, press back the Vehicle Dynamics Control mode switch once again. Then the Hill start assist OFF indicator light turns on and off.

8. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position. The hill start assist system is deactivated.

NOTE

While the Hill start assist system is deactivated, the Hill start assist OFF indicator light illuminates continuously.

– CONTINUED –

▼ **To reactivate**

To reactivate the Hill start assist system, repeat steps 1 to 8. When the Hill start assist system is activated, the Hill start assist OFF indicator light turns off.

■ Hill start assist warning light/ Hill start assist OFF indicator light

Refer to “Hill start assist warning light/Hill start assist OFF indicator light” ☞3-27.

Cruise control

NOTE

For models with the EyeSight system: Refer to the Owner’s Manual supplement for the EyeSight system.

Cruise control enables you to maintain a constant vehicle speed without holding your foot on the accelerator pedal and it is operative when the vehicle speed is 30 km/h (20 mph) or more.

⚠ WARNING

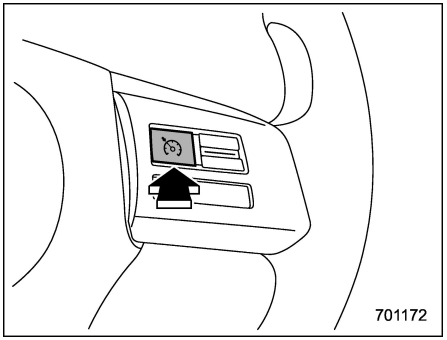
Do not use the cruise control under any of the following conditions. These may cause loss of vehicle control.

- **driving up or down a steep grade**
- **driving on slippery or winding roads**
- **driving in heavy traffic**

NOTE

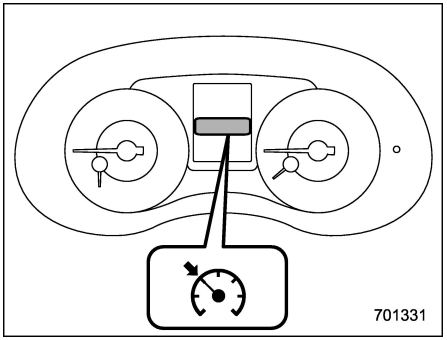
Make sure the cruise control system is turned off when the cruise control is not in use to avoid unintentionally setting of the cruise control.

■ To set cruise control



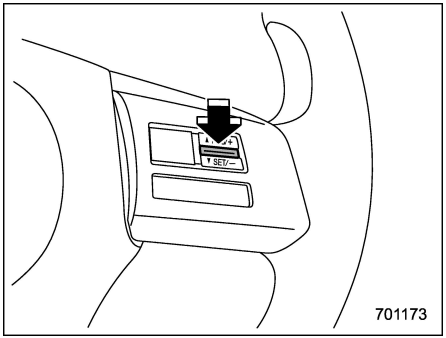
Cruise control main button

1. Press the cruise control main button.



The cruise control indicator on the combination meter will appear.

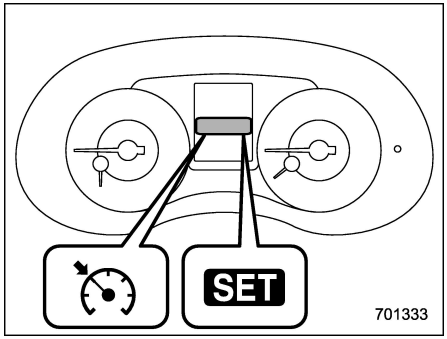
2. Depress the accelerator pedal until the vehicle reaches the desired speed.



3. Press the “RES/SET” switch to the “SET” side and release it. Then release the accelerator pedal.

NOTE

Except STI: When setting a cruise speed for the first time during a drive, both “SET” and “RES” may be used to set the initial cruise speed.



At this time, the cruise control set indicator appears in the combination meter.

The vehicle will maintain the desired speed.

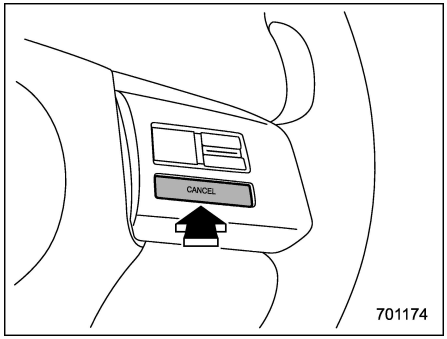
You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed while driving with the cruise control activated. Simply depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle. When you release the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will return to and maintain the previous cruising speed.

NOTE

For CVT models, when you set the desired speed while the Sport Sharp (S#) mode is selected, the select lever/gear position indicator will change from the current gear position indication to the “D” indication.

■ To temporarily cancel the cruise control

You can temporarily cancel the cruise control in the following ways.



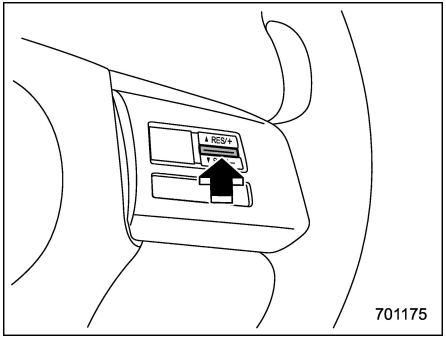
- Press the “CANCEL” button.
- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal (MT models only).

– CONTINUED –

⚠ WARNING

For CVT models, you can cancel the cruise control by shifting the select lever into the "N" position. However, do not shift the lever into the "N" position while driving except in case of emergency. If the select lever is shifted into the "N" position, the engine brake will no longer work. This could result in an accident.

The cruise control set indicator in the combination meter disappears when the cruise control is canceled.



To resume the cruise control after it has been temporarily canceled and with vehicle speed of approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) or more, press the "RES/SET" switch to the "RES" side to return to the original cruising speed automatically.

The cruise control set indicator in the combination meter will automatically appear at this time.

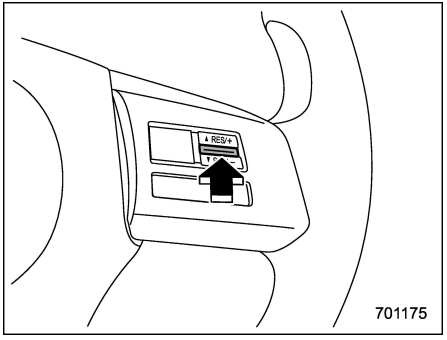
■ To turn off the cruise control

There are two ways to turn off the cruise control:

- Press the cruise control main button again.
- Turn the ignition switch to the "ACC" or "LOCK/OFF" position (but only when the vehicle is completely stopped).

■ To change the cruising speed

▼ To increase the speed (by the "RES/SET" switch)



Press the "RES/SET" switch to the "RES" side and hold it until the vehicle reaches the desired speed. Then, release the switch. The vehicle speed at that moment will be memorized and treated as the new set speed.

U.K. models:

You can increase the set speed 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time by pressing the "RES/SET" switch to the "RES" side quickly.

Except U.K. models:

You can increase the set speed 1 km/h (0.6 mph) each time by pressing the "RES/SET" switch to the "RES" side quickly.

▼ To increase the speed (by accelerator pedal)

1. Depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle to the desired speed.
2. Press the "RES/SET" switch to the "SET" side once. Now the desired speed is set and the vehicle will keep running at that speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

NOTE

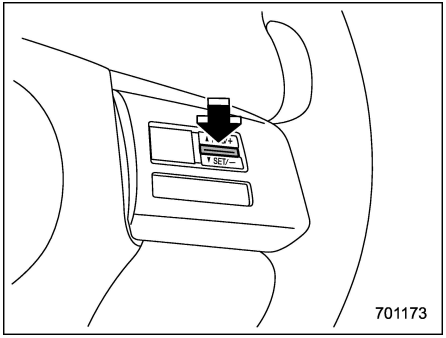
CVT models:

- **If you depress the accelerator pedal with the Sport Sharp (S#) mode selected, the select lever/gear position**

indicator may change from the "D" indication to the current gear position indication.

- **If you depress the accelerator pedal fully with the Intelligent (I) mode or the Sport (S) mode selected, the transmission will operate like a conventional automatic transmission.**

▼ To decrease the speed (by the "RES/SET" switch)



Press the "RES/SET" switch to the "SET" side and hold it until the vehicle reaches the desired speed. Then, release the switch. The vehicle speed at that moment will be memorized and treated as the new set speed.

U.K. models:

You can lower the set speed 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time by pressing the "RES/SET" switch to the "SET" side quickly.

Except U.K. models:

You can lower the set speed 1 km/h (0.6 mph) each time by pressing the "RES/SET" switch to the "SET" side quickly.

▼ To decrease the speed (by brake pedal)

1. Depress the brake pedal to release cruise control temporarily.
2. When the speed decreases to the desired speed, press the "RES/SET" switch to the "SET" side once. Now the desired speed is set and the vehicle will keep running at that speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

■ Cruise control indicator

Refer to "Cruise control indicator" ☞3-36.

■ Cruise control set indicator

Refer to "Cruise control set indicator" ☞3-36.

Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD) (if equipped)

The Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD) consists of rear radar with Blind Spot Detection, Lane Change Assist, and Rear Cross Traffic Alert.

These functions enable the system to detect objects or vehicles to the rear, and alert the driver when changing lanes or reversing the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

The driver is responsible for driving safely. Always be sure to check the surroundings with your eyes when changing lanes or reversing the vehicle.

The system is designed to assist the driver in changing lanes or reversing safely by monitoring the rear and side areas of the vehicle. However, you cannot rely on this system alone in assuring the safety during a lane change or reversing. Overconfidence in this system could result in an accident and lead to serious injury or death. Since the system operation has various limitations, the flashing or illumination of the SRVD approach indicator light may

– CONTINUED –

be delayed or it may not operate at all even when a vehicle is present in a neighboring lane or approaching from either side.

The driver is responsible for paying attention to the rear and side areas of the vehicle.

■ System features

SRVD consists of the following functions:

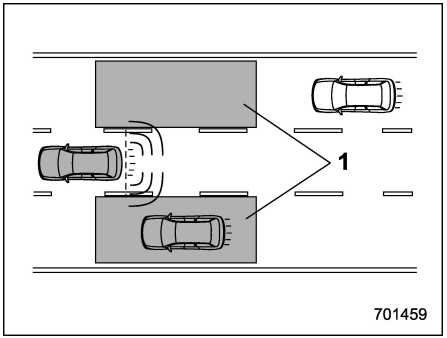
- to detect a vehicle in a blind spot in an adjacent lane or a vehicle approaching at high speed while driving the vehicle (Blind Spot Detection and Lane Change Assist)
- to detect a vehicle approaching from right or left while reversing the vehicle (Rear Cross Traffic Alert)

The system uses radar sensors for the following features.

NOTE

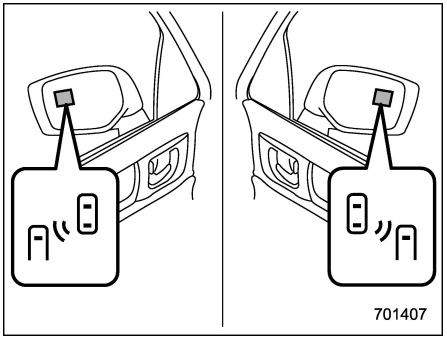
The SRVD radar sensor is approved under the radio wave related laws of each country. Refer to chapter 13.

▼ Blind Spot Detection (BSD)



1) Operating range

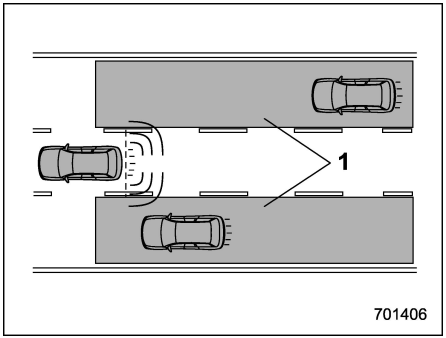
The system warns the driver of dangers as follows.



SRVD approach indicator light

- If the system detects vehicles in the driver's blind spots, the SRVD approach indicator light(s) on the outside mirror(s) will illuminate.
- If the driver operates the turn signal lever to the side where the SRVD approach indicator light is illuminated, the corresponding SRVD approach indicator light will flash.

▼ Lane Change Assist (LCA)

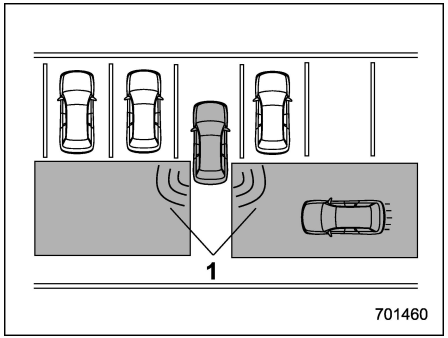


1) Operating range

The system warns the driver of dangers as follows.

- If the system detects vehicles approaching at high speeds in the neighboring lanes, the SRVD approach indicator light(s) on the outside mirror(s) will illuminate.
- If the driver operates the turn signal lever to the side where the SRVD approach indicator light is illuminated, the corresponding SRVD approach indicator light will flash.

▼ Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)



1) Operating range

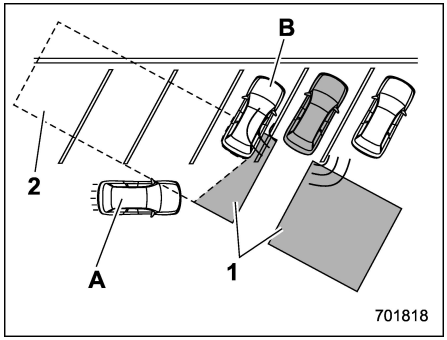
The system notifies the driver of another vehicle approaching from either side when driving in reverse. This feature helps the driver check the rear and side areas of the vehicle when moving backward.

If the system detects a vehicle approaching from either side while moving backward, it warns the driver of dangers in the following way.

- The SRVD approach indicator light(s) on the outside mirror(s) flashes.
- A warning buzzer sounds.

▽ Limitations of the detectability of RCTA

Since the detectability of RCTA is limited, the RCTA may not operate properly in angled parking.



Example 1

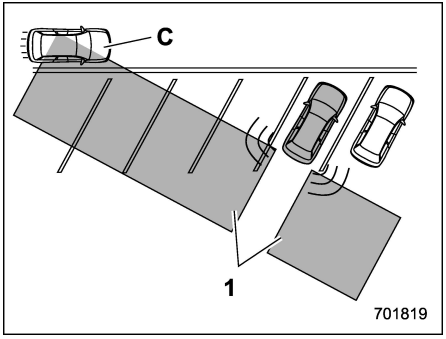
1) The detection range of the radar sensors
2) Area out of detection range of the radar sensors

A) Vehicle that may not be detected
B) Parked vehicle

– CONTINUED –

⚠ WARNING

An approaching vehicle (A) may not be detected because the detection range is limited by the parked vehicle (B). Always be sure to check the surroundings with your eyes when reversing the vehicle.



Example 2
1) The detection range of the radar sensors
C) Vehicle that may be detected

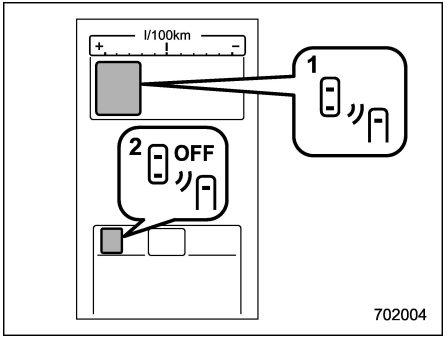
NOTE

The system may detect that a vehicle (C) is passing in front of your vehicle. Always be sure to check the surroundings with your eyes when reversing the vehicle.

■ System operation

▼ Operating conditions

The SRVD will operate when all of the following conditions are met.



1) SRVD warning indicator
2) SRVD OFF indicator

- The ignition switch is in the “ON” position.
- The SRVD warning indicator and SRVD OFF indicator are turned off.
- The vehicle speed is above 12 km/h (7 mph) (except when reversing).
- The shift lever/select lever is in the “R” position (RCTA only).

The SRVD will not operate in the following situations.

- The SRVD OFF indicator is on.
- The vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph) even when the SRVD OFF indicator remains off (except when reversing).

NOTE

- **When a malfunction occurs in the system (including the SRVD approach indicator light), the SRVD will stop operating and the SRVD warning indicator will appear. If the SRVD warning indicator appears, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.**
- **In the following cases, the SRVD will temporarily stop operating (or may stop operating) and the SRVD warning indicator will appear.**
  - **– When the radar sensor becomes significantly misaligned (If the orientation of the radar sensor is shifted for any reason, readjustment is required. We recommend that you have the sensor adjusted at a SUBARU dealer.)**
  - **– When a large amount of snow or ice sticks to the rear bumper surface around the radar sensors**
  - **– When the vehicle is driven on a snow-covered road or in an environment in which there are no objects around (such as in a desert) for a long time**

– When the temperature around the radar sensors increased excessively due to long driving on uphill grades in summer, etc.
– When the temperature around the radar sensors becomes extremely low
– When the vehicle battery voltage lowers
– When the vehicle battery becomes overvoltage

The SRVD will resume operation once these conditions are corrected, and the SRVD warning indicator will disappear. However, if the SRVD warning indicator has appeared for a prolonged time, we recommend that you have the system inspected at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

- The detectability of the radar sensors is restricted. The SRVD detection may be impaired and the system may not operate properly under the following conditions.
  – When the rear bumper around the radar sensors is distorted
  – When ice, snow or mud adheres to the rear bumper surface around the radar sensors
  – When stickers, etc. are affixed on the areas of the radar sensors on the rear bumper
  – During adverse weather conditions such as rain, snow or fog
  – When driving on wet roads such as snow-covered roads and through puddles
- The radar sensors may not detect or may have difficulty detecting the following vehicles and objects.
  – Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, stationary objects on the road or road side and etc.
  – Vehicles with body shapes that the radar may not reflect (vehicles with lower body height such as sports cars or a trailer with no cargo)
  – Vehicles that are not approaching your vehicle even though they are in the detection area (either on a neighboring lane to the rear or beside your vehicle when reversing) (The system determines the presence of approaching vehicles based on data detected by the radar sensors.)
  – Vehicles traveling at significantly different speeds
  – Vehicles driving in parallel at almost the same speed as your vehicle for a prolonged time
  – Oncoming vehicles
  – Vehicles in a lane beyond the neighboring lane
  – Vehicles travelling at a significantly lower speed that you are trying to overtake
- On a road with extremely narrow lanes, the system may detect vehicles driving in a lane next to the neighboring lane.

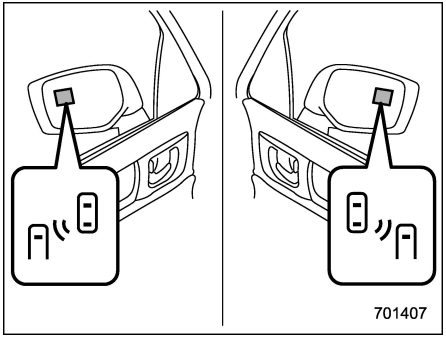
– CONTINUED –

■ SRVD approach indicator light/warning buzzer

While the SRVD is active, the following item(s) will operate to alert the driver.

- The SRVD approach indicator light (when there are vehicles in the neighboring lanes)
- The SRVD approach indicator light and warning buzzer (when a vehicle is approaching from the left or right side while reversing)

▼ SRVD approach indicator light



SRVD approach indicator light

It is mounted on each side of the outside mirrors.

The indicator light will illuminate when a vehicle approaching from behind is detected.

The indicator light will flash to warn the driver of dangers under the following conditions.

- While the indicator light is illuminating, if the turn signal lever is operated toward the side in which this light is turned on
- When reversing the vehicle while the system detects a vehicle approaching from either side

▽ SRVD approach indicator light dimming function

When the headlights are on, the brightness of the SRVD approach indicator light will be reduced.

NOTE

- **You may have difficulty seeing the SRVD approach indicator light under the following conditions.**
  - **– When sunlight shines directly on it**
  - **– When the headlight beams from a vehicle traveling behind shine directly on it**
- **While the illumination brightness control dial is in the fully upward position, even if the headlights are turned on, the brightness of the SRVD approach indicator light will not be reduced. For details about the illumination brightness control dial, refer to "Illumination brightness control" ☞3-71.**

▼ SRVD approach warning buzzer (only when reversing)

A warning buzzer sounds along with flashing of the SRVD approach indicator light to warn the driver of dangers.

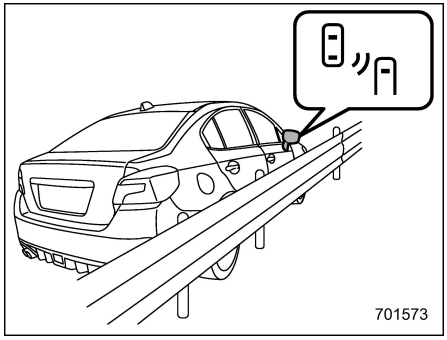
You can change the setting of the warning buzzer volume by operating the combination meter display (color LCD). For details, refer to "SRVD (Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection)" ☞3-44.

▼ Safety tips regarding the SRVD approach indicator light/warning buzzer

- In the following cases, operation of the SRVD approach indicator light and the warning buzzer may be delayed or the system may fail to issue these warnings.
  - – When a vehicle moves to the neighboring lane from a lane next to the neighboring lane
  - – When you are driving on a steep incline or on repeated sharp uphill and downhill grades
  - – When you are going beyond a pass
  - – When both your vehicle and a vehicle driving on a neighboring lane are driving on the far side of each lane.

– When several narrowly-spaced vehicles are approaching in a row
– In low radius bends (tight bends or when making turns at an intersection)
– When there is a difference in height between your lane and the neighboring lane
– Immediately after the SRVD is activated by pressing the SRVD OFF switch
– Immediately after the shift lever/ select lever is shifted to the “R” position
– When extremely heavy cargo is loaded in the trunk

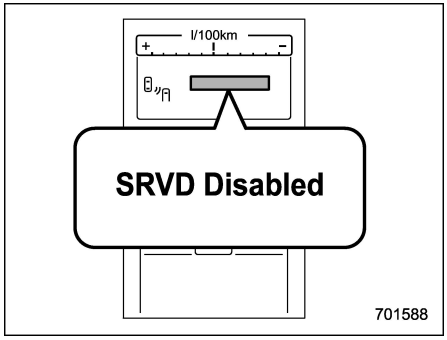
● During reversing, operation of the SRVD approach indicator light and the warning buzzer may be delayed or the system may fail to issue these warnings under the following conditions.
– When backing out of an angled parking space
– When a large-sized vehicle is parked next to your vehicle (That vehicle prevents the propagation of radar waves.)
– When reversing on sloped roads
– When reversing at a high speed


701573

● The SRVD approach indicator light may illuminate when driving close to solid objects on the road or road side (such as guardrails, tunnels and sidewalls).
● The SRVD approach indicator light may flash when turning at an intersection in urban areas or a multilane intersection.
● The SRVD approach indicator light may flash and the warning buzzer may sound if a building or a wall exists in the reversing direction.
● In the following cases, the system may detect a vehicle driving two lanes away from your vehicle.
– When your vehicle drives on the near side of its lane from the corresponding vehicle
– When the vehicle driving two lanes away drives on the near side of its lane from your vehicle

■ SRVD warning indicator

▼ System temporary stop indicator



System temporary stop indicator

This indicator appears when the system is used under the following conditions.
● Extremely high or low temperatures
● When abnormal voltage exists for the vehicle battery
● When the radar sensor is significantly misaligned

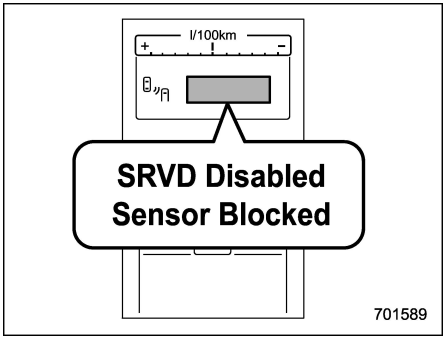
Once these conditions are corrected, the system will recover from the temporary stop condition and the indicator will disappear.

If the indicator remains displayed for a

– CONTINUED –

prolonged time, we recommend that you have the system inspected at a SUBARU dealer.

▼ **System temporary stop indicator due to reduced radar sensitivity**

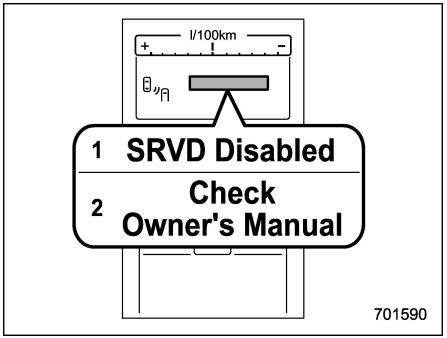


System temporary stop indicator due to reduced radar sensitivity

This indicator appears when the detectability of the radar sensors is reduced. Once the condition is corrected, the system will recover from the temporary stop condition and the indicator will disappear.

If the indicator remains displayed for a prolonged time, we recommend that you have the system inspected at a SUBARU dealer.

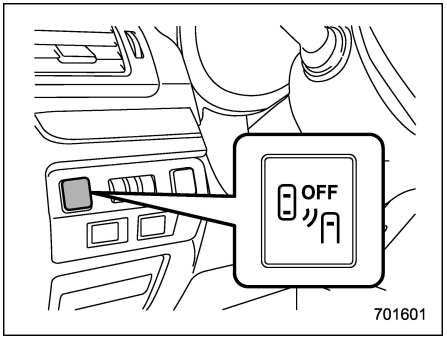
▼ **System malfunction indicator**



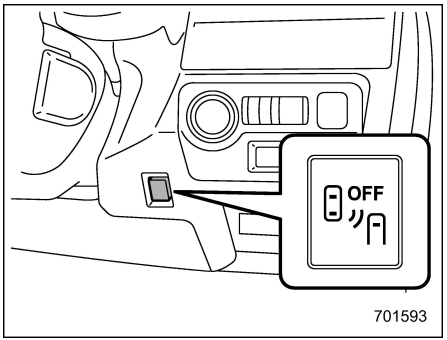
System malfunction indicator
1) At first, this message will appear
2) Then this message will appear

This indicator appears when a malfunction occurs in the system. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.

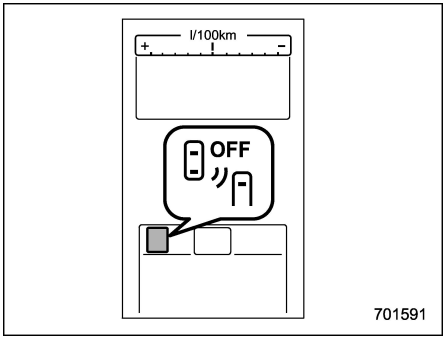
■ SRVD OFF switch



SRVD OFF switch (left-hand drive models)



SRVD OFF switch (right-hand drive models)



SRVD OFF indicator

Press the SRVD OFF switch to deactivate the SRVD. Then the SRVD OFF indicator light will appear on the combination meter display (color LCD).

Press the switch again to activate the SRVD. The SRVD OFF indicator disappears.

NOTE

● In the following cases, press the SRVD OFF switch to deactivate the system. The system may not operate properly due to blocked radar waves.

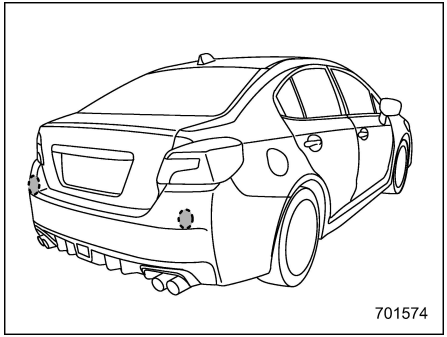
– When a bicycle carrier, ski carrier, snowboard carrier, or other item is fitted to the rear of the vehicle

– When using a chassis dynamometer or free roller device, etc.

– When running the engine and making the wheels rotate while lifting up the vehicle

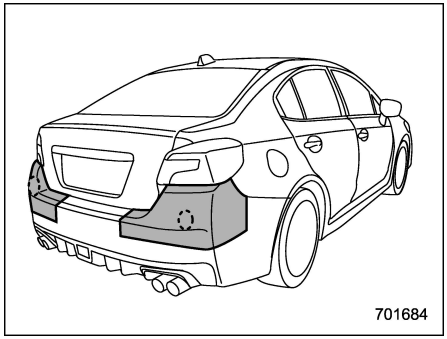
● If you turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position, the last known status of the system is maintained. For example, if you turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position with the SRVD deactivated, the SRVD remains deactivated the next time you turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.

■ Handling of radar sensors



Radar sensors

The radar sensors, one on each side of the vehicle, are mounted inside the rear bumper.



– CONTINUED –

⚠ CAUTION

To ensure correct operation of the SRVD, observe the following precautions.

- **Always keep the bumper surface near the radar sensors clean.**
- **Do not affix any stickers or other items on the bumper surface near the radar sensors. For details, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.**
- **Do not modify the bumper near the radar sensors.**
- **Do not paint the bumper near the radar sensors.**
- **Do not expose the bumper near the radar sensors to strong impacts. If a sensor becomes misaligned, a system malfunction may occur, including the inability to detect vehicles entering the detection areas. If any strong shock is applied to the bumper, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for inspection.**
- **Do not disassemble the radar sensors.**

NOTE

If the radar sensors require repair or replacement, or the bumper area around the radar sensors requires repair, paintwork or replacement, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for assistance.

New vehicle break-in driving – the first 1,600 km (1,000 miles) 8-2
Fuel economy hints 8-2
Engine exhaust gas (carbon monoxide) 8-2
Catalytic converter 8-3
Periodic inspections 8-4
Driving in foreign countries 8-4
Driving tips for AWD models 8-5
Driving precaution 8-6
Winter driving 8-6
Operation during cold weather 8-6
Driving on snowy and icy roads 8-8
Corrosion protection 8-9
Snow tires 8-9
Tire chains 8-10
Rocking the vehicle 8-10
Loading your vehicle 8-10
Roof molding and load carrier (if equipped) 8-11
Trailer towing 8-12

New vehicle break-in driving – the first 1,600 km (1,000 miles)

The performance and long life of your vehicle are dependent on how you handle and care for your vehicle while it is new. Follow these instructions during the first 1,600 km (1,000 miles):

- Do not allow the engine speed to exceed 4,000 rpm except in an emergency.
- Do not drive at one constant engine or vehicle speed.
- Avoid starting suddenly and rapid acceleration, except in an emergency.
- Avoid hard braking, except in an emergency.

The same break-in procedures should be applied to an overhauled engine, newly mounted engine or when brake pads or brake linings are replaced with new ones.

Fuel economy hints

The following suggestions will help to save your fuel.

- Select the proper gear position for the speed and road conditions.
- Avoid sudden acceleration or deceleration. Always accelerate gently until you reach the desired speed. Then try to maintain that speed for as long as possible.
- Do not pump the accelerator pedal and avoid racing the engine.
- Avoid unnecessary engine idling.
- Keep the engine properly tuned.
- Keep the tires inflated to the correct pressure shown on the tire placard, which is located under the door latch on the driver's side. Low pressure will increase tire wear and fuel consumption.
- Use the air conditioner only when necessary.
- Keep the front and rear wheels in proper alignment.
- Avoid carrying unnecessary luggage or cargo.
- The indication of the ECO gauge shows a reference for saving fuel. For details, refer to "ECO gauge" ☞3-12.

Engine exhaust gas (carbon monoxide)

⚠ WARNING

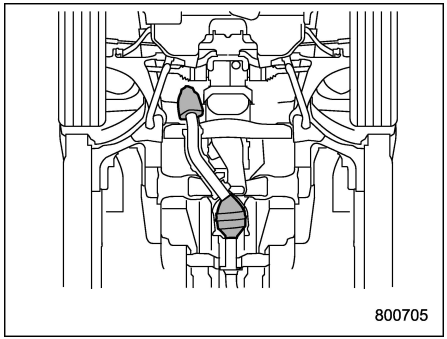
- **Never inhale engine exhaust gas. Engine exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas which is dangerous, or even lethal, if inhaled.**
- **Always properly maintain the engine exhaust system to prevent engine exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.**
- **Never run the engine in a closed space, such as a garage, except for the brief time needed to drive the vehicle in or out of it.**
- **Avoid remaining in a parked vehicle for a lengthy time while the engine is running. If that is unavoidable, then use the ventilation fan to force fresh air into the vehicle.**
- **Always keep the front ventilator inlet grille free from snow, leaves or other obstructions to ensure that the ventilation system always works properly.**

- **If at any time you suspect that exhaust fumes are entering the vehicle, have the problem checked and corrected as soon as possible. If you must drive under these conditions, drive only with all windows fully open.**
- **Keep the trunk lid closed while driving to prevent exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.**

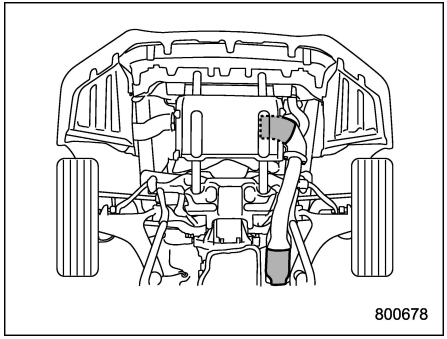
NOTE

Due to the expansion and contraction of the metals used in the manufacture of the exhaust system, you may hear a crackling sound coming from the exhaust system for a short time after the engine has been shut off. This sound is normal.

Catalytic converter



STI



Except STI

The catalytic converter is installed in the exhaust system. It serves as catalyst to reduce HC, CO and NOx in exhaust gases, thus providing cleaner exhaust.

To avoid damage to the catalytic converter:

- Use only unleaded petrol. Even a small amount of leaded fuel will damage the catalytic converter.
- Never start the engine by pushing or pulling the vehicle.
- Avoid racing the engine.
- Never turn off the ignition switch while the vehicle is moving.
- Keep your engine tuned-up. If you feel the engine running rough (misfiring, backfiring or incomplete combustion), we recommend that you have your vehicle checked and repaired by an authorized SUBARU dealer.
- Do not apply undercoating or rust prevention treatment to the heat shield of catalytic converter and the exhaust system.
- Do not drive with an extremely low fuel level.

– CONTINUED –

⚠ WARNING

- **Avoid fire hazards. Do not drive or park the vehicle anywhere near flammable materials (e.g. grass, paper, rags or leaves), because the catalytic converter operates at very high temperatures.**
- **Keep everyone and flammable materials away from the exhaust pipe while the engine is running. The exhaust gas is very hot.**

Periodic inspections

To keep your vehicle in the best condition at all times, always have the recommended maintenance services listed in the maintenance schedule performed at the specified time or mileage intervals.

Driving in foreign countries

When planning to use your vehicle in another country:

- Confirm the availability of the correct fuel. Refer to “Fuel” ☞7-3.
- Comply with all regulations and requirements of each country.

Driving tips for AWD models

⚠ WARNING

- **Always maintain a safe driving speed according to the road and weather conditions in order to avoid having an accident on a sharp turn, during sudden braking or under other similar conditions.**
- **Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving an All-Wheel Drive vehicle could easily lead to a serious accident.**
- **When you replacing or installing tire(s), all four tires must be the same for following items.**

  (a) Size

  (b) Circumference

  (c) Speed symbol

  (d) Load index

  (e) Construction

  (f) Manufacturer

  (g) Brand (tread pattern)

  (h) Degrees of wear

  For the items (a) to (d), you must obey the specification that is printed on the tire placard. The tire placard is located on the bottom of driver's door pillar.

  If all of four tires are not the same for items (a) to (h), there is a possibility that serious mechanical damage could occur to the drive train of your car, and affect the following.

  — Ride

  — Handling

  — Braking

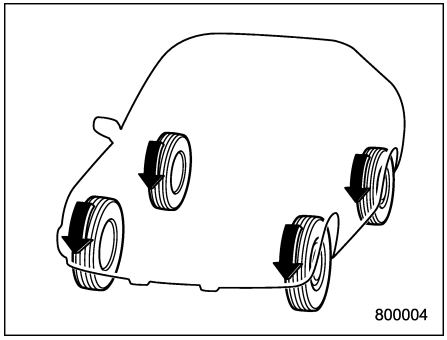
  — Speedometer/Odometer calibration

  — Clearance between the body and tires

  It also may be dangerous and lead to loss of vehicle control, and it can lead to an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

If you use a temporary spare tire to replace a flat tire, be sure to use the original temporary spare tire stored in the vehicle. Using other sizes may result in severe mechanical damage to the drive train of your vehicle.



All-Wheel Drive distributes the engine power to all four wheels. AWD models provide better traction when driving on slippery, wet or snow-covered roads and when moving out of mud, sand or dirt.

For safety purpose as well as to avoid damaging the AWD system, you should keep the following tips in mind:

- An AWD vehicle is better able to climb steeper roads under snowy or slippery conditions than a front wheel drive vehicle. There is little difference in handling, however, during extremely sharp turns or sudden braking. Therefore, when driving down a slope or turning corners, be sure to reduce your speed and maintain an ample distance from other vehicles.

– CONTINUED –

- Always check the cold tire pressure before starting to drive. The recommended tire pressure is provided on the tire placard, which is located under the door latch on the driver's side.
- When necessary, fit tire chains on the front wheels only. For details, refer to "Tire chains" ☞8-10.
- Frequent driving of an AWD vehicle under hard-driving conditions such as steep hills or dusty roads will necessitate more frequent replacement of the following items than that specified in "Maintenance schedule" ☞11-3.
  - Engine oil
  - Brake fluid
  - Rear differential gear oil
  - Manual transmission oil (MT models)
  - Continuously variable transmission fluid (CVT models)
  - Front differential gear oil (CVT models)
- There are some precautions that you must observe when towing your vehicle. For detail information, refer to "Towing" ☞9-13.

Driving precaution

Water entering the engine air intake or the exhaust pipe or water splashing onto electrical parts may damage your vehicle and may cause it to stall. Never attempt to drive through rushing water; regardless of its depth, it can wash away the ground from under your tires, resulting in possible loss of traction and even vehicle rollover.

Winter driving

■ Operation during cold weather

Carry some emergency equipment, such as tire chains, a window scraper, a bag of sand, flares, a small shovel, and jumper cables.

Check the battery and cables. Cold temperatures reduce battery capacity. The battery must be in good condition to provide enough power for cold winter starts.

It normally takes longer to start the engine in very cold weather conditions. Use an engine oil of a suitable grade and viscosity for cold weather. Using heavy summer oil will make it harder to start the engine.

Keep the door locks from freezing by squirting them with deicer or glycerin.

Forcing a frozen door open may damage or separate the rubber weather strips around the door. If the door is frozen, use hot water to melt the ice, and afterwards thoroughly wipe the water away.

Use a windshield washer fluid that contains an antifreeze solution. Do not use engine antifreeze or other substitutes because they may damage the paint of

the vehicle.

SUBARU Windshield Washer Fluid contains 58.5% methyl alcohol and 41.5% surfactant, by volume. Its freezing temperature varies according to how much it is diluted, as indicated in the following table.

Washer Fluid Concentration	Freezing Temperature
30%	**−12°C (10.4°F)**
50%	**−20°C (−4°F)**
100%	**−45°C (−49°F)**

In order to prevent freezing of washer fluid, check the freezing temperatures in the table above when adjusting the fluid concentration to the outside temperature.

If you fill the reservoir tank with a fluid with a different concentration from the one used previously, purge the old fluid from the piping between the reservoir tank and washer nozzles by operating the washer for a certain period of time. Otherwise, if the concentration of the fluid remaining in the piping is too low for the outside temperature, it may freeze and block the nozzles.

⚠ CAUTION

Adjust the washer fluid concentration appropriately for the outside temperature. If the concentration is inappropriate, sprayed washer fluid may freeze on the windshield and obstruct your view, and the fluid may freeze in the reservoir tank.

▼ Before driving your vehicle

Before entering the vehicle, remove any snow or ice from your shoes because that could make the pedals slippery and driving dangerous.

While warming up the vehicle before driving, check that the accelerator pedal, brake pedal, and all other controls operate smoothly.

Clear away ice and snow that has accumulated under the fenders to avoid making steering difficult. During severe winter driving, stop when and where it is safe to do so and check under the fenders periodically.

▼ Parking in cold weather

⚠ WARNING

Snow can trap dangerous exhaust gases under your vehicle. Keep snow clear of the exhaust pipe and from around your vehicle if you park the vehicle in snow with the engine running.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not use the parking brake when parking for long periods in cold weather since it could freeze in that position.**
- **When you park the vehicle in snow or when it snows, raise the wiper blades off the glass to prevent damage to them.**
- **Under either of the following conditions, icing may develop on the brake system, which could cause poor braking action.**
  - **When the vehicle has been left parked after use on roads heavily covered with snow**
  - **When the vehicle has been left parked during a snowstorm**

– CONTINUED –

Check for snow or ice buildup on the suspension, disc brakes and brake hoses underneath the vehicle. If there is caked snow or ice, remove it, being careful not to damage the disc brakes and brake hoses and ABS harness.

When parking for long periods in cold weather, you should observe the following tips.

1. For MT models, place the shift lever in the “1” or “R” position. For CVT models, place the select lever in the “P” position.
2. Use tire stops under the tires to prevent the vehicle from moving.

▼ Refueling in cold weather

To help prevent moisture from forming in the fuel system and the risk of its freezing, use of an antifreeze additive in the fuel tank is recommended during cold weather.

Use only additives that are specifically designed for this purpose. When an antifreeze additive is used, its effect lasts longer if the tank is refilled whenever the fuel level reaches half empty.

If your SUBARU is not going to be used for an extended period, it is best to have the fuel tank filled to capacity.

■ Driving on snowy and icy roads

To prevent skidding and slipping, avoid sudden braking, abrupt acceleration, high-speed driving, and sharp turning when driving on snowy or icy roads.

Always maintain ample distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you to avoid the need for sudden braking.

To supplement the foot brake, use the engine brake effectively to control the vehicle speed. (Shift into a lower gear when necessary.)

Avoid shifting down abruptly. Such behavior can cause the wheels to lock, possibly leading to loss of vehicle control.

An anti-lock brake system (ABS) enhances your vehicle’s braking performance on snowy and icy roads. For information about braking on slippery surfaces, refer to “ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)” ☞7-33 and “Vehicle Dynamics Control system” ☞7-35.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads such as snowy or icy roads. This may cause loss of vehicle control.

⚠ CAUTION

Avoid prolonged continuous driving in snowstorms. Snow will enter the engine’s intake system and may hinder the airflow, which could result in engine shutdown or even breakdown.

▼ Wiper operation when snowing

Before driving in cold weather, make sure the wiper blade rubbers are not frozen to the windshield.

If the wiper blade rubbers are frozen to the windshield, perform the following procedure.

- To thaw the windshield wiper blade rubbers, use the defroster and set the temperature for maximum warmth until the wiper blade rubbers are completely thawed. Refer to “Defrosting” ☞4-10.
- If your vehicle is equipped with a wiper deicer, use it. It is helpful to thaw the windshield wiper blade rubbers. Refer to “Defogger and deicer” ☞3-83.

When driving in snow, if frozen snow starts to stick on the surface of the windshield despite wiper operation, use the defroster and set the temperature for maximum warmth. After the windshield gets warmed

enough to melt the frozen snow on it, wash it away using the windshield washer. Refer to “Windshield washer” ☞3-79.

Snow stuck on the wiper arm prevents the wiper from working effectively. If snow is stuck on the wiper arm, pull off the road to a safe place, then remove it. If you stop the vehicle at road side, use the hazard warning flasher to alert other drivers. Refer to “Hazard warning flasher” ☞3-8.

We recommend use of non-freezing type wiper blades (winter blades) during the seasons you could have snow and freezing temperatures.

Blades of this type give superior wiping performance in snowy conditions. Be sure to use blades that are suitable for your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

During high-speed driving, non-freezing type wiper blades may not perform as well as standard wiper blades. If this happens, reduce the vehicle speed.

NOTE

When the season requiring non-freezing type wiper blades is over, replace them with standard wiper blades.

■ Corrosion protection

Refer to “Corrosion protection” ☞10-4.

■ Snow tires

⚠ WARNING

- **When you replacing or installing winter tire(s), all four tires must be the same for following items.**
  (a) Size
  (b) Circumference
  (c) Speed symbol
  (d) Load index
  (e) Construction
  (f) Manufacturer
  (g) Brand (tread pattern)
  (h) Degrees of wear
  For the items (a) to (d), you must obey the specification that is printed on the tire placard. The tire placard is located on the bottom of driver’s door pillar.
  If all of four winter tires are not the same for items (a) to (h), there is a possibility that serious mechanical damage could occur to the drive train of your car, and affect the following.
  — Ride
  — Handling
  — Braking
  — Speedometer/Odometer calibration
  — Clearance between the body and tires
  It also may be dangerous and lead to loss of vehicle control, and it can lead to an accident.
- **Do not use a combination of radial, belted bias or bias tires since it may cause dangerous handling characteristics and lead to an accident.**

In winter, it may be possible to enhance performance through use of tires designed specifically for winter driving conditions. If you choose to install winter tires on your vehicle, be sure to use the correct tire size and type. All four tires must be of the same size, construction, brand and load index and you should never mix radial, belted bias or bias tires since this may result in

– CONTINUED –

dangerous handling characteristics. Remember to drive with care at all times regardless of the type of tires on your vehicle.

When using winter tires (speed symbol Q, T or H) never exceed 160 km/h (99 mph), 190 km/h (118 mph) or 210 km/h (130 mph), respectively.

■ Tire chains

If it is necessary to use the tire chains for driving on snowy grades or icy roads, observe the following precautions:

- Put the chains on the front wheels only.
- Use only chains that are of the correct size for your tires so as not to damage the vehicle body or suspension.
- Do not put a tire chain on the temporary spare tire.
- When driving with tire chains, drive at speeds below 30 km/h (19 mph).

Always use the utmost care when driving with tire chains – overconfidence because you are driving with tire chains could easily lead to a serious accident.

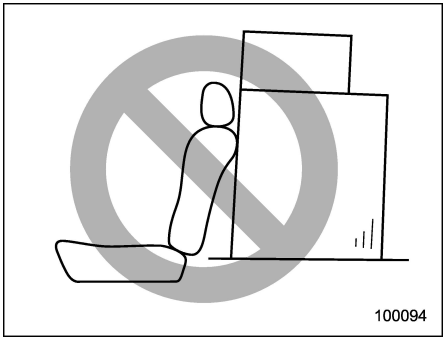
■ Rocking the vehicle

If you must rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, depress the accelerator pedal slightly and move the shift lever/select lever back and forth between "1"/"D" and "R" repeatedly. Do not race the engine. For the best possible traction, avoid spinning the wheels when trying to free the vehicle.

When the road surface is extremely slippery, you can obtain better traction by starting the vehicle with the transmission in 2nd than 1st (MT models and CVT models with manual mode).

If your vehicle is a CVT model with manual mode, for information about holding the transmission in the 2nd position, refer to "Selection of manual mode" ☞7-22.

Loading your vehicle



⚠ WARNING

- **Never stack luggage or other cargo higher than the top of the seatback because it could tumble forward and injure passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident. Keep luggage or cargo low, as close to the floor as possible.**
- **Stow cargo and luggage in the trunk whenever possible.**
- **To prevent cargo and luggage from sliding forward during braking, do not stack anything in the enlarged trunk. Keep cargo and**

luggage low, as close to the floor as possible.

- Never allow passengers to ride on a folded rear seatback or in the trunk. Doing so may result in serious injury.
- When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it whenever you can to prevent it from being thrown around inside the vehicle during sudden stops, sharp turns or in an accident.
- Do not pile heavy loads on the roof. These loads raise the vehicle's center of gravity and make it more prone to tip over.
- Secure lengthy items properly to prevent them from shooting forward and causing serious injury during a sudden stop.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations as the item may get under the clutch, brake, or accelerator pedal and prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, block the driver's vision, or hit the driver or passengers, causing an accident:
  - At the feet of the driver
  - On the front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - On the rear shelf
  - On the instrument panel
  - On the dashboard

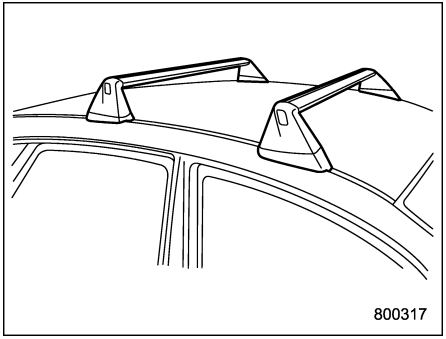
⚠ CAUTION

Do not carry spray cans, containers with flammable or corrosive liquids or any other dangerous items inside the vehicle.

NOTE

For better fuel economy, do not carry unneeded cargo.

■ Roof molding and load carrier (if equipped)



⚠ CAUTION

- For cargo carrying purposes, the roof moldings must be used together with a load carrier kit and the appropriate carrying attachments. Otherwise, damage to the roof or paint or a dangerous road hazard due to loss of cargo could result.
- When using the load carrier kit, make sure that the total weight of the load carrier kit, carrying attachments and cargo does not exceed the maximum load limit. Overloading may cause damage

– CONTINUED –

to the vehicle and create a safety hazard.

Cargo can be carried after securing the load carrier kit to the roof moldings and installing the appropriate carrying attachments. When installing the load carrier kit, follow the manufacturer's instructions.

The maximum load limit of the cargo, load carrier kit and carrying attachments must not exceed **80 kg (176 lbs)**. Place the heaviest load at the bottom, nearest the roof, and evenly distribute the cargo. Always properly secure all cargo.

▼ **Installing carrying attachments on the load carrier**

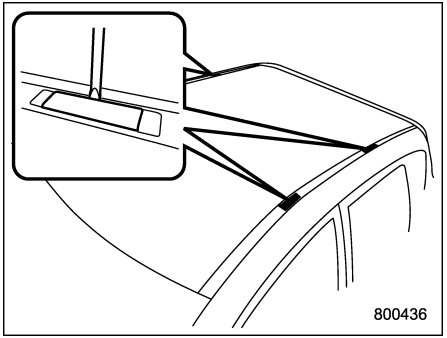
When installing any carrying attachments such as a bike carrier, ski carrier, kayak carrier, cargo basket, etc. on the load carrier, follow the manufacturer's instructions and make sure that the attachments are securely fixed to the load carrier. Use only attachments designed specifically for the load carrier. Before operating the vehicle, make sure that the cargo is properly secured on the attachments.

NOTE

Remember that the vehicle's center of gravity is altered with the weight of the load on the roof, thus affecting the driving characteristics.

Drive carefully. Avoid rapid starts, hard cornering and abrupt stops. Crosswind effects will be increased.

▼ **Removal and installation of the load carrier**



Each of the two roof moldings has two mounting points for the load carrier kit. Each mounting point is fitted with a cover. Use a flat-head screwdriver to remove the covers. When installing the load carrier kit on the roof moldings, follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Trailer towing

Your vehicle is neither designed nor intended to be used for trailer towing. Therefore, never tow a trailer with your vehicle.

SUBARU assumes no responsibility for injuries or vehicle damage that may result from trailer towing, from any trailer towing equipment or from any errors or omissions in the instructions accompanying such equipment. SUBARU warranties do not apply to vehicle damage or malfunction caused by trailer towing.

If you park your vehicle in case of an emergency 9-2
Temporary spare tire (if equipped) 9-2
Maintenance tools 9-3
Flat tires 9-5
- **Changing flat tire** 9-5
- **Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (if equipped)** 9-8

Jump starting 9-9
- **Battery Precautions!** 9-9
- **Precautions when jump starting!** 9-10
- **How to jump start** 9-10

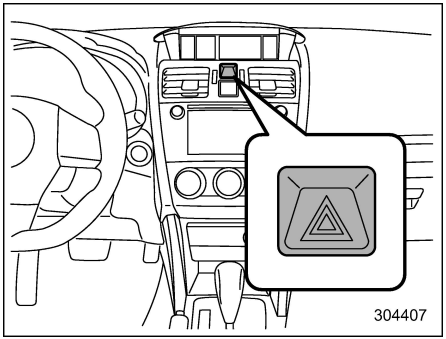
Engine overheating 9-12
- **If steam is coming from the engine compartment** 9-12
- **If no steam is coming from the engine compartment** 9-12

Towing 9-13
- **Towing and tie-down hooks** 9-13
- **Using a flat-bed truck** 9-16
- **Towing with all wheels on the ground** 9-16

Access key fob – if access key fob does not operate properly 9-17
- **Locking and unlocking** 9-17
- **Switching power status** 9-17
- **Starting engine** 9-18

Sunroof (if equipped) – if the sunroof does not close 9-19
If your vehicle is involved in an accident 9-19

If you park your vehicle in case of an emergency



Use the hazard warning flasher in day or night to warn other drivers when you have to park your vehicle under emergency conditions.

Avoid stopping on the road. It is best to safely pull off the road if a problem occurs.

You can activate the hazard warning flasher regardless of the ignition switch position.

Turn on the hazard warning by pushing the hazard warning flasher switch. Turn it off by pushing the switch again.

NOTE

When the hazard warning flasher is on, the turn signals do not work.

Temporary spare tire (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

When a spare tire is mounted or a wheel rim is replaced without the original pressure sensor/transmitter being transferred, the low tire pressure warning light will illuminate steadily after blinking for approximately one minute. This indicates the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) is unable to monitor all four road wheels. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible for tire and sensor replacement and/or system resetting.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Never use any temporary spare tire other than the original. Using other sizes may result in severe mechanical damage to the drive train of your vehicle.**
- **Always conform to the following instructions when using the temporary spare tire. Otherwise, a**

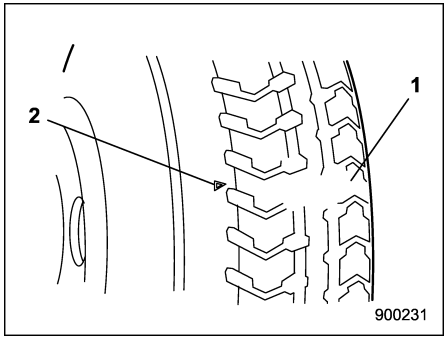
seriously dangerous situation may occur.

The temporary spare tire is smaller and lighter than a conventional tire and is designed for emergency use only. Remove the temporary spare tire and reinstall the conventional tire as soon as possible because the spare tire is designed only for temporary use.

Check the inflation pressure of the temporary spare tire periodically to keep the tire ready for use. For the correct pressure, refer to "Tires" ☞12-8.

When using the temporary spare tire, note the following.

- Drive with caution when the temporary spare tire is mounted. Avoid hard acceleration and braking, or fast cornering, as control of the vehicle may be lost.
- Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Do not put a tire chain on the temporary spare tire. Because of the smaller tire size, a tire chain will not fit properly.
- Do not use two or more temporary spare tires at the same time.
- Do not drive over obstacles. This tire has a smaller diameter, so road clearance is reduced.



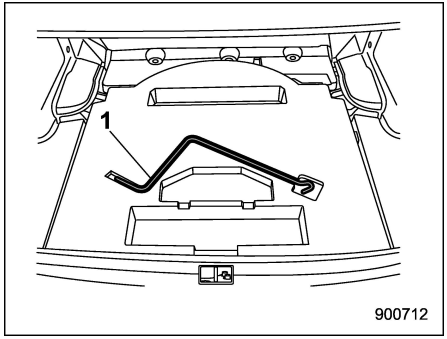
1) Tread wear indicator bar
2) Indicator location mark

- When the wear indicator appears on the tread, replace the tire.
- The temporary spare tire must be used only on a rear wheel. If a front wheel tire gets punctured, replace the wheel with a rear wheel and install the temporary spare tire in place of the removed rear wheel.
- Always set the driver's control center differential to the manual mode and adjust the initial LSD torque to the minimum.

Maintenance tools

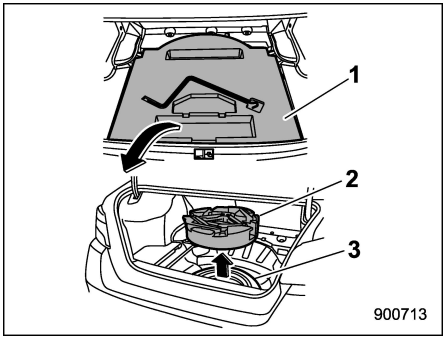
Your vehicle is equipped with the following maintenance tools:

- Jack
- Jack handle
- Screwdriver
- Towing hook (eye bolt)
- Wheel nut wrench

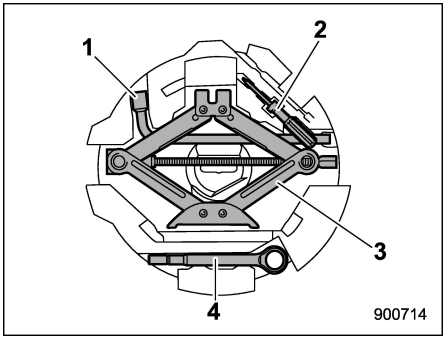


1) Jack handle

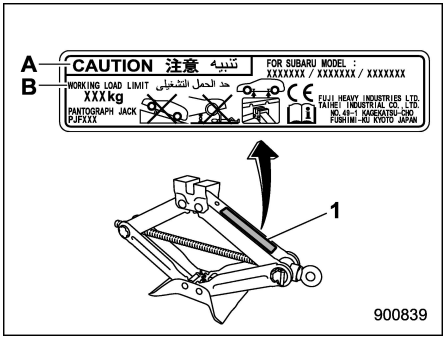
– CONTINUED –



1) Under-floor storage compartment (if equipped) (Refer to “Under-floor storage compartment” ☞6-12.)
2) Tool bucket
3) Spare tire



1) Wheel nut wrench
2) Screwdriver
3) Jack
4) Towing hook (eye bolt)



Example of jack label
1) Jack label
A) CAUTION
B) WORKING LOAD LIMIT

A jack handle is stored under the floor of the trunk. A jack and a towing hook are stored in the tool bucket that is located in the recess of the spare tire wheel. A screwdriver and a wheel nut wrench are stored in the vinyl bag. You can also store these tools in the tool bucket.

NOTE

- **For how to use the jack, refer to “Flat tires” ☞9-5.**
- **The following items may be different depending on the model.**
  - **– The shape of the storage compartment**

– The locations of some maintenance tools

• For information about the Machinery Directive of the jack, refer to "Declaration of conformity in accordance with the safety of machinery 2006/42/EC" ☞13-25.

Flat tires

If you have a flat tire while driving, never brake suddenly; keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed. Then slowly pull off the road to a safe place.

■ Changing flat tire

▼ Safety precautions

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not jack up the vehicle on an incline or a loose road surface. The jack can come out of the jacking point or sink into the ground and this can result in a serious accident.**
- **Use only the jack provided with your vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is designed only for changing a tire. Never get under the vehicle while supporting the vehicle with this jack.**
- **Before using the jack, be sure that there are no occupants or cargo in the vehicle.**
- **Always turn off the engine before raising the flat tire off the ground using the jack. Never swing or push the vehicle supported with the jack. The jack can come out of the jacking point due to a jolt and this can result in a serious accident.**

▽ Australia and New Zealand models

⚠ WARNING

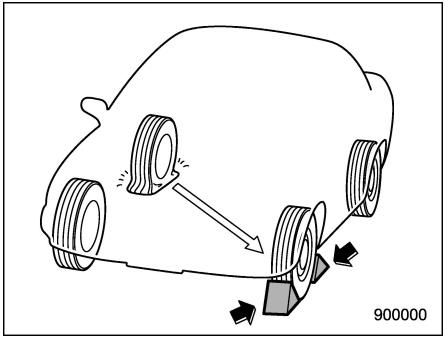
For Australia and New Zealand, the following instructions are supplied by the Australian/New Zealand Standard™ (AS/NZS 2693:2007). Be sure to obey the following instructions for your safety.

- **That the jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.**
- **That it is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.**
- **That no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.**

– CONTINUED –

▼ **Procedure**

1. Park on a hard, level surface, whenever possible, then stop the engine.
2. Set the parking brake securely and shift the shift lever in reverse (MT models) or the select lever in the “P” (Park) position (CVT models).
3. Turn on the hazard warning flasher and have everyone get out of the vehicle.

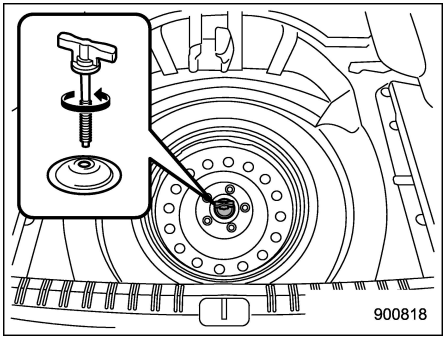


4. Put wheel blocks at the front and rear of the tire diagonally opposite the flat tire.
5. Take out the jack, jack handle and wheel nut wrench.

Refer to “Maintenance tools” ☞9-3.

NOTE

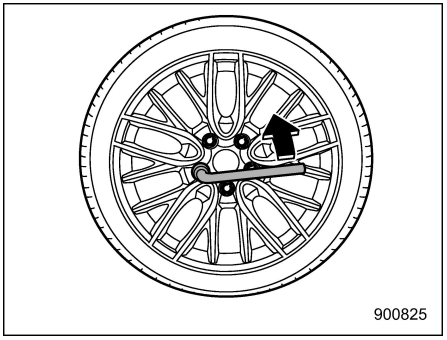
Make sure that the jack is well lubricated before using it.



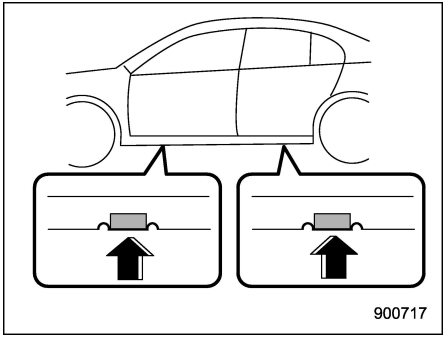
6. Take out the tool bucket and turn the attaching bolt counterclockwise, then take the spare tire out.

NOTE

If the spare tire provided in your vehicle is a temporary spare tire, read carefully “Temporary spare tire” ☞9-2 and strictly follow the instructions.

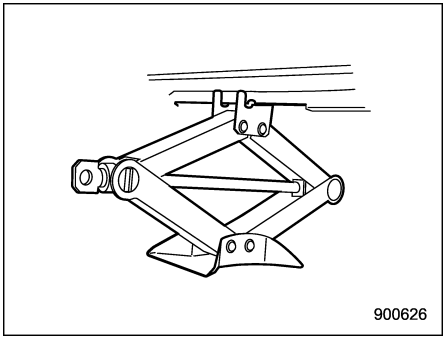


7. Loosen the wheel nuts using the wheel nut wrench but do not remove the nuts.

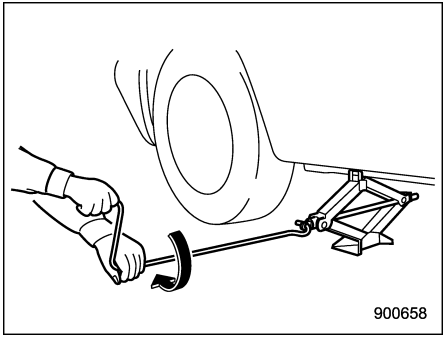


Jack-up points

8. Place the jack under the side sill at the front or rear jack-up point closest to the flat tire.

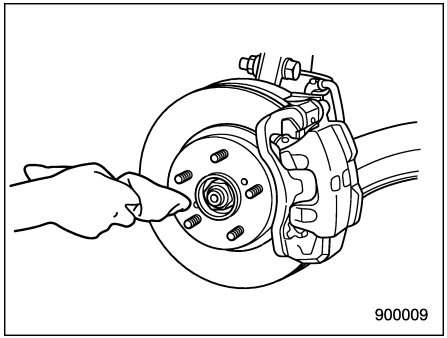


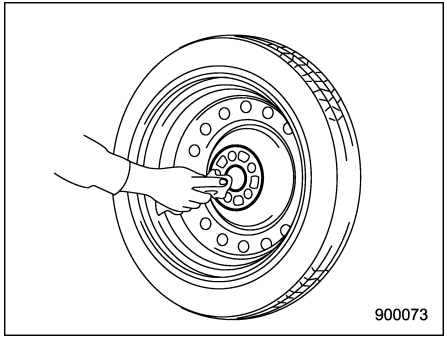
Turn the jackscrew by hand until the jack head engages firmly into the jack-up point.



9. Insert the jack handle into the jack-screw, and turn the handle until the tire clears the ground. Do not raise the vehicle higher than necessary.

10. Remove the wheel nuts and the flat tire.





11. Before putting the spare tire on, perform the following steps.

- Clean the mounting surface of the wheel and hub with a cloth.
- Clean the threaded parts with a cloth and check conditions of there.

⚠ CAUTION

If the threaded part was damaged, we recommend that you immediately contact your SUBARU dealer.

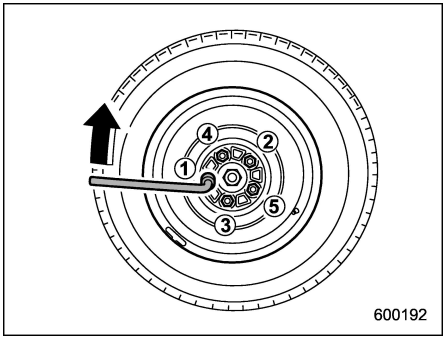
12. Put on the spare tire. Replace the wheel nuts. Tighten them by hand.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use oil or grease on the wheel studs or nuts when the spare tire is installed. This could cause the nuts to become loose and lead to an accident.

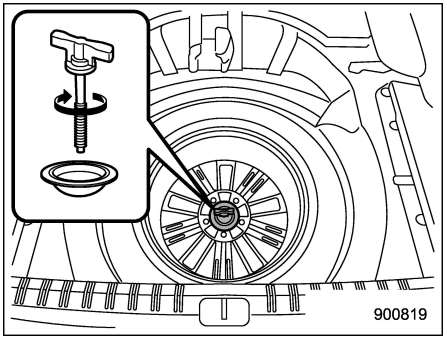
13. Turn the jack handle counterclockwise to lower the vehicle.

– CONTINUED –



14. Use the wheel nut wrench to securely tighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque, following the tightening order in the illustration.

For the wheel nut tightening torque, refer to "Tires" ☞12-8. Never use your foot on the wheel nut wrench or a pipe extension on the wrench because you may exceed the specified torque. Have the wheel nut torque checked at the nearest automotive service facility.



Except STI

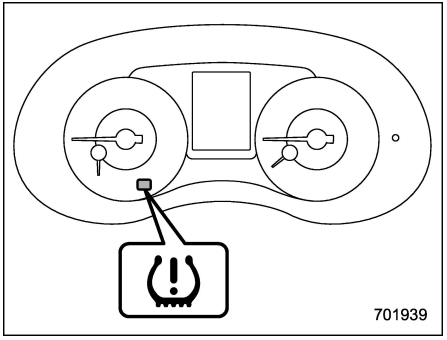
15. Store the flat tire in the spare tire compartment. For except STI models, put the spacer and tighten the attaching bolt firmly.

Also store the jack, jack handle and wheel nut wrench in their storage locations.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never place a flat tire or tire changing tools in the passenger compartment after changing a flat tire. In a sudden stop or collisions, loose equipment could strike occupants and cause injury. Store the tire and all tools in the proper place.**
- **When you store a flat tire, be sure to set the rear seatback to the upright position. If you fold down the seatback, an accident or injury may occur when the flat tire suddenly moves.**

■ Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (if equipped)



Low tire pressure warning light

⚠ WARNING

When a spare tire is mounted, the low tire pressure warning light will illuminate steadily after blinking for approximately one minute. This indicates the TPMS is unable to monitor all four road wheels. We recom-

mend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible for system resetting. Refer to "Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)" ☞7-39.

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealant, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. You may reuse the wheel if there is no damage to it and if the sealant residue is properly cleaned off.

If the light illuminates steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you promptly contact a SUBARU dealer to have the system inspected.

Jump starting

■ Battery Precautions!

⚠ WARNING

Read these instructions carefully:

To ensure safe and correct handling of your battery, read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting it.

Wear eye protection:

Always wear eye protection when working near your vehicle's battery. Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, so it can cause blindness if splashed into your eyes. Also, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas. Eye protection is vital for protection in the event that this gas ignites.

Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid:

Since battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, be sure to wear eye protection and protective gloves when inspecting your vehicle's battery. Avoid tipping the battery and subjecting it to shocks since this could cause fluid to spill.

Under no circumstances allow battery fluid to make contact with your skin, eyes, or clothing since this can cause blindness and burns. If battery fluid splashes onto your skin, eyes or clothing, wash it away immediately with plenty of water. If battery fluid splashes into your eyes, seek medical attention immediately.

If battery fluid is accidentally swallowed, immediately drink a large amount of milk or water, and seek medical attention immediately.

Battery fluid is corrosive. If it splashes onto your vehicle's paintwork or fabrics, wash it away immediately with plenty of water.

Keep children away:

Batteries must be handled only by persons who are aware of the potential hazards. Take particular care to keep children away from your vehicle's battery. Improper handling

– CONTINUED –

can cause blindness and burns.

Keep flames away:

Before working on or near your vehicle's battery, extinguish all cigarettes, matches, and lighters. Also, keep the battery away from flammable items and electrical sparks. Since batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas, any flames or sparks in the vicinity could cause an explosion.

When working near your vehicle's battery, take care that metal tools do not short-circuit the battery's (+) and (−) terminals or connect the battery's (+) terminal to the vehicle's body. A short circuit could create electrical sparks and lead to an explosion.

To prevent electrical sparks, all rings, wristwatches, and other metal accessories must be taken off before work is carried out on or near the battery.

Prevent explosions:

While being charged, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas. To prevent an explosion, charge your vehicle's battery in a well ventilated area and keep flames away.

■ Precautions when jump starting!

WARNING

- **Never attempt jump starting if the discharged battery is frozen. It could cause the battery to burst or explode.**
- **Be sure the jumper cables and clamps on them do not have loose or missing insulation.**

  Do not jump start unless cables in suitable condition are available.
- **A running engine can be dangerous. Keep your fingers, hands, clothing, hair and tools away from the cooling fan, belts and any other moving engine parts. Removing rings, watches and ties is advisable.**
- **Jump starting is dangerous if it done incorrectly. If you are unsure about the proper procedure for jump starting, consult a competent mechanic.**

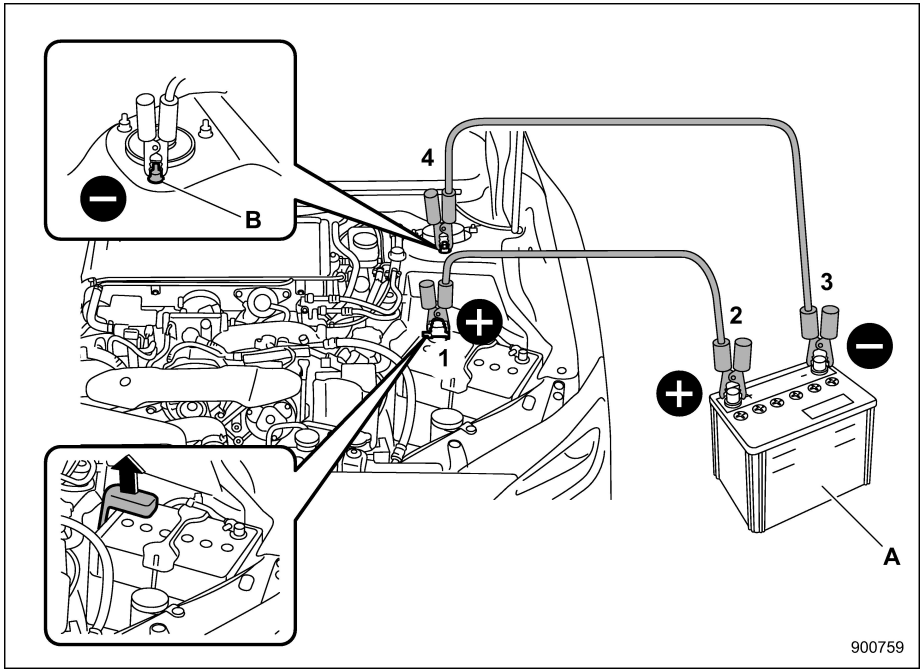
CAUTION

The battery used for boosting must be 12 V. Do not jump start unless you are sure that the booster battery is correct.

When your vehicle does not start due to a run down (discharged) battery, the vehicle may be jump started by connecting your battery to another battery (called the booster battery) with jumper cables.

■ How to jump start

1. Make sure the booster battery is 12 volts and the negative terminal is grounded.
2. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not let the two vehicles touch.
3. Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.
4. Connect the jumper cables exactly in the sequence illustrated.



A) Booster battery
B) Strut mounting nut

(1) Connect one jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal on the discharged battery.
(2) Connect the other end of the jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster battery.
(3) Connect one end of the other cable to the negative (−) terminal of the booster battery.
(4) Connect the other end of the cable to the strut mounting nut.

Make sure that the cables are not near any moving parts and that the cable clamps are not in contact with any other metal.

5. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and run it at moderate speed. Then start the engine of the vehicle that has the discharged battery.
6. When finished, carefully disconnect the cables in exactly the reverse order.

Engine overheating

⚠ WARNING

Never attempt to remove the radiator cap until the engine has been shut off and has fully cooled down. When the engine is hot, the coolant is under pressure. Removing the cap while the engine is still hot could release a spray of boiling hot coolant, which could burn you very seriously.

If the engine overheats, safely pull off the road and stop the vehicle in a safe location.

■ If steam is coming from the engine compartment

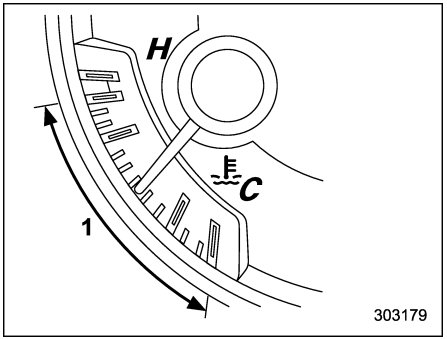
- Turn off the engine and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down.
- We recommend that you contact an authorized SUBARU dealer.

■ If no steam is coming from the engine compartment

1. Keep the engine running at idling speed.
2. Open the engine hood to ventilate the engine compartment. Refer to “Engine hood” ☞11-12.

Confirm that the cooling fan is turning. If the fan is not turning, immediately turn off the engine and contact your authorized dealer for repair.

3. After the engine coolant temperature has dropped, turn off the engine.



1) Normal operating range

If the temperature gauge stays in the overheated zone, turn off the engine. Refer to “Temperature gauge” ☞3-12.

4. After the engine has fully cooled down, check the coolant level in the reserve tank. If the coolant level is below the “LOW” mark, add coolant up to the “FULL” mark.

NOTE

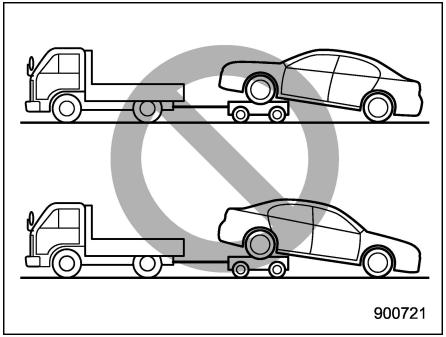
For details about how to check the coolant level or how to add coolant, refer to “Engine coolant” ☞11-20.

5. If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, add coolant to the reserve tank. Then remove the radiator cap and fill the radiator with coolant.

If you have to remove the radiator cap from a hot radiator, first wrap a thick cloth around the radiator cap, then turn the cap counterclockwise slowly without pressing down until it stops. Release the pressure from the radiator. After the pressure has been fully released, remove the cap by pressing down and turning it.

Towing

If towing is necessary, it is best done by your SUBARU dealer or a commercial towing service. Observe the following procedures for safety.



⚠ WARNING

Never tow AWD models with the front wheels raised off the ground while the rear wheels are on the ground, or with the rear wheels raised off the ground while the front wheels are on the ground. This will cause the vehicle to spin away due to the operation or deterioration of the center differential.

■ Towing and tie-down hooks

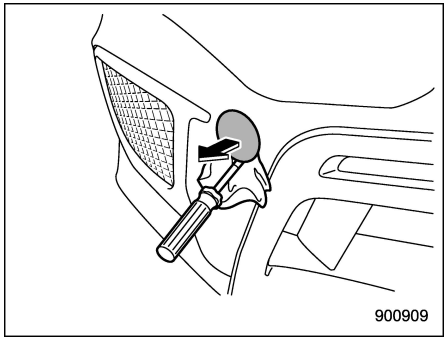
The towing hook should be used only in an emergency.

⚠ CAUTION

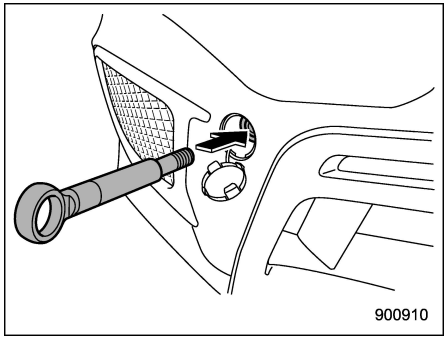
Use only the specified towing hook and tie-down hooks/holes. Never use suspension parts or other parts of the body for towing or tie-down purposes.

Front towing hook:

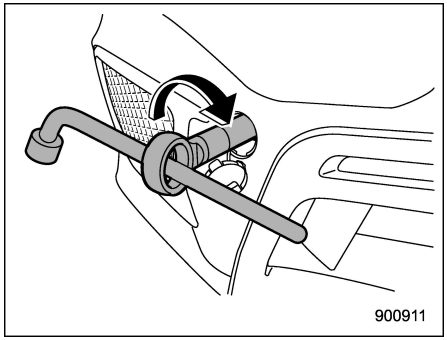
1. Take the towing hook, screwdriver and wheel nut wrench out of the tool bucket.



2. Cover the tip of a flat-head screwdriver with vinyl tape or cloth so that it will not scratch the bumper. Insert the flat-head screwdriver into the cutout of the cover and pry open the cover.



3. Screw the towing hook into the thread hole until its thread can no longer be seen.



4. Tighten the towing hook securely using the wheel nut wrench.

– CONTINUED –

After towing, remove the towing hook from the vehicle and return it to its storage position.

Fit the towing hook cover on the bumper.

⚠ WARNING

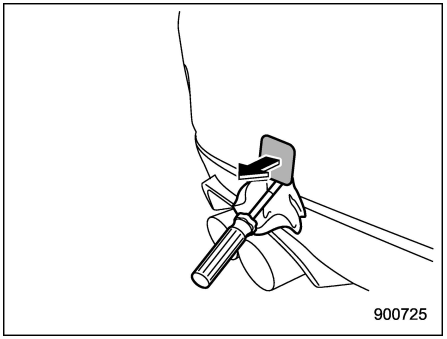
- **Do not use the towing hook except when towing your vehicle.**
- **Be sure to remove the towing hook after towing. Leaving the towing hook mounted on the vehicle could interfere with proper operation of the SRS airbag system in a frontal collision.**

⚠ CAUTION

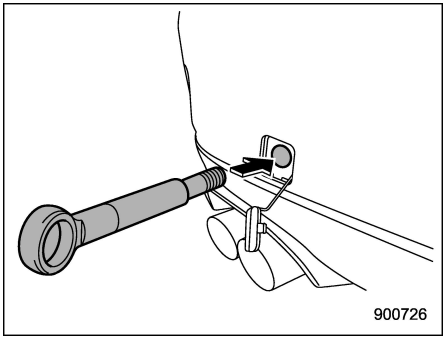
To prevent deformation to the bumper and the towing hook, do not apply an excessive load to the towing hook.

Rear towing hook:

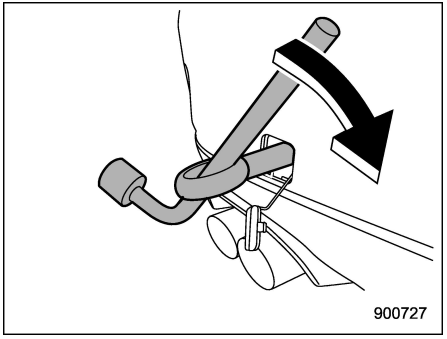
1. Take the towing hook, screwdriver and wheel nut wrench out of the tool bucket.



2. Pry off the cover on the rear bumper using a screwdriver, and you will find a threaded hole for attaching the towing hook.



3. Screw the towing hook into the threaded hole until its thread can no longer be seen.



4. Tighten the towing hook securely using the wheel nut wrench.

After towing, remove the towing hook from the vehicle and return it to its storage position.

Fit the towing hook cover on the bumper.

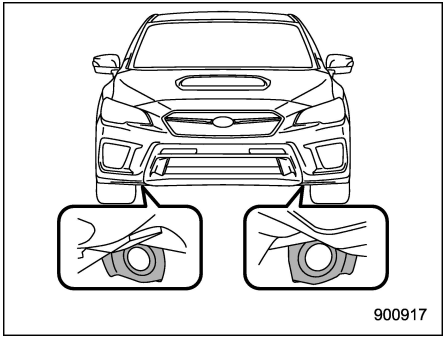
⚠ WARNING

- **Do not use the towing hook except when towing your vehicle.**
- **Be sure to remove the towing hook after towing. Leaving the towing hooks mounted on the vehicle could interfere with proper operation of the fuel pump shut-off function when the vehicle is struck from behind.**
- **For vehicles equipped with the Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD), turn off the SRVD before towing a trailer. A trailer will block the system's radar waves and cause the SRVD not to function correctly.**

⚠ CAUTION

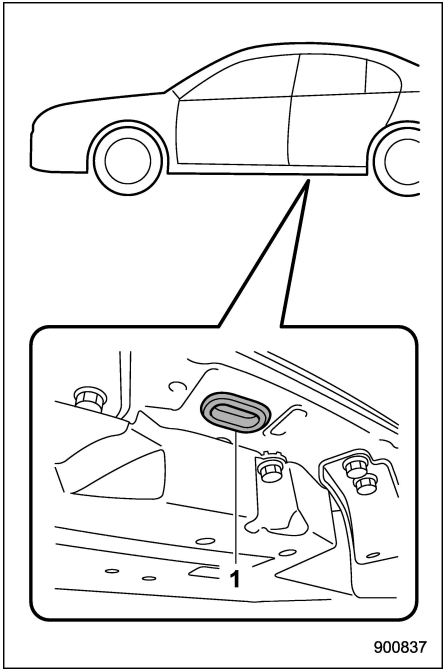
To prevent deformation to the bumper and the towing hook, do not apply an excessive load to the towing hook.

Front tie-down hooks:



The front tie-down hooks are located between each of the front tires and the front bumper.

Rear tie-down holes:



1) Rear tie-down hole

The rear tie-down holes are located near each of the jack-up reinforcements.

There is a plug in each rear tie-down hole. To use the rear tie-down holes, remove the

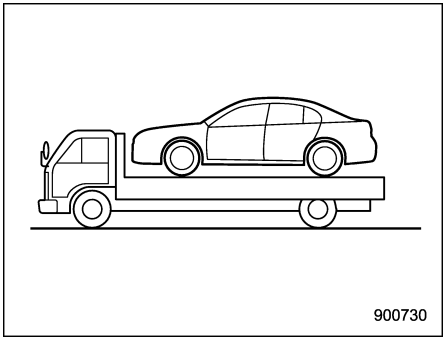
– CONTINUED –

plugs. After using the rear tie-down holes, return the plugs to their original places.

⚠ WARNING

Use the rear tie-down holes only for downward anchoring. If they are used to anchor the vehicle in any other direction, cables may slip out of the holes, possibly causing a dangerous situation.

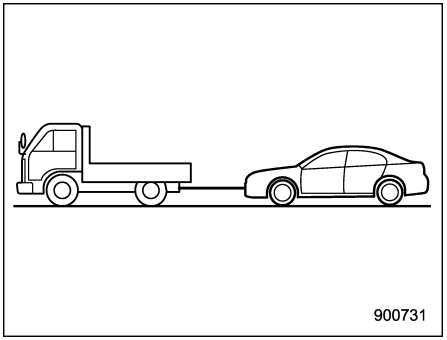
■ Using a flat-bed truck



This is the best way to transport your vehicle. Use the following procedures to ensure safe transportation.

1. Shift the select lever into the "P" position for CVT models or the shift lever into "1st" for MT models.
2. Apply the parking brake firmly.
3. Secure the vehicle onto the carrier properly with safety chains. Each of safety chain should be equally tightened and care must be taken not to pull the chains so tightly that the suspension bottoms out.

■ Towing with all wheels on the ground



1. Release the parking brake and put the transmission in neutral.
2. The ignition switch should be in the "ON" position while the vehicle is being towed.
3. Take up slack in the towline slowly to prevent damage to the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position while the vehicle is being towed because the steering wheel and the direction of the wheels will be locked.**
- **Remember that the brake booster and power steering do not function when the engine is not running. Because the engine is turned off, it will take greater effort to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **If transmission failure occurs, transport your vehicle on a flat-bed truck.**
- **For CVT models, the traveling speed must be limited to less than 30 km/h (20 mph) and the traveling distance to less than 50 km (31 miles). For greater speeds and distances, transport your vehicle on a flat-bed truck.**

Access key fob – if access key fob does not operate properly

⚠ CAUTION

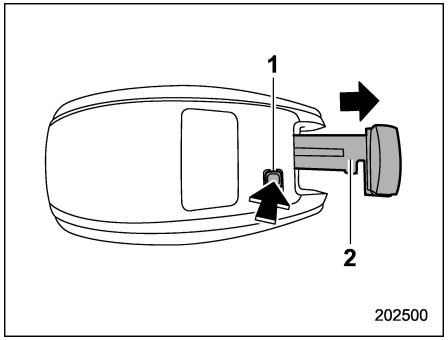
Keep metallic objects, magnetic sources and signal transmitters away from the area between the access key fob and the push-button ignition switch. They may interfere with the communication between the access key fob and the push-button ignition switch.

The following functions may be inoperable because of strong radio signals in the surrounding area or a low battery condition of the access key fob.

- Locking/unlocking doors
- Switching power status
- Starting engine

In such cases, perform the following procedure. When the battery of the access key fob is discharged, replace it with a new one. Refer to "Replacing battery of access key fob" ☞11-59.

■ Locking and unlocking



1) Release button
2) Emergency key

While pressing the release button of the access key fob, take out the emergency key.

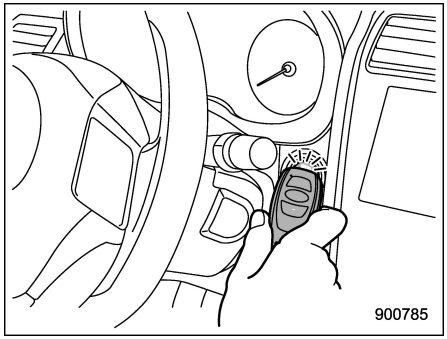
Lock or unlock the driver's door with the emergency key.

NOTE

After locking or unlocking, be sure to reinsert the emergency key into the access key fob.

■ Switching power status

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Shift the shift lever into neutral (MT models) or the select lever into the "P" position (CVT models).
3. Depress the clutch pedal (MT models) or brake pedal (CVT models).



4. Hold the access key fob with the buttons facing you, and touch the push-button ignition switch with it.

When the communication between the access key fob and the vehicle is completed, a chime (ding) will sound, and the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch illuminates in green. At the same time, the status of the push-button ignition switch changes to either of the following.

– CONTINUED –

- When the keyless access with push-button start system is deactivated: “ACC”
- Under other conditions: “ON”

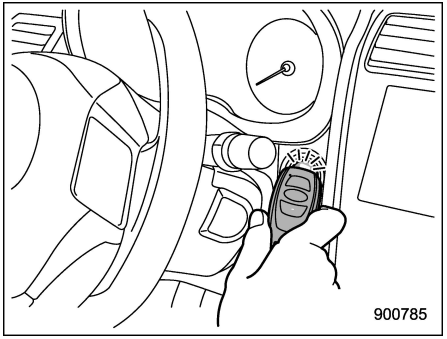
5. When the keyless access with push-button start system is deactivated, press the push-button ignition switch with the clutch pedal (MT models) or brake pedal (CVT models) released. The status of the push-button ignition switch then changes to “ON”.

NOTE

If the power does not switch even though the above procedure was followed precisely, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

■ Starting engine

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Shift the shift lever into neutral (MT models) or the select lever into the “P” position (CVT models).
3. Depress the brake pedal (all models).
4. Depress the clutch pedal (MT models).



5. Hold the access key fob with the buttons facing you, and touch the push-button ignition switch with it.

When the communication between the access key fob and the vehicle is completed, a chime (ding) will sound, and the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch illuminates in green. At the same time, the push-button ignition switch turns to the “ACC” or “ON” position.

6. Within 5 seconds after the operation indicator illuminates in green, while depressing the brake pedal (all models) and the clutch pedal (MT models), press the push-button ignition switch.

NOTE

If the engine does not start even though the above procedure was followed precisely, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

Sunroof (if equipped) – if the sunroof does not close

If the sunroof does not close, we recommend that you have the system checked by a SUBARU dealer.

If your vehicle is involved in an accident

⚠ CAUTION

If your vehicle is involved in an accident, be sure to inspect the ground under the vehicle before restarting the engine. If you find that fuel has leaked on the ground, do not try to restart the engine. The fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Immediately contact the nearest automotive service facility. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.

Your vehicle has a fuel pump shut-off system. To minimize the risk of fire due to fuel leakage when your vehicle is subject to impact from an accident or another factor, the system stops supplying fuel. However, depending on the impact conditions at the time of collision, the fuel pump shut-off system may not operate.

Perform the following procedures to restart the engine after the system is activated.

Models without “keyless access with push-button start system”:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK” or “ACC” position.
2. Restart the engine.

Models with “keyless access with push-button start system”:

1. Turn the push-button ignition switch to the “ACC” or “OFF” position.
2. Restart the engine.

Exterior care 10-2
- Washing 10-2
- Waxing and polishing 10-3
- Cleaning alloy wheels 10-4

Corrosion protection 10-4
- Most common causes of corrosion 10-4
- To help prevent corrosion 10-4

Cleaning the interior 10-5
- Seat fabric 10-5
- Leather seat materials 10-5
- Synthetic leather upholstery 10-6
- Climate control panel, audio panel, instrument panel, console panel, switches, combination meter, and other plastic surfaces 10-6
- Monitor 10-6

Exterior care

■ Washing

⚠ CAUTION

- **When washing the vehicle, the brakes may get wet. As a result, the brake stopping distance will be longer. To dry the brakes, drive the vehicle at a safe speed while lightly depressing the brake pedal to heat up the brakes.**
- **Do not wash the engine compartment and area adjacent to it. If water enters the engine air intake or electrical parts, it will cause engine trouble or a malfunction of the power steering.**
- **When washing inner fenders, underbody, bumpers and protruding objects such as exhaust pipes and exhaust finishers, be careful to prevent injuries from contacting sharp ends.**
- **Do not use organic solvents when washing the surface of the bulb assembly cover. However, if a detergent with organic solvents is used to wash the surface, completely rinse off the detergent with water. Otherwise, the surface may be damaged.**
- **Since your vehicle is equipped with automatic rain sensing windshield wipers, turn off the wiper when washing the vehicle. If the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position, the wipers may operate unexpectedly while washing the vehicle and cause injury.**

NOTE

When having your vehicle washed in an automatic car wash:

- **Make sure beforehand that the car wash is of suitable type.**
- **Since your vehicle is equipped with automatic rain sensing windshield wipers, make sure to turn off the wiper. If the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position, the wipers may operate unexpectedly while washing the vehicle and the wiper blades could be damaged.**

The best way to preserve your vehicle's beauty is frequent washing. Wash the vehicle at least once a month to avoid contamination by road grime.

Wash dirt off with a wet sponge and plenty of lukewarm or cold water. Do not wash the vehicle with hot water and in direct sunlight.

Salt, chemicals, insects, tar, soot, tree sap, and bird droppings should be washed off by using a light detergent, as required. If you use a light detergent, make certain that it is a neutral detergent. Do not use strong soap or chemical detergents. All cleaning agents should be promptly rinsed off of the surface and not allowed to dry there. Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with plenty of lukewarm water. Wipe the remaining water off with a chamois or soft cloth. Wear rubber gloves and use a hand brush when washing down underbody, inner fenders and suspension to effectively remove mud and dirt off.

▼ Washing the underbody

Chemicals, salts and gravel used for deicing road surfaces are extremely corrosive, accelerating the corrosion of underbody components, such as the exhaust system, fuel and brake lines, brake cables, floor pan and fenders, and suspension.

Thoroughly flush the underbody and inside of the fenders with lukewarm or cold water at frequent intervals to reduce the harmful effects of such agents.

Mud and sand adhering to the underbody components may accelerate their corro-

sion.

After driving off-road or on muddy or sandy roads, wash the mud and sand off the underbody.

Carefully flush the suspension and axle parts, as they are particularly prone to mud and sand buildup. Do not use a sharp-edged tool to remove caked mud.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be careful not to damage brake hoses, sensor harnesses, and other parts when washing suspension components.**
- **Be careful not to flush the engine bottom for a long time. It may cause damage of some electrical parts.**

▼ Using a warm water washer

- Keep a good distance of 30 cm (12 in) or more between the washer nozzle and the vehicle.
- Do not wash the same area continuously.
- If a stain will not come out easily, wash by hand. Some warm water washers are of the high temperature, high pressure type, and they can damage or deform the resin parts such as moldings, or cause water to leak into the vehicle.

■ Waxing and polishing

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing and polishing.

Use a good quality polish and wax and apply them according to the manufacturer's instructions. Wax or polish when the painted surface is cool.

Be sure to polish and wax the chrome trim, as well as the painted surfaces. Loss of wax on a painted surface leads to loss of the original luster and also quickens the deterioration of the surface. It is recommended that a coat of wax be applied at least once a month, or whenever the surface no longer repels water.

If the appearance of the paint has diminished to the point where the luster or tone cannot be restored, lightly polish the surface with a fine-grained compound. Never polish just the affected area, but include the surrounding area as well. Always polish in only one direction. A No. 2000 grain compound is recommended. Never use a coarse-grained compound. Coarser grained compounds have a smaller grain-size number and could damage the paint. After polishing with a compound, coat with wax to restore the original luster. Frequent polishing with a compound or an incorrect polishing technique will result in removing the paint layer and exposing the undercoat. When in doubt, we recommend that you always contact your SUBARU dealer or an auto paint specialist.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use any agents with organic solvents on the surface of the bulb assembly cover. However, if a polish or wax with organic solvents is applied to the cover surface, completely wipe off the polish or wax. Otherwise, the cover surface may be damaged.

NOTE

Be careful not to block the windshield washer nozzles with wax when waxing the vehicle.

– CONTINUED –

■ Cleaning alloy wheels

- Promptly wipe the alloy wheels clean of any kind of grime or agent. If dirt is left on too long, it may be difficult to clean off.
- Do not use soap containing grit to clean the wheels. Be sure to use a neutral cleaning agent, and later rinse thoroughly with water. Do not clean the wheels with a stiff brush or expose them to a high-speed washing device.
- Clean the vehicle (including the alloy wheels) with water as soon as possible when it has been splashed with sea water, exposed to sea breezes, or driven on roads treated with salt or other agents.

Corrosion protection

Your SUBARU has been designed and built to resist corrosion. Special materials and protective finishes have been used on most parts of the vehicle to help maintain fine appearance, strength, and reliable operation.

■ Most common causes of corrosion

The most common causes of corrosion are:

- The accumulation of moisture retaining dirt and debris in body panel sections, cavities, and other areas.
- Damage to paint and other protective coatings caused by gravel and stone chips or minor accidents.

Corrosion is accelerated on the vehicle when:

- It is exposed to road salt or dust control chemicals, or used in coastal areas where there is more salt in the air, or in areas where there is considerable industrial pollution.
- It is driven in areas of high humidity, especially when temperatures range just above freezing.
- Dampness in certain parts of the vehicle remains for a long time, even though other parts of the vehicle may be dry.
- High temperatures will cause corrosion to parts of the vehicle which cannot dry quickly due to lack of proper ventilation.

■ To help prevent corrosion

Wash the vehicle regularly to prevent corrosion of the body and suspension components. Also, wash the vehicle promptly after driving on any of the following surfaces:

- roads that have been salted to prevent them from freezing in winter
- mud, sand, or gravel
- coastal roads

After the winter has ended, it is recommended that the underbody be given a very thorough washing.

Before the beginning of winter, check the condition of underbody components, such as the exhaust system, fuel and brake lines, brake cables, suspension, steering system, floor pan, and fenders. If any of them are found to be rusted, they should be given an appropriate rust prevention treatment or should be replaced. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer to perform this kind of

maintenance and treatment if you need assistance.

Repair chips and scratches in the paint as soon as you find them.

Check the interior of the vehicle for water and dirt accumulation under the floor mats because that could cause corrosion. Occasionally check under the mats to make sure the area is dry.

Keep your garage dry. Do not park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. In such a garage, corrosion can be caused by dampness. If you wash the vehicle in the garage or put the vehicle into the garage when wet or covered with snow, that can cause dampness.

If your vehicle is operated in cold weather and/or in areas where road salts and other corrosive materials are used, the door hinges and locks and hood latch should be inspected and lubricated periodically.

Cleaning the interior

Use a soft, damp cloth to clean the climate control panel, audio equipment, instrument panel, center console, combination meter panel, and switches. (Do not use organic solvents.)

■ Seat fabric

Remove loose dirt, dust or debris with a vacuum cleaner. If the dirt is caked on the fabric or hard to remove with a vacuum cleaner, use a soft brush then vacuum it.

Wipe the fabric surface with a tightly wrung cloth and dry the seat fabric thoroughly. If the fabric is still dirty, wipe using a solution of mild soap and lukewarm water then dry thoroughly.

If the stain does not come out, try a commercially-available fabric cleaner. Use the cleaner on a hidden place and make sure it does not affect the fabric adversely. Use the cleaner according to its instructions.

⚠ CAUTION

When cleaning the seat, do not use benzine, paint thinner, or any similar materials. Doing so could damage the surface and cause the color to deteriorate.

■ Leather seat materials

The leather used by SUBARU is a high quality natural product which will retain its distinctive appearance and feel for many years with proper care.

Allowing dust or road dirt to build up on the surface can cause the material to become brittle and to wear prematurely. Regular cleaning with a soft, moist, natural fiber cloth should be performed monthly, taking care not to soak the leather or allow water to penetrate the stitched seams.

A mild detergent suitable for cleaning woolen fabrics may be used to remove difficult dirt spots, rubbing with a soft, dry cloth afterwards to restore the luster. If your SUBARU is to be parked for a long time in bright sunlight, it is recommended that the seats and head restraints be covered, or the windows shaded, to prevent fading or shrinkage. Make sure to remove any seat covers and head restraint covers when operating the vehicle.

– CONTINUED –

Minor surface blemishes or bald patches may be treated with a commercial leather spray lacquer. You will discover that each leather seat section will develop soft folds or wrinkles, which is characteristic of genuine leather.

■ Synthetic leather upholstery

The synthetic leather material used on the SUBARU may be cleaned using mild soap or detergent and water, after first vacuuming or brushing away loose dirt. Allow the soap to soak in for a few minutes and wipe off with a clean, damp cloth. Commercial foam-type cleaners suitable for synthetic leather materials may be used when necessary.

⚠ CAUTION

Strong cleaning agents such as solvents, paint thinners, window cleaner or fuel must never be used on leather or synthetic interior materials. Doing so could damage the surface and cause the color to deteriorate.

■ Climate control panel, audio panel, instrument panel, console panel, switches, combination meter, and other plastic surfaces

Use a soft, damp cloth to clean the climate control panel, audio equipment, instrument panel, center console, combination meter panel, and switches.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not use organic solvents such as paint thinners or fuel, or strong cleaning agents that contain those solvents. Doing so could damage the surface and cause the color to deteriorate.**
- **Do not use chemical solvents that contain silicone on the vehicle audio system, electrical components of the air-conditioner or any switches. If silicone adheres to these parts, it may cause damage to electrical components.**

■ Monitor

To clean the audio/navigation/multi-function display monitor, wipe it with a silicone cloth or with a soft cloth. If the monitor is extremely dirty, clean it with a soft cloth moistened with neutral detergent then carefully wipe off any remaining detergent.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not spray neutral detergent directly onto the monitor. Doing so could damage the monitor's components.**
- **Do not wipe the monitor with a hard cloth. Doing so could scratch the monitor.**
- **Do not use cleaning fluid that contains thinner, fuel, or any other volatile substance. Such cleaning fluid could erase the lettering on the switches at the bottom of the monitor.**

Maintenance schedule 11-3
Maintenance precautions 11-7
Before checking or servicing in the engine compartment 11-7
When checking or servicing in the engine compartment 11-8
When checking or servicing in the engine compartment while the engine is running 11-9
When replacing parts 11-9
Maintenance tips 11-9
Removing and reinstalling clips 11-9
Engine hood 11-12
Engine compartment overview 11-14
STI 11-14
Except STI 11-15
Engine oil 11-16
Engine oil consumption 11-16
Checking the oil level 11-16
Changing the oil and oil filter 11-18
Recommended grade and viscosity 11-18
Synthetic oil 11-18
Cooling system 11-19
Cooling fan, hose and connections 11-19
Engine coolant 11-20
Air cleaner element 11-22
Replacing the air cleaner element 11-23
Spark plugs 11-25
Drive belts 11-25
Manual transmission oil 11-26
Recommended grade and viscosity 11-26
Continuously variable transmission fluid 11-27
Front differential gear oil (CVT models) and rear differential gear oil 11-27
Recommended grade and viscosity 11-27
Power steering fluid (STI) 11-27
Checking the fluid level 11-27
Recommended fluid 11-28
Brake fluid 11-28
Checking the fluid level 11-28
Recommended brake fluid 11-29
Clutch fluid (MT models) 11-29
Checking the fluid level 11-29
Brake booster 11-30
Brake pedal 11-31
Checking the brake pedal free play 11-31
Checking the brake pedal reserve distance 11-31
Clutch pedal (MT models) 11-32
Checking the clutch function 11-32
Checking the clutch pedal free play 11-32
Hill start assist system 11-32
Replacement of brake pad and lining 11-33
Breaking-in of new brake pads (models with electronic parking brake system) 11-33
Breaking-in of new brake pads and linings (models without electronic parking brake system) 11-33
Parking brake stroke (models without electronic parking brake system) 11-34
Tires and wheels 11-34
Types of tires 11-34

Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (if equipped) 11-35
Tire inspection 11-36
Tire pressures and wear 11-37
Wheel balance 11-38
Wear indicators 11-39
Rotational direction of tires 11-39
Tire rotation 11-40
Tire replacement 11-40
Wheel replacement 11-41
Alloy wheels 11-41
Windshield washer fluid 11-42
Adding the windshield washer fluid 11-42
Windshield washer fluid 11-42
Replacement of wiper blades 11-43
Windshield wiper blade assembly 11-43
Windshield wiper blade rubber 11-44
Battery 11-45
Battery Precautions! 11-45
Fuses 11-47
Installation of accessories 11-48
Replacing bulbs 11-48
Headlights (models with LED headlights) 11-49
High beam headlight (models without LED headlights) 11-49
Low beam headlight*, position light* and front turn signal light* 11-50
Front turn signal light (models with LED headlights) 11-52
Front fog light (models with LED front fog light) 11-53
Front fog light and daytime running light (models without LED front fog lights – if equipped) 11-53
Rear combination lights 11-54
License plate light 11-55
Rear fog light 11-55
Map light 11-56
Dome light 11-57
Trunk light 11-57
Vanity mirror light 11-58
Other bulbs 11-58
Replacing battery 11-58
Safety precautions 11-58
Replacing battery of access key fob 11-59
Replacing transmitter battery 11-60

Maintenance schedule

To keep your vehicle in proper operating condition and to assure peak performance at all times, the recommended maintenance service should be performed in accordance with the maintenance schedule.

NOTE

● The frequency of scheduled inspection and maintenance services as set forth is minimal. However, it may be necessary that they be performed more frequently depending on road conditions, weather, atmospheric conditions and vehicle usage. These conditions may differ from one country to another. Therefore there may be special requirement in your country. We recommend that you ask your authorized SUBARU dealer for the actual maintenance schedule applied to your vehicle.
● You can set a reminder to be displayed when a scheduled maintenance item is almost due. For details, refer to "Maintenance settings" ☞3-59.

Continue periodic maintenance beyond 120,000 km (75,000 miles) or 96 months by returning to the third column of the maintenance schedule and adding 120,000 km (75,000 miles) or 96 months to the column headings.

Symbols used:
R: Replace
I: Inspect, and then adjust, correct or replace if necessary.
P: Perform
(I): Recommended service for safe vehicle operation

MAINTENANCE ITEM		MAINTENANCE INTERVAL (Number of months or km (miles), whichever occurs first)								REMARKS
	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	
	× 1,000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	
	× 1,000 miles	9	19	28	38	47	56	66	75	
1	Engine oil	**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	See NOTE 1)
2	Engine oil filter	**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	**R**	See NOTE 1)
3	Drive belt(s)	**I**	**I**	**I**	**I**	**I**	**I**	**I**	**I**	

– CONTINUED –

MAINTENANCE ITEM			MAINTENANCE INTERVAL (Number of months or km (miles), whichever occurs first)								REMARKS
		Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	
		× 1,000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	
		× 1,000 miles	9	19	28	38	47	56	66	75	
4	Camshaft drive belt (timing belt)			**I**		**I**		**I**	**R**	**I**	Replace every 105,000 km (66,000 miles)
5	Cooling system, hoses and connections			**I**		**I**		**I**		**I**	
6	Replace engine coolant (SUBARU Super Coolant or equivalent)		1st replacement: **132 months (11 years)/220,000 km (137,500 miles)** From the 2nd replacement: **72 months (6 years)/120,000 km (75,000 miles)**								
7	Fuel system, lines and connections			**I**		**I**		**I**		**I**	See NOTE 2)
8	Fuel filter	For Europe*								**R**	Replace every 120,000 km (75,000 miles)
		For General						**R**			Replace every 90,000 km (56,000 miles)
9	Air cleaner element		**I**	**I**	**R**	**I**	**I**	**R**	**I**	**I**	Replace every 45,000 km (28,000 miles)
10	Spark plugs								**R**		Replace every 105,000 km (66,000 miles)
11	Transmission/differential (front & rear) lubricants (gear oil)			**I**		**R**		**I**		**R**	

*: Excluding Russia models or Israel models

MAINTENANCE ITEM		MAINTENANCE INTERVAL (Number of months or km (miles), whichever occurs first)								REMARKS
		Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	
		× 1,000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	
		× 1,000 miles	9	19	28	38	47	56	66	75	
12	Continuously variable transmission fluid			**I**		**I**		**I**		**I**	
13	Brake fluid			**R**		**R**		**R**		**R**	See NOTE 3)
14	Disc brake pads and discs/Front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions		**I**	**I**	**I**	**I**	**I**	**I**	**I**	**I**	See NOTE 2)
15	Brake lining and drums (including parking brake linings and drums)			**I**		**I**		**I**		**I**	See NOTE 2)
16	Inspect brake lines and check operation of parking and service brake system			**P**		**P**		**P**		**P**	See NOTE 2)
17	Clutch system			**I**		**I**		**I**		**I**	Adjust pedal free play at 1,600 km (1,000 miles)
18	Steering and suspension system			**I**		**I**		**I**		**I**	See NOTE 2)
19	Front and rear wheel bearing									**(I)**	
20	Air filter element for the climate control system		**I**	**R**	**I**	**R**	**I**	**R**	**I**	**R**	See NOTE 4)

– CONTINUED –

NOTE

1) When the vehicle is used under severe driving conditions mentioned in the following examples*, the engine oil and oil filter should be changed more frequently.
2) When the vehicle is used under severe driving conditions mentioned in the following examples*, inspection should be performed at every 15,000 km (9,000 miles) or 12 months whichever occurs first.
3) When the vehicle is used under following areas, change fluid every 15,000 km (9,000 miles) or 12 months whichever occurs first.
(1) High humidity areas
(2) Mountainous areas
4) When the vehicle is used under severe driving conditions mentioned in the following examples*, the air cleaner element and air filter should be replaced more frequently.

* Examples of severe driving conditions:
(1) Operating in extremely cold weather (items 1, 2 and 18 only)
(2) Repeated short trips (items 1, 2, 14 and 15 only)
(3) Driving in dusty roads (items 9, 14, 15 and 20 only)
(4) Driving in rough and/or muddy roads (items 14, 15 and 20 only)
(5) Driving in areas using road salt or other corrosive materials (items 7, 14, 15, 16 and 18 only)
(6) Living in coastal areas (items 7, 14, 15, 16 and 18 only)

Maintenance precautions

When maintenance and service are required, it is recommended that all work be done by an authorized SUBARU dealer.

If you perform maintenance and service by yourself, you should familiarize yourself with the information provided in this section on general maintenance and service for your SUBARU.

Incorrect or incomplete service could cause improper or unsafe vehicle operation. Any problems caused by improper maintenance and service performed by you are not eligible for warranty coverage.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always select a safe area when performing maintenance on your vehicle.**
- **Always be very careful to avoid injury when working on the vehicle. Remember that some of the materials in the vehicle may be hazardous if improperly used or handled, for example, battery acid.**
- **Your vehicle should only be serviced by persons fully competent to do so. Serious personal injury may result to persons not experienced in servicing vehicles.**
- **Always use the proper tools and make certain that they are well maintained.**
- **Never get under the vehicle supported only by a jack. Always use safety stands to support the vehicle.**
- **Never keep the engine running in a poorly ventilated area, such as a garage or other closed areas.**
- **Do not smoke or allow open flames around the fuel or battery. This will cause a fire.**
- **Because the fuel system is under pressure, we recommend that you have your SUBARU dealer perform the replacement of the fuel filter.**
- **Wear adequate eye protection to guard against getting oil or fluids in your eyes. If something does get in your eyes, thoroughly wash them out with clean water.**
- **Do not tamper with the wiring of the SRS airbag system or seatbelt pretensioner system, or attempt to take its connectors apart, as that may activate the system or it can render it inoperative when it should be operative. NEVER use a circuit tester for this wiring. If your SRS airbag or seatbelt pretensioner needs service, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer.**

■ Before checking or servicing in the engine compartment

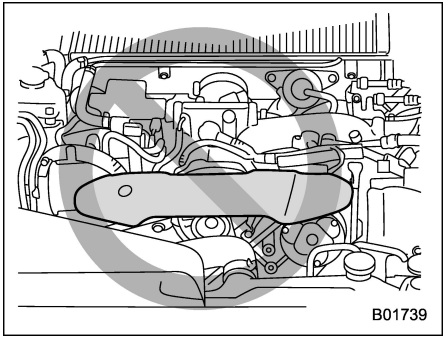
⚠ WARNING

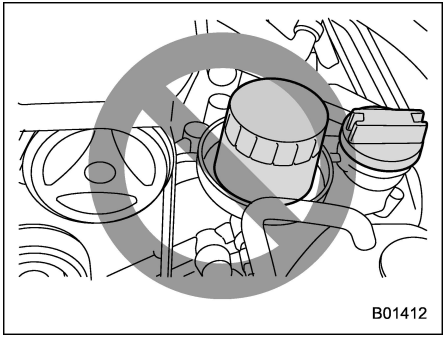
- **Always stop the engine and set the parking brake firmly to prevent the vehicle from moving.**
- **Always let the engine cool down. Engine parts become very hot when the engine is running and remain hot for some time after the engine has stopped.**
- **Do not spill engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid or any other fluid on hot engine components. This may cause a fire.**

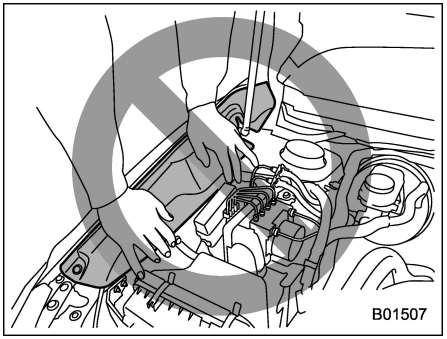
– CONTINUED –

- **When the ignition switch is in the "ON" position, the cooling fan may operate suddenly even when the engine is stopped. If your body or clothes come into contact with a rotating fan, that could result in serious injury. To avoid risk of injury, perform the following precautions.**
  - **– Models with push-button start system:**
    Always turn the push-button ignition switch to the "OFF" position and confirm that the operation indicator on the switch is turned off. Then take the access key fob out from the vehicle.
  - **– Models without push-button start system:**
    Always remove the key from the ignition switch.

■ When checking or servicing in the engine compartment


B01739


B01412


B01507

⚠ CAUTION

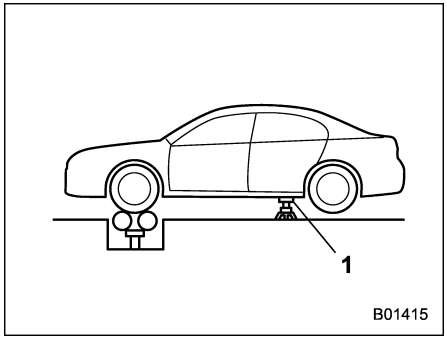
- **For models with the drive belt cover, do not contact the cover while checking the components in the engine compartment. Doing so may cause your hand to slip off the drive belt cover and result in an injury.**
- **Do not touch the oil filter until the engine has cooled down completely. Doing so may result in a burn or other injury. Note that the oil filter becomes very hot when the engine is running and remains hot for some time after the engine has stopped.**

- **Do not apply force on the fender insulator by placing your hands on it, etc. Deformation of the insulator and its mount may occur.**

■ When checking or servicing in the engine compartment while the engine is running

⚠ WARNING

A running engine can be dangerous. Keep your fingers, hands, clothing, hair and tools away from the cooling fan, drive belt and any other moving engine parts. Removing rings, watches and ties is advisable.



1) Safety stand

For any maintenance and inspection performed on AWD models which requires a running engine and wheels turning, jack up all four wheels or use free rollers to prevent the vehicle from moving. Never race the engine or brake suddenly.

■ When replacing parts

For information about replacement parts for maintenance, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

Maintenance tips

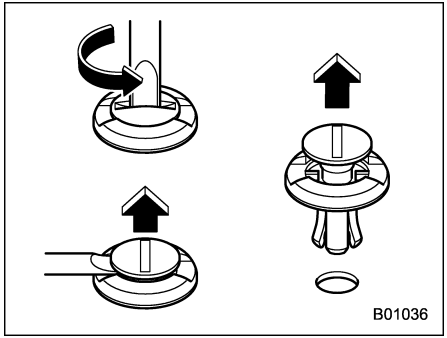
Some clips and fender linings must be removed before replacing the air cleaner elements or specific bulbs.

■ Removing and reinstalling clips

▼ Removing clips

There are several types of clips used for your vehicle.

▽ Type A clips

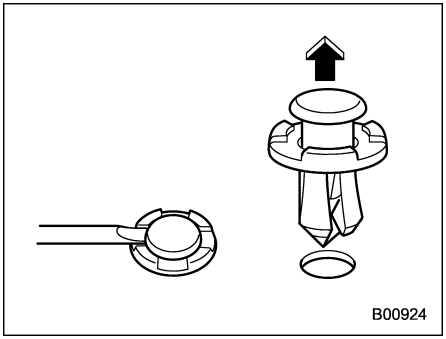


1. Turn the clips counterclockwise using a flat-head screwdriver until the center portion of the clip is raised.
2. Remove the clips with a flat-head screwdriver using leverage.

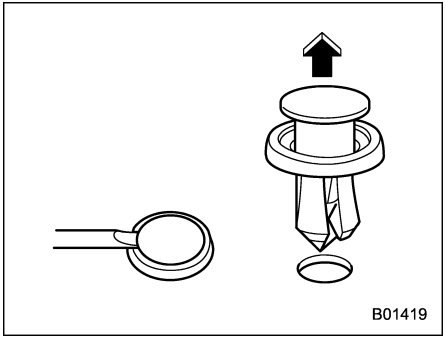
– CONTINUED –

3. Remove the entire clip by pulling it up.

▽ **Type B clips**

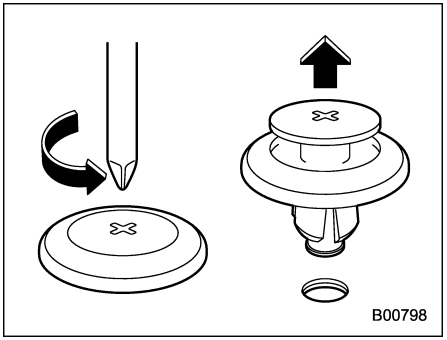


▽ **Type C clips**



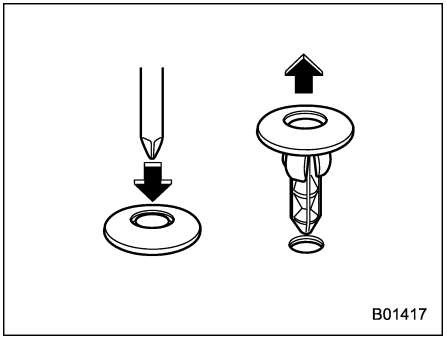
1. Pull out the center portion of the clip using a flat-head screwdriver as shown in the illustration.
2. Pull the protruded center portion to remove the entire body of the clip.

▽ **Type D clips**



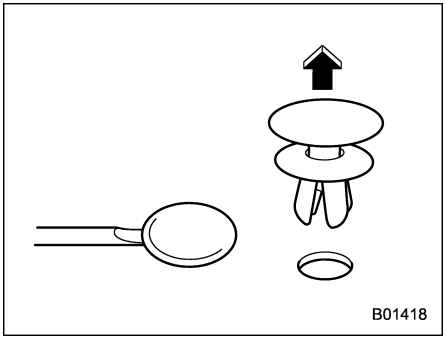
1. Turn the clip counterclockwise using a Phillips screwdriver until the center portion of the clip is raised.
2. Remove the entire clip by pulling it up.

▽ **Type E clips**



1. Push the center portion of the clip using a Phillips screwdriver until the clip is raised.
2. Remove the entire clip by pulling it up.

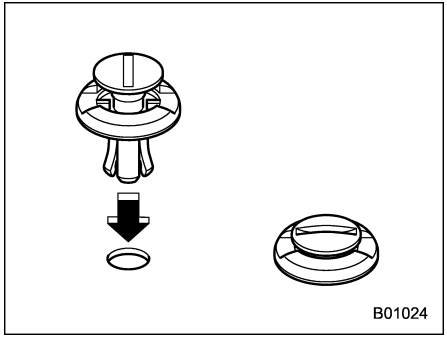
▽ **Type F clips**



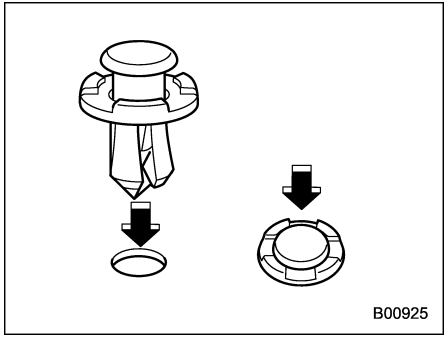
1. Pull out the head of the clip using a flat-head screwdriver as shown in the illustration.
2. Remove the entire clip by pulling it up.

▼ **Reinstalling clips**

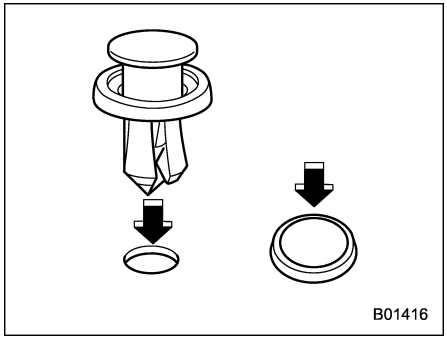
▽ **Type A clips**



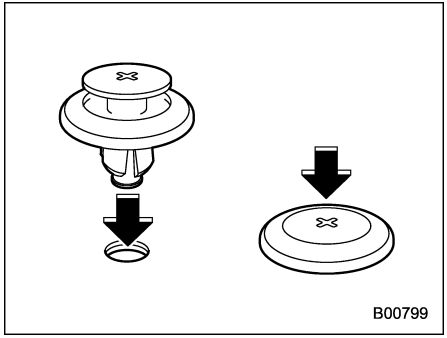
▽ **Type B clips**



▽ **Type C clips**

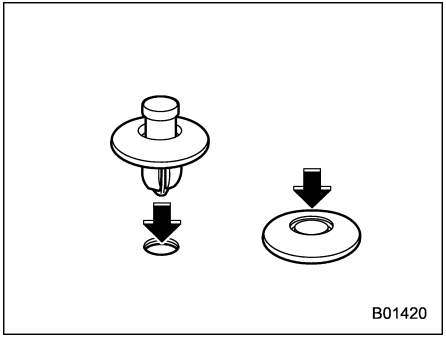


▽ **Type D clips**



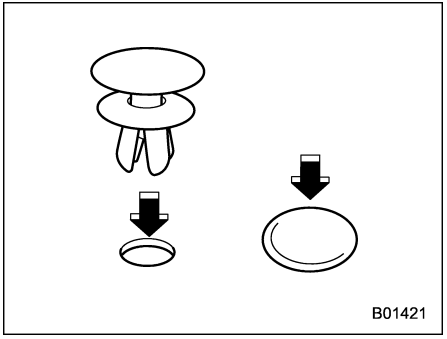
– CONTINUED –

▽ **Type E clips**



Insert the clip without the center portion first and then push the center portion of the clip into the hole.

▽ **Type F clips**

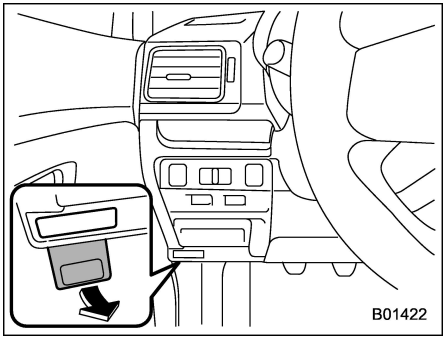


Insert the clip without the head first and then push the head of the clip into the hole.

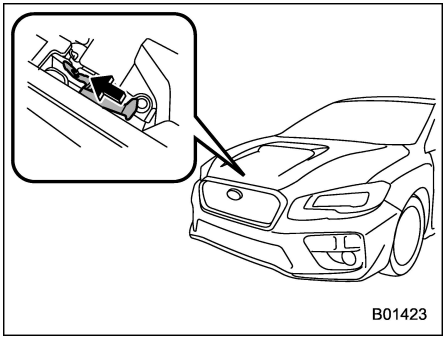
Engine hood

To open the hood:

1. If the wiper blades are lifted off the windshield, return them to their original positions.



2. Pull the hood lock release knob under the instrument panel.



3. Release the secondary hood release by moving the lever between the front grille and the hood toward the left.
4. Lift up the hood.

To close the hood:

1. Lower the hood to a height of approximately 30 cm (11.8 in) above its closed position and then let it drop.
2. After closing the hood, be sure the hood is securely locked.

If this does not close the hood, release it from a slightly higher position. Do not push the hood forcibly to close it. It could deform the metal.

⚠ WARNING

Always check that the hood is properly locked before you start driving. If it is not, it might fly open while the vehicle is moving and block your view, which may cause an accident and serious bodily injury.

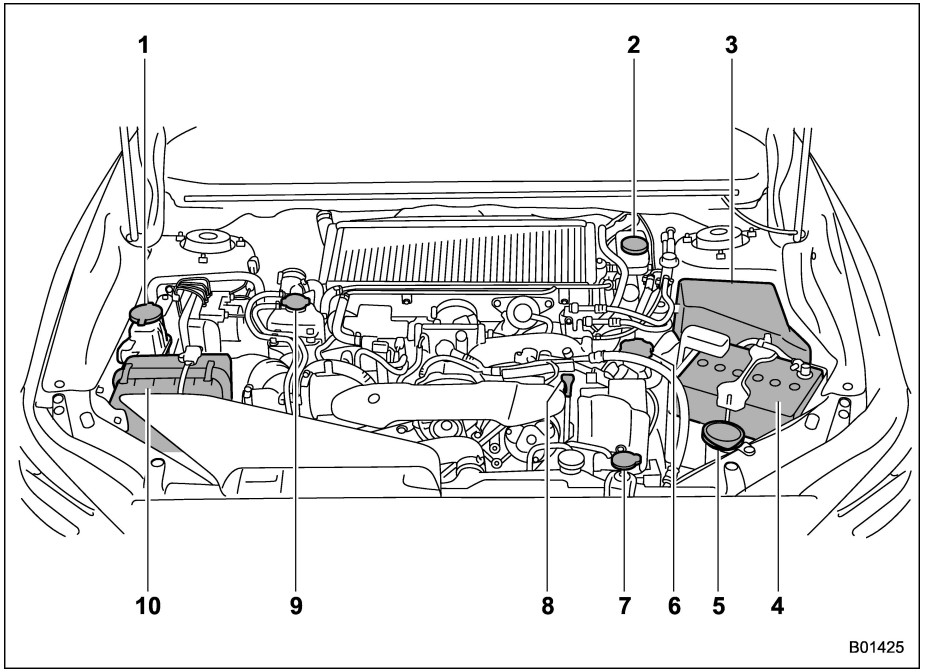
⚠ CAUTION

- **When you open the engine hood, do not stand the wiper blades up. Furthermore, while the hood is open, do not operate the windshield wipers. Doing so could result in damage to the engine hood and wiper blades.**
- **Be extremely careful not to catch fingers or other objects when closing the engine hood.**
- **Do not push the hood forcibly to close it. It could deform the metal.**
- **Be extremely careful opening the engine hood when the wind is strong. The engine hood could close suddenly, possibly causing injuries from slamming.**

- **Do not install accessories other than genuine SUBARU parts or an equivalent to the engine hood. If the engine hood becomes too heavy, the stay may not be able to support holding it open.**

Engine compartment overview

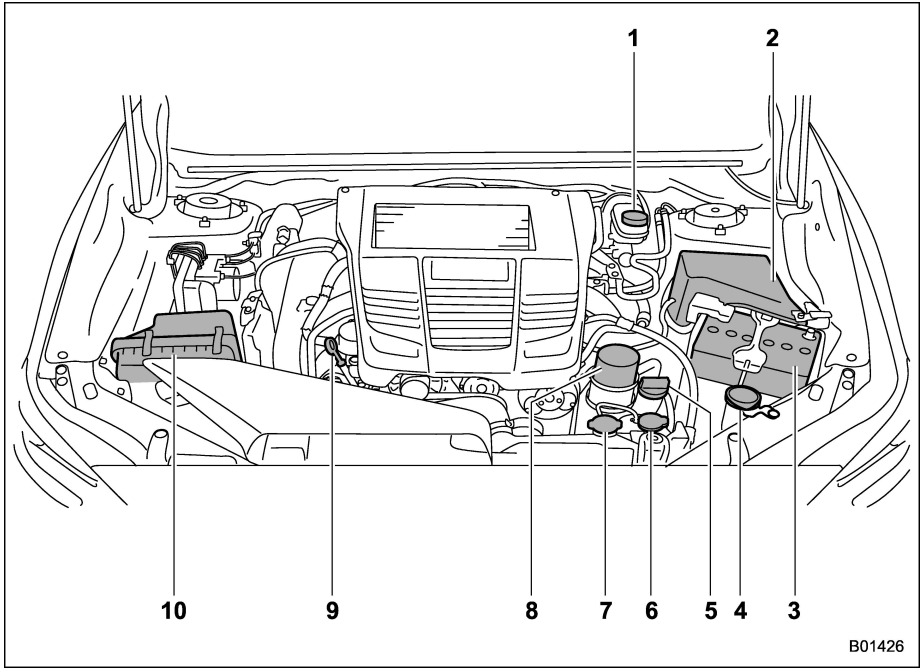
■ STI



The illustration above is for left-hand drive models. The location of item No. 2 (Brake fluid reservoir/Clutch fluid reservoir) for right-hand drive models is the opposite of that shown here.

1) Power steering fluid reservoir (page 11-27)
2) Brake fluid reservoir/Clutch fluid reservoir (page 11-28)
3) Fuse box (page 11-47)
4) Battery (page 11-45)
5) Windshield washer tank (page 11-42)
6) Engine oil filler cap (page 11-16)
7) Engine coolant reservoir (page 11-20)
8) Engine oil level gauge (page 11-16)
9) Coolant filler tank cap (page 11-19)
10) Air cleaner case (page 11-22)

■ Except STI



The illustration above is for left-hand drive models. The location of item No. 1 (Brake fluid reservoir/Clutch fluid reservoir) for right-hand drive models is the opposite of that shown here.

1) Brake fluid reservoir/Clutch fluid reservoir (page 11-28)
2) Fuse box (page 11-47)
3) Battery (page 11-45)
4) Windshield washer tank (page 11-42)
5) Engine oil filler cap (page 11-16)
6) Engine coolant reservoir (page 11-20)
7) Radiator cap (page 11-20)
8) Engine oil filter (page 11-18)
9) Engine oil level gauge (page 11-16)
10) Air cleaner case (page 11-22)

Engine oil

⚠ CAUTION

- **If the level gauge is not pulled out easily, twist the level gauge right and left, then pull it out. Otherwise, you may be injured accidentally straining yourself.**
- **Use only engine oil with the recommended grade and viscosity.**
- **Be careful not to spill engine oil when adding it. If oil touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If engine oil gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.**

■ Engine oil consumption

Some engine oil will be consumed while driving. Under the following conditions, oil consumption can be increased and thus require refilling between maintenance intervals:

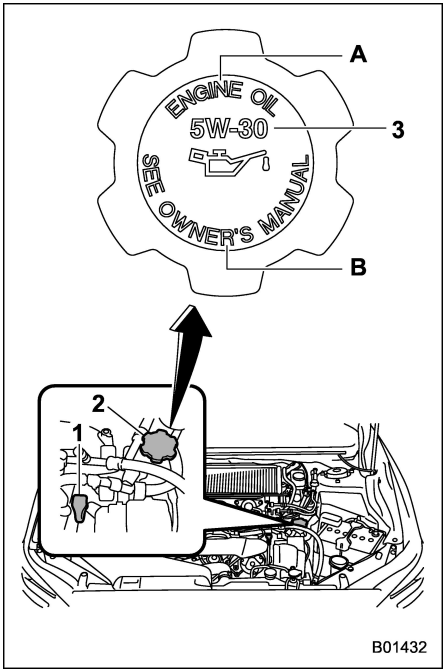
- When the engine is new and within the break-in period
- When the engine oil is of lower quality
- When the incorrect oil viscosity is used
- When engine braking is employed
- When the engine is operated at high engine speeds
- When the engine is operated under heavy loads
- When the engine idles for long periods of time
- When the vehicle is operated in stop and go and/or heavy traffic situations
- When the vehicle is used under severe thermal conditions
- When the vehicle accelerates and decelerates frequently

Under these or similar conditions, you should check your oil at least every 2nd fuel fill-up and change your engine oil more frequently. If your oil consumption rate is greater than 1 liter every 2,000 kilometers, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer who may perform a test under controlled conditions.

■ Checking the oil level

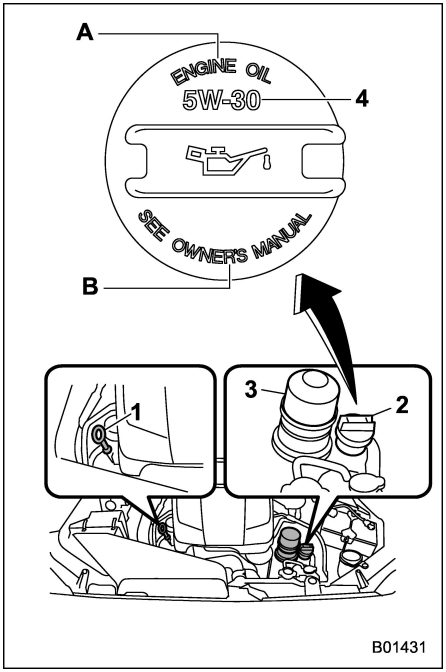
Check the engine oil level at each fuel stop.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface and stop the engine. If you check the oil level just after stopping the engine, wait a few minutes for the oil to drain back into the oil pan before checking the level.



STI

1) Oil level gauge
2) Oil filler cap
3) Oil viscosity
A) ENGINE OIL
B) SEE OWNER'S MANUAL



Except STI

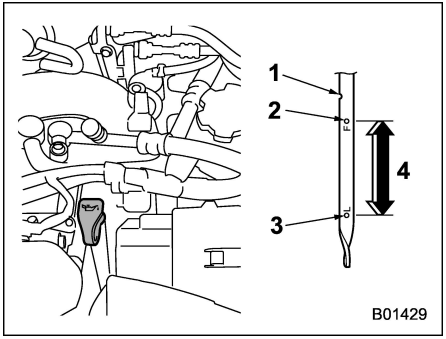
1) Oil level gauge
2) Oil filler cap
3) Oil filter
4) Oil viscosity

A) ENGINE OIL
B) SEE OWNER'S MANUAL

⚠ CAUTION

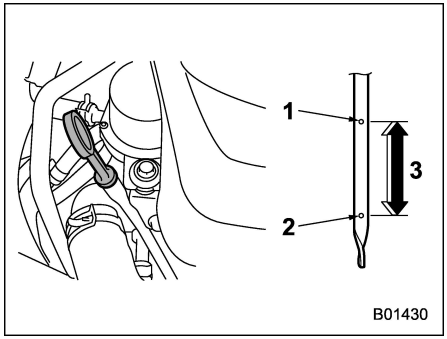
If the level gauge is not pulled out easily, twist the level gauge right and left, and then pull it out. Otherwise, you may be injured accidentally straining yourself.

2. Pull out the level gauge, wipe it clean, and insert it again.
3. Be sure the level gauge is correctly inserted until it stops.



STI

1) Notch
2) Full level
3) Low level
4) Approximately 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) from low level to full level



Except STI

1) Full level
2) Low level
3) Approximately 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) from low level to full level

4. Pull out the oil level gauge again.
5. **STI:**

Check the oil level on the gauge. If the oil level is below the low level mark, add oil so that the full level is reached.

Except STI:

Check the oil levels on both sides of the level gauge. Judge the engine oil level by the lowest of the two levels. If the oil level is below the low level mark, add oil so that the full level is reached.

– CONTINUED –

⚠ CAUTION

For models except STI, be careful not to touch the engine oil filter when removing the oil filler cap. Doing so may result in a burn, a pinched finger, or may cause some other injury.

To add engine oil, remove the engine oil filler cap and slowly pour engine oil through the filler neck. After pouring oil into the engine, you must use the level gauge to confirm that the oil level is correct.

For STI, just after driving or while the engine is warm, the engine oil level reading may be in a range between the upper level and the notch mark. This is caused by thermal expansion of the engine oil.

NOTE

To prevent overfilling the engine oil, do not add any additional oil above the full level when the engine is cold.

■ Changing the oil and oil filter

Change the oil and oil filter according to the maintenance schedule.

The engine oil and oil filter must be changed more frequently than listed in the maintenance schedule, when short trips are frequently made, when towing a trailer, or when driving in extremely cold weather.

NOTE

• Changing the engine oil and oil filter should be performed by a well-trained expert. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for changing the engine oil and oil filter. Fully trained mechanics are on standby at a SUBARU dealer to utilize the special tools, spare parts and recommended oil for this work, and also, used oils are properly disposed of.

• If performing oil replacement yourself, observe the local regulations and dispose of waste oil properly.

■ Recommended grade and viscosity

⚠ CAUTION

Use only engine oil with the recommended grade and viscosity.

Refer to “Engine oil” ☞12-4.

NOTE

Engine oil viscosity (thickness) affects fuel economy. Oils of lower viscosity provide better fuel economy. However, in hot weather, oil of higher viscosity is required to properly lubricate the engine.

■ Synthetic oil

You can use synthetic engine oil that meets the same requirements given for conventional engine oil. When using synthetic oil, you must use oil of the same classification, viscosity and grade shown in this Owner’s Manual.

Refer to “Engine oil” ☞12-4. Also, you must follow the oil and filter changing intervals shown in the maintenance schedule. Refer to “Maintenance schedule” ☞11-3.

NOTE

Synthetic oil of the grade and viscosity noted in chapter 12 is the recommended engine oil for optimum engine performance. Conventional oil may be used with no detriment to engine durability or driveability.

Cooling system

⚠ WARNING

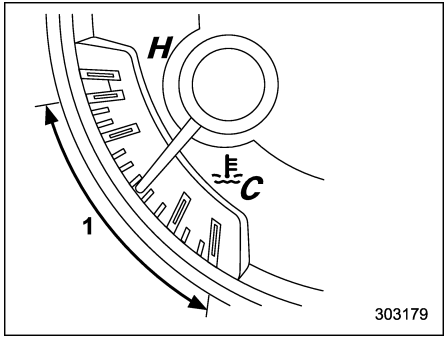
- **Never attempt to remove the radiator cap until the engine has been shut off and has cooled down completely. Since the coolant is under pressure, you may suffer serious burns from a spray of boiling hot coolant when the cap is removed.**
- **Be careful of the rotating cooling fan when the engine hood is open. When the engine temperature is high, the cooling fan in the engine compartment may operate when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position, even if the engine is stopped. Touching the cooling fan while it is rotating may result in injury.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **The cooling system has been filled at the factory with a high quality, corrosion-inhibiting, year-around coolant which provides protection against freezing down to −36°C (−33°F). Make sure to always use genuine SUBARU Super Coolant or an equivalent (non-amine type coolant).**
- **If the coolant requires water dilution, be sure to use soft water (or clear and drinkable water) and to follow the required dilution ratio.**
- **Mixing with a different coolant and/or hard water may result in problems including, but not limited to, shortened engine component life, cooling system clogging, coolant leaks and engine damage from overheating. Therefore, never mix different kinds of coolant and/or hard water even if freezing temperatures are not expected.**
- **Do not splash the engine coolant over painted parts. The alcohol contained in the engine coolant may damage the paint surface.**

■ Cooling fan, hose and connections

Your vehicle employs an electric cooling fan which is thermostatically controlled to operate when the engine coolant reaches a specific temperature.



1) Normal operating range

If the radiator cooling fan does not operate even when the engine coolant temperature gauge exceeds the normal operating range, the cooling fan circuit may be defective. Refer to "Temperature gauge" ☞3-12.

Check the fuse and replace it if necessary. Refer to "Fuses" ☞11-47 and "Fuse panel located in the engine compartment" ☞12-12.

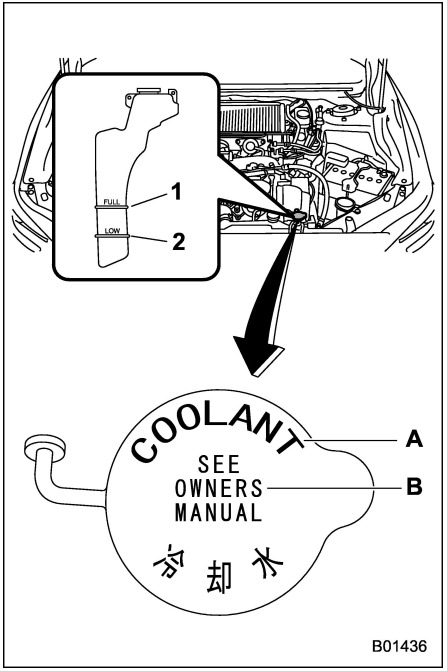
– CONTINUED –

If the fuse is not blown, we recommend that you have the cooling system checked by your SUBARU dealer.

If frequent addition of coolant is necessary, there may be a leak in the engine cooling system. It is recommended that the cooling system and connections be checked for leaks, damage, or looseness.

■ Engine coolant

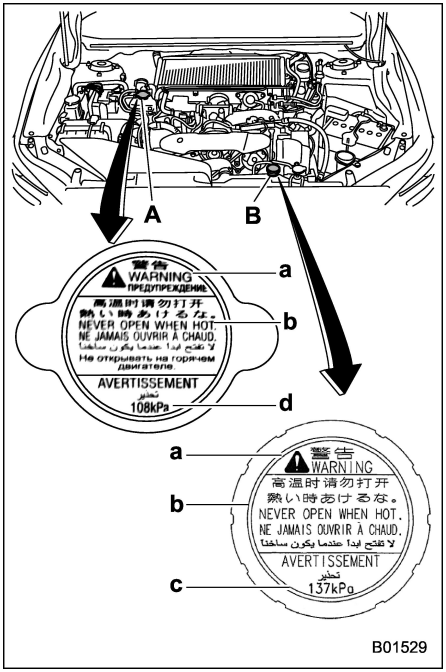
▼ Checking the coolant level



1) "FULL" level mark
2) "LOW" level mark
A) COOLANT
B) SEE OWNER'S MANUAL

Check the coolant level at each fuel stop.

1. Check the coolant level on the outside of the reservoir while the engine is cool.
2. If the level is close to or lower than the "LOW" level mark, open the reservoir cap and add coolant up to the "FULL" level mark. If the reservoir is empty, perform the following steps.



STI

A) Coolant filler tank cap
B) Radiator cap

Label on the caps

a) WARNING
b) NEVER OPEN WHEN HOT.
c) 137 kPa
d) 108 kPa

3. **STI:**
   Remove the coolant filler tank cap.

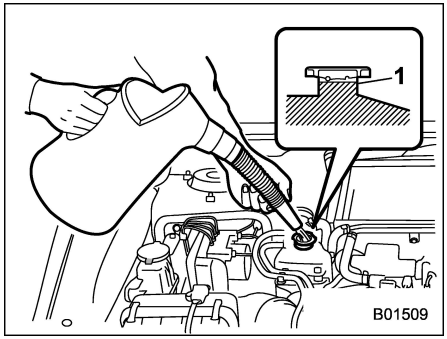
NOTE

The cap (without tabs) on top of the radiator does not need to be removed. To add coolant, remove the cap (with tabs) on the coolant filler tank on top of the engine.

Except STI:

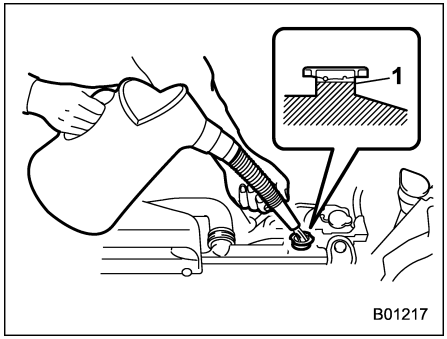
Remove the radiator cap.

4. Slowly pour coolant and refill up to just below the filler neck as shown in the following illustration. Do not pour the coolant too quickly, as this may lead to insufficient air bleeding and trapped air in the system.



STI

1) Fill up to this level

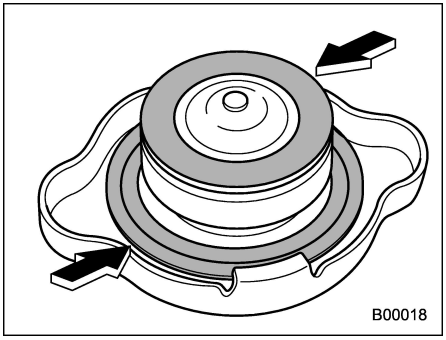


Except STI

1) Fill up to this level

5. Pour coolant in the reservoir until it reaches the “FULL” level mark.

– CONTINUED –



6. Reinstall the coolant filler tank cap (STI), radiator cap (except STI) and reservoir cap. At this time, check that the rubber gaskets inside the radiator cap are in the proper position.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be careful not to spill engine coolant when adding it. If coolant touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If engine coolant gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.**
- **Do not splash the engine coolant over painted parts. The alcohol contained in the engine coolant may damage the paint surface.**

▼ Changing the coolant

It may be difficult to change the coolant. We recommend that you have the coolant changed by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.

The coolant should be changed according to the maintenance schedule in the "Maintenance schedule" ☞11-3.

Air cleaner element

The air cleaner element functions as a filter screen. When the element is perforated or removed, engine wear will be excessive and engine life shortened.

It is not necessary to clean or wash the air cleaner element.

⚠ WARNING

Do not operate the engine with the air cleaner element removed. The air cleaner element not only filters intake air but also stops flames if the engine backfires. If the air cleaner element is not installed when the engine backfires, you could be burned.

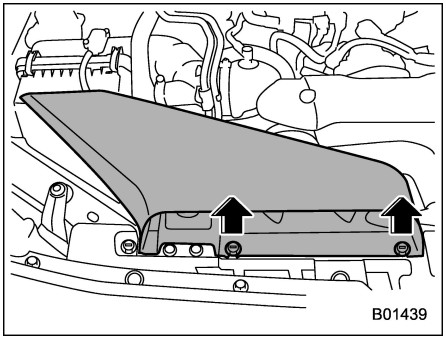
⚠ CAUTION

When replacing the air cleaner element, we recommend that you use a genuine SUBARU air cleaner element. If it is not used, there is the possibility of causing a negative effect to the engine.

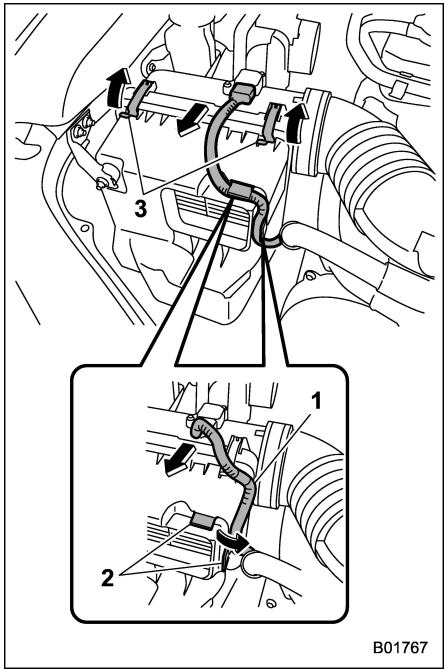
■ Replacing the air cleaner element

Replace the air cleaner element according to the maintenance schedule. Refer to “Maintenance schedule” ☞11-3. Under extremely dusty conditions, replace it more frequently. It is recommended that you always use genuine SUBARU parts.

▼ **STI**



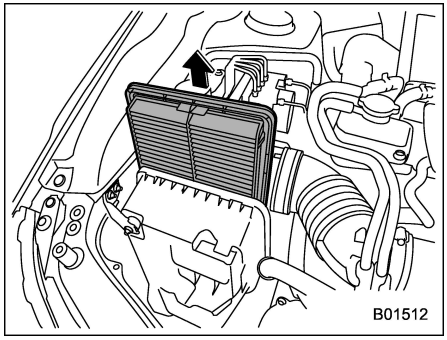
1. Use a screwdriver to undo the clips on the air intake duct, then remove the air intake duct.



1) Connector cable
2) Guides
3) Clips

2. Remove the connector cable from the guides of the air cleaner case.

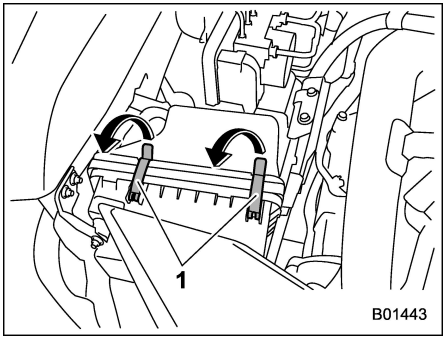
3. Unsnap the two clips holding the air cleaner case cover.



4. Open the air cleaner case and remove the air cleaner element.
5. Clean the inside of the air cleaner case and case cover with a damp cloth and install a new air cleaner element.
6. Install the removed or loosened parts in the reverse order of removal.

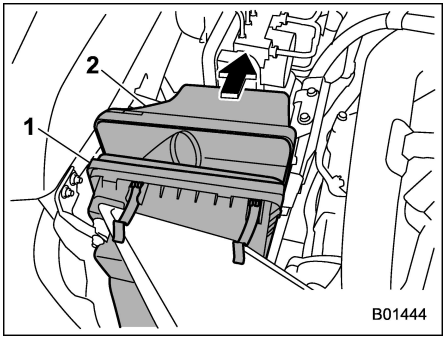
– CONTINUED –

▼ **Except STI**



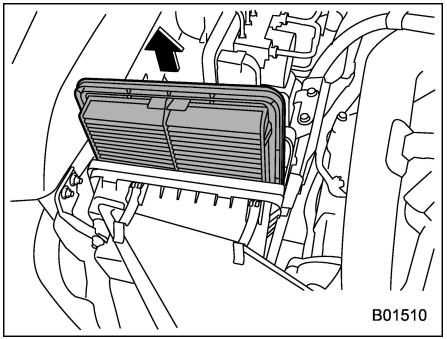
1) Clips

1. Unsnap the two clips holding the air cleaner case cover.



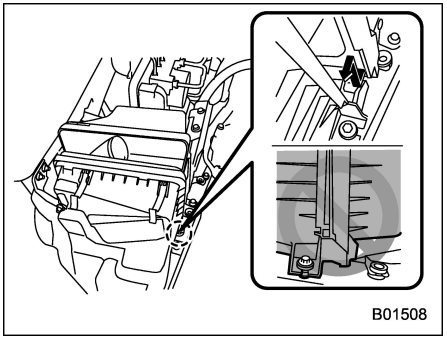
1) Air cleaner case
2) Air cleaner case cover

2. Open the air cleaner case and pull the cover rearward while lifting it up.



3. Remove the air cleaner element.

4. Clean the inside of the air cleaner case and case cover with a damp cloth and install a new air cleaner element.



5. To install the air cleaner case cover, insert the projections on the air cleaner case cover into the slits on the air cleaner case. The illustration above shows an example in which the projections are not fitted into the slits correctly.
6. Install in the reverse order of removal.

Spark plugs

It may be difficult to replace the spark plugs. We recommend that you have the spark plugs replaced by your SUBARU dealer.

Have the spark plugs replaced according to the maintenance schedule. Refer to "Maintenance schedule" ☞11-3.

NOTE

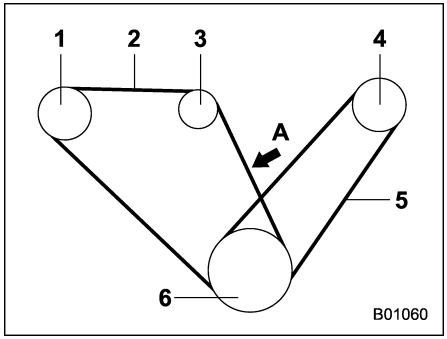
For the recommended spark plugs, refer to "Electrical system" ☞12-8.

Drive belts

NOTE

For models except STI, it is unnecessary to check the deflection of the drive belt periodically because your engine is equipped with an automatic belt tension adjuster. However, have the belt replaced according to the maintenance schedule in the "Maintenance schedule" ☞11-3. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for replacement.

If the drive belt is loose, cracked or worn, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.



STI

1) Power steering oil pump pulley
2) Front side belt
3) Alternator pulley
4) Air conditioner compressor pulley
5) Rear side belt
6) Crank pulley

A) 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf)

⚠ CAUTION

The front side belt, which runs in conjunction with the following components, must be used within the specified deflection.

- **Power steering oil pump pulley**
- **Alternator pulley**
- **Crank pulley**

– CONTINUED –

Check the deflection of the front side belt and if there is any looseness, cracks, wear or unusual noise on the front side belt, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

Continuing to use the vehicle with the belt outside of the specification may cause the engine to malfunction and the above components to malfunction.

To check the deflection of the front side belt, place a straightedge (ruler) across two adjacent pulleys (alternator pulley and crank pulley) and apply a force of 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf) midway between the pulleys by using a spring scale. The belt deflection should be the amount specified. If the front side belt is loose, cracked or worn, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

mm (in)

	Deflection	
	New belt	Used belt
A	7.0 – 9.0 (0.28 – 0.35)	9.0 – 11.0 (0.35 – 0.43)

The rear side belt is a stretch-type belt, therefore the deflection and tension do not need to be checked. If there are cracks or wear confirmed on the belts and a squeaking noise is heard from them, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

Manual transmission oil

It is not necessary to check the transmission oil level. Check that there are no cracks, damage or leakage. However, have the oil inspected according to the maintenance schedule in the "Maintenance schedule" ☞11-3. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for details.

■ Recommended grade and viscosity

Each oil manufacturer has its own base oils and additives. Never use different brands together. For details, refer to "Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil" ☞12-6.

Continuously variable transmission fluid

There is no fluid level gauge. It is unnecessary to check the continuously variable transmission fluid level. However, if necessary, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for inspection.

Front differential gear oil (CVT models) and rear differential gear oil

There is no oil level gauge. To check the differential gear oil level, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.

■ Recommended grade and viscosity

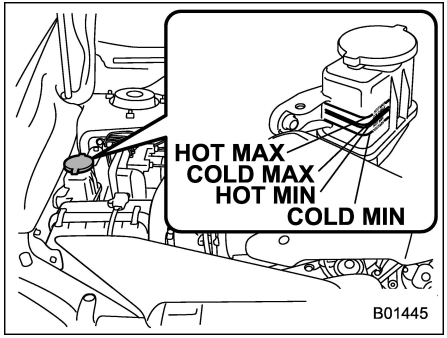
Each oil manufacturer has its own base oils and additives. Never use different brands together. For details, refer to "Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil" ☞12-6.

⚠ CAUTION

Using a differential gear oil other than the specified oil may cause a decline in vehicle performance.

Power steering fluid (STI)

■ Checking the fluid level



The power steering fluid expands greatly as its temperature rises; the fluid level differs according to fluid temperature. Therefore, the reservoir tank has two different checking ranges for hot and cold fluids.

Check the power steering fluid level monthly.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and stop the engine.
2. Check the fluid level of the reservoir tank.

When the fluid is hot after the vehicle has been run: Check that the oil level is between "HOT MIN" and "HOT MAX" on

– CONTINUED –

the surface of the reservoir tank.

When the fluid is cool before the vehicle is run: Check that the oil level is between “COLD MIN” and “COLD MAX” on the surface of the reservoir tank.

3. If the fluid level is lower than the applicable “MIN” line, add the recommended fluid as necessary to bring the level between the “MIN” and “MAX” line.

If the fluid level is extremely low, it may indicate possible leakage. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.

⚠ WARNING

Be careful not to burn yourself because the fluid may be hot.

⚠ CAUTION

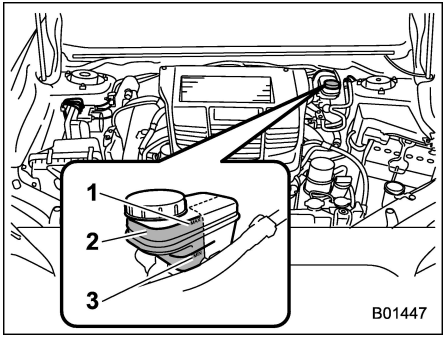
- **When you add power steering fluid, use only clean fluid, and be careful not to allow any dirt into the tank. And never use different brands together.**
- **Be careful not to spill power steering fluid when adding it. If power steering fluid touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If power steering fluid gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.**

■ Recommended fluid

Refer to “Fluids” ☞12-7.

Brake fluid

■ Checking the fluid level



1) “MAX” level line
2) Check the fluid level in this area.
3) “MIN” level line

Check the fluid level monthly.

Check the fluid level on the outside of the reservoir. Because this reservoir is used for both the brake and clutch systems and has chambers for each system, be sure to check the fluid level for the brake system at the **front part of the reservoir** (shaded area in the illustration). If the level is below “MIN”, add the recommended brake fluid to “MAX”.

Use only brake fluid from a sealed container.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never let brake fluid contact your eyes because brake fluid can be harmful to your eyes. If brake fluid gets in your eyes, immediately flush them thoroughly with clean water. For safety, when performing this work, wearing eye protection is advisable.**
- **Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air. Any absorbed moisture can cause a dangerous loss of braking performance. For vehicles with manual transmission, the brake fluid in the brake fluid reservoir is also used as the clutch fluid for the clutch system. Therefore, moisture-absorbed brake fluid may interfere with the proper operation of the clutch system.**
- **If the vehicle requires frequent refilling, there may be a leak. If you suspect a problem, we recommend that you have the vehicle checked at your SUBARU dealer.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **When adding brake fluid, be careful not to allow any dirt into the reservoir.**
- **Never splash the brake fluid over painted surfaces or rubber parts. Alcohol contained in the brake fluid may damage them.**
- **Be careful not to spill brake fluid when adding it. If brake fluid touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If brake fluid gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.**

■ Recommended brake fluid

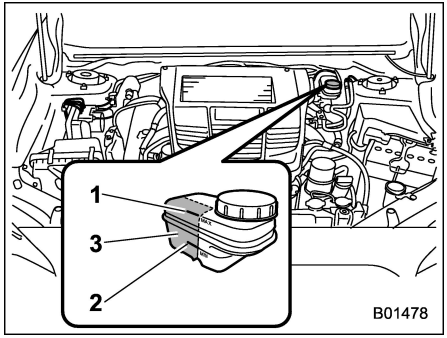
Refer to “Fluids” ☞12-7.

⚠ CAUTION

Never use different brands of brake fluid together. Also, avoid mixing DOT 3 and DOT 4 brake fluids even if they are the same brand.

Clutch fluid (MT models)

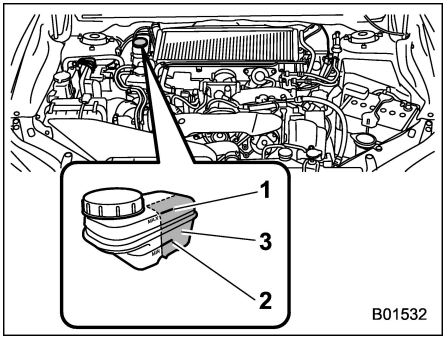
■ Checking the fluid level



Left-hand drive models

1) “MAX” level line
2) “MIN” level line
3) Check the fluid level in this area.

– CONTINUED –



Right-hand drive models
1) "MAX" level line
2) "MIN" level line
3) Check the fluid level in this area.

Check the fluid level monthly.

Check the fluid level on the outside of the reservoir. Because this reservoir is used for both the brake and clutch systems and has chambers for each system, be sure to check the fluid level for the clutch system at the **inboard side of the reservoir** (shaded area in the illustration). If the level is below "MIN", add the recommended brake fluid (clutch fluid) to "MAX".

Use only brake fluid (clutch fluid) from a sealed container.

NOTE

The fluid level for the clutch system must be checked at the inboard side of the reservoir. It cannot be checked at the outboard side of the reservoir.

Brake booster

If the brake booster does not operate as described in the following, we recommend that you have it checked by your SUBARU dealer.

1. With the engine off, depress the brake pedal several times, applying the same pedal force each time. The distance the pedal travels should not vary.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, start the engine. The pedal should move slightly down to the floor.
3. With the brake pedal depressed, stop the engine and keep the pedal depressed for 30 seconds. The pedal height should not change.
4. Start the engine again and run for approximately 1 minute then turn it off. Depress the brake pedal several times to check the brake booster. The brake booster operates properly if the pedal stroke decreases with each depression.

NOTE

When you depress the brake pedal strongly or suddenly, you might feel that the brake pedal is applied by lighter force and generates a greater braking force. However, even though this occurs, it does not indicate any malfunc-

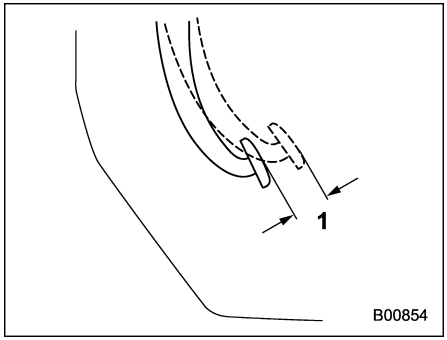
tions, and the brake assist system is operating properly.

Brake assist is not a system that brings more braking ability to the vehicle beyond its breaking capability.

Brake pedal

Check the brake pedal free play and reserve distance according to the maintenance schedule.

■ Checking the brake pedal free play

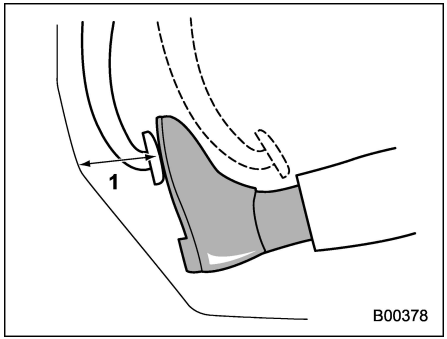


1) 0.5 – 2.7 mm (0.02 – 0.11 in)

Stop the engine and firmly depress the brake pedal several times. Then, check the amount of free play by pulling up the brake pedal with a force of less than 10 N (1 kgf, 2 lbf).

If the free play is not within proper specification, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

■ Checking the brake pedal reserve distance



1) Left-hand drive models:
More than 83 mm (3.27 in)
Right-hand drive models:
More than 96 mm (3.78 in)

Depress the pedal with a force of approximately 294 N (30 kgf, 66 lbf) and measure the distance between the upper surface of the pedal pad and the floor.

When the measurement is smaller than the specification, or when the pedal does not operate smoothly, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

Clutch pedal (MT models)

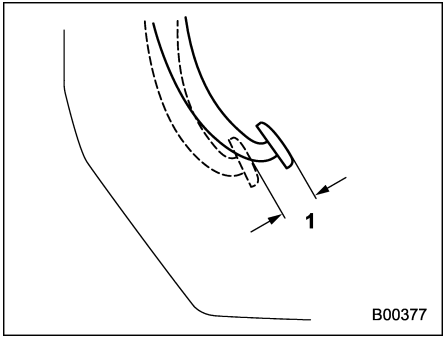
Check the clutch pedal free play according to the maintenance schedule.

■ Checking the clutch function

Check the clutch engagement and disengagement.

1. With the engine idling, check that there are no abnormal noises when the clutch pedal is depressed, and that shifting into 1st or reverse feels smooth.
2. Start the vehicle by releasing the pedal slowly to check that the engine and transmission smoothly couple without any sign of slippage.

■ Checking the clutch pedal free play



1) 4.0 – 11.0 mm (0.16 – 0.43 in)

Lightly depress the clutch pedal down with your finger until you feel resistance, and check the free play.

If the free play is not within proper specification, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

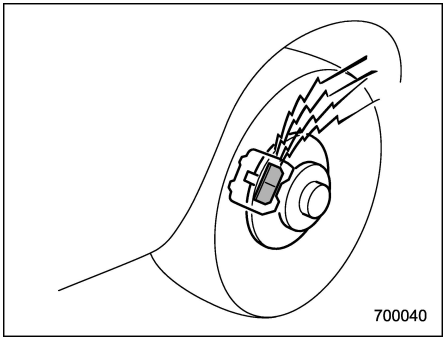
Hill start assist system

Ensure that the Hill start assist system operates properly under the following circumstances.

1. Stop the vehicle on an uphill grade by depressing the brake pedal (all models) and clutch pedal (MT models only), with the engine running.
2. Make sure that the vehicle does not move backward for several seconds after the brake pedal is released.
3. Then make sure the vehicle starts climbing the grade by following the normal starting procedures.

If the Hill start assist system does not operate as described above, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

Replacement of brake pad and lining



The disc brakes have audible wear indicators on the brake pads. If the brake pads wear close to their service limit, the wear indicator makes a very audible scraping noise when the brake pedal is applied.

If you hear this scraping noise each time you apply the brake pedal, we recommend that you have the brake pads serviced by your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

⚠ CAUTION

If you continue to drive despite the scraping noise from the audible brake pad wear indicator, it will result in the need for costly brake rotor repair or replacement.

■ Breaking-in of new brake pads (models with electronic parking brake system)

When replacing the brake pad, we recommend that you use only genuine SUBARU parts. After replacement, break in the new parts as follows.

▼ Brake pad

While maintaining a speed of 50 to 65 km/h (30 to 40 mph), step on the brake pedal lightly. Repeat this five or more times.

■ Breaking-in of new brake pads and linings (models without electronic parking brake system)

When replacing the brake pad or lining, we recommend that you use only genuine SUBARU parts. After replacement, break in the new parts as follows:

▼ Brake pad and lining

While maintaining a speed of 50 to 65 km/h (30 to 40 mph), step on the brake pedal lightly. Repeat this five or more times.

▼ Parking brake lining

1. Drive the vehicle at a speed of approximately 35 km/h (22 mph).
2. With the parking brake release button pushed in, pull the parking brake lever SLOWLY and GENTLY. [Pulling with a force of approximately 150 N (15 kgf, 33 lbf).]
3. Drive the vehicle for approximately 200 meters (220 yards) in this condition.
4. Wait 5 to 10 minutes for the parking brake to cool down. Repeat this procedure.
5. Check the parking brake stroke. If the parking brake stroke is out of the specified range, adjust it by turning the adjusting nut located on the parking brake lever.

– CONTINUED –

Parking brake stroke:
7 – 8 notches / 200 N (20.4 kgf, 45 lbf)

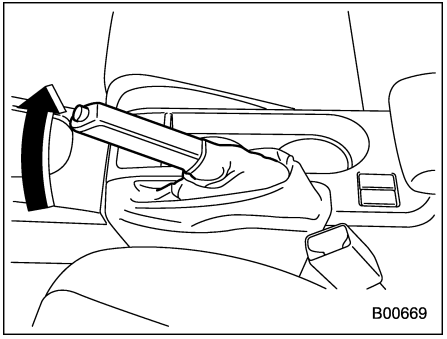
⚠ WARNING

A safe location and situation should be selected for break-in driving.

⚠ CAUTION

Pulling the parking brake lever too forcefully may cause the rear wheels to lock. To avoid this, be certain to pull the lever up slowly and gently.

Parking brake stroke (models without electronic parking brake system)



Check the parking brake stroke according to the maintenance schedule.

When the parking brake is properly adjusted, braking power is fully applied by pulling the lever up 7 to 8 notches gently but firmly (approximately 200 N [20.4 kgf, 45 lbf]). If the parking brake lever stroke is not within the specified range, we recommend that you have the brake system checked and adjusted at your SUBARU dealer.

Tires and wheels

■ Types of tires

You should be familiar with type of tires present on your vehicle.

▼ All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide an adequate measure of traction, handling and braking performance in year-round driving including snowy and icy road conditions. However all season tires do not offer as much traction performance as winter (snow) tires in heavy or loose snow or on icy roads.

All season tires are identified by “ALL SEASON” and/or “M+S” (Mud & Snow) on the tire sidewall.

▼ Summer tires

Summer tires are high-speed capability tires best suited for highway driving under dry conditions.

Summer tires are inadequate for driving on slippery roads such as on snow-covered or icy roads.

If you drive your vehicle on snow-covered or icy roads, we strongly recommend the use of winter (snow) tires.

When installing winter tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

▼ **Winter (snow) tires**

Winter tires are best suited for driving on snow-covered and icy roads. However winter tires do not perform as well as summer tires and all season tires on roads other than snow-covered and icy roads.

■ Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) (if equipped)

The tire pressure monitoring system provides the driver with a warning message by sending a signal from a sensor that is installed in each wheel when tire pressure is severely low. The tire pressure monitoring system will activate only when the vehicle is driven. Also, this system may not react immediately to a sudden drop in tire pressure (for example, a blow-out caused by running over a sharp object).

If you adjust the tire pressures in a warm garage and will then drive the vehicle in cold outside air, the resulting drop in tire pressures may cause the low tire pressure warning light to illuminate. To avoid this problem when adjusting the tire pressures in a warm garage, inflate the tires to pressures higher than those shown on the tire placard. Specifically, inflate them by an extra 10 kPa (1.02 kgf/cm^2, 1.5 psi) for every difference of 10°C (18°F) between the temperature in the garage and the temperature outside. By way of example, the following table shows the required tire pressures that correspond to various outside temperatures when the temperature in the garage is 15.6°C (60°F).

Example:

Tire size: 245/40R18 97W

Standard tire pressures:

Front: 230 kPa (2.3 kgf/cm^2, 33 psi)

Rear: 220 kPa (2.2 kgf/cm^2, 32 psi)

Garage temperature: 15.6°C (60°F)

Outside temperature	Adjusted pressure [kPa (kgf/cm^2, psi)]	
	Front	Rear
5°C (41°F)	240 (2.4, 35)	230 (2.3, 33)
−5°C (2.3°F)	250 (2.5, 36)	240 (2.4, 35)
−15°C (−5°F)	260 (2.6, 38)	250 (2.5, 36)

If the low tire pressure warning light illuminates when you drive the vehicle in cold outside air after adjusting the tire pressures in a warm garage, re-adjust the tire pressures using the method described above. Then, increase the vehicle speed to at least 40 km/h (25 mph) and check to see that the low tire pressure warning light turns off a few minutes later. If the low tire pressure warning light does not turn off, the tire pressure monitoring system may not be functioning normally. In this event, we recommend that you go to a SUBARU dealer to have the system inspected as soon as possible.

While the vehicle is driven, friction between tires and the road surface causes the tires to warm up. After illumination of the low tire pressure warning light, any increase in the tire pressures caused by an increase in the outside air temperature or by an increase in the temperature in the tires can cause the low tire pressure warning light to turn off.

System resetting is necessary when the wheels are changed (for example, a switch to snow tires) and new TPMS valves are installed on the newly fitted wheels. We recommend that you have this work performed by a SUBARU dealer following wheel replacement.

It may not be possible to install TPMS valves on certain wheels that are on the market. Therefore, if you change the wheels (for example, a switch to snow tires), use wheels that have the same part number as the standard-equipment wheels. Without four operational TPMS valve/sensors on the wheels, the TPMS will not fully function and the warning light on the combination meter will illuminate steadily after blinking for approximately one minute.

– CONTINUED –

When a tire is replaced, adjustments are necessary to ensure continued normal operation of the tire pressure monitoring system. As with wheel replacement, therefore, we recommend that you have the work performed by a SUBARU dealer.

⚠ WARNING

- **If the low tire pressure warning light does not illuminate briefly after the ignition switch is turned ON or the light illuminates steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you have your Tire Pressure Monitoring System checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.**
- **If this light illuminates while driving, never brake suddenly. Instead, perform the following procedure. Otherwise an accident involving serious vehicle damage and serious personal injury could occur.**
  (1) Keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed.
  (2) Slowly pull off the road to a safe place.
  (3) Check the pressure for all four tires and adjust the pressure to the most appropriate one of two (normal or loading) COLD tire pressure shown on the tire placard on the door pillar on the driver's side.

  If this light still illuminates while driving after adjusting the tire pressure, a tire may have significant damage and a fast leak that causes the tire to lose air rapidly. If you have a flat tire, replace it with a spare tire as soon as possible.
- **When a spare tire is mounted or a wheel rim is replaced without the original pressure sensor/transmitter being transferred, the low tire pressure warning light will illuminate steadily after blinking for approximately one minute. This indicates the TPMS is unable to monitor all four road wheels. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible for tire and sensor replacement and/or system resetting. If the light illuminates steadily after blinking for approximately one minute, we recommend that you promptly contact a SUBARU dealer to have the system inspected.**

■ Tire inspection

Check on a daily basis that the tires are free from serious damage, nails, and stones. At the same time, check the tires for abnormal wear.

We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer immediately if you find any problem.

NOTE

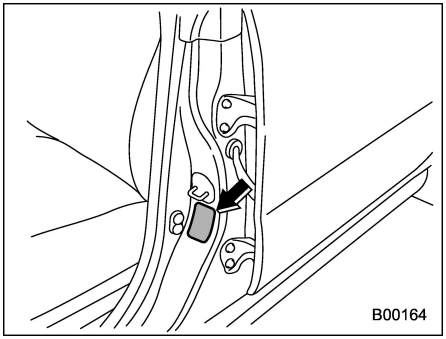
• When the wheels and tires strike curbs or are subjected to harsh treatment as when the vehicle is driven on a rough surface, they can suffer damage that cannot be seen with the naked eye. This type of damage does not become evident until time has passed. Try not to drive over curbs, potholes or on other rough surfaces. If doing so is unavoidable, keep the vehicle's speed down to a walking pace or less, and approach the curbs as squarely as possible. Also, make sure the tires are not pressed against the curb when you park the vehicle.

• If you feel unusual vibration while driving or find it difficult to steer the vehicle in a straight line, one of the tires and/or wheels may be damaged. We

recommend that you drive slowly to the nearest authorized SUBARU dealer and have the vehicle inspected.

■ Tire pressures and wear

Maintaining the correct tire pressure helps to maximize the tires' service lives and is essential for good running performance. Check and, if necessary, adjust the pressure of each tire (including the spare) at least once a month (for example, during a fuel stop) and before any long journey.



Tire placard

Check tire pressure when the tires are cold. Use a pressure gauge to adjust tire pressure to the values shown on the tire placard. The tire placard is located as shown in the illustration.

Driving even a short distance warms up the tires and increases tire pressure. Also, tire pressure is affected by the outside temperature. It is best to check tire pressure outdoors before driving the vehicle.

When a tire becomes warm, the air inside it expands, causing tire pressure to increase. Be careful not to mistakenly release air from a warm tire to reduce its pressure.

⚠ WARNING

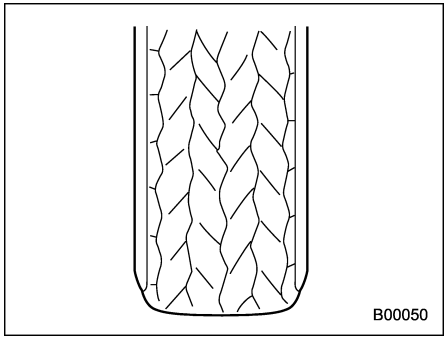
Do not let air out of warm tires to adjust pressure. Doing so will result in low tire pressure.

NOTE

- **The air pressure in a tire increases by approximately 30 kPa (0.3 kgf/cm^2, 4.3 psi) when the tire becomes warm.**
- **The tires are considered cold when you have parked the vehicle for at least three hours or have driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile).**

Incorrect tire pressure detracts from controllability and ride comfort, and it causes tires to wear abnormally.

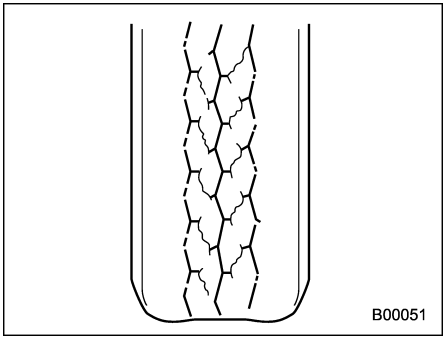
- **Correct tire pressure** (tread worn evenly)



Roadholding is good, and steering is responsive. Rolling resistance is low, therefore fuel consumption is also lower.

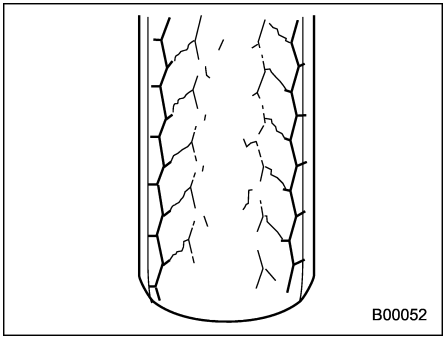
– CONTINUED –

• **Under inflated tire** (tread worn on shoulders)



Rolling resistance is high, therefore fuel consumption is also higher.

• **Over inflated tire** (tread worn in the center)



Ride comfort is poor. Also, the tire magnifies the effects of road-surface bumps and dips, possibly resulting in vehicle damage.

If the tire placard shows tire pressure for the vehicle when fully loaded, adjust the tire pressures to the values that match the loading conditions.

⚠ WARNING

Driving at high speeds with excessively low tire pressure can cause the tires to deform severely and to rapidly heat up. A sharp increase in temperature could cause tread separation, and destruction of the tires. The resulting loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.

■ Wheel balance

Each wheel was correctly balanced when your vehicle was new, but the wheels will become unbalanced as the tires become worn during use. Wheel imbalance causes the steering wheel to vibrate slightly at certain vehicle speeds and detracts from the vehicle's straight-line stability. It can also cause steering and suspension system problems and abnormal tire wear. If you suspect that the wheels are not correctly balanced, we recommend that you have them checked and adjusted by your SUBARU dealer. Also have them adjusted after tire repairs and after tire rotation.

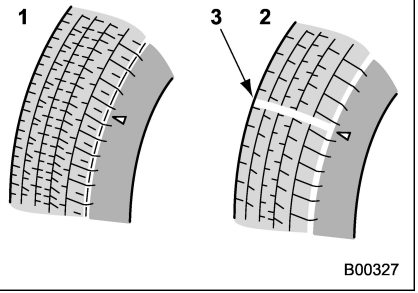
⚠ CAUTION

Loss of correct wheel alignment causes the tires to wear on one side and reduces the vehicle's running stability. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer if you notice abnormal tire wear.

NOTE

The suspension system is designed to hold each wheel at a certain alignment (relative to the other wheels and to the road) for optimum straight-line stability and cornering performance.

■ Wear indicators



1) New tread
2) Worn tread
3) Tread wear indicator

Each tire incorporates a tread wear indicator, which becomes visible when the depth of the tread grooves decreases to 1.6 mm (0.063 in). Replace a tire when the tread wear indicator appears as a solid band across the tread.

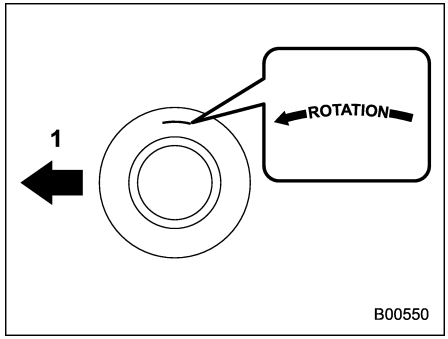
⚠ WARNING

When a tire's tread wear indicator becomes visible, the tire is worn beyond the acceptable limit and you must replace it immediately. With a tire in this condition, driving at high speeds in wet weather can cause the vehicle to hydroplane. The resulting loss of vehicle control can lead to an accident.

NOTE

For safety, inspect tire tread regularly and replace the tires before their tread wear indicators become visible.

■ Rotational direction of tires



Example of the rotational direction marked on the sidewall

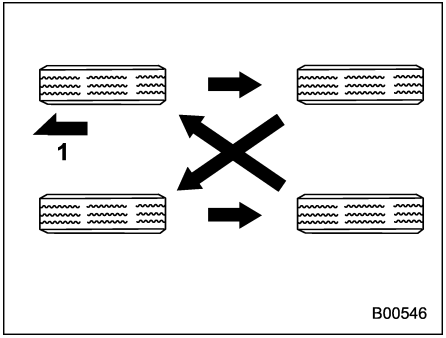
1) Front

If the tires have a specific rotational direction, refer to the arrow marked on the side wall.

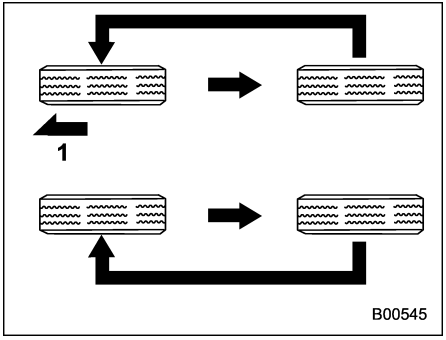
The arrow should be pointing forward when the wheels are fitted.

– CONTINUED –

■ Tire rotation



Models equipped with 4 non-unidirectional tires
1) Front



Models equipped with unidirectional tires
1) Front

Tire wear varies from wheel to wheel. To maximize the life of each tire and ensure that the tires wear uniformly, it is best to rotate the tires every 10,000 km (6,200 miles). Move the tires to the positions shown in the illustration each time they are rotated.

Replace any damaged or unevenly worn tire at the time of rotation. After tire rotation, adjust the tire pressures and make sure the wheel nuts are correctly tightened.

After driving approximately 1,000 km (600 miles), check the wheel nuts again and retighten any nut that has become loose.

■ Tire replacement

The wheels and tires are important and integral parts of your vehicle's design; they cannot be changed arbitrarily. The tires fitted as standard equipment are optimally matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and were selected to give the best possible combination of running performance, ride comfort, and service life. It is essential for every tire to have a size and construction matching those shown on the tire placard and to have a speed symbol and load index matching those shown on the tire placard.

Using tires of a non-specified size detracts from controllability, ride comfort, braking performance, speedometer accuracy and odometer accuracy. It also creates incorrect body-to-tire clearances and inappropriately changes the vehicle's ground clearance.

All four tires must be the same in terms of manufacturer, brand (tread pattern), construction, and size. You are advised to replace the tires with new ones that are identical to those fitted as standard equipment.

For safe vehicle operation, SUBARU recommends replacing all four tires at the same time.

⚠ WARNING

- **When replacing or installing tire(s), all four tires must be the same for the following items.**
  (a) Size
  (b) Circumference
  (c) Speed symbol
  (d) Load index
  (e) Construction
  (f) Manufacturer
  (g) Brand (tread pattern)
  (h) Degrees of wear

For items (a) to (d), you must obey the specification that is printed on the tire placard. The tire placard is located on the driver's door pillar.

If all four tires are not the same in items (a) to (h), there is a possibility that it may lead to serious mechanical damage to the drive train of your car and affect the following factors.

— Ride

— Handling

— Braking

— Speedometer/Odometer calibration

— Clearance between the body and the tires

It also may be dangerous and lead to loss of vehicle control, and it can lead to an accident.

- **Use only radial tires. Do not use radial tires together with belted bias tires and/or bias-ply tires. Doing so can dangerously reduce controllability, resulting in an accident.**

■ Wheel replacement

When replacing wheels (i.e., due to damage) make sure the replacement wheels match the specifications of the wheels that are fitted as standard equipment. Replacement wheels are available from SUBARU dealers.

⚠ WARNING

Use only those wheels that are specified for your vehicle. Wheels not meeting specifications could interfere with brake caliper operation and may cause the tires to rub against the wheel well housing during turns. The resulting loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.

NOTE

When any of the wheels are removed and replaced for tire rotation or to change a flat tire, always check the tightness of the wheel nuts after driving approximately 1,000 km (600 miles). If any nut is loose, tighten it to the specified torque.

Alloy wheels

Alloy wheels can be scratched and damaged easily. Handle them carefully to maintain their appearance, performance, and safety.

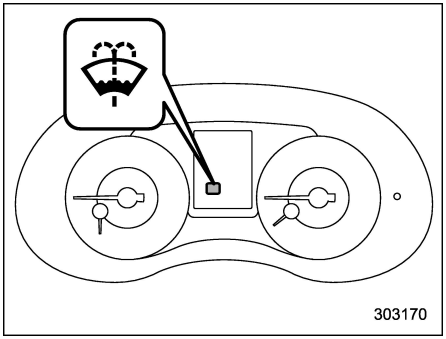
- When any of the wheels are removed and replaced for tire rotation or to change a flat, always check the tightness of the wheel nuts after driving approximately 1,000 km (600 miles). If any nut is loose, tighten it to the specified torque.
- Never apply oil to the threaded parts, wheel nuts, or tapered surface of the wheel.
- Never let the wheel rub against sharp protrusions or curbs.
- Be sure to fit tire chains uniformly and completely around the tire, otherwise the chains may scratch the wheel.
- When wheel nuts, balance weights, or the center cap is replaced, we recommend that you replace them with genuine SUBARU parts designed for alloy wheels.

Windshield washer fluid

■ Adding the windshield washer fluid

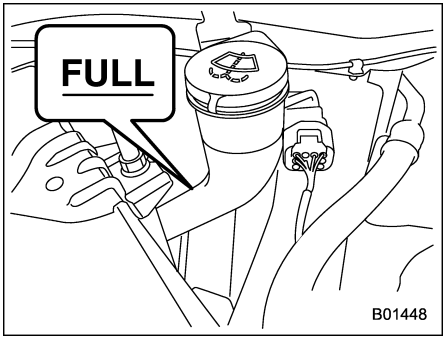
⚠ CAUTION

Never use engine coolant as washer fluid because it could cause paint damage.



Windshield washer fluid warning indicator

When there is only a small amount of washer fluid remaining, the windshield washer fluid warning indicator will appear. When this occurs, refill the washer fluid as follows.



Remove the washer tank filler cap, then add windshield washer fluid until it reaches the “FULL” mark on the tank.

■ Windshield washer fluid

Use windshield washer fluid. If windshield washer fluid is unavailable, use clean water.

In areas where water freezes in winter, use an anti-freeze type windshield washer fluid. SUBARU Windshield Washer Fluid contains 58.5% methyl alcohol and 41.5% surfactant, by volume. Its freezing temperature varies according to how much it is diluted, as indicated in the following table.

Washer Fluid Concentration	Freezing Temperature
30%	**−12°C (10.4°F)**
50%	**−20°C (−4°F)**
100%	**−45°C (−49°F)**

In order to prevent freezing of washer fluid, check the freezing temperatures in the table above when adjusting the fluid concentration to the outside temperature.

If you fill the reservoir tank with fluid with a different concentration from the one used previously, purge the old fluid from the piping between the reservoir tank and washer nozzles by operating the washer for a certain period of time. If the concentration of the fluid remaining in the piping is too low for the outside temperature, it may freeze and block the nozzles.

⚠ CAUTION

Adjust the washer fluid concentration appropriately for the outside temperature. If the concentration is inappropriate, sprayed washer fluid may freeze on the windshield and obstruct your view, and the fluid may freeze in the reservoir tank.

Replacement of wiper blades

Grease, wax, insects, or other material on the windshield or the wiper blade results in jerky wiper operation and streaking on the glass. If you cannot remove the streaks after operating the windshield washer or if the wiper operation is jerky, clean the outer surface of the windshield and the wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth with a neutral detergent or mild-abrasive cleaner. After cleaning, rinse the windshield and wiper blades with clean water. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when you rinse the windshield with water.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not clean the wiper blades with fuel or a solvent, such as paint thinner or benzine. This will cause deterioration of the wiper blades.**
- **When you are going to raise the passenger-side wiper arm, first raise the driver-side wiper arm. Otherwise, the passenger-side wiper assembly and driver-side wiper assembly will touch each other, possibly resulting in scratches.**
- **Return the passenger-side wiper arm to its original position before returning the driver-side wiper arm to its original position. Otherwise, the passenger-side wiper assembly and driver-side wiper assembly will touch each other, possibly resulting in scratches.**
- **While removing the wiper blades from the wiper arms, do not return the wiper arms to the original positions. Otherwise, the windshield surface may be scratched.**
- **When returning the raised wiper arms to the original positions, carefully return the wiper arms on the windshield by hand. You should not return the wiper arms to the windshield only by the return spring. Otherwise, the wiper arms may be deformed and/or the windshield surface may be scratched.**

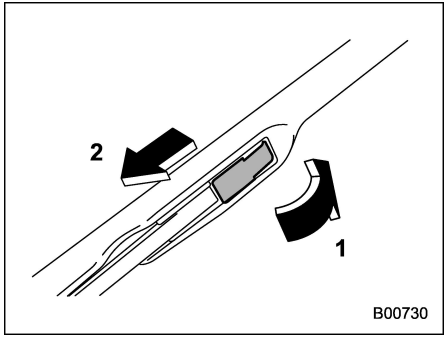
If you cannot eliminate the streaking even after following this method, replace the wiper blades using the following procedures.

■ Windshield wiper blade assembly

NOTE

Do not lower the wiper arm while the wiper blade assembly is removed.

1. Raise the wiper arm off the windshield.

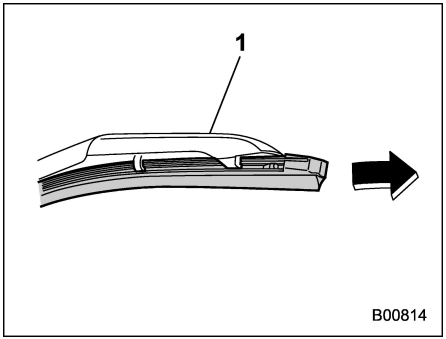


1) Open the cover
2) Pull down the wiper blade

2. Remove the wiper blade assembly by opening the cover and pulling it down in the direction shown in the illustration.
3. Install the wiper blade assembly to the wiper arm. Make sure that it locks in place.
4. Hold the wiper arm by hand and slowly lower it into position.

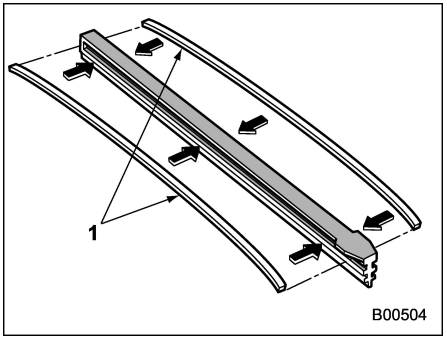
– CONTINUED –

■ Windshield wiper blade rubber



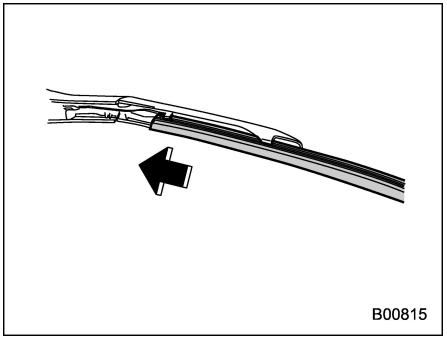
1) Support

1. Grasp the locked end of the blade rubber assembly and pull it firmly until the stoppers on the rubber are free of the support.

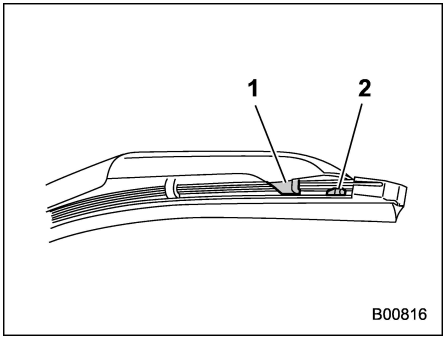


1) Metal spines

2. If the new blade rubber is not provided with two metal spines, remove the metal spines from the old blade rubber and install them in the new blade rubber.



3. Align the claws of the support with the grooves in the rubber and slide the blade rubber assembly into the support until it locks.



1) Claw
2) Stopper

4. Be sure to position the claws at the end of the support between the stoppers on the rubber as shown. If the rubber is not retained properly, the wiper blade may scratch the windshield.

Battery

■ Battery Precautions!

⚠ WARNING

Read these instructions carefully:

To ensure safe and correct handling of your battery, read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting it.

Wear eye protection:

Always wear eye protection when working near your vehicle's battery. Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, so it can cause blindness if splashed into your eyes. Also, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas. Eye protection is vital for protection in the event that this gas ignites.

Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid:

Since battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, be sure to wear eye protection and protective gloves when inspecting your vehicle's battery. Avoid tipping the battery and subjecting it to shocks since this could cause fluid to spill.

Under no circumstances allow battery fluid to make contact with your skin, eyes, or clothing since this can cause blindness and burns. If battery fluid splashes onto your skin, eyes or clothing, wash it away immediately with plenty of water. If battery fluid splashes into your eyes, seek medical attention immediately.

If battery fluid is accidentally swallowed, immediately drink a large amount of milk or water, and seek medical attention immediately.

Battery fluid is corrosive. If it splashes onto your vehicle's paintwork or fabrics, wash it away immediately with plenty of water.

Keep children away:

Batteries must be handled only by persons who are aware of the potential hazards. Take particular care to keep children away from your vehicle's battery. Improper handling

– CONTINUED –

can cause blindness and burns.

Keep flames away:

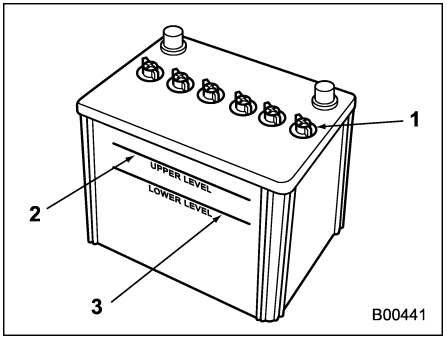
Before working on or near your vehicle's battery, extinguish all cigarettes, matches, and lighters. Also, keep the battery away from flammable items and electrical sparks. Since batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas, any flames or sparks in the vicinity could cause an explosion.

When working near your vehicle's battery, take care that metal tools do not short-circuit the battery's (+) and (−) terminals or connect the battery's (+) terminal to the vehicle's body. A short circuit could create electrical sparks and lead to an explosion.

To prevent electrical sparks, all rings, wristwatches, and other metal accessories must be taken off before work is carried out on or near the battery.

Prevent explosions:

While being charged, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas. To prevent an explosion, charge your vehicle's battery in a well ventilated area and keep flames away.



1) Cap
2) Upper level
3) Lower level

It is unnecessary to periodically check the battery fluid level or periodically refill with distilled water.

However, if the battery fluid level is below the lower level, remove the cap. Fill to the upper level with distilled water.

CAUTION

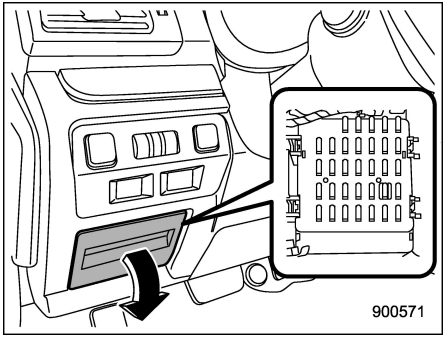
Never use more than 10 amperes when charging the battery because it will shorten battery life.

Fuses

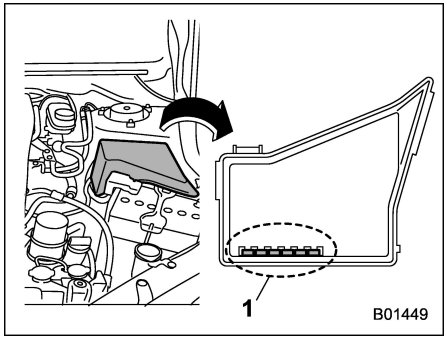
⚠ CAUTION

Never replace a fuse with one having a higher rating or with material other than a fuse because serious damage or a fire could result.

The fuses are designed to melt during an overload to prevent damage to the wiring harness and electrical equipment. The fuses are located in two fuse boxes.

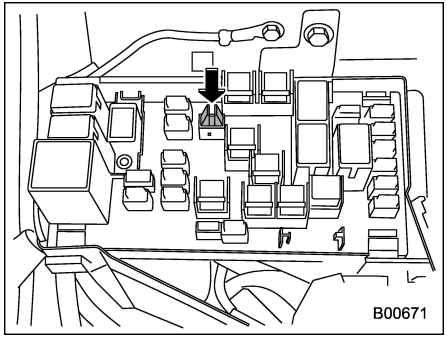


One is located under the instrument panel behind the fuse box cover on the driver's seat side. To remove the cover, pull it out.

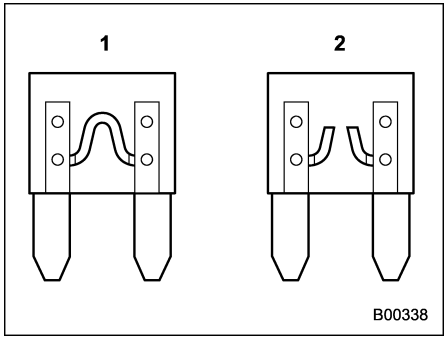


1) Spare fuses

The other one (main fuse box) is housed in the engine compartment. The spare fuses are stored in the fuse box cover.



The fuse puller is stored in the main fuse box in the engine compartment.

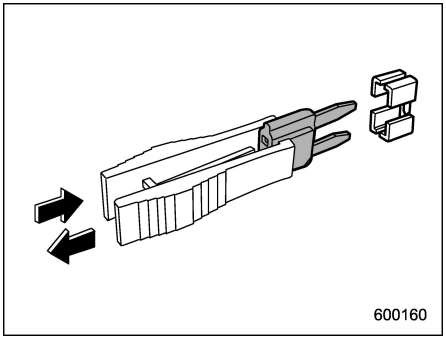


1) Good
2) Blown

If any lights, accessories or other electrical controls do not operate, inspect the corresponding fuse. If a fuse has blown, replace it.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and turn off all electrical accessories.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Determine which fuse may be blown. Look at the back side of each fuse box cover and refer to "Fuses and circuits" ☞12-10.

– CONTINUED –


600160

4. Pull out the fuse with the fuse puller.
5. Inspect the fuse. If it has blown, replace it with a spare fuse of the same rating.
6. If the same fuse blows again, this indicates that its system has a problem. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for repairs.

Installation of accessories

We recommend that you always consult your SUBARU dealer before installing fog lights or any other electrical equipment in your vehicle. Such accessories may cause the electronic system to malfunction if they are incorrectly installed or if they are not suited for the vehicle. We recommend that you install only genuine SUBARU accessories on your vehicle.

Also, we recommend that you always consult your SUBARU dealer before installing a radio in your vehicle.

Replacing bulbs

It may be difficult to replace the bulbs. We recommend that you have the bulb replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

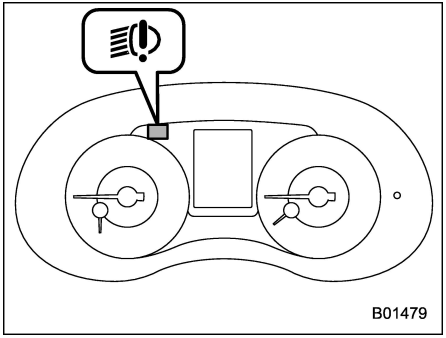
Bulbs may become very hot while illuminated. Before replacing bulbs, turn off the lights and wait until the bulbs cool down. Otherwise, there is the risk of sustaining a burn injury.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Replace any bulb only with a new bulb of the specified wattage. Using a bulb of different wattage could result in a fire. For the specified wattage of each bulb, refer to "Bulb chart" ☞12-16.**
- **Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. When holding the glass portion is unavoidable, hold it using with a clean dry cloth to avoid getting moisture and grease on the bulb. If there is any fingerprints or grease on the bulb surface, wipe**

them away with a soft cloth moistened with alcohol. Also, if the bulb is scratched or dropped, it may blow out or crack.

■ Headlights (models with LED headlights)



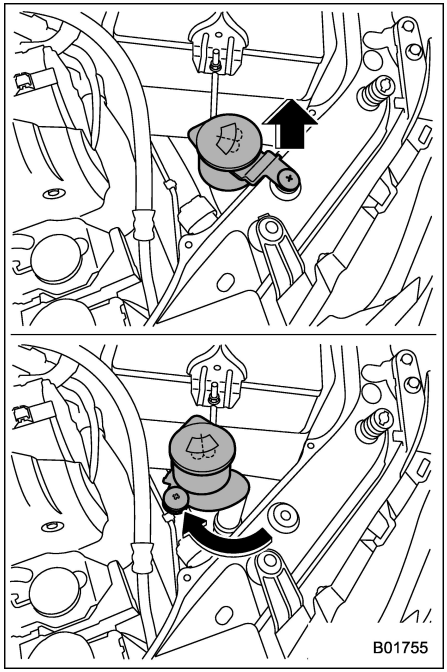
LED headlight warning light

The LED headlight warning light illuminates if the LED headlights malfunction. We recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

■ High beam headlight (models without LED headlights)

NOTE

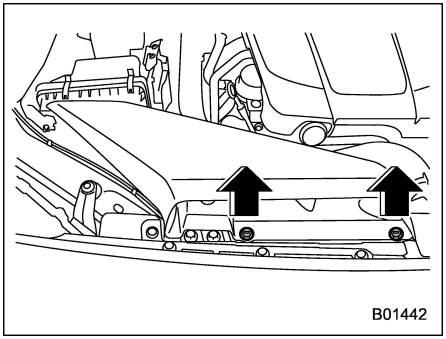
- **If headlight aiming is required, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for proper adjustment of the headlight aim.**
- **It may be difficult to replace the bulbs. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.**



Left-hand side

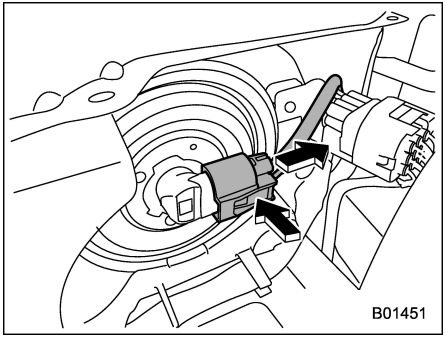
1. **Left-hand side:** Use a screwdriver to remove the secured clip of the washer tank. To make it easy to access the bulb, turn the neck of the washer fluid filler pipe as illustrated.

– CONTINUED –

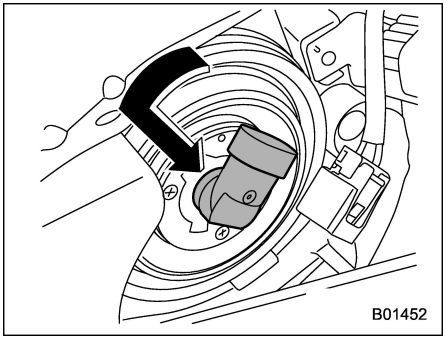


Right-hand side

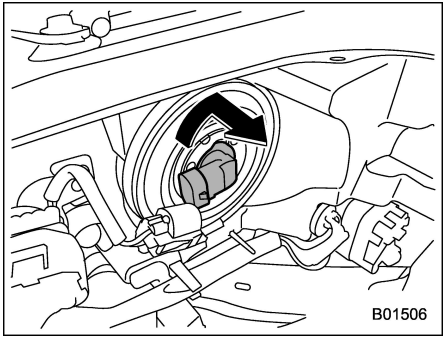
Right-hand side: Use a screwdriver to undo the clips on the air intake duct, then remove the air intake duct.



2. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb as pushing the tab.



Left-hand side



Right-hand side

3. **Left-hand side:** Remove the bulb from the headlight assembly by turning it counterclockwise.

Right-hand side: Remove the bulb from the headlight assembly by turning it clockwise.

4. Replace the bulb with new one. At this time, use care not to touch the bulb surface.

5. To install the bulb to the headlight assembly, turn it to the reverse direction until it clicks.

6. Reconnect the electrical connector.

7. **Left-hand side:** Set the washer fluid filler pipe to the original place and secure it with a clip.

Right-hand side: Install the air intake duct with clips.

■ Low beam headlight*, position light* and front turn signal light*

*: Models without LED headlights

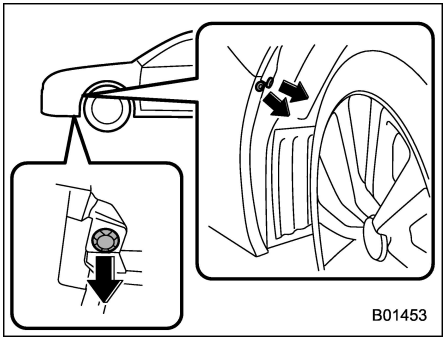
NOTE

• If headlight aiming is required, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for proper adjustment of the headlight aim.

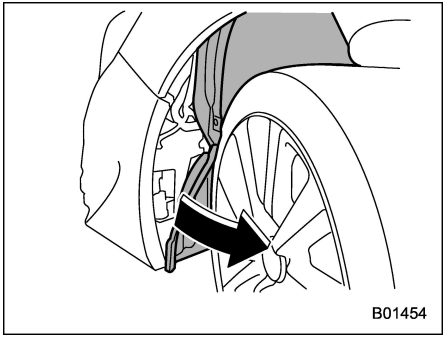
• It may be difficult to replace the bulbs. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.

1. Start the engine and turn the steering wheel fully in the opposite direction of the

bulb to be replaced.
2. Stop the engine.

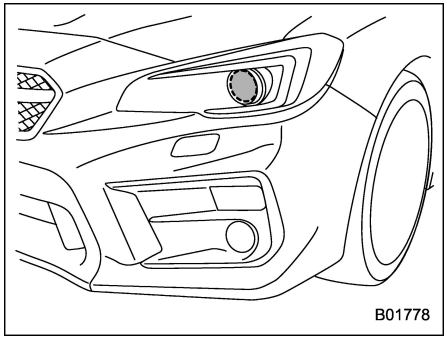


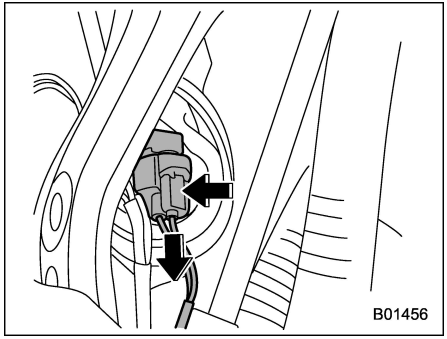
3. Remove the clips from the mud guard.



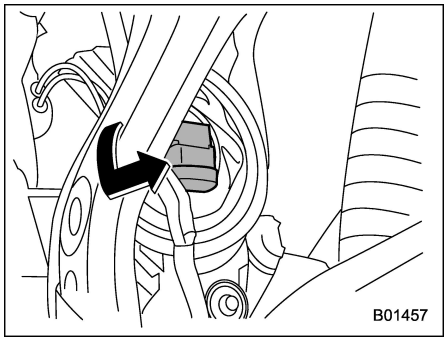
4. Pull off the mud guard.

▼ **Low beam headlight**





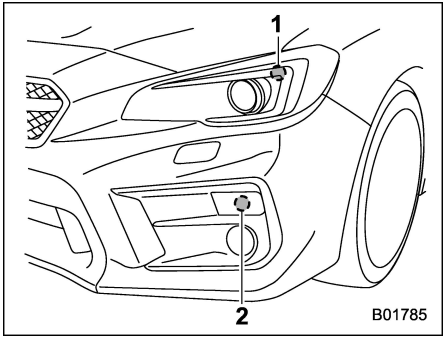
1. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb as pushing the tab.

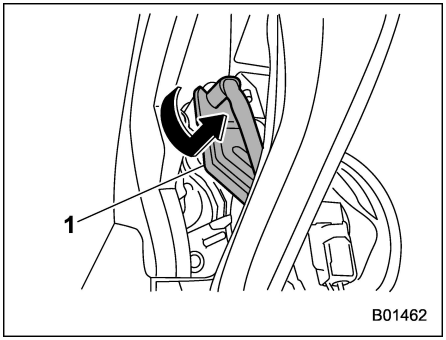


2. Remove the bulb from the headlight assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Replace the bulb with new one. At this time, use care not to touch the bulb surface.
4. To install the bulb to the headlight assembly, turn it clockwise until it clicks.
5. Reconnect the electrical connector.
6. Reattach the mud guard.

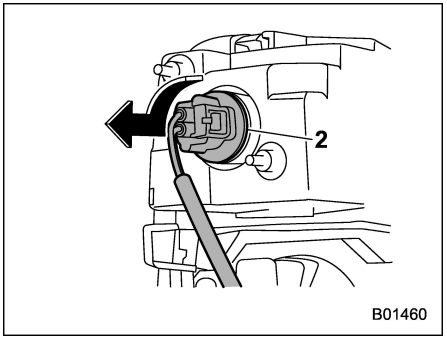
– CONTINUED –

▼ Position light and front turn signal light





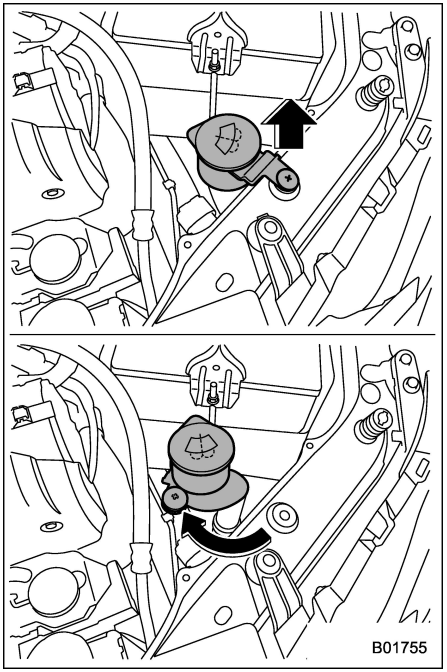
1) Position light



2) Front turn signal light

1. Turn the socket counterclockwise and pull it out.
2. Pull out the bulb from the socket and replace the bulb with a new one.
3. After replacing the bulb, reattach the mud guard.

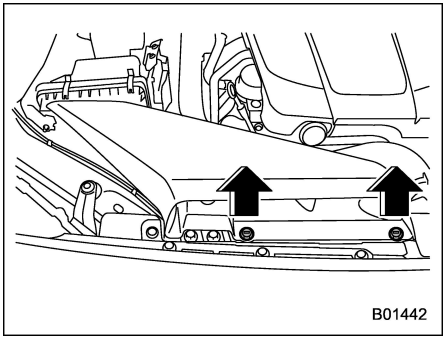
■ Front turn signal light (models with LED headlights)



Left-hand side

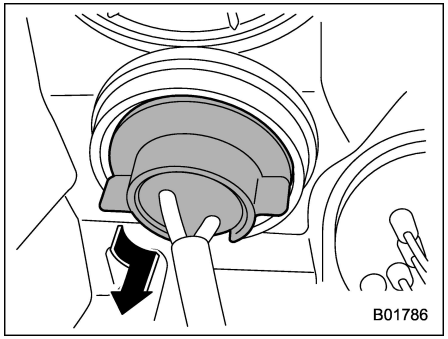
1. **Left-hand side:** Use a screwdriver to remove the secured clip of the washer tank. To make it easy to access the bulb,

turn the neck of the washer fluid filler pipe as illustrated.



Right-hand side

Right-hand side: Use a screwdriver to undo the clips on the air intake duct, then remove the air intake duct.



2. Remove the bulb by turning it counter-clockwise.
3. Replace the bulb with new one. At this time, use care not to touch the bulb surface.
4. To install the bulb, turn it clockwise until it clicks.
5. **Left-hand side:** Set the washer fluid filler pipe to the original place and secure it with a clip.

Right-hand side: Install the air intake duct with clips.

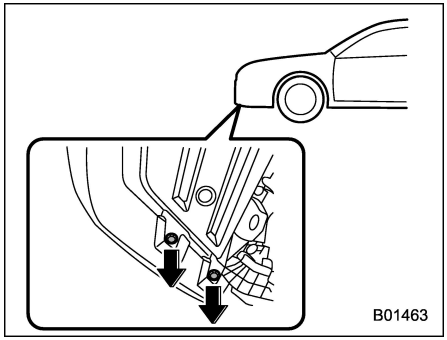
■ Front fog light (models with LED front fog light)

We recommend that you have the front fog light assembly checked by your SUBARU dealer.

■ Front fog light and daytime running light (models without LED front fog lights – if equipped)

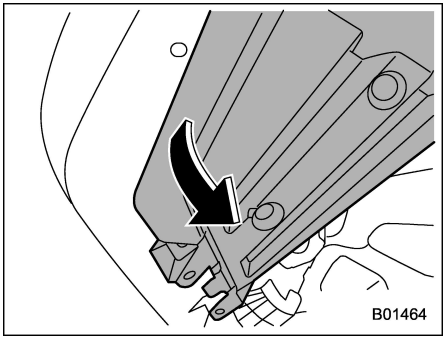
NOTE

It may be difficult to replace the bulbs. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.

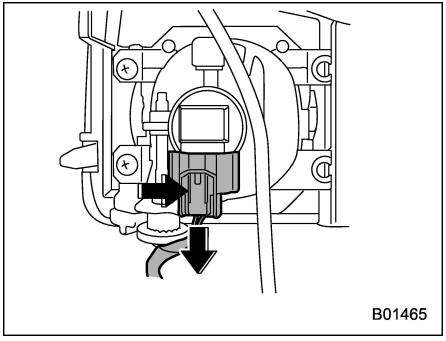


1. Remove the clips.

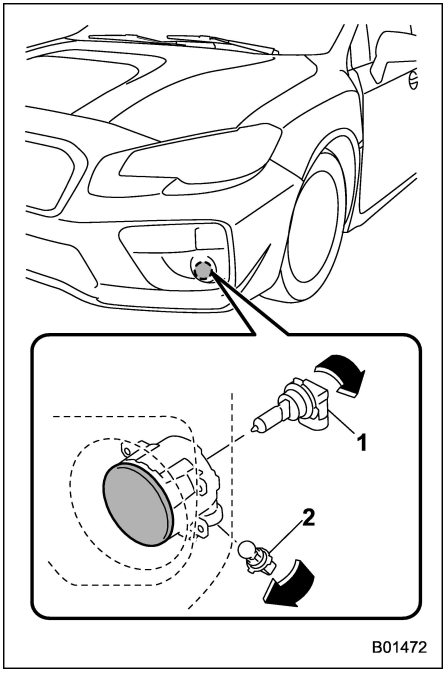
– CONTINUED –



2. Turn over the mud guard.



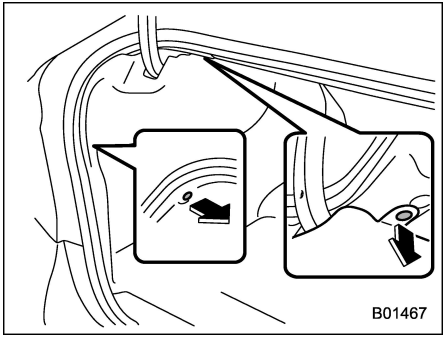
3. Front fog light: Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb as pushing the tab.



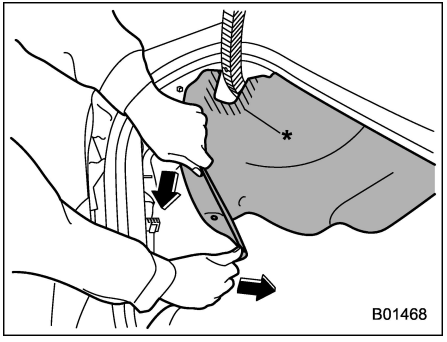
1) Fog light
2) Daytime running light (if equipped)

4. Remove the bulb by turning it counterclockwise.
5. Replace the bulb with new one.
6. Reattach the mud guard.

■ Rear combination lights



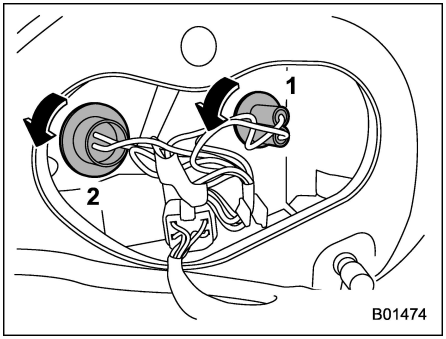
1. Remove the clips from the trunk trim with a flat-head screwdriver.



2. Open the rear portion of the trunk trim panel as illustrated.

NOTE

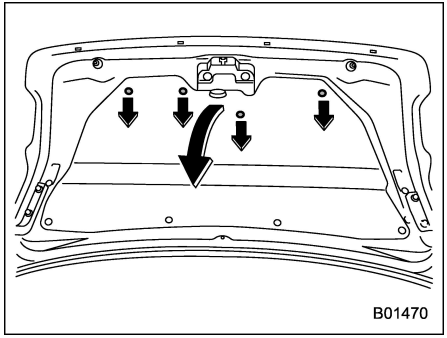
Make sure that the "*" part of the trunk trim in the illustration does not contact the trunk lid stay. If the "*" part is bent, the trunk trim may be torn.



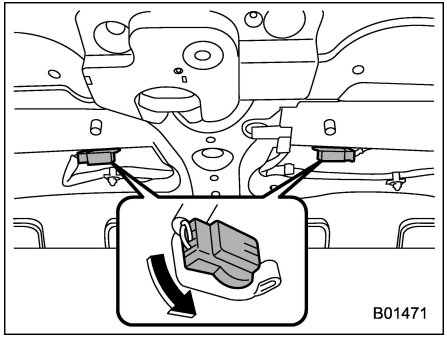
1) Backup light
2) Rear turn signal light

3. Remove the bulb socket from the rear combination light assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
4. Pull the bulb out of the bulb socket and replace it with a new one.
5. Set the bulb socket into the rear combination light assembly and turn it clockwise until it locks.
6. Secure the rear trunk trim panel with the clips.

■ License plate light



1. Open the trunk and remove the clips from the trunk lid trim with a flat-head screwdriver.
2. Turn over the trunk lid trim.

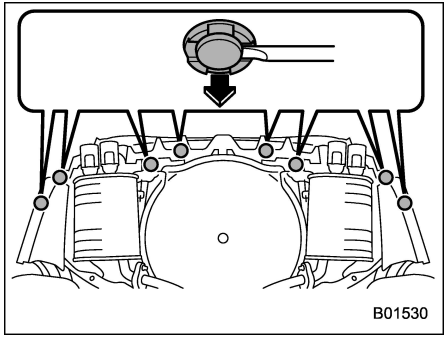


3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and pull out the socket.
4. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
5. Install a new bulb.
6. Reinstall the bulb socket and the trunk lid trim.

■ Rear fog light

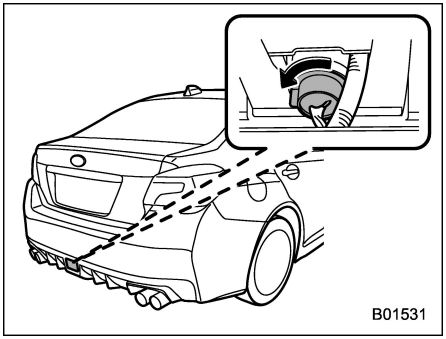
⚠ WARNING

Do not touch the exhaust pipe. Touching the exhaust pipe may cause burns.

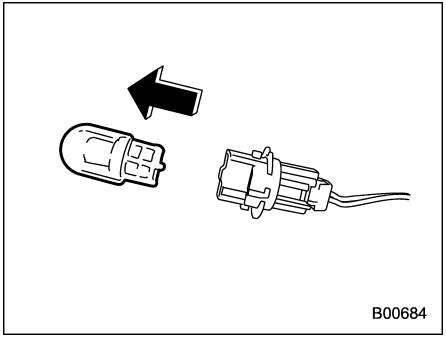


1. Remove the clips from the rear bumper with a flat-head screwdriver.

– CONTINUED –



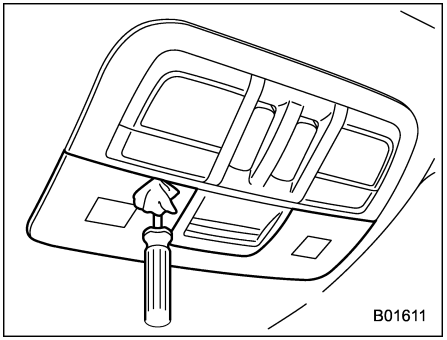
2. While pulling open the center rear bumper, turn the bulb socket counter-clockwise and remove it.



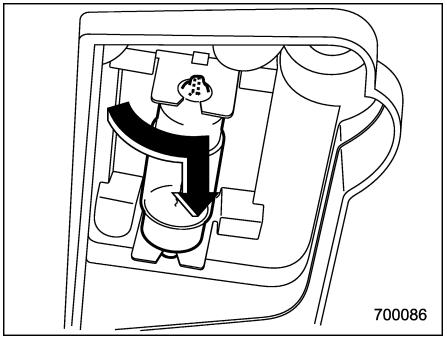
3. Pull the bulb out of the bulb socket and replace it with a new one.
4. Install the bulb socket by turning it clockwise.

■ Map light

▼ Type A

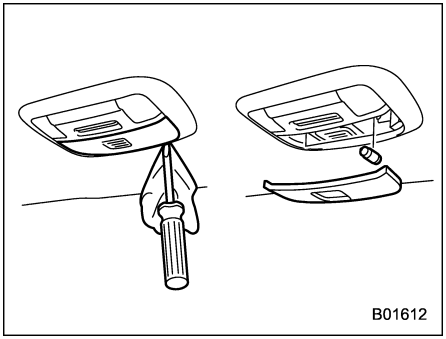


1. Remove the lens by prying the edge of the lens with a flat-head screwdriver.



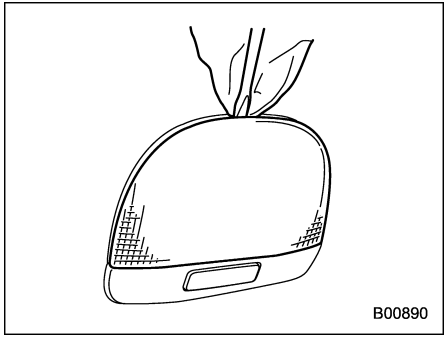
2. Turn the bulb until the flat surfaces at its ends are aligned vertically. Pull the bulb straight downward to remove it.
3. Install a new bulb.
4. Reinstall the lens.

▼ **Type B**



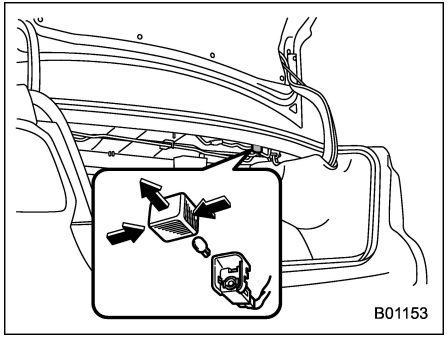
1. Remove the lens by prying the edge of the lens with a flat-head screwdriver.
2. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
3. Install a new bulb.
4. Reinstall the lens.

■ Dome light



1. Remove the lens by prying the edge of the lens with a flat-head screwdriver.
2. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
3. Install a new bulb.
4. Reinstall the lens.

■ Trunk light



1. Remove the cover by squeezing its sides and pulling it.
2. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
3. Install a new bulb.
4. Reinstall the cover.

– CONTINUED –

■ Vanity mirror light

⚠ CAUTION

Replacing the bulb could cause burns since the bulb may be very hot. We recommend that you have the bulb replaced by your SUBARU dealer.

■ Other bulbs

It may be difficult to replace the bulbs. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.

Replacing battery

The access key fob / transmitter battery may be discharged under the following conditions.

- The operation of the keyless access function is unstable
- The operating distance of the remote keyless entry system is unstable
- The transmitter does not operate properly when used within the standard distance

Replace the battery with a new one.

■ Safety precautions

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not let dust, oil or water get on or in the access key fob/transmitter when replacing battery.**
- **Before replacing the battery, remove any static electricity.**
- **Be careful not to touch or damage the printed circuit board in the access key fob/transmitter when replacing the battery.**
- **Be careful not to allow children to touch the battery and any removed parts; children could swallow them.**
- **Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.**
- **Batteries shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.**

NOTE

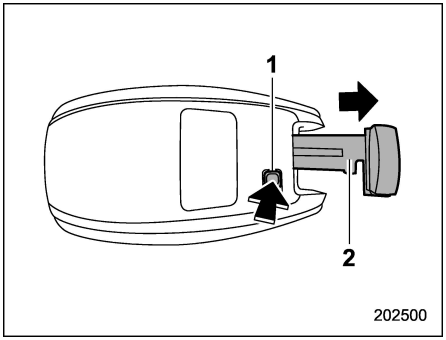
- **Replace only with the same or equivalent type of battery recommended by the manufacturer.**
- **Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.**
- **Mount the battery in the correct orientation to prevent fluid leakage. Be careful not to bend the terminals. It may result in a malfunction.**
- **It is recommended that the battery should be replaced by a SUBARU dealer.**
- **Use a new battery.**
- **After replacing the battery, confirm that the access key fob/transmitter functions properly.**

■ Replacing battery of access key fob

⚠ CAUTION

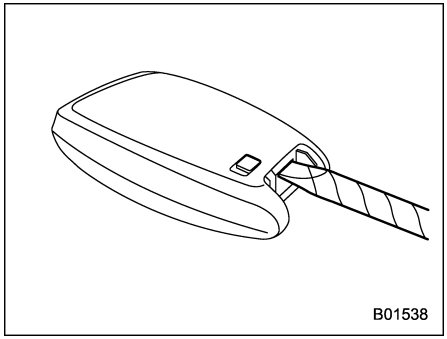
When removing or reinstalling the access key fob cover, make sure that the plastic part does not come off or become misaligned.

Battery: Button battery CR2032

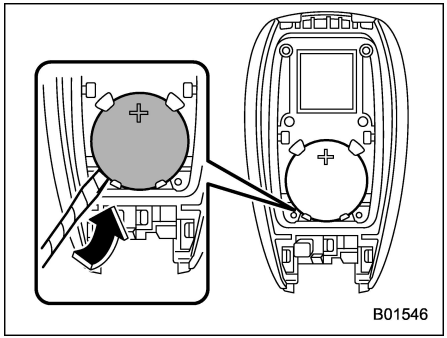


1) Release button
2) Emergency key

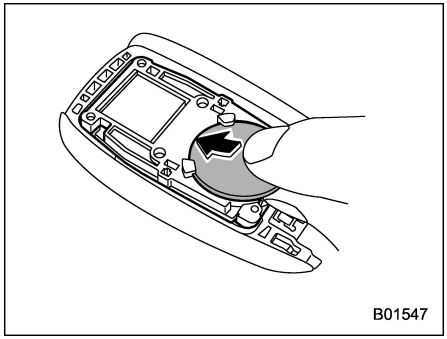
1. Take out the emergency key.



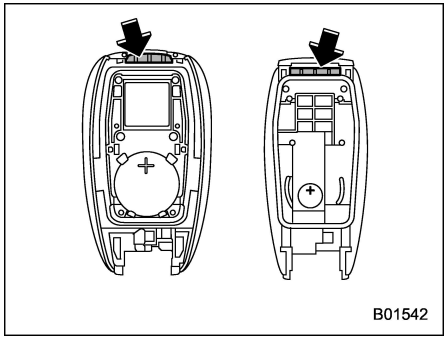
2. Wrap a flat-head screwdriver with vinyl tape or a cloth, and insert it in the gap to remove the cover.



3. Take out the battery using a flat-head screwdriver with vinyl tape or a cloth.



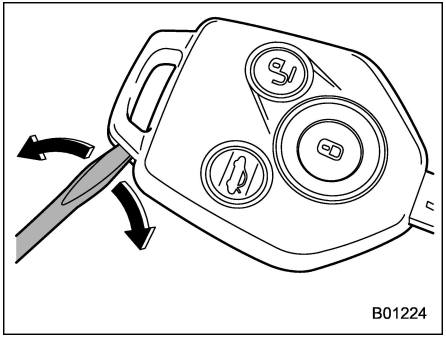
4. Insert a new battery with its positive (+) side facing upward as shown in the figure.



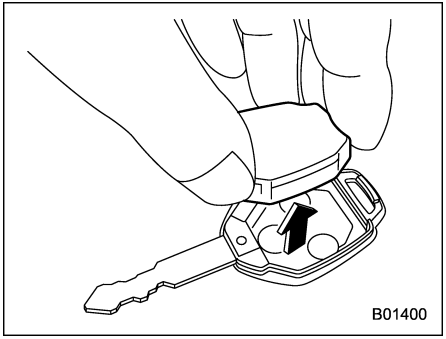
5. Attach the cover to the access key fob by fitting the projections and recesses together.
6. Reinstall the emergency key.

– CONTINUED –

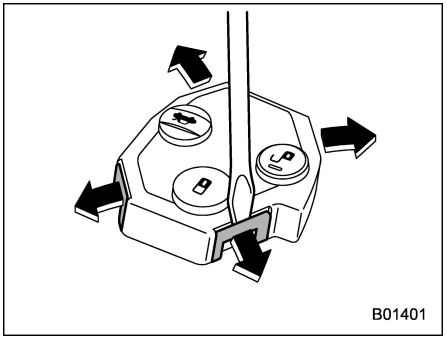
■ Replacing transmitter battery



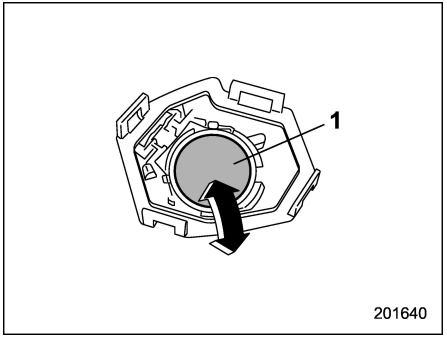
1. Open the key head using a flat-head screwdriver.



2. Remove the transmitter case from the key head.



3. Open the transmitter case by releasing the hooks.



1) Negative (−) side facing up

4. Replace the old battery with a new battery (type **CR1620** or equivalent) making sure to install the new battery with the negative (−) side facing up.

5. Put together the transmitter case by fitting the hooks on the case.

6. Reinstall the transmitter case in the key head.

7. Refit the removed half of the key head.

After the battery is replaced, the transmitter must be synchronized with the remote keyless entry system's control unit. Press either the "🔓" or "🔒" button six times to synchronize the unit.

Specifications 12-2
- Dimensions 12-2
- Engine 12-3
- Fuel 12-3
- Engine oil 12-4
- Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil 12-6
- Fluids 12-7
- Engine coolant 12-7
- Electrical system 12-8
- Tires 12-8
- Temporary spare tires 12-8
- Wheel alignment 12-9
- Brake disc 12-9

Fuses and circuits 12-10
- Fuse panel located in the passenger compartment 12-10
- Fuse panel located in the engine compartment ... 12-12

Bulb chart 12-16

Vehicle identification 12-18

Specifications

The following specifications are subject to change without notice.

■ Dimensions

mm (in)

Item		STI	Except STI
Overall length		4,595 (180.9)	
Overall width		1,795 (70.7)	
Overall height		1,475 (58.1)	
Wheel base		2,650 (104.3)	
Tread	Front	1,530 (60.2)	
	Rear	1,540 (60.6)	
Ground clearance		135 (5.3)	

■ Engine

Model	STI	Except STI
Engine model	EJ25 (2.5 L, DOHC, turbo)	FA20 (2.0 L, DOHC, turbo)
Engine type	Horizontally opposed, liquid cooled 4 cylinder, 4-stroke petrol engine	
Displacement cc	2,457	1,998
Bore × Stroke mm (in)	99.5 × 79.0 (3.92 × 3.11)	86.0 × 86.0 (3.39 × 3.39)
Compression ratio	8.2 : 1	10.6 : 1
Firing order	1 – 3 – 2 – 4	

■ Fuel

Fuel requirement*			Fuel tank capacity
Fuel types		Unleaded petrol	60 liters (15.9 US gal, 13.2 Imp gal)
Research Octane Number (RON)	STI	98 or higher	
	Except STI	95 or higher	
Ethanol blended petrol	For Europe	E5, E10 or ethanol content is up to 10%.	
	For others	Ethanol content is up to 10%.	

*: For details, refer to “Fuel” ☞7-3.

– CONTINUED –

■ Engine oil

For the checking, adding and replacing procedure or other details, refer to “Engine oil” ☞11-16.

NOTE

Have the procedure for changing the engine oil and oil filter performed by a properly-trained expert. It is recommended that you have this service performed by your SUBARU dealer.

▼ Approved engine oil

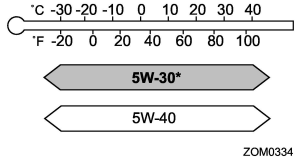
Always use the SUBARU approved engine oil. For further details, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.
If the approved engine oil is unavailable, use the alternative engine oil described on the next page.

▼ Alternative engine oil

If the SUBARU approved oil is unavailable, the following alternative oil can be used.

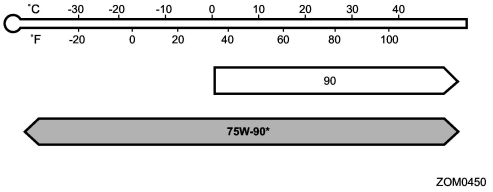
NOTE

Each quantity indicated here is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors.

Oil grade	SAE viscosity No. and applicable temperature	Engine oil capacity
 ZOM0377 API (American Petroleum Institute) classification **SN** with the words “RESOURCE CONSERVING” **or**  ZOM0293 ILSAC (International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee) **GF-5**, which can be identified with the ILSAC certification mark (Starburst mark) **or** ACEA (Association des Constructeurs Europeens d’Automobiles) specification A3 or A5	· 5W-30* · 5W-40  ZOM0334 *: equivalent to factory-filled oil	**STI:** · Adding the oil from L to F level: 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) · Changing the oil and oil filter: 4.3 liters (4.5 US qt, 3.8 Imp qt) · Changing the oil: 4.0 liters (4.2 US qt, 3.5 Imp qt) **Except STI:** · Adding the oil from L to F level: 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) · Changing the oil and oil filter: 5.1 liters (5.4 US qt, 4.5 Imp qt) · Changing the oil: 4.9 liters (5.2 US qt, 4.3 Imp qt)

– CONTINUED –

■ Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Oil</th><th>Manual transmission oil</th><th>Front differential gear oil (CVT models)</th><th colspan="2">Rear differential gear oil</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Oil grade</td><td>STI</td><td>API classification GL-5 (75W-90)*3</td><td>—</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">API classification GL-5</td></tr>
<tr><td>Except STI</td><td>● SUBARU Extra MT*3
● API classification GL-5 (75W-90)*4</td><td>● SUBARU Extra MT*3
● API classification GL-5 (75W-90)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">SAE viscosity No. and applicable temperature</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td colspan="2">● 75W-90*
● 90
 

*: recommended</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Oil capacity*1</td><td>STI</td><td>4.1 liters (4.3 US qt, 3.6 Imp qt)</td><td>—</td><td colspan="2">1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Except STI</td><td rowspan="2">3.3 liters (3.5 US qt, 2.9 Imp qt)</td><td rowspan="2">1.4 liters (1.5 US qt, 1.2 Imp qt)</td><td>Models with limited slip differential (LSD)</td><td>1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Models without limited slip differential (LSD)</td><td>0.8 liters (0.8 US qt, 0.7 Imp qt)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Remarks*2</td><td>“Manual transmission oil” ☞11-26</td><td>“Front differential gear oil (CVT models) and rear differential gear oil” ☞11-27</td><td colspan="2">“Front differential gear oil (CVT models) and rear differential gear oil” ☞11-27</td></tr>
</table>

*1: The indicated oil quantity is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors. After refilling the gearbox with oil, check the oil level.

*2: For more details about maintenance and service, refer to the indicated section.
*3: The vehicle is filled at the factory with this oil.
*4: You may use this type of manual transmission oil. However, using this type of oil will detract from driveability and fuel efficiency.

■ Fluids

Fluid	Fluid type*1	Fluid capacity*2	Remarks*3
Continuously variable transmission fluid (CVT models)	We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.	12.4 liters (13.1 US qt, 10.9 Imp qt)	"Continuously variable transmission fluid" ☞11-27
Brake fluid	FMVSS No. 116, DOT 3 or DOT 4 brake fluid	–	"Brake fluid" ☞11-28
Clutch fluid (MT models)		–	"Clutch fluid (MT models)" ☞11-29
Power steering fluid (STI)	· SUBARU ATF · "Dexron III" Type Automatic Transmission Fluid · IDEMITSU ATF HP	0.7 liters (0.7 US qt, 0.6 Imp qt)	"Power steering fluid (STI)" ☞11-27

*1: Use one of the indicated types of fluid.
*2: The indicated fluid quantity is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors.
*3: For more details about maintenance and service, refer to the indicated section.

■ Engine coolant

Vehicle model		Coolant capacity	Coolant type
STI		7.7 liters (8.1 US qt, 6.8 Imp qt)	SUBARU Super Coolant
Except STI	MT models	8.1 liters (8.6 US qt, 7.1 Imp qt)	
	CVT models	8.3 liters (8.8 US qt, 7.3 Imp qt)	

The indicated coolant quantity is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors. For more details about maintenance and service, refer to "Cooling system" ☞11-19.

– CONTINUED –

■ Electrical system

Battery type	STI	55D23L
	Except STI	75D23L
Alternator	STI	12V-110A
	Except STI	12V-130A
Spark plugs	STI	SILFR6A (NGK)
	Except STI	ILKAR8H6 (NGK)

■ Tires

For the tire specifications (e.g., tire size, load index and speed category), see the tire pressure label located on the door pillar on the driver's side.

■ Temporary spare tires

Temporary spare tire size	T145/70D17	T135/70D18	205/50R17	205/45R18
Temporary spare tire inflation pressure (recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm^2, 60 psi)		230 kPa (2.3 kgf/cm^2, 33 psi)	260 kPa (2.6 kgf/cm^2, 37 psi)
Wheel nut tightening torque	120 N·m (12 kgf·m, 89 lbf·ft)*1 *2			

*1: This torque is equivalent to applying approximately 40 to 50 kgf (88 to 110 lbf) at the end of the wheel nut wrench. If you have tightened the wheel nuts by yourself, have the tightening torque checked at the nearest automotive service facility as soon as possible.
*2: For the wheel nut tightening procedure, refer to "Changing flat tire" ☞9-5.

■ Wheel alignment

We recommend that you have your SUBARU dealer check or adjust the wheel alignment.

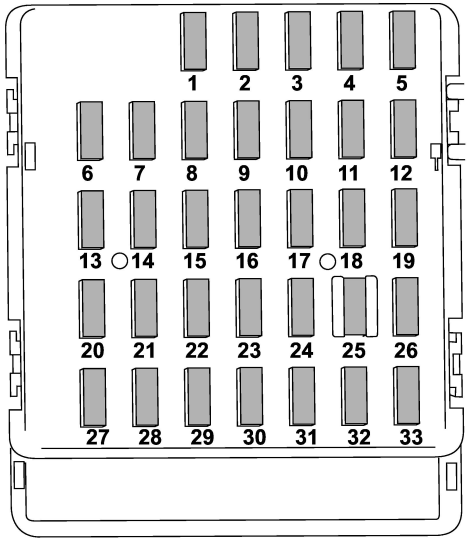
Item		Except STI	STI
Toe	Front	0 mm (0 in), Toe angle (sum of both wheels): 0°	
	Rear	3 mm (0.12 in), Toe angle (sum of both wheels): 0°16′	
Camber	Front	−0°45′	
	Rear	−1°40′	

■ Brake disc

If you need information on the usage limit value of brake discs and the method for measuring them, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.

Fuses and circuits

■ Fuse panel located in the passenger compartment



C00123

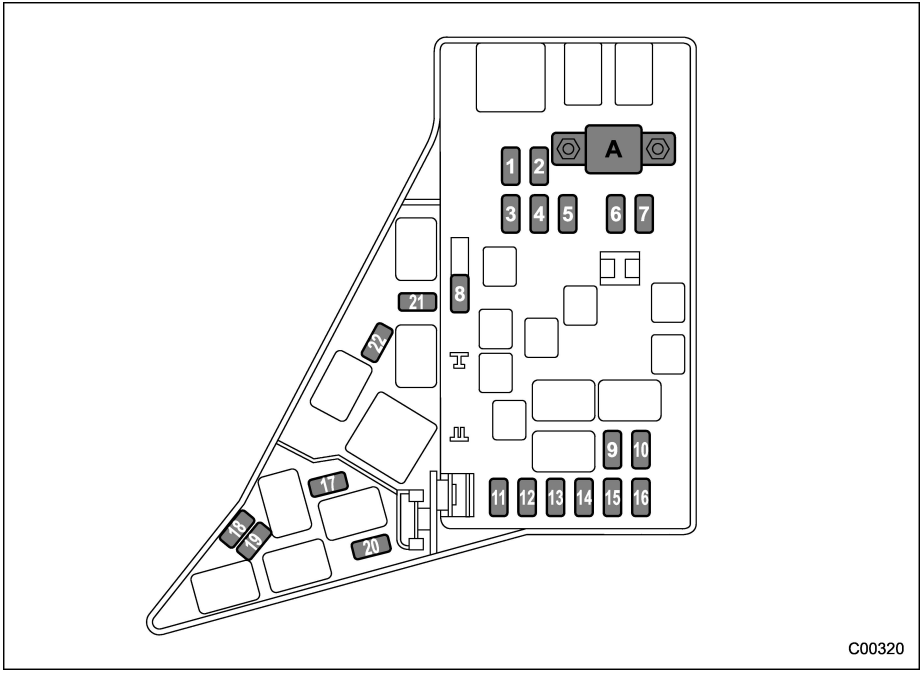
Fuse panel	Fuse rating	Circuit
1	20A	R.FOG TRAIL
2	7.5A	METER IG
3	15A	DOOR LOCK
4	10A	IG2
5	Empty	
6	7.5A	MIR
7	15A	UNIT+B
8	7.5A	STOP
9	7.5A	WIPER DEICE
10	7.5A	D-OP+B
11	7.5A	TURN IG
12	15A	UNIT IG1
13	20A	12V PLUG
14	10A	TAIL CLEARANCE
15	10A	BKUP+B
16	7.5A	ILM
17	15A	SEAT HTR
18	10A	LAMP IG
19	Empty	
20	10A	CIGAR
21	10A	START
22	7.5A	A/C IG

Fuse panel	Fuse rating	Circuit
23	Empty	
24	10A	AUDIO NAVI
25	15A	SRS AIR BAG
26	7.5A	IG1
27	15A	BLOWER
28	15A	BLOWER
29	15A	F.FOG
30	Empty	
31	7.5A	ACC
32	7.5A	STR LOCK
33	7.5A	UNIT IG2

– CONTINUED –

■ Fuse panel located in the engine compartment

▼ STI



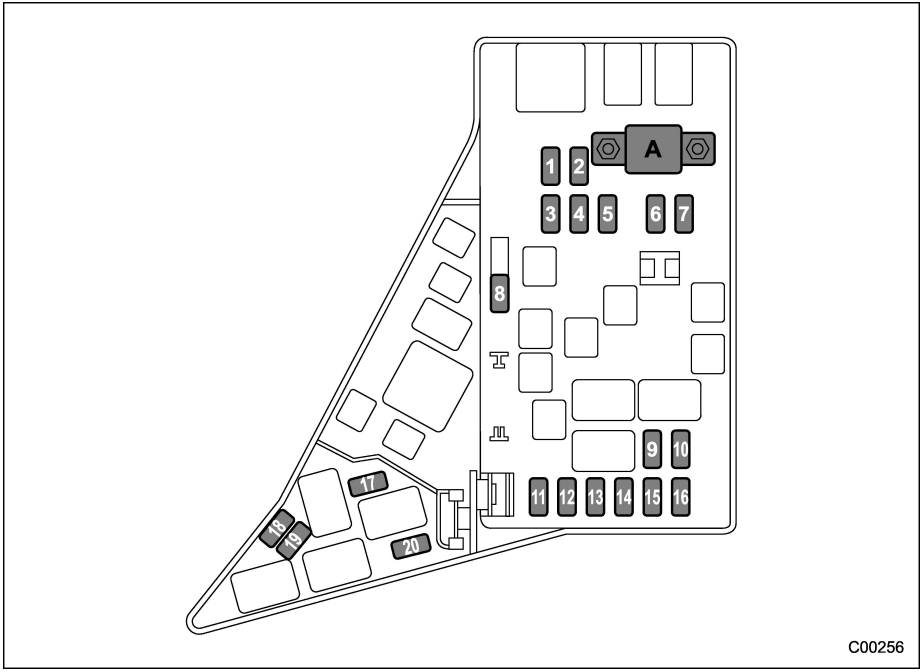
A) Main fuse

Fuse panel	Fuse rating	Circuit
1	30A	• ABS unit • Vehicle Dynamics Control unit
2	25A	• Main fan (cooling fan)
3	25A	• Sub fan (cooling fan)
4	Empty	
5	25A	• Audio
6	30A	• Headlight (low beam)
7	15A	• Headlight (high beam)
8	20A	• Back-up
9	15A	• Horn
10	25A	• Rear window defogger • Mirror heater
11	15A	• Fuel pump
12	10A	• Transmission control unit
13	7.5A	• Engine control unit
14	15A	• Turn and hazard warning flasher
15	15A	• Tail and illumination relay
16	7.5A	• Alternator

Fuse panel	Fuse rating	Circuit
17	Empty	
18	20A	• Injection
19	15A	• Headlight (low beam – right hand)
20	15A	• Headlight (low beam – left hand)
21	10A	• Secondary air combination valve
22	7.5A	• Telematics (Russia models)

– CONTINUED –

▼ **Except STI**

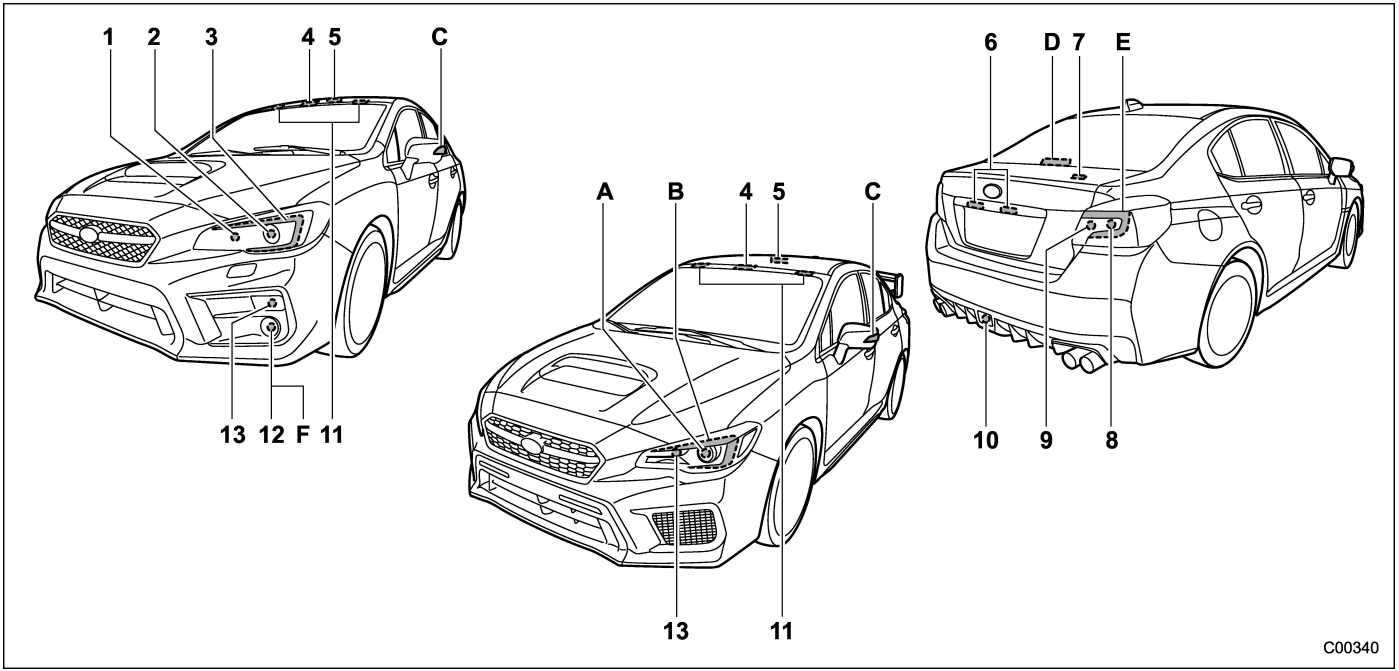


A) Main fuse

Fuse panel	Fuse rating	Circuit
1	30A	ABS SOL
2	25A	MAIN FAN
3	25A	SUB FAN
4	Empty	
5	25A	AUDIO AMP
6	30A	H/L LO
7	15A	H/L HI
8	20A	BACK UP
9	15A	HORN
10	25A	R.DEF
11	15A	FUEL PUMP
12	20A	(Transmission control unit)
13	7.5A	EGI+B
14	15A	HAZARD
15	15A	LIGHTING
16	7.5A	ALT-S

Fuse panel	Fuse rating	Circuit
17	Empty	
18	20A	INJ
19	15A	H/L LO RH
20	15A	H/L LO LH

Bulb chart



NOTE

Lights indicated by letters are the LED (Light Emitting Diode) type. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for replacement.

		Wattage	Bulb No.*
1)	High beam headlights (models without LED headlights)	12V-60W	HB3
2)	Low beam headlights (models without LED headlights)	12V-55W	H11
3)	Front position lights (models without LED headlights)	12V-5W	W5W
4)	Map lights	12V-8W	–
5)	Dome light	12V-8W	–
6)	Licence plate lights	12V-5W	W5W
7)	Trunk light	12V-5W	W5W
8)	Back-up lights	12V-16W	W16W
9)	Rear turn signal lights	12V-21W	WY21W
10)	Rear fog light	12V-21W	W21W
11)	Vanity mirror lights	12V-2W	–
12)	Front fog lights (models without LED fog lights) (if equipped)		
	Models without daytime running light	12V-19W	H16
	Models with daytime running light	12V-35W	H8
	Daytime running lights (if equipped)	12V-13W	P13W
13)	Front turn signal lights	12V-21W	WY21W
A)	High and low beam headlights (models with LED headlight)	–	–
B)	Front position lights (models with LED headlights)	–	–
C)	Side turn signal lights	–	–
D)	High mount stop light	–	–
E)	Stop lights/Tail lights	–	–
F)	Front fog lights (models with LED fog lights)	–	–

*: ECE specification

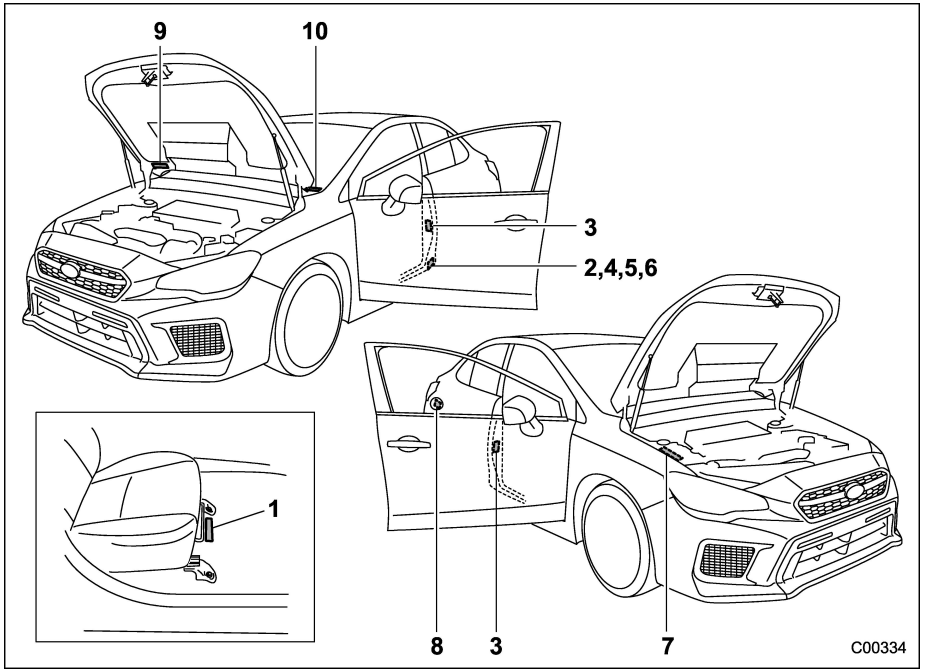
WARNING

Bulbs may become very hot while illuminated. Before replacing bulbs, turn off the lights and wait until the bulbs cool down. Otherwise, there is a risk of sustaining a burn injury.

CAUTION

Replace any bulb only with a new bulb of the specified wattage. Using a bulb of different wattage could result in a fire.

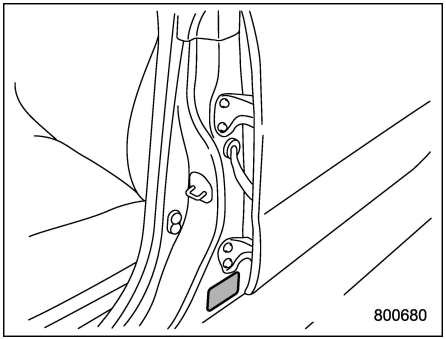
Vehicle identification



1) Vehicle identification number
2) ID label (Europe and Russia models)
3) Tire inflation pressure label
4) Year of manufacture label (Middle East models)
5) Model number label (if equipped)
6) Built date label (if equipped)
7) ADR compliance plate (Australia models)
8) Fuel label
9) Air conditioner label
10) Vehicle identification number plate

ID label (Russia models) 13-2
Information for Middle East models 13-2
Year of manufacture and a country of origin..... 13-2
Speed limit, maximum torque and maximum power at rpm 13-2
Tires 13-3
Fuel economy tips 13-3
Declaration of conformity in accordance with the radio and telecommunications terminal equipment directive 1999/5/EC 13-4
Transmitter for TPMS 13-4
Transmitter for the keyless entry system 13-5
Receiver for the keyless entry system 13-7
Immobilizer 13-8
LF Oscillator 13-14
Bluetooth® module 13-18
Access key fob 13-19
Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD) 13-21
Declaration of conformity in accordance with the safety of machinery 2006/42/EC 13-25
Jack 13-25
Technical information 13-26
Germany models 13-26
Australia/New Zealand models 13-26
Singapore models 13-26
Panama models 13-27
Dominican Republic models 13-28
El Salvador models 13-28
Indonesia models 13-29
Israel models 13-30
Serbia models 13-31
Vietnam models 13-32
Thailand models 13-33
Philippine models 13-34
Taiwan models 13-34
Jamaica models 13-37
Brazil models 13-37
Jordan models 13-40
Argentina models 13-41
Paraguay models 13-41
Republic of South Africa models 13-41
Russia/Kazakhstan models 13-43
Oman models 13-43
UAE models 13-44
Lebanon models 13-44
Ukraine models 13-45
Bahrain models 13-46
Qatar models 13-46

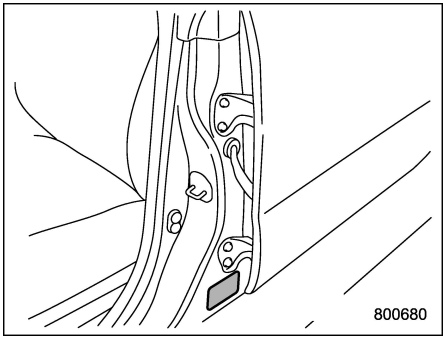
ID label (Russia models)



The ID label is located on the left side center pillar as shown in the illustration.

Information for Middle East models

■ Year of manufacture and a country of origin



The calendar year when your vehicle was manufactured and a country of origin are indicated in the “Year of manufacture label” attached to the driver’s door jam.

■ Speed limit, maximum torque and maximum power at rpm

Model	2.0 L models		2.5 L models
	MT	CVT	MT
Speed limit km/h	215	240	255
Maximum torque N·m (kgf·m)/ rpm	350 (35.7) / 2,400 - 5,200		407 (41.5) / 4,000
Maximum power kW (PS)/ rpm	197 (268) / 5,600		221 (300) / 6,000

- The performance data above is the numeric value measured according to the GSO-ISO-1585-2008 quality norm.
- The performance data above is the numeric value measured from petrol with an octane rating of 95 (Research Octane number).

■ Tires

Tire size[*1]		245/40R18 97W	245/35R19 89W
Pressure[*1&*2]	Front	230 kPa (2.3 kgf/cm^2, 33.3 psi)	
	Rear	220 kPa (2.2 kgf/cm^2, 31.9 psi)	

[*1]: For the information about spare tire, refer to "Temporary spare tires" ☞12-8.
[*2]: Pressures listed above are applied for normal condition. When the vehicle is in full load condition, adjust to the corresponding tire pressure that showing on the tire pressure label located on the driver's door pillar.

NOTE

For the information about wheel nut tightening torque, refer to "Temporary spare tires" ☞12-8.

■ Fuel economy tips

Observe the following in order to improve your vehicle's fuel economy and reduce CO_2 emissions.

- Drive the vehicle appropriately.
- Have your vehicle maintained periodically.
- Do not drive recklessly.
- Do not drive at excessively high speeds.
- Keep the tires inflated to an appropriate tire pressure.
- Minimize engine idling.
- Do not carry excessively heavy cargo.

Declaration of conformity in accordance with the radio and telecommunications terminal equipment directive 1999/5/EC

■ Transmitter for TPMS

SCHRADER ELECTRONICS

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC

Manufacturer: Schrader Electronics

Apparatus: Subaru HS Snap in 433 Mhz Transmitter

Applicable Documents: CEPT ERC REC 70-03 Annex 1, EN 60950, ETSI 301 489-3 & ETSI 300 220

I certify that the Apparatus conforms with the essential requirements of the 1999/5/EC Directive as defined in article 3 for the protection of the health and safety of the user and any other person, including the objectives with respect to safety requirements contained in Directive 73/23/EEC;

The protection requirements with respect to electromagnetic compatibility contained in Directive 89/336/EEC and in that the radio equipment is constructed so that it effectively uses the spectrum allocated to terrestrial/space communication and orbital resources so as to avoid harmful interference.

Subaru HS Snap in 433 Mhz Transmitter is based on PSA HS Snap in 433 Mhz Transmitter, They are identical in Enclosure, Antenna, PCB component and layout.They have identical RF and EMC characteristics . This declaration of conformity has been issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer.

Signed on behalf of Schrader Electronics by

James Kyle, EMC & Approvals Coordinator
Date: 8/1/13

D00247

■ Transmitter for the keyless entry system

ALPS ELECTRIC CO., LTD. Engineering Headquarters
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city, Miyagi-pref, 989-6181, Japan
Phone +81 229-23-5111 Fax +81 229-23-5129

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY
For

CE

Product: KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM
Model: TB1G077

Supplied by
ALPS ELECTRIC CO., LTD.
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city,
Miyagi-pref. 989-6181, JAPAN

Technical File held by
ALPS ELECTRIC CO., LTD.
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city,
Miyagi-pref. 989-6181, JAPAN

Standard used for comply

R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2008 + Amd.2: 2010 + Amd.12: 2011
R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2 EN 301 489-3 V1.6.1
R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN 300 220-1 V2.4.1 EN 300 220-2 V2.4.1

Means of Conformity
We declare under our sole responsibility that the Product (s) is conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the Radio and Telecommunication Terminal Equipment (R&TTE) Directive (1999/5/EC).

Date of issue: August 19, 2015

Signature of Responsible Person:

Toshiya Ikarashi

Toshiya Ikarashi
Group Leader
GROUP 1 ENGINEERING DEPT. M5

D00397

– CONTINUED –

⚠ CAUTION

- **There is a danger of explosion if the battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.**
- **Do not expose the battery to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.**

■ Receiver for the keyless entry system

ALPS ELECTRIC CO., LTD. Engineering Headquarters
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city, Miyagi-pref, 989-6181, Japan
Phone +81 229-23-5111 Fax +81 229-23-5129

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY
For

CE

Product: TPMS/RKE Receiver
Model: TWD1G776
Type: Receiver

Supplied by
ALPS ELECTRIC CO.,LTD.
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city,
Miyagi-pref., JAPAN 989-6181

Technical Construction File held by
ALPS ELECTRIC CO.,LTD.
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city,
Miyagi-pref., JAPAN 989-6181

Notified Body - R&TTE Directive N/A

	Standard used for comply
R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2008 + Amd.2: 2010 +Amd.12: 2011
R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2: 2011-09 EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1: 2002-08
R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN 300 220-1 V2.4.1 : 2012-05 EN 300 220-2 V2.4.1 : 2012-05

Means of Conformity
We declare under our sole responsibility that the Product (s) is conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the Radio and Telecommunication Terminal Equipment (R&TTE) Directive (1999/5/EC).

Date of issue: May 16, 2013

Signature of Responsible Person:

T. Kinoshita

Toru Kinoshita
Group Manager
GROUP 5 ENGINEERING DEPT. M5

D00252

– CONTINUED –

■ Immobilizer

▼ Models with “keyless access with push-button start system”

FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD.
SUBARU ENGINEERING DIVISION
1-1 SUBARU-CHO OTA-SHI GUNMA 373-8555 JAPAN
Phone: +81 276-26-2771 Fax: +81 276-26-3089

SUBARU

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd.
Manufacturer's Address: 1-1,Subaru-cho,Ota-shi,Gunma 373-8555 JAPAN

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: Immobilizer
Product Model: SSPIMB02

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

-Health & safety requirements: EN60950-1
-EMC requirements EN301 489-1 & EN301 489-3
-Effective uses of radio spectrum: EN300 330-2

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA

Date: May 13, 2015

Signature: Takashi Nishida
Takashi Nishida

D00379

Hereby, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., declares that this SSPIMB02 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

English

Hereby, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., declares that this SSPIMB02 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Suomi

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. vakuuttaa täten että SSPIMB02 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Nederlands

Hierbij verklaart Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. dat het toestel SSPIMB02 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Français

Par la présente Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. déclare que l'appareil SSPIMB02 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

D00296

Svenska

Härmed intygar Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. att denna SSPIMB02 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Dansk

Undertegnede Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr SSPIMB02 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Deutsch

Hiermit erklärt Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., dass sich das Gerät SSPIMB02 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

Ελληνικά

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ SSPIMB02 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

D00297

Italiano

Con la presente Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. dichiara che questo SSPIMB02 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Español

Por medio de la presente Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. declara que el SSPIMB02 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Português

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. declara que este SSPIMB02 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Malti

Hawnhekk, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., jiddikjara li dan SSPIMB02 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

D00298

– CONTINUED –

Eesti keel

Käesolevaga kinnitab Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. seadme SSPIMB02 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Magyar

Alulírott, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. nyilatkozom, hogy a SSPIMB02 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.

Slovenčina

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. týmto vyhlasuje, že SSPIMB02 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

Čeština

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. tímto prohlašuje, že tento SSPIMB02 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

D00299

Slovenščina

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. izjavlja, da je ta SSPIMB02 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Lietuvių kalba

Šiuo Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. deklaruoja, kad šis SSPIMB02 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Latviešu valoda

Ar šo Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. deklarē, ka SSPIMB02 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Polski

Niniejszym Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. oświadcza, że SSPIMB02 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

D00300

Íslenska

Hér með lýsir Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. yfir því að SSPIMB02 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

Norsk

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. erklærer herved at utstyret SSPIMB02 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

български

С настоящето, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., декларира, че SSPIMB02 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.

Română

Prin prezenta, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., declară că aparatul SSPIMB02 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

D00301

Црногорски језик
Ovim, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., izjavljuje da ovaj SSPIMB02 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Hrvatski
Ovim Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., izjavljuje da je SSPIMB02 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

Српски/srpski
Ovim, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., deklariše da je SSPIMB02 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Türkçe
İşbu belge ile Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., bu SSPIMB02 ürününün 1999/5/EC Yönetmeliği'nin temel gerekliliklerine ve diğer ilgili hükümlerine uygun olduğunu beyan eder.

D00524

▼ Models without "keyless access with push-button start system"

English
Hereby, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declares that this RI-38BFH is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Suomi
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. vakuuttaa täten että RI-38BFH tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Nederlands
Hierbij verklaart Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. dat het toestel RI-38BFH in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Français
Par la présente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. déclare que l'appareil RI-38BFH est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

D00322

Svenska
Härmed intygar Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. att denna RI-38BFH står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Dansk
Undertegnede Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr RI-38BFH overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Deutsch
Hiermit erklärt Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., dass sich das Gerät RI-38BFH in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

Ελληνικά
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ RI-38BFH ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

D00323

– CONTINUED –

Italiano

Con la presente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. dichiara che questo RI-38BFH è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Español

Por medio de la presente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declara que el RI-38BFH cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Português

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declara que este RI-38BFH está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Malti

Hawnhekk, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., jiddikjara li dan RI-38BFH jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

D00324

Eesti keel

Käesolevaga kinnitab Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. seadme RI-38BFH vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Magyar

Alulírott, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. nyilatkozom, hogy a RI-38BFH megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

Slovenčina

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. týmto vyhlasuje, že RI-38BFH spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

Čeština

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. tímto prohlašuje, že tento RI-38BFH je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

D00325

Slovenščina

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. izjavlja, da je ta RI-38BFH v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Lietuvių kalba

Šiuo Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. deklaruoja, kad šis RI-38BFH atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Latviešu valoda

Ar šo Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. deklarē, ka RI-38BFH atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Polski

Niniejszym Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. oświadcza, że RI-38BFH jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

D00326

Íslenska

Hér með lýsir Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. yfir því að RI-38BFH er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

Norsk

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. erklærer herved at utstyret RI-38BFH er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

български

С настоящето, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., декларира, че RI-38BFH е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.

Română

Prin prezenta, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declară că aparatul RI-38BFH este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

D00327

Црногорски језик

Ovim, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., izjavljuje da ovaj RI-38BFH je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Hrvatski

Ovim Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., izjavljuje da je RI-38BFH u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

Српски/srpski

Ovim, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., deklariše da je RI-38BFH u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

D00525

The DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC) is available at the following address: http://www.tokai-rika.co.jp/pc/

CE

– CONTINUED –

■ LF Oscillator

▼ LF Oscillator for models with “Keyless access with push-button start system”

SUBARU

FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD.
SUBARU ENGINEERING DIVISION
1-1 SUBARU-CHO OTA-SHI GUNMA 373-8555 JAPAN
Phone: +81 276-26-2771 Fax: +81 276-26-3089

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd.
Manufacturer's Address: 1-1,Subaru-cho,Ota-shi,Gunma 373-8555 JAPAN

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: LF Oscillator
Product Model: SSPLF02

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

-Health & safety requirements: EN60950-1
-EMC requirements EN301 489-1 & EN301 489-3
-Effective uses of radio spectrum: EN300 330-2

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA

Date: May 13, 2015

Signature: Takashi Nishida

Takashi Nishida

D00380

Hereby, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., declares that this SSPLF02 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

English

Hereby, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., declares that this SSPLF02 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Suomi

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. vakuuttaa täten että SSPLF02 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Nederlands

Hierbij verklaart Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. dat het toestel SSPLF02 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Français

Par la présente Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. déclare que l'appareil SSPLF02 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

D00329

Svenska

Härmed intygar Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. att denna SSPLF02 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Dansk

Undertegnede Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr SSPLF02 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Deutsch

Hiermit erklärt Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., dass sich das Gerät SSPLF02 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

Ελληνικά

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ SSPLF02 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

D00330

Italiano

Con la presente Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. dichiara che questo SSPLF02 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Español

Por medio de la presente Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. declara que el SSPLF02 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Português

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. declara que este SSPLF02 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Malti

Hawnhekk, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., jiddikjara li dan SSPLF02 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

D00331

– CONTINUED –

Eesti keel

Käesolevaga kinnitab Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. seadme SSPLF02 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Magyar

Alulírott, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. nyilatkozom, hogy a SSPLF02 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

Slovenčina

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. týmto vyhlasuje, že SSPLF02 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

Čeština

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. tímto prohlašuje, že tento SSPLF02 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

D00332

Slovenščina

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. izjavlja, da je ta SSPLF02 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Lietuvių kalba

Šiuo Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. deklaruoja, kad šis SSPLF02 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Latviešu valoda

Ar šo Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. deklarē, ka SSPLF02 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Polski

Niniejszym Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. oświadcza, że SSPLF02 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

D00333

Íslenska

Hér með lýsir Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. yfir því að SSPLF02 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

Norsk

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. erklærer herved at utstyret SSPLF02 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

български

С настоящето, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., декларира, че SSPLF02 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.

Română

Prin prezenta, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., declară că aparatul SSPLF02 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

D00334

Црногорски језик
Ovim, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., izjavljuje da ovaj SSPLF02 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Hrvatski
Ovim Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., izjavljuje da je SSPLF02 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

Српски/srpski
Ovim, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., deklariše da je SSPLF02 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Türkçe
İşbu belge ile Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., bu SSPLF02 ürününün 1999/5/EC Yönetmeliği'nin temel gerekliliklerine ve diğer ilgili hükümlerine uygun olduğunu beyan eder.

D00526

– CONTINUED –

Clarion
moves you■connects you

Clarion Co., Ltd.
■ Headquarters & Technology Center
7-2 Shintoshin Chuo-Ku, Saitama-Shi,
Saitama, 330-0081, Japan
TEL: +81-48-601-3700
■ Headquarters-Annex Office
Land Axis Tower 30F, 11-2, Shintoshin, Chuo-
Ku, Saitama-Shi, Saitama, 330-6030, Japan
TEL: +81-48-601-3700

EC DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

Document No. 16DC-CT06

We **Clarion Co., Ltd.**
(manufacturer)
7-2, Shintoshin, Chuo-ku, Saitama-shi, Saitama 330-0081, Japan
(address)

declare under our sole responsibility that the product

DisplayAudio
Model: PF-3696, PF-3697, PF-3760, PF-3763, PF-3693
PF-3761, PF-3762, PF-3694, PF-3766
PF-3854, PF-3855, PF-3856
(name, type or models, possibly sources and numbers of items)

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the following standard(s) or other normative document(s)

EN 300 328 V1.8.1 (2012-16)
EN 55013:2001+A1:2003+A2:2006, EN 55020:2007+A11:2011
EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2 (2011-09)
EN 301 489-17 V2.2.1 (2012-09)
EN 60950-1:2006+Amd.11:2009+Amd.1:2010+Amd.12:2011
EN 62479: 2010
(title and/or number and date of issue of the standard(s) or other normative document(s))

(if applicable) following the provisions of Directive **1999/5/EC.**
Regarding EN 55013 and EN 55020, refer to the official Journal of EMC Directive.

Saitama Japan
22, Apr. 2016
(Place and date of issue)

Teruo Niitsuma
Experimental Evaluation Department Manager
(name and signature or equivalent marking of authorized person)

D00527

■ Access key fob

- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

The latest “DECLARATION of CONFORMITY” (DoC) is available at the following address:
http://www.globaldenso.com/en/products/oem/index.html

CE

English
Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION, declares that this 13CZY/14AHB is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Suomi
DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että 13CZY/14AHB tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Nederlands
Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel 13CZY/14AHB in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Français
Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil 13CZY/14AHB est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

D00349

Svenska
Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna 13CZY/14AHB står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Dansk
Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr 13CZY/14AHB overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Deutsch
Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät 13CZY/14AHB in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

Ελληνικά
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ 13CZY/14AHB ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

D00350

– CONTINUED –

Italiano

Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo 13CZY/14AHB è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Español

Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el 13CZY/14AHB cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Português

DENSO CORPORATION declara que este 13CZY/14AHB está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Malti

Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan 13CZY/14AHB jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

D00351

Eesti keel

Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme 13CZY/14AHB vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Magyar

Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a 13CZY/14AHB megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

Slovenčina

DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že 13CZY/14AHB spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

Čeština

DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento 13CZY/14AHB je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

D00352

Slovenščina

DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta 13CZY/14AHB v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Lietuvių kalba

Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis 13CZY/14AHB atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Latviešu valoda

Ar šo DENSO CORPORATION deklarē, ka 13CZY/14AHB atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Polski

Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że 13CZY/14AHB jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

D00353

Íslenska
Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að 13CZY/14AHB er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

Norsk
DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret 13CZY/14AHB er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

български
С настоящето, DENSO CORPORATION, декларира, че 13CZY/14AHB е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.

Română
Prin prezenta, DENSO CORPORATION, declară că aparatul 13CZY/14AHB este în conformitate cu cerințele esențiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

D00354

Црногорски језик
Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da ovaj 13CZY/14AHB je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Hrvatski
Ovim DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da je 13CZY/14AHB u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

Српски/srpski
Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, deklariše da je 13CZY/14AHB u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

D00528

■ Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)

The latest “DECLARATION of CONFORMITY” (DoC) is available at the following:

Doc address:

http://continental.automotive-approvals.de/index.php?produkt=SRR3-A

CE 06820

– CONTINUED –

English
Hereby, CONTINENTAL, declares that this SRR3-A is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Suomi
CONTINENTAL vakuuttaa täten että SRR3-A tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Nederlands
Hierbij verklaart CONTINENTAL dat het toestel SRR3-A in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Français
Par la présente CONTINENTAL déclare que l'appareil SRR3-A est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

D00510

Svenska
Härmed intygar CONTINENTAL att denna SRR3-A står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Dansk
Undertegnede CONTINENTAL erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr SRR3-A overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Deutsch
Hiermit erklärt CONTINENTAL, dass sich das Gerät SRR3-A in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

Ελληνικά
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ CONTINENTAL ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ SRR3-A ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

D00511

Italiano
Con la presente CONTINENTAL dichiara che questo SRR3-A è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Español
Por medio de la presente CONTINENTAL declara que el SRR3-A cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Português
CONTINENTAL declara que este SRR3-A está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Malti
Hawnhekk, CONTINENTAL, jiddikjara li dan SRR3-A jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

D00512

Eesti keel
Käesolevaga kinnitab CONTINENTAL seadme SRR3-A vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Magyar
Alulírott, CONTINENTAL nyilatkozom, hogy a SRR3-A megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

Slovenčina
CONTINENTAL týmto vyhlasuje, že SRR3-A spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

Čeština
CONTINENTAL tímto prohlašuje, že tento SRR3-A je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

D00513

Slovenščina
CONTINENTAL izjavlja, da je ta SRR3-A v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Lietuvių kalba
Šiuo CONTINENTAL deklaruoja, kad šis SRR3-A atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Latviešu valoda
Ar šo CONTINENTAL deklarē, ka SRR3-A atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Polski
Niniejszym CONTINENTAL oświadcza, że SRR3-A jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

D00514

Íslenska
Hér með lýsir CONTINENTAL yfir því að SRR3-A er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

Norsk
CONTINENTAL erklærer herved at utstyret SRR3-A er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

български
С настоящето, CONTINENTAL, декларира, че SRR3-A е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.

Română
Prin prezenta, CONTINENTAL, declară că aparatul SRR3-A este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

D00515

– CONTINUED –

Bosanski

Ovim, CONTINENTAL, izjavljuje da ovaj SRR3-A je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Hrvatski

Ovim CONTINENTAL, izjavljuje da je SRR3-A u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

D00516

CE 0682

DoC (Declaration of Conformity) in local languages

Link to the original DoC

http://continental.automotive-approvals.com/

Declaration of conformity in accordance with the safety of machinery 2006/42/EC

■ Jack

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

GOODMAN

For

CE

Pantograph Car Jack

Models: PJF900 & PJF1000

Manufactured by
Taihei Industrial Co., Ltd.
No.49-1, Kagekatsu-Cho,
Fushimi-ku,
Kyoto 612-8307
Japan

Means of Conformity
The Product is in conformity with EU law as approximated by the following directive:
Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC based on Technical Documentation File No. **2165 issue 1, Revision 1**,
January 2016

Standards used as guidance

EN ISO 12100: 2010
Limited reference to EN 1494:2000/A1: 2008
Refer to complete listing in TF

Technical File compiled from manufacturer's documentation and held in the EU, on behalf of the manufacturer by:
Element Materials Technology Warwick Ltd.
100 Frobisher Business Park,
Leigh Sinton Road, Malvern,
Worcestershire, WR14 1BX
United Kingdom

Signature of Responsible Person: **Mr. Masato Nasu**
President

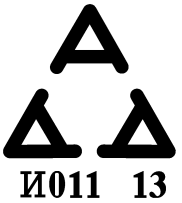
Date: **27th January 2016**
Declaration No. **TRA-015417-01 DofC issue 2**

D00414

Technical information

■ Germany models

▼ **Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)**



D00263

■ Australia/New Zealand models

▼ **Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)**



N232158

D00517

■ Singapore models

▼ **Immobilizer**

Models with “keyless access with push-button start system”:



SUBARU SSPIMB02

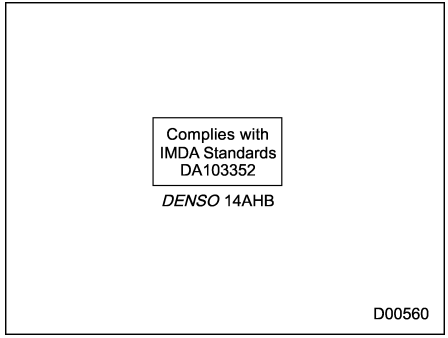
D00529

Models without “keyless access with push-button start system”:

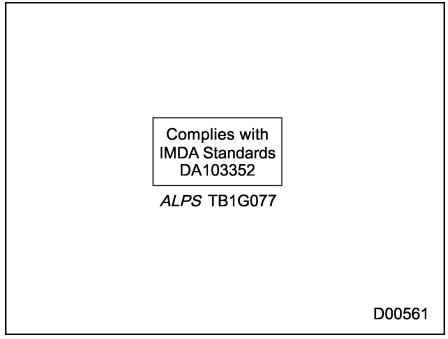


D00543

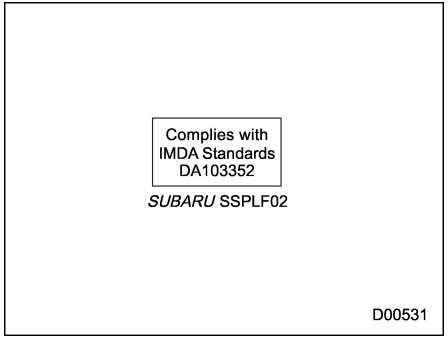
▼ **Access key fob**



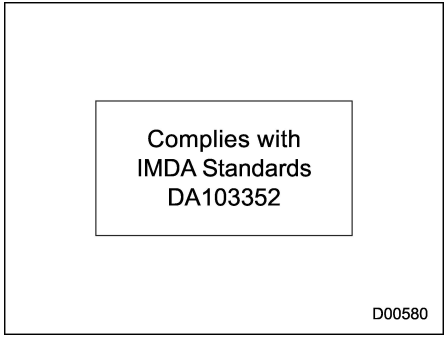
▼ **Remote keyless entry transmitter**



▼ **Keyless access with push-button start system**



▼ **Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)**



■ Panama models

- LF Oscillator for models with “keyless access with push-button start system”
  FCC ID: Y8PSSPLF02
- Immobilizer for models with “keyless access with push-button start system”
  FCC ID: Y8PSSPIMB02
- Immobilizer for models without “keyless access with push-button start system”
  FCC ID: MOZRI-38BFH
- Access key fob
  FCC ID: HYQ13CZY
  HYQ14AHB

⚠ CAUTION

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

NOTE

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired

– CONTINUED –

operation.

■ Dominican Republic models

- LF Oscillator for models with “keyless access with push-button start system”
  FCC ID: Y8PSSPLF02
- Immobilizer for models with “keyless access with push-button start system”
  FCC ID: Y8PSSPIMB02
- Immobilizer for models without “keyless access with push-button start system”
  FCC ID: MOZRI-38BFH
- Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)
  FCC ID: OAYSRR3A
- Remote keyless entry transmitter
  FCC ID: CWTB1G077
  MODEL: TB1G077

⚠ CAUTION

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

NOTE

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

■ El Salvador models

- Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)
  FCC ID: OAYSRR3A

⚠ CAUTION

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

NOTE

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

■ Indonesia models

▼ Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)

37739/SDPPI/2014
2130

D00562

▼ Remote keyless entry transmitter

▽ Transmitter

MODEL: TB1G077

46762/SDPPI/2016
1710

D00532

▽ Receiver

MODEL: TWD1G776

47146/SDPPI/2016
1710

D00533

– CONTINUED –

■ Israel models

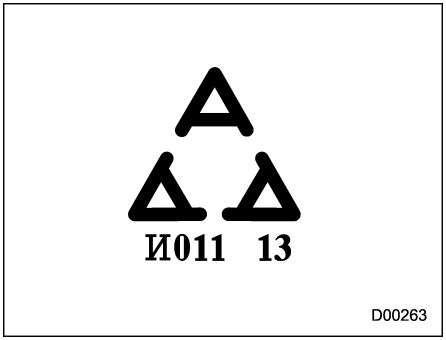
▼ Tire pressure monitoring system

Name of Permit owner:	Schrader Electronics	Telephone:02894483067	
Model:SUBARU HSSI 433Mhz	Manufacturer:Schrader Electronics. Country of Manufacture:United Kingdom		
Type Approval No:51-38706		Valid From:2.10.2013	
Permit No:64-08013		Valid To:29.9.2018	

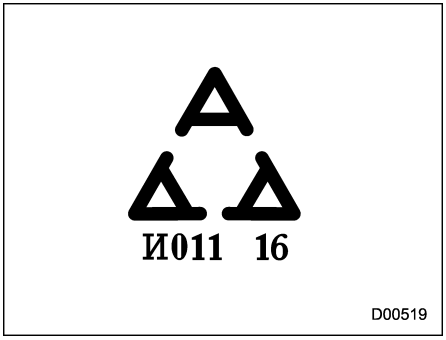
D00264

■ Serbia models

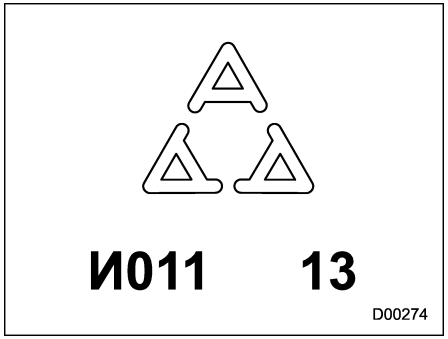
▼ Tire pressure monitoring system



▼ Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)



▼ Access key fob

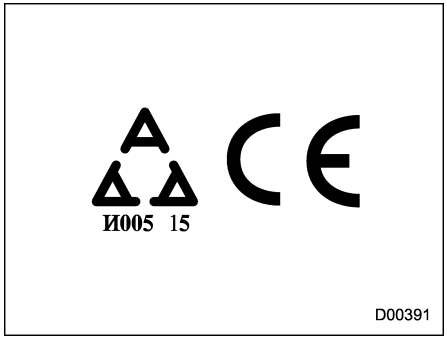




▼ Remote keyless entry transmitter

▽ Transmitter

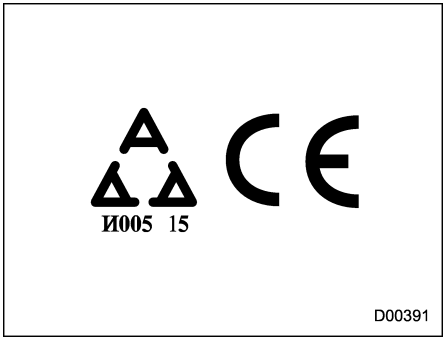
MODEL: TB1G077



– CONTINUED –

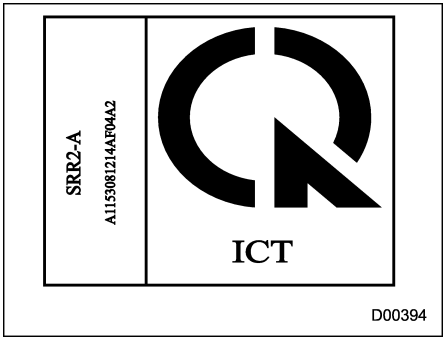
▽ **Receiver**

MODEL: TWD1G776



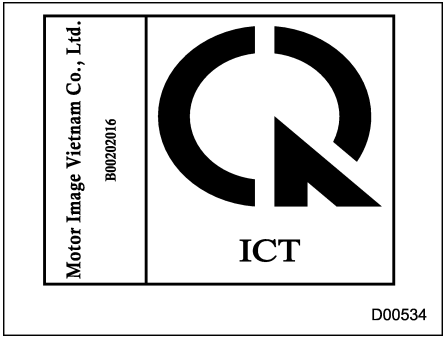
■ Vietnam models

▼ **Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)**

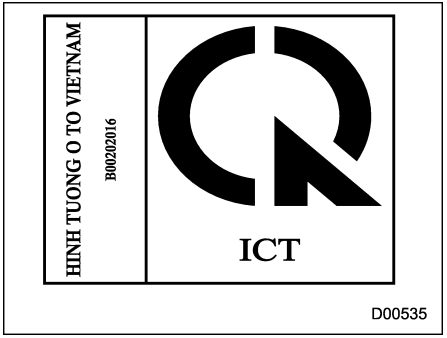


▼ **Remote keyless entry transmitter**

MODEL: TB1G077

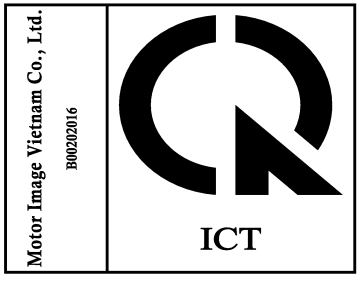


▼ **Access key fob**



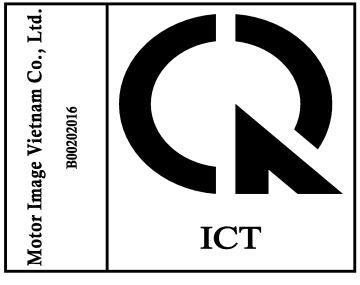
▼ Immobilizer

Models with “keyless access with push-button start system”:



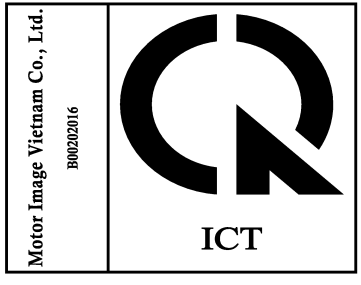
D00536

Models without “keyless access with push-button start system”:



D00544

▼ Keyless access with push-button start system



D00537

■ Thailand models

▼ Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)

This telecommunication equipment confirms to the requirements of the National Telecommunications Commission.

อุปกรณ์การจื่อสารโทรคมนาคมนี้ได้รับการยอมรับตามเงื่อนไขของสำนักงานคณะกรรมการกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติ

D00408

– CONTINUED –

■ Philippine models

▼ Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)



D00404

■ Taiwan models

▼ Tire pressure monitoring system

第十二條
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

500631

▼ Access key fob

第十二條
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

500631

▼ **Immobilizer**

Models with "keyless access with push-button start system":

第十二條
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

500631

Models without "keyless access with push-button start system":

第十二條
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

500631

▼ **Keyless access with push-button start system**

第十二條
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

500631

– CONTINUED –

▼ Remote keyless entry transmitter

第十二條
　經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條
　低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
　前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
　低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

500631

▼ Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)

CCAB14LP5730T6

D00406

電信法第48條，低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法

第十二條
　經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條
　低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
　前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
　低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

D00563

■ Jamaica models

▼ Access key fob

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA-13CZY.

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA-14AHB.

▼ Keyless access with push-button start system

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA, Equipment identifier is placed on the product.

▼ Immobilizer for models with “keyless access with push-button start system”

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA, Equipment identifier is placed on the product.

▼ Immobilizer for models without “keyless access with push-button start system”

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA, Equipment identifier is placed on the product.

■ Brazil models

▼ Access key fob

Este equipamento está homologado pela ANATEL de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela Resolução 242/2000 e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicados.

Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.

D00282



D00281

– CONTINUED –

▼ Immobilizer for models with “keyless access with push-button start system”

Este equipamento está homologado pela ANATEL de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela Resolução 242/2000 e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicados.

Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.

D00282

Modelo: SSPIMB02

ANATEL

0736-14-9819

(01) 07898499100898

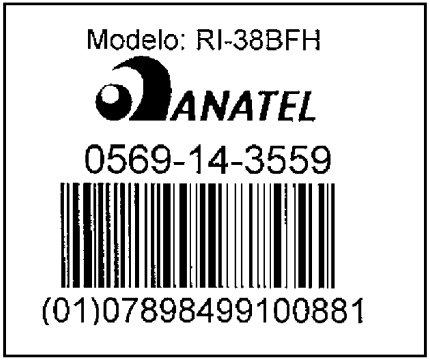
D00283

▼ Immobilizer for models without “keyless access with push-button start system”

Este equipamento está homologado pela ANATEL de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela Resolução 242/2000 e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicados.

Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.

D00282



D00269

▼ LF Oscillator for models with “keyless access with push-button start system”

Este equipamento está homologado pela ANATEL de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela Resolução 242/2000 e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicados.

Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.

D00282



D00342

– CONTINUED –

▼ Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)

Este produto está homologado pela ANATEL de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela Resolução 242/2000, e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicados.

Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL www.anatel.gov.br

D00564



"Este equipamento opera em car áter secundário, isto é, não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operand em caráter primário."

D00521

■ Jordan models

▼ Tire pressure monitoring system

Kingdom of Jordan Type approval for tyre pressure sensor.
Manufacturer: Schrader Electronics Ltd
Model: SHS4
Type of Approval Number: TRC/LPD/2014/253

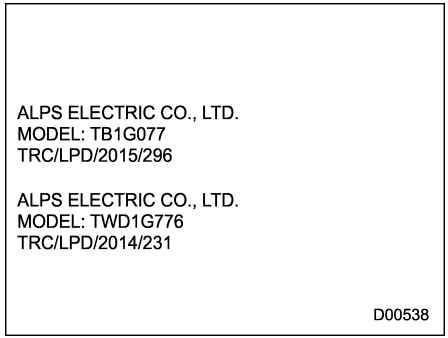
D00401

▼ Access key fob

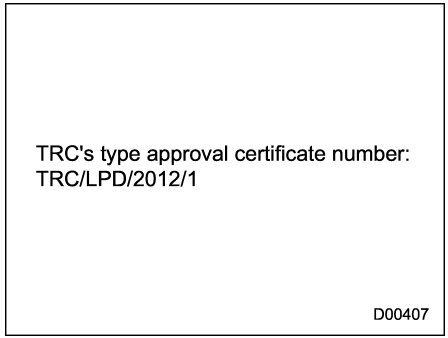
TRC/LPD/2013/178

D00277

▼ **Remote keyless entry transmitter**



▼ **Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)**



■ Argentina models

▼ **Access key fob**



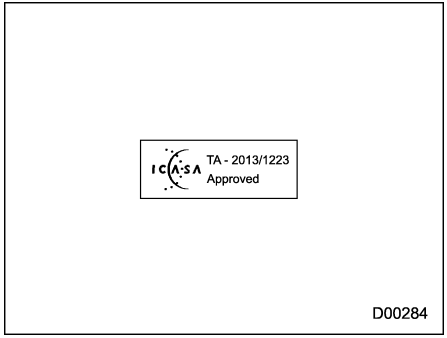
■ Paraguay models

▼ **Access key fob**

Vendor: Tokyo Motors S.A.
Address: Av. Eusebio Ayala No. 4649, km. 5 1/2 Asuncion, Paraguay

■ Republic of South Africa models

▼ **Access key fob**

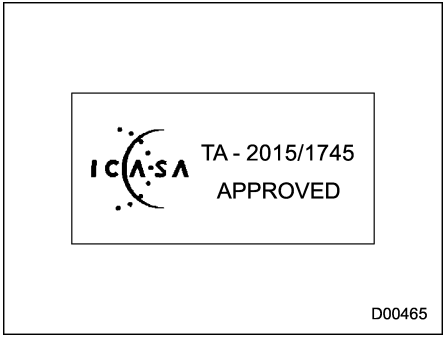


– CONTINUED –

▼ **Remote keyless entry transmitter**

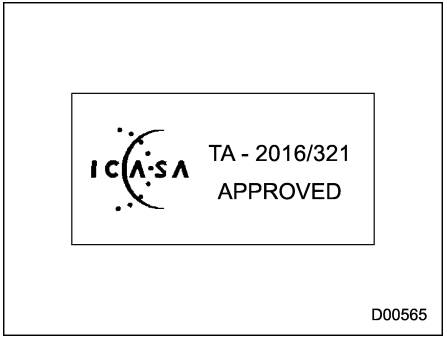
▽ **Transmitter**

MODEL: TB1G077

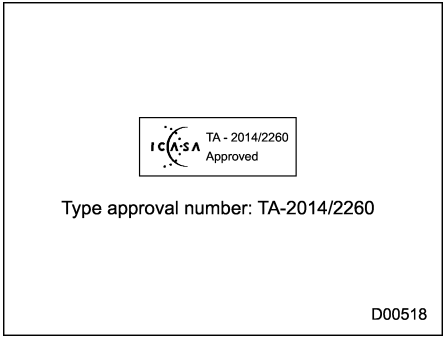


▽ **Receiver**

MODEL: TWD1G776

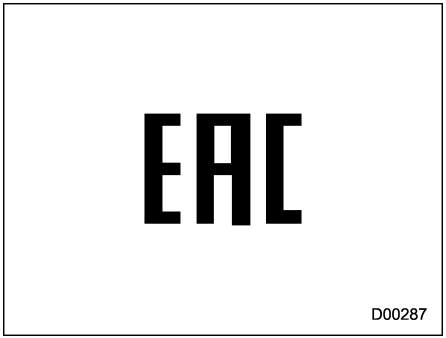


▼ **Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)**



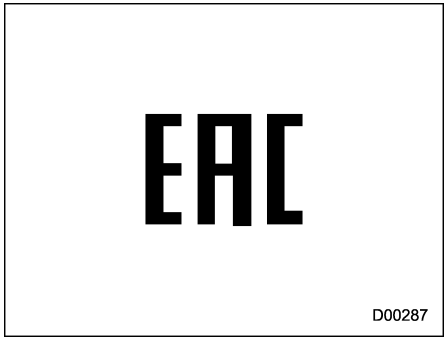
■ Russia/Kazakhstan models

Remote keyless entry transmitter:



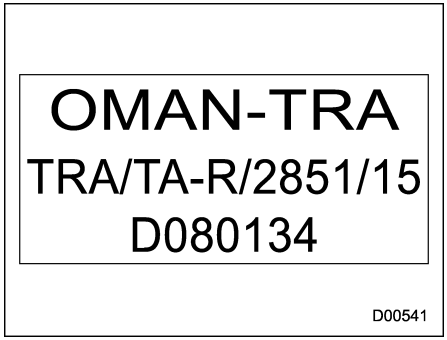
MODEL No: TB1G077 (Keyless Transmitter)
: TWD1G776 (Keyless Receiver)
Manufacturer:
ALPS ELECTRIC CO., LTD.
Country of Production: JAPAN, MEXICO

Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD):

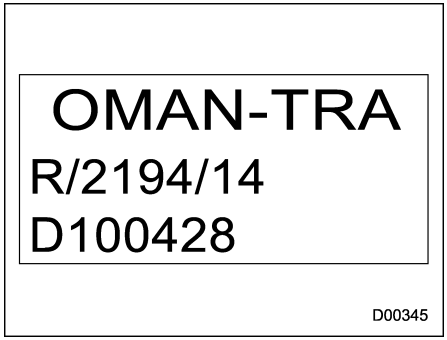


■ Oman models

▼ **Remote keyless entry transmitter**



Model No.: TB1G077

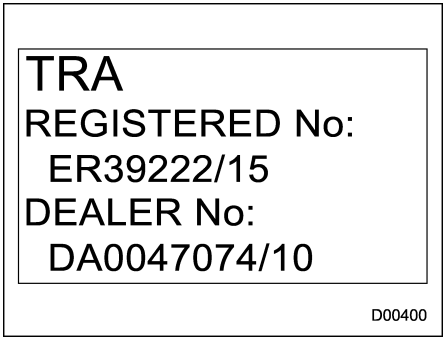


Model No.: TWD1G776

– CONTINUED –

■ UAE models

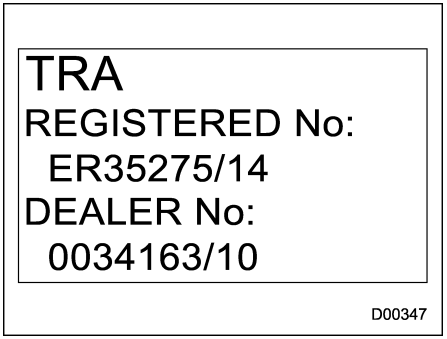
▼ Tire pressure monitoring system



▼ Remote keyless entry transmitter

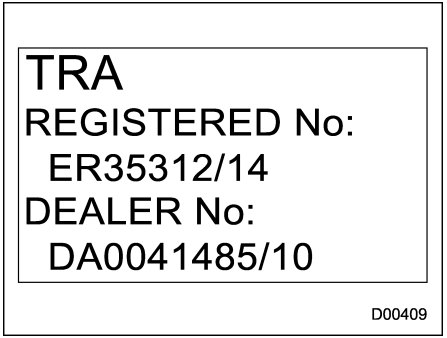


TB1G077



TWD1G776

▼ Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)



■ Lebanon models

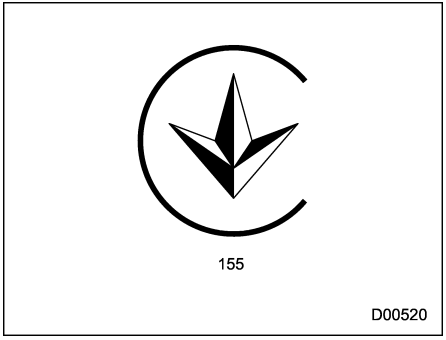
▼ Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)

From the Lebanese Telecommunications Ministry:

Type Approval Number: 8341/O&M/2011

■ Ukraine models

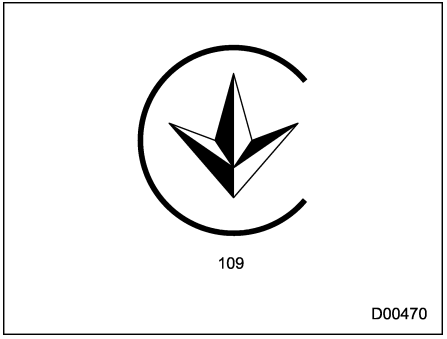
▼ Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)



▼ Remote keyless entry transmitter

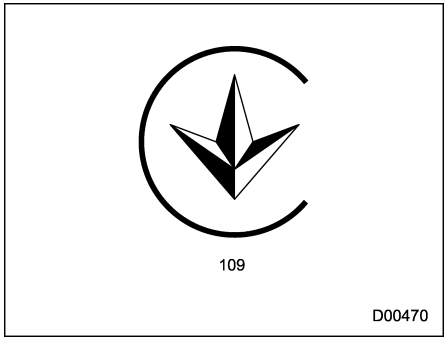
▽ Transmitter

MODEL: TB1G077



▽ Receiver

MODEL: TWD1G776



– CONTINUED –

■ Bahrain models

▼ Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)

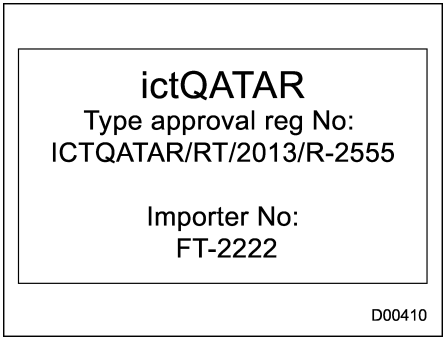
The Equipment Identified hereon is approved for use under the following rules.

1. This equipment must not cause harmful interference to other service.

2. This equipment is subject to harmful interference, and the owner of this equipment must not claim for protection.

■ Qatar models

▼ Subaru Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD)



A
Abbreviation 2
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 7-32
Warning light 3-21
Access key fob 2-9
Warning light 3-29
Accessories 11-47
Accessory power outlet 6-7
Air cleaner element 11-22
Air conditioner
Automatic climate control 4-5
Manual climate control 4-6
Air filtration system 4-11
Air flow mode 4-6
All-Wheel Drive warning light 3-28
Alloy wheel 11-41
Cleaning 10-4
Antenna
Roof antenna (for Shark fin type) 5-2
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 7-32
Armrest 1-15
Ashtray 6-10
AT OIL TEMP warning light 3-19
Audio
AM/FM radio 5-26
Antenna system 5-2
AUX 5-37
Base display audio set 5-3, 5-5
Basic operation 5-16
Bluetooth audio 5-34
CD 5-29
iPod 5-32
Set 5-2
Steering switches for audio 5-39
SUBARU STARLINK 5-25
Unit setting 5-17
USB memory 5-31
Auto Vehicle Hold function 7-43
ON indicator light 3-27
Operation indicator light 3-27
Auto-dimming mirror 3-80
Auto-dimming mirror/compass 3-80
Automatic headlight beam leveler 3-71
Warning light 3-28
Automatic Locking Retractor/Emergency Locking Retractor (ALR/ELR) 1-17
Automatic rain sensing windshield wipers
Sensor 3-78
Sensor sensitivity control 3-78

B
Battery 11-44
Disposal and recycling 8
Drainage prevention function 2-7
Jump starting 9-9
Replacement (access key fob) 11-58
Replacement (transmitter) 11-59
Bluetooth®
Audio 5-34
Hands-free phone system 5-47
Bluetooth® settings 5-42
Registering/connecting Bluetooth® device 5-42

Setting Bluetooth details 5-45
Booster seat 1-36
Bottle holder 6-7
Brake
Assist 7-30
Booster 7-29, 11-30
Disc 12-9
Fluid 11-28, 12-7
Pad 11-33
Parking 7-41, 11-34
Pedal 11-31
System 7-29
Brake pedal
Free play 11-31
Reserve distance 11-31
Brake system 7-29
Warning light 3-25
Braking 7-29
Tips 7-29
Breaking-in of new brake pads 11-33
Bulb
Chart 12-16
Replacing 11-48

C

Catalytic converter 8-3
Center
Console 6-4
Changing
Coolant 11-22
Flat tire 9-5
Oil and oil filter 11-18
Charge warning light 3-18
Checking
Brake pedal free play 11-31
Brake pedal reserve distance 11-31
Clutch function 11-31
Clutch pedal free play 11-32
Coolant level 11-20
Fluid level (brake fluid) 11-28
Fluid level (clutch fluid) 11-29
Fluid level (power steering fluid) 11-27
Fluid level (washer fluid) 11-41
Oil level (engine oil) 11-16
Child restraint systems 1-23
Installation of a booster seat 1-36
Installation with seatbelt 1-30
ISOFIX anchor bars 1-37
Top tether anchorages 1-39
Child safety 4
Locks 2-24
Chime
Light 3-62
Seatbelt 3-14
Cleaning
Alloy wheels 10-4
Interior 10-5
Ventilation grille 4-10
Climate control system 4-3
Automatic 4-5
Manual 4-6
Clock 3-45

Clutch
Fluid 11-29
Pedal 11-31
Coat hook 6-11
Combination meter display (color LCD) 3-38
Console 6-4
Continuously variable transmission (CVT) 7-18
Fluid 11-26, 12-7
Coolant 11-20, 12-7
Cooling system 11-19
Corrosion protection 10-4
Cruise control 7-51
Indicator light 3-36
Set indicator light 3-36
Cup holder 6-5
Front passenger's 6-5
Rear passenger's 6-6

D

Daytime running light system 3-68
Declaration of conformity in accordance with the radio and telecommunications terminal equipment directive 1999/5/EC 13-4
Defogger 3-82
Defrosting 4-9
Deicer 3-82
Differential gear oil
Front 11-27, 12-6
Rear 11-27, 12-6
Dimensions 12-2
Disc brake pad wear warning indicators 7-31
Dome light 6-2, 11-56
Door
Locks 2-5
Open warning light 3-27
Double locking system 2-22
Double trip meter 3-10
Drive belts 11-25
Driver's Control Center Differential (C.DIFF/DCCD) 7-14
Auto indicator light 3-37
Indicator light 3-37
Driving
All-Wheel Drive warning light 3-28
AWD vehicles 8-5
Car phone/cell phone 7
Drinking 6
Drugs 6
Foreign countries 8-4
Pets 7
Snowy and icy roads 8-8
Tips 7-14, 7-24, 8-2, 8-5
Tired or sleepy 6
Winter 8-6

E

ECO gauge 3-12
Electrical system 12-8
Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system 3-25, 7-33
Electronic parking brake 7-41
Automatic release function by accelerator pedal 7-43
Warning 3-26, 7-46

Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) 1-17
Emergency stop signal 7-30
Engine
Compartment overview 11-14
Coolant 11-20, 12-7
Exhaust gas (carbon monoxide) 5, 8-2
Hood 11-12
Low oil level warning indicator 3-18
Oil 11-16, 12-4
Overheating 9-12
Starting & stopping 7-6
Exterior care 10-2

F

Flat tires 9-5
Floor mat 6-11
Fluid level
Brake 11-28
Clutch 11-29
Continuously variable transmission 11-26
Power steering 11-27
Fog light 3-73
Bulb 11-52, 12-16
Indicator light 3-36
Switch 3-73
Folding mirror switch 3-82
Front
Differential gear oil 11-27, 12-6
Fog light 3-73, 11-52, 12-16
Fog light indicator light 3-36
Fog light switch 3-73
Seatbelt pretensioners 1-20
Front seats 1-2
Forward and backward adjustment 1-4
Head restraint adjustment 1-8
Memory function 1-5
Power seat 1-5
Reclining 1-4
Seat height adjustment (driver's seat) 1-4
Front View Monitor 6-17
Fuel 7-3
Consumption indicator 3-49
Economy hints 8-2
Filler lid and cap 7-3
Gauge 3-11
Requirements 7-3, 12-3
Fuses 11-46
Fuses and circuits 12-10

G

Gear shift indicator 8, 3-35
Glove box 6-4

H

Hands-free phone system 5-47
Hazard warning flasher 3-8, 9-2
Head restraint adjustment
Front seat 1-8
Rear seat 1-11
Headlight
Beam leveler 3-71
Bulb replacement 11-48

Bulb wattage 12-16
Control switch 3-62
Flasher 3-68
Indicator light 3-36
Off delay 3-63
Off delay setting 3-63
Washer 3-79
High Beam Assist function 3-64
Indicator light 3-36
Warning indicator 3-36
High beam indicator light 3-35
High/low beam change (dimmer) 3-64
Hill start assist 7-47, 11-32
OFF indicator light 3-27
To activate/deactivate 7-49
Warning light 3-27
Hook
Coat 6-11
Towing and tie-down 9-13
Horn 3-84
Hose and connections 11-19

I

Ignition switch 3-4
Illumination brightness control 3-70
Immobilizer 2-4
Indicator light 3-34
Indicator light
Auto Vehicle Hold ON 3-27
Auto Vehicle Hold operation 3-27
Cruise control 3-36
Cruise control set 3-36
Front fog light 3-36
Headlight 3-36
High beam 3-35
High Beam Assist 3-36
Hill start assist OFF 3-27
Immobilizer 3-34
Rear fog light 3-36
Rear seatbelt 3-16
REV 3-37
Select lever/Gear position 3-35
Shift-up 3-35
SI-DRIVE 3-34
SUBARU Rear Vehicle Detection OFF 3-38
Turn signal 3-35
Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF 3-24
Vehicle Dynamics Control operation 3-23
Inside mirror 3-80
Interior lights 6-2
Internal trunk lid release handle 2-28
ISOFIX anchor bars 1-37

J

Jack-up point 9-5
Jump starting 9-9

K

Key 2-2
Number 2-3
Replacement 2-4
Keyless access with push-button start system 2-9

Disabling keyless access functions 2-15
Warning chimes and warning light 3-29
When access key fob does not operate properly 9-17
Keyless entry system 2-19

L
Leather seat materials 10-5
License plate light 11-54
Light
Brake/Tail 11-54, 12-16
Control switch 3-62
Daytime running 3-68, 11-52
Dome 6-2, 11-56
Front fog 3-73, 11-52
Front position 3-62, 11-50
License plate 11-54
Map 6-2, 11-55
Rear combination 11-54
Rear fog 3-74, 11-55
Tail 11-54
Trunk 11-57
Turn signal 3-70, 11-50, 11-54
Vanity mirror 11-57
Limited slip differential (LSD) 7-27
Loading your vehicle 8-10
Low fuel warning light 3-27
Low tire pressure warning light 3-20
LSD (Limited slip differential) 7-27

M
Maintenance
Precautions 11-7
Schedule 11-3
Seatbelt 1-20
Tips 11-9
Tools 9-3
Malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light) 3-17
Manual
Climate control 4-6
Mode (continuously variable transmission) 7-21
Seat 1-4
Transmission oil 11-26
Transmission-6 speeds 7-11
Map light 6-2, 11-55
Meters and gauges 3-9
Mirror defogger 3-82
Mirrors 3-80
Multi-function display (color LCD) 3-45

N
New vehicle break-in driving 8-2

O
Odometer 3-9
Oil filter 11-18
Oil level
Engine 11-16
Front differential gear 11-27
Manual transmission 11-26
Rear differential gear 11-27

Warning light 3-18
Oil pressure warning light 3-18
One-touch lane changer 3-70
Outside
Mirror defogger 3-82
Mirrors 3-81
Overheating engine 9-12

P

Parking
Brake 7-41
Brake stroke 11-34
Tips 7-47
Periodic inspections 8-4
Petrol fuel 7-3
Power
Door locking switch 2-8
Outlets 6-7
Outside mirrors 3-81
Seat 1-5
Steering 7-28
Steering fluid 11-27
Steering warning light 3-28
Window 2-24
Precautions against vehicle modification 1-23, 1-69
Preparing to drive 7-6

R

Rear
Combination lights 11-54
Differential gear oil 11-27, 12-6
Fog light switch 3-74
Turn signal light 11-54
Rear differential
Oil temperature warning light 3-19
Rear fog light 3-74, 11-55
Indicator light 3-36
Rear seat 1-10
Armrest 1-15
Folding down 1-13
Head restraint adjustment 1-11
Rear view camera 6-13
How to adjust the rear view image 5-24
Rear window
Defogger 3-82
Recommended
Brake fluid 12-7
Clutch fluid 11-29
Engine oil 12-4
Front differential gear oil 12-6
Rear differential gear oil 12-6
Spark plugs 12-8
Refueling 7-3
Remote keyless entry system 2-19
Replacement
Brake pad 11-32
Wiper blades 11-42
Replacing
Air cleaner element 11-22
Battery of access key fob 11-58
Remote keyless entry transmitter battery 11-59
Replacing bulbs 11-48, 12-16

Backup light 11-54
Brake/tail light 12-16
Daytime running light 11-52
Dome light 11-56
Front fog light 11-52
Front turn signal light 11-50
Headlight 11-48
High beam headlight 11-48
LED headlight 11-48
License plate light 11-54
Low beam headlight 11-50
Map light 11-55
Position light 11-50
Rear combination light 11-54
Rear fog light 11-55
Rear turn signal light 11-54
Trunk light 11-57
Vanity mirror light 11-57
REV indicator light and buzzer 3-13
Rocking the vehicle 8-10
Roof molding and load carrier 8-11

S

Safety
Precautions when driving 3
Symbol 2
Warnings 2
Seat
Fabric 10-5
Front 1-2
Heater 1-9
Height adjustment 1-4
Memory function 1-5
Power 1-5
Rear 1-10
Seatbelt 3, 1-15
Fastening 1-17
Maintenance 1-20
Pretensioners 1-20
Safety tips 1-15
Warning light and chime 3-14
Security
Immobilizer 2-4
Select lever
Position indicator 3-35
Shift lock function 7-23
Shift-up indicator light 3-35
SI-DRIVE 7-24
Indicator light 3-34
Side View Monitor 6-17
Snow tires 8-9, 11-34
Snowy and icy roads 8-8
Spark plugs 11-24, 12-8
Specifications 12-2
Speedometer 3-9
SRS
Frontal airbag 1-51
SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag) .. 3, 1-40
SRS airbag system
Monitors 1-67
Servicing 1-68
Warning light 3-16

Starting & stopping engine 7-6
Steering Responsive Headlight 3-69
Steering switches for audio 5-39
Steering wheel
  Power 7-28
  Tilt/telescopic 3-84
Storage compartment 6-4
SUBARU Rear Vehicle Detection (SRVD) 7-54
  OFF indicator 3-38
  OFF switch 7-61
  SRVD approach indicator light/warning buzzer 7-59
  Warning indicator 3-38, 7-60
Sun shade 2-31
Sun visors 6-3
Sunroof 2-30, 9-19
Supplemental Restraint System airbag (SRS) 1-40
Synthetic leather upholstery 10-6

T
Tachometer 3-10
Temperature gauge 3-12
Temperature warning light
  AT OIL TEMP 3-19
  Rear differential oil 3-19
Temporary spare tire 9-2, 12-8
Tether (child restraint system) 1-39
Tie-down hooks 9-13
Tire 11-34, 12-8
  Chains 8-10
  Inspection 11-36
  Pressures and wear 11-36
  Replacement 11-40
  Rotation 11-39
  Size and pressure 12-8
  Types 11-34
Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) 7-38, 9-8, 11-34
  TPMS mode setting 7-39
  Warning light 3-20
Tires and wheels 11-34
Tools 9-3
Top tether anchorages 1-39
Towing 9-13
  All wheels on the ground 9-16
  Flat-bed truck 9-16
  Hooks 9-13
Trailer
  Towing 8-12
Trip meter 3-10
Trunk lid 2-27
  Release handle 2-28
Trunk light 11-57
Turn signal
  Indicator lights 3-35
  Lever 3-70

U
Under-floor storage compartment 6-12
USB power supply 6-9

V
Vanity mirror 6-3
  Light 11-57

Vehicle
Identification 12-18
Symbols 3
Vehicle Dynamics Control
Mode indicator light 3-24
Mode switch 7-36
OFF indicator light 3-24
Operation indicator light 3-23
System 7-34
Warning light 3-22, 3-24
Ventilator 4-2
Voice command system operation 5-62

W
Warning and indicator lights 3-13
Warning chimes
Keyless access with push-button start system 3-29
Seatbelt 3-14
Warning light
ABS 3-21
Access key 3-29
All-Wheel Drive 3-28
AT OIL TEMP 3-19
Automatic headlight beam leveler 3-28
Brake system 3-25
Charge 3-18
Door open 3-27
Driver's Control Center Differential 3-37
Electronic parking brake 3-26
Engine low oil level 3-18
High Beam Assist 3-36
Hill start assist 3-27
Keyless access with push-button start system 3-29
LED headlight 3-29
Low fuel 3-27
Low tire pressure 3-20
Oil pressure 3-18
Power steering 3-28
Rear differential oil temperature 3-19
Seatbelt 3-14
SRS airbag system 3-16
Steering Responsive Headlight 3-36
SUBARU Rear Vehicle Detection 3-38
Vacuum pump system 3-27
Vehicle Dynamics Control 3-22, 3-24
Windshield washer fluid 3-27
Warranties 1
Washing 10-2
Waxing and polishing 10-3
Wear indicators 11-38
What to do if... 5-58
Troubleshooting 5-58
Wheel
Alignment 12-9
Alloy 11-41
Balance 11-38
Nut tightening torque 12-8
Replacement 11-41
Windows 2-24
Windshield
Washer fluid 11-41
Wiper and washer switches 3-77

Wiper blades 11-43
Wiper deicer 3-82
Winter
Driving 8-6
Tires 8-9, 11-34
Wiper and washer 3-75
Wiper deicer 3-82

GAS STATION REFERENCE

■ Fuel:

▼ Fuel types

Unleaded petrol only.

▼ Research Octane Number (RON)

▽ STI

98 or higher.

▽ Except STI

95 or higher.

▼ Ethanol blended petrol

▽ For Europe

E5, E10 or the ethanol content is up to 10%.

▽ For others

Ethanol content is up to 10%.

■ Fuel capacity:

60 liters (15.9 US gal, 13.2 Imp gal)

■ Engine oil:

Use only the following oils.

- API classification SN with the words “RESOURCE CONSERVING”
- or ILSAC GF-5, which can be identified with the ILSAC certification mark (Starburst mark)
- or ACEA specification A3 or A5

For the complete viscosity requirements, refer to “Engine oil” ☞12-4.

■ Engine oil capacity:

▼ STI

4.3 liters (4.5 US qt, 3.8 Imp qt)

▼ Except STI

5.1 liters (5.4 US qt, 4.5 Imp qt)

The indicated oil quantity is only a guideline and is estimated based on a case when the engine oil is changed with an oil filter. After refilling the engine with oil, the oil level should be checked using an oil level gauge. For more details about maintenance and service, refer to “Engine oil” ☞11-16.

■ Cold tire pressure:

See the label located under the driver’s door latch.